

Conformed  
to include  
Addenda 1 and 2  
April 13, 2022

# PROJECT MANUAL

---

## ELEMENTARY SCHOOL HVAC UPGRADE & HIGH SCHOOL ROOFTOP UNIT PROJECT

ISSUED FOR CONSTRUCTION

SCHUYLKILL VALLEY SCHOOL DISTRICT  
BERKS COUNTY, PA

April 2022

Specification No. 103916.0008

© 2022 Spotts, Stevens and McCoy

Set No. \_\_\_\_\_



SPOTTS | STEVENS | MCCOY  
ssmgroup.com

PROJECT MANUAL

SCHUYLKILL VALLEY SCHOOL DISTRICT  
LEESPORT, PENNSYLVANIA

ELEMENTARY SCHOOL HVAC UPGRADE & HIGH SCHOOL ROOFTOP UNIT PROJECT

Conformed to include Addenda 1 and 2, April 13, 2022

APRIL 2022

For more information on this project, please contact:

Michelle Hohl, P.E.  
Spotts, Stevens and McCoy  
1047 North Park Road  
P. O. Box 6307  
Reading PA 19610-0307  
Phone: (610) 621-2000  
Fax: (610) 621-2001  
E-mail: [michelle.hohl@ssmgroup.com](mailto:michelle.hohl@ssmgroup.com)

Specification No. 103916.0008

© 2022 Spotts, Stevens and McCoy

SCHUYLKILL VALLEY SCHOOL DISTRICT  
LEESPORT, PENNSYLVANIA

ELEMENTARY SCHOOL HVAC UPGRADE & HIGH SCHOOL ROOFTOP UNIT PROJECT

PROJECT MANUAL

TABLE OF CONTENTS

INTRODUCTORY PAGES

--	Title Sheet
--	Table of Contents

BIDDING REQUIREMENTS

00100PB-1	PennBid Instructions to Bidders
EJCDC C-111	Advertisement for Bids
EJCDC C-200	Instructions to Bidders
EJCDC C-410	Bid Forms – Contract Nos. 1 through 3 -General, Electrical and HVAC
EJCDC C-430	Bid Bond
EJCDC C-451	Bidders Sworn Qualification Statement
00480	Noncollusion Affidavit

CONTRACT FORMS

EJCDC C-510	Notice of Award
EJCDC C-520	Agreement between Owner and Contractor
EJCDC C-550	Notice to Proceed
EJCDC C-610	Performance Bond
EJCDC C-615	Payment Bond
EJCDC C-620	Contractor's Application for Payment
EJCDC C-625	Certificate of Substantial Completion
00635	Workers' Compensation Affidavit

CONTRACT CONDITIONS

EJCDC C-700	General Conditions
EJCDC C-800	Supplementary Conditions
00830	Pennsylvania Public School Project Regulations
00850	PA Public Works Verification Form
	Prevailing Wage Determination

ADDITIONAL PROJECT FORMS

00930	Consent of Surety Company to Final Payment
EJCDC C-940	Work Change Directive
EJCDC C-941	Change Order
EJCDC C-942	Field Order

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS  
DIVISION 1 – GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

<u>Section</u>	<u>Title</u>
011000	Summary
011200	Multiple Contract Summary
012000	Price and Payment Procedures
012100	Allowances
012500	Substitution Procedures
013000	Administrative Requirements
013113	Project Coordination
013216	Construction Progress Schedule
013233	Photographic Documentation
013300	Submittal Procedures
014000	Quality Requirements
014535	Special Inspections
015000	Temporary Facilities and Controls
016000	Product Requirements
017000	Execution and Closeout Requirements

DIVISION 3 – CONCRETE

033000	Cast-in-Place Concrete
--------	------------------------

DIVISION 4 – MASONRY

042000	Unit Masonry
--------	--------------

DIVISION 5 – METALS

051200	Structural Steel Framing
--------	--------------------------

DIVISION 6 – WOOD, PLASTICS, AND COMPOSITES

061053	Rough Carpentry
--------	-----------------

DIVISION 7 – THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION

072100	Thermal Insulation
079200	Joint Sealants

DIVISION 09 – FINISHES

095123 Acoustical Tile Ceilings

DIVISION 23 – HEATING, VENTILATING, AND AIR CONDITIONING

230517	Sleeves and Sleeve Seals For HVAC Piping
230518	Escutcheons For HVAC Piping
230519	Meters and Gages For HVAC Piping
230523.12	Ball Valves For HVAC Piping
230523.13	Butterfly Valves For HVAC Piping
230523.14	Check Valves For HVAC Piping
230529	Hangers and Supports For HVAC Piping And Equipment
230548.13	Vibration Controls For HVAC
230553	Identification For HVAC Piping And Equipment
230593	Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing For HVAC
230713	Duct Insulation
230719	HVAC Piping Insulation
230923	Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC
230923.11	Control Valves
230923.12	Control Dampers
230923.23	Pressure Instruments
230923.27	Temperature Instruments
230993.11	Sequence Of Operations For HVAC DDC
231123	Facility Natural-Gas Piping
232113	Hydronic Piping
232116	Hydronic Piping Specialties
232123	Hydronic Pumps
232300	Refrigerant Piping
232500	HVAC Water Treatment
233113	Metal Ducts
233300	Air Duct Accessories
233346	Flexible Ducts
233416	Centrifugal HVAC Fans
233423	HVAC Power Ventilators
233713.13	Air Diffusers
233713.23	Registers And Grilles
235123	Gas Vents
235216	Condensing Boilers
236313	Air-Cooled Refrigerant Condensers
237416.11	Packaged, Small-Capacity, Rooftop Air-Conditioning Units
237416.13	Packaged, Large-Capacity, Rooftop Air-Conditioning Units
238126	Split-System Air-Conditioners
238129	Variable-Refrigerant-Flow HVAC Systems
238216.11	Hydronic Air Coils
238219	Fan Coil Units
238223	Unit Ventilators

DIVISION 26 – ELECTRICAL

260500	General Requirements For Electrical Work
260519	Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables
260526	Grounding and Bonding For Electrical Systems
260529	Hangers and Supports For Electrical Systems
260533	Raceways and Boxes For Electrical Systems
260544	Sleeves and Sleeve Seals For Electrical Raceways And Cabling
260553	Identification For Electrical Systems
262416	Panelboards
262813	Fuses
262816	Enclosed Switches And Circuit Breakers
262913	Enclosed Controllers

DIVISION 31 – EARTHWORK

312300	Earthmoving
--------	-------------

DIVISION 32 – EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS

321323	Vinyl Fencing and Gates
--------	-------------------------

## **PennBid Instructions to Bidders**

### **For Bidders and vendors**

#### **Using the PennBid™ electronic bid management system to respond to this Request-for-Bids**

The Schuylkill Valley School District along with many PA municipalities, Authorities, and private firms is utilizing the PennBid™ electronic procurement Program for their solicitations, RFPs, and RFQs. Using PennBid is beneficial to both the agencies as well as the bidders. Costs and bidding effort is greatly reduced as bid documents are available online, all questions and answers are transmitted by email, and sealed bids can be submitted and updated online. Interested bidders need to register only once, a free process that takes only a few minutes. Once registered, bidders have access to publically available bids and solicitations from every Agency within PennBid, plus are available for By-Invitation-Only RFPs and RFQs. Bidders can obtain all project documents and submit and update their confidential bids online.

**Sealed Bid Confidentiality** – The confidentiality of the sealed bid system is a cornerstone of the PennBid Program. At no time before Bid Opening can anyone see your electronic bid.

**Confidentiality of Identity** – When questions are asked and answered, bidder identity is not disclosed to other bidders.

**1. Documents** – All documents may be downloaded directly to your computer. Documents can be electronically sent to your suppliers and sub contractors.

**2. Being added to the “Bidders List”** – By downloading any document, you are automatically added to the list of bidders for this solicitation.

**3. Questions** – by clicking on the “Questions” tab, you can see all questions that have been asked and answered related to this solicitation. You can also ask questions directly through this tab. When the agency answers the question, both the question and answer is emailed directly to all bidders.

**4. Submitting and Updating Bids** – You may submit and update your bid anytime up to the bid due date and time by clicking on the “Bid” tab. You need only to provide the per unit price. The PennBid Program will automatically calculate the extended price (no more math errors). You can update any line item without affecting the rest of your Bid.

#### **What to submit with this bid**

Click on the “**Bid**” tab

- Enter Schedule of Prices.
  - Note: the electronic spreadsheet has default setting of 4 decimal places. In evaluating bids, awarding a contract, and managing the contract, prices will be rounded to two decimal places.
  - Note: Quantities shown on the bid form are estimated quantities and are not guaranteed. The electronic bid form defaults to 4 decimal places but this in no way implies a higher degree of accuracy on the quantity. Quantities shown are estimates solely for the purpose of comparing bids and determining an initial Contract Price.
- Attach a single electronic file or zipped folder containing scanned copies of the documents listed below:
  - Bid Form (C-410))
  - Bid Security (C-430 if Bid Bond)

- Bidder's Sworn Qualification Statement with all required Attachments (C-451)
- Noncollusion Affidavit (C-480)

**Important Note 1** – After the bid opening, the apparent low bidder is required to submit to the Engineer, the original form and signature Bid Documents within three (3) business days from the Bid Opening date. Original signature documents include Bid Form (C-410), Bid Security (C-430 if Bid Bond), Bidder's Sworn Qualification Statement with attachments (C-451), full copy of an audited financial statement for most recent year and Noncollusion Affidavit (C-480).

Failure to submit original signature documents within the time specified will be considered as nonresponsive and may be cause for the Owner's rejection of your bid.

**Important Note 2** - If the PennBid Program is idle for 50 minutes, a logout warning will appear. Bidders **must** acknowledge. If bidder does not acknowledge that they want to continue working, they **will** be logged out and bidder's data **will not** be saved or submitted.

### **How to submit your bid**

The **Bid** tab contains the electronic bid form. All Per Unit Price fields must be filled out. PennBid will automatically complete the line extensions and bid totals. At the bottom of the page, check the **Verification Statement** and click **Submit Bid**. Completed bid form can be printed or saved to Excel by clicking the icons in the middle of the bid form page.

### **Submitting documents with electronic bid**

An electronic copy of the documents listed above is to be submitted with the electronic bid. To attach these documents:

1. Fill out required documents and scan to create a single electronic file or save as a single zipped folder containing all documents
2. From the **Bid** tab, click on "browse" (middle of the page), then click on the file or zipped folder name. The file will be attached to your bid submission when the **Submit Bid** button is clicked.

**Important Note 3** – when uploading a proposal or other document, the maximum individual file or folder size is 20Mb.

### **Verifying that your bid was submitted**

If submitted properly, you will receive an acknowledgement appearing in the middle of your screen saying "Your bid has been submitted".

### **Withdrawing Your Bid**

You may withdraw your bid anytime up to bid due date and time by simply clicking on Withdraw Bid, located at the bottom of the **Bid** tab.

### **Help Guides**

There are several Help Guides available from the PennBid™ Home Page.

### **Additional Support**

If additional support is needed, click on the "Contact Us" button located at the upper right of each PennBid screen or call us at (610) 732-4224.

END OF SECTION



AFFIDAVIT RE

ACCEPTING PROVISIONS OF THE WORKERS' COMPENSATION ACT

State of )  
 )  
 ) §  
 )  
County of )  
 )

\_\_\_\_\_ being duly sworn according to law deposes and says that (he has) (they have) (it has) accepted the provisions of the Workers' Compensation Act of 1915 of the Commonwealth of Pennsylvania, with its supplements and amendments, and (has) (have) insured (his) (their) (its) liability thereunder in accordance with the terms of said Act with \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
(SURETY COMPANY)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(TYPE OR PRINT) CONTRACTOR

BY \_\_\_\_\_  
SIGNATURE

Sworn to and subscribed before me this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_ A.D. 20\_\_.

\_\_\_\_\_

My Commission Expires \_\_\_\_\_  
(DATE)

Spotts, Stevens and McCoy  
Consulting Engineers

SECTION PS

PUBLIC SCHOOL PROJECT REGULATIONS

<u>Item</u>	<u>Title</u>	<u>Page</u>
PS1:01	Pennsylvania Human Relations Act Conditions	PS-1
PS1:02	Nondiscrimination Provision	PS-1
PS1:03	Local Laws	PS-1
PS1:04	Citizens	PS-1
PS1:05	Resident Laborers and Mechanics	PS-1
PS1:06	Competent Workmen	PS-2
PS1:07	Steel and Cast Iron Products	PS-2
PS1:08	Standard of Quality	PS-2
PS1:09	Bond Requirements	PS-2
PS2:01	Federal and State Statutes	PS-3
PS3:01	Pennsylvania Prevailing Wage Act	PS-3
PS3:02	Responsibility of Contractors and Subcontractors	PS-5
PS3:03	Classification of Workers	PS-5
PS3:04	Payment of Workers	PS-5
PS3:05	Posting of Prevailing Minimum Wage Determination	PS-5
PS3:06	Payroll Records	PS-6
PS3:07	Registration of Apprentices	PS-6
PS3:08	Deductions and Employee Benefits	PS-6
PS3:09	Payment by Lump Sum, Piece Work, or Price Certain Prohibited	PS-6
PS3:10	Weekly and Final Certificates of Compliance	PS-7
PS3:11	Direct Payment of Wages by Project Owner	PS-7
PS3:12	Criminal Background Checks and Child Abuse Clearances	PS-7
PS3:13	Pennsylvania Public Works Employment Verification Act	PS-7

SECTION PS

PENNSYLVANIA SCHOOL PROJECT REGULATIONS

PS1:01 PENNSYLVANIA HUMAN RELATIONS ACT CONDITIONS

**HUMAN RELATIONS ACT:** The provisions of the Pennsylvania Human Relations Act, Act 222 of October 27, 1955 (P.L. 744) (43 P.S. Section 951, et. seq.) of the Commonwealth of Pennsylvania prohibit the discrimination because of race, color, religious creed, ancestry, age, sex, national origin, handicap or disability, by employers, employment agencies, labor organizations, contractors and others. The contractor shall agree to comply with the provisions of this Act as amended that is made part of this specification. Your attention is directed to the language of the Commonwealth's non-discrimination clause in 16 PA. Code 49.101.

PS1:02 NONDISCRIMINATION PROVISION

Every contract for or in behalf of any school district for the construction, alteration, or repair of any public building or public work, shall contain provisions by which the contractor agrees:

**DISCRIMINATION PROHIBITED:** According to 62 Pa.C.S.A. § 3701, the contractor agrees that:

1. In the hiring of employees for the performance of work under the contract or any subcontract, no contractor, subcontractor or any person acting on behalf of the contractor or subcontractor shall by reason of gender, race, creed or color discriminate against any citizen of this Commonwealth who is qualified and available to perform the work to which the employment relates.
2. No contractor or subcontractor or any person on their behalf shall in any manner discriminate against or intimidate an employee hired for the performance of work under the contract on account of gender, race, creed or color.
3. The contract may be canceled or terminated by the government agency, and all money due or to become due under the contract may be forfeited for a violation of the terms or conditions of that portion of the contract.

PS1:03 LOCAL LAWS

The Contract Documents shall be governed by the law of the place of the Project.

PS1:04 CITIZENS

None but citizens of the United States shall be employed in any capacity in the erection, enlargement or improvement of any public building or public work under this Contract, provided that apprentices to a trade or profession who may be under twenty-one years of age shall not be subject to this provision.

PS1:05 RESIDENT LABORERS AND MECHANICS

**RESIDENT WORKMEN.** According to Section 754, Public School Code of Pennsylvania, 1949 as amended, laborers and mechanics employed shall have been residents of the Commonwealth for at least 90 days prior to their employment. Failure to keep and comply

with this provision shall be sufficient legal reason to refuse payment of the contract price to the contractor.

PS1:06 COMPETENT WORKMEN

According to Section 752 of the Public School Code of 1949, no person shall be employed to do work under such contract except competent and first class workmen and mechanics. No workmen shall be regarded as competent first class, within the meaning of this Act, except those who are duly skilled in their respective branches of labor, and who shall be paid not less than such rates of wages and for such hours work as shall be established and current rates of wages paid for such hours by employers of organized labor in doing of similar work in the district where work is being done.

PS1:07 STEEL AND CAST IRON PRODUCTS

In accordance with Act 3 of the 1978 General Assembly of the Commonwealth of Pennsylvania, if any steel or steel products are to be used or supplied in the performance of the contract, only those produced in the United States as defined therein shall be used or supplied in the performance of the contract or any subcontracts thereunder.

In accordance with Act 161 of 1982, cast iron products shall also be included and produced in the United States. Act 141 of 1984 further defines "steel products" to include machinery and equipment. The act also provides clarifications and penalties.

PS1:08 STANDARD OF QUALITY

**STANDARD OF QUALITY:** The various materials and products specified in the specifications by name or description are given to establish a standard of quality and of cost for bid purposes. It is not the intent to limit the bidder, the bid or the evaluation of the bid to any one material or product specified but rather to describe the minimum standard. When proprietary names are used, they shall be followed by the words "or alternatives of the quality necessary to meet the specifications". A bid containing an alternative which does not meet the specifications may be declared non-responsive. A bid containing an alternative may be accepted but, if an award is made to that bidder the bidder will be required to replace any alternatives which do not meet the specifications.

PS1:09 BOND REQUIREMENTS

In accordance with Sections 756 and 757 of the Public School Code of 1949, as amended, and the Public Works Contractors Bond Law of 1967, the apparent successful Bidder shall, within ten (10) days after receipt of Notice of Intent to Award, and before the award of the Contract, submit the required Performance Bond and Labor and Material Payment Bond, on the forms provided by the Engineer, each in the amount of One Hundred Percent (100%) of the proposed Contract sum. Contractor shall furnish the Certificate of Insurance as outlined in the Supplementary General Conditions. Three copies of the bonds and certificates of insurance shall be submitted to the party stated in the Notice of Intent to Award. All bonds and insurance shall be issued by companies authorized to transact business in the Commonwealth of Pennsylvania.

In the event the successful Bidder shall fail to furnish the necessary bonds and insurance within the required time, the Owner has the option of declaring Bidder in default in which case the amount of the Bid Security shall be forfeited to the Owner or, in the alternative, of allowing the successful Bidder additional time in which to secure required bonds and insurance.

The bonds shall be dated on or after the date of the Contract. The Bidder shall require the Attorney-in-Fact who executes the required Bonds on behalf of the Surety to affix thereto a certified and current copy of the power of attorney.

Bond of a Contractor who is foreign corporation shall meet Pennsylvania Act of June 10, 1974, P.L. 493 requirements. Bond shall state that Contractor or the Contractor's Surety, shall not be discharged from bond liability, nor bond surrendered, until Contractor files with Owner a certificate from Pennsylvania Department of Revenue evidencing payment in full of all bonus taxes, penalties and interest, and until Contractor files with Owner a certificate from Pennsylvania Department of Labor and Industry evidencing payment in full of all unemployment compensation, contributions, penalties and interest due from Contractor or any of the Contractor's subcontractors for labor employed.

PS2:01 FEDERAL AND STATE STATUTES

CONTRACTOR shall be responsible for compliance with all applicable Federal and State statutes, rules and regulations dealing with the prevention of environmental pollution and the preservation of public natural resources that could affect the project.

PS3:01 PENNSYLVANIA PREVAILING WAGE ACT

No person shall be employed to work under this Contract except competent and first-class workers and mechanics. No workers shall be regarded as competent and first-class except those who are duly skilled in their respective branches of labor, and who shall be paid not less than such rates of wages and for such hours as established by the Secretary of the Department of Labor and Industry under the "Pennsylvania Prevailing Wage Act" No. 442, effective February 1, 1962, as amended and supplemented.

The general prevailing minimum wage rates including contributions for employee benefits as determined by the Secretary shall be paid to the workers employed in the performance of the contract.

The Contractor shall pay no less than the wage rates as determined in the decision of the Secretary of Labor and Industry and shall comply with the conditions of the Pennsylvania Prevailing Wage Act approved August 15, 1961 (Act No. 442), as amended August 9, 1963 (Act No. 342), and the Regulations issued pursuant thereto, to assure the full and proper payment of said rates.

All workers shall be paid no less than such general prevailing minimum wage rates and such other provisions to assure payment thereof as heretofore set forth in this document.

The Contract provisions shall apply to all work performed on the contract by the Contractor and to all work performed on the contract by all Subcontractors.

The Contractor shall insert in each subcontract all of the stipulations contained in these required provisions and such other stipulations as may be required.

No workers may be employed on the public work except in accordance with the classifications set forth in the decision of the Secretary. In the event that additional or different classifications are necessary, the procedure set forth in Section 7 of these Regulations shall be followed.

All workers employed or working on the public work shall be paid unconditionally, regardless of whether any contractual relationship exists or the nature of any contractual relationship which may be alleged to exist between any contractor, subcontractor and workers, not less than once a week without deduction or rebate, on any account, either

directly or indirectly, except authorized deductions, the full amounts due at the time of payment, computed at the rates applicable to the time worked in the appropriate classification. Nothing in the contract, the Act or these Regulations shall prohibit the payment of more than the general prevailing minimum wage rates as determined by the Secretary to any worker on public works.

The Contractor and each Subcontractor shall post for the entire period of construction, the wage determination decisions of the Secretary, including the effective date of any changes thereof, in a prominent and easily accessible place or places at the site of the work and at such place or places used by them to pay workers their wages. The posted notice of wage rates shall contain the following information:

- (1) Name of the Project.
- (2) Name of public body of which it is being constructed.
- (3) The crafts and classifications of workers listed in Secretary's general prevailing minimum wage rate determination for the particular project.
- (4) The general prevailing minimum wage rates determined for each craft and classification and the effective date of any changes.
- (5) A statement advising workers that if they have been paid less than the general prevailing minimum wage rate for the job classification or that the Contractor, and/or Subcontractor are not complying with the Act or these Regulations in any manner whatsoever, they may file a protest in writing with the Secretary of Labor and Industry within three (3) months of the date of the occurrence, objecting to the payment to say Contractor to the extent of the amount or amounts due or to become due to them as wages for work performed on the public work project. Any workers paid less than the rate specified in the contract shall have a civil right of action for the difference between the wage paid and the wages stipulated in the contract, which right of action must be exercised within six (6) months from the occurrence of the event creating such right.

The Contractor and all Subcontractors shall keep an accurate record showing the time, craft and/or classification, number of hours worked per day, the and the actual hourly rate of wage paid (including employee benefits) to each workers employed by them in connection with the public work and such record must include any deductions from each worker. The record shall be preserved for two years from the date of payment and shall be open at all reasonable hours to the inspection of the public body awarding the contract and to the Secretary or the secretary's duly authorized representatives.

Apprentices shall be limited to such numbers as shall be in accordance with a bona fide apprenticeship program registered with and approved by the Pennsylvania Apprenticeship and Training council and only apprentices whose training and employment are in full compliance with the provisions of the Apprenticeship and Training Act approved July 14, 1961 (Act No. 304) and the Rules and Regulations issued pursuant thereto shall be employed on the public work project. Any workers using the tools of a craft who does not qualify as an apprentice within the provisions of this subsection shall be, paid the rate predetermined for journeymen in that particular craft and/or classification.

Wages shall be paid without any deductions except authorized deductions. Employers not parties to a contract requiring contributions for employee benefits which the Secretary has determined to be included in the general prevailing minimum wage rate shall pay the monetary equivalent thereof directly to the workers.

Payment of compensation to workers for work performed on public work on a lump sum basis, or a piece work systems, or a price certain for the completion of a certain amount of work, or the production of a certain result shall be deemed a violation of the Act and these Regulations, regardless of the average hourly earnings resulting therefrom.

The contract shall also provide that each Contractor and each subcontractor shall file a statement each week and a final statement at the conclusion of the work on the contract with the contracting agency, under oath, and in form, satisfactory to the Secretary, certifying that all workers have been paid in wages in strict conformity with the provisions of the contract as prescribed in these Regulations, or if any wages remain unpaid to set forth the amount of wages due and owing to each worker respectively.

The provisions of the Act are hereby incorporated by reference in the Contract.

PS3:02      RESPONSIBILITY OF CONTRACTORS AND SUBCONTRACTORS

The contract provisions shall apply to all work performed on the contract by the CONTRACTOR and to all work performed on the contract by all subcontractors. The CONTRACTOR shall insert in each subcontract all of the stipulations contained in these required provisions and such other stipulations as may be required.

PS3:03      CLASSIFICATION OF WORKERS

No workmen may be employed on the project except in accordance with the classifications set forth in the decision of the Secretary. In the event that additional or different classifications are necessary, the procedures set forth by the Secretary shall be followed.

PS3:04      PAYMENT OF WORKERS

All workmen employed or working on the project shall be paid unconditionally, regardless of any contractual relationship which may be alleged to exist between any CONTRACTOR, subcontractor and workmen, not less than once a week without deduction or rebate of any account, either directly or indirectly, except authorized deductions, the full amounts due at the time of payment, computed at the rates applicable to the time worked in the appropriate classification. Nothing in the contract, the Act or these specifications shall prohibit the payment of more than the general prevailing minimum wage rates as determined by the Secretary to any workman on the project.

PS3:05      POSTING OF PREVAILING MINIMUM WAGE DETERMINATION

The CONTRACTOR and each subcontractor shall post for the entire period of construction the wage determination decisions of the Secretary, including the effective date of any changes thereof, in a prominent and easily accessible place or places at the site of the work and at such place or places used by them to pay workmen their wages. The posted notice of wage rates must contain the following information:

- (a) Name of project.
- (b) Name of the public body for which the Project is being constructed.
- (c) The crafts and classifications of workmen listed in the Secretary's general prevailing minimum wage rate determination for the particular project.
- (d) The general prevailing minimum wage rates determined for each craft and classification and the effective date of any changes.
- (e) A statement advising workmen that, if they have been paid less than the general prevailing minimum wage rate for their job classification or that the CONTRACTOR or subcontractor are not complying with the Act or Regulations in any manner whatsoever, they may file a protest in writing with the Secretary of Labor and Industry. Any workmen paid less than the rate specified in the contract shall have a civil right of action for the difference between the wage paid and the wages stipulated in the contract, which right of action must be exercised within six (6) months from the occurrence of the event creating such right.

PS3:06 PAYROLL RECORDS

The CONTRACTOR and all subcontractors shall keep an accurate record showing the name, craft or classification, number of hours worked per day, and the actual hourly rate of wage paid (including employee benefits) to each workman employed in connection with the project. Such record must include any deductions for each workman. The record shall be preserved for two (2) years from the date of payment and shall be open to all reasonable hours to the inspection of the public body awarding the CONTRACT and to the Secretary or any duly authorized representatives.

PS3:07 REGISTRATION OF APPRENTICES

Apprentices shall be limited to such numbers as shall be in accordance with a bona fide apprenticeship program registered with and approved by the Pennsylvania apprenticeship and Training Council. Only apprentices whose training and employment are in full compliance with the provisions of the Apprenticeship and Training Act approved July 14, 1961 (Act No. 304) and the Rules and Regulations issued pursuant thereto shall be employed on the project. Any workman using the tools of a craft which does not qualify as an apprentice within the provisions of the Act shall be paid the rate predetermined for journeymen in that particular craft or classification.

PS3:08 DEDUCTIONS AND EMPLOYEE BENEFITS

Wages shall be paid without any deductions except authorized deductions. Employers not parties to a contract requiring contributions for employee benefits, which the Secretary has determined to be included in the general prevailing minimum wage rate, shall pay the monetary equivalent thereof directly to the workmen.

PS3:09 PAYMENT BY LUMP SUM, PIECE WORK, OR PRICE CERTAIN PROHIBITED

Payment of compensation to workmen for work performed on public work on a lump sum basis, a piece work system, or a price certain for the completion of a certain amount of work, or the production of a certain result shall be deemed a violation of the Act, regardless of the average hourly earnings resulting therefrom.

PS3:10 WEEKLY AND FINAL CERTIFICATES OF COMPLIANCE



Each CONTRACTOR and each subcontractor shall file a statement each week and a final statement at the completion of the contract with the contracting agency, under oath, and in a form satisfactory to the Secretary, certifying that all workmen have been paid wages in strict conformity with the provisions of the contract as prescribed by the Regulations, or if any wages remain unpaid, to set forth the amount of wages due and owing to each workman respectively.

PS3:11 DIRECT PAYMENT OF WAGES BY PROJECT OWNER

When notified by the Secretary of the filing of wage claims by workmen, pursuant to Section 10(b) of Act 442, the OWNER shall withhold from the monies due to the CONTRACTOR sufficient funds to pay all claims determined to be valid and, when so directed by the Secretary, shall pay wages directly to the workmen.

PS3:12 CRIMINAL BACKGROUND CHECKS AND CHILD ABUSE CLEARANCES

(a) All employees of contractors, suppliers and subcontractors working on the site **must** submit certifications in the form required by 24 P.S. §1-111 (Act 34 - Criminal Background Check) and in the form required by 23 Pa.C.S. §6354 *et seq.*, (Act 151 - Child Abuse Clearance) for review by the Owner prior to the issuance of a security ID badge. Please note that effective April 1, 2007, all such employees must also obtain an FBI Clearance (fingerprint search) in the form required by 24 P.S. §1-111. These requirements of this subparagraph by the Owner are more stringent than the statutory requirement imposed by law for the submission of criminal background checks and child abuse clearances.

(b) Any employee with a documented criminal or abuse history shall be deemed objectionable by the Owner in its sole discretion and will be prohibited from working on the Owner's property. The Contractor is responsible for all costs associated with obtaining the certifications. Failure by the Contractor to obtain the necessary security clearances in a timely manner is not justification to access the site.

PS3:13 PENNSYLVANIA PUBLIC WORKS EMPLOYMENT VERIFICATION ACT

The Pennsylvania Public Works Employment Verification Act (43 P.S. §§ 167.1-167.11) requires Contractors and Subcontractors performing work on "public works projects" to comply with federal employment eligibility requirements, including verification through the U.S. Department of Homeland Security's E-Verify program which compares I-9 employment verification data to data from the Department of Homeland Security and Social Security Administration records, in order to confirm that employees are authorized to work in the United States.

All Contractors shall submit a "Public Works Employment Verification Form" to the Owner through the Architect at the same time when performance and payments bonds are submitted. Submission of this form is a precondition of the Contract being awarded and executed. These requirements apply to all employees hired by the Contractor or Subcontractor regardless of whether the employee will be working onsite or offsite.

Subcontracts between the Contractor and its Subcontractors or between any Subcontractor and its Subcontractors are required to contain notification of applicability of the Act, the requirement to provide a "Public Works Employment Verification Form" as stated under number 4 below, and reference to the Department of General Services website as stated under number 6 below.

All Subcontractors shall submit a "Public Works Employment Verification Form" to the Contractor, who shall submit the form to the Owner through the Architect prior to the Subcontractor beginning either onsite or offsite work. Submission of this form shall be a

precondition of the Subcontract remaining in force, and the Contractor shall terminate the Subcontract if the Subcontractor does not comply. These requirements apply to all employees hired by the Subcontractor regardless of whether the employee will be working onsite or offsite. "Subcontractor" includes any entity that performs work on the project other than the prime Contractor and other than an individual. The term does not include an entity that is solely a material supplier for the project.

The Contractor or Subcontractor shall be responsible for any penalties imposed for failure to comply with this Act. Contractors and Subcontractors may access the form at [www.dgs.state.pa.us](http://www.dgs.state.pa.us). The Chapter 66 Guidelines may be located at <http://www.pabulletin.com/secure/data/vol42/42-52/index.html>.

CONSENT OF SURETY COMPANY TO FINAL PAYMENT

PROJECT: \_\_\_\_\_ (name, address) \_\_\_\_\_

TO: \_\_\_\_\_ (Owner) \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

ENGINEER'S PROJECT NO.: \_\_\_\_\_  
CONTRACT FOR: \_\_\_\_\_  
CONTRACT DATE: \_\_\_\_\_

In accordance with the provisions of the Contract between the OWNER and the CONTRACTOR as indicated above, the (insert name and address of Surety as it appears in the bond).

\_\_\_\_\_, SURETY,

on bond of (here insert name and address of CONTRACTOR as it appears in the bond)

\_\_\_\_\_, CONTRACTOR,

hereby approves of the final payment to the CONTRACTOR, and agrees that final payment to the CONTRACTOR shall not relieve the Surety Company of any of its obligations to (here insert name and address of OWNER)

\_\_\_\_\_, OWNER,

as set forth in the Surety Company's payment bond or performance bond.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Surety has hereunto set its hand this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_ 2022.

\_\_\_\_\_ Surety

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature of Authorized Representative

\_\_\_\_\_  
Title

Attest:  
(Seal):

**Schuylkill Valley School District  
Leesport, Pennsylvania  
Elementary School HVAC  
Upgrade & High School  
Rooftop Unit Project**

ADVERTISEMENT FOR BIDS

Sealed Bids for the construction of the Elementary School HVAC Upgrade and High School Rooftop Unit Project will be received online by Schuylkill Valley School District, 929 Lakeshore Drive, Leesport PA 19533, until 11:00 am local time on March 24, 2022. Online bids shall be submitted by way of the PennBid Program. Paper bids will not be accepted for this project. All documents and solicitation details are available online at no cost except to the successful bidder at PennBid: <https://pennbid.procurement.com/.net>

The Project generally consists of the demolition and removal of existing HVAC units at both school buildings, installation of new equipment, and completion of ancillary general construction to accommodate these improvements.

Three contracts shall be engaged for completion of the project as follows:

Contract No.1 – General  
Contract No 2 – Electrical  
Contract No.3 – HVAC

Bidders are encouraged to attend a voluntary pre-bid conference to be held at the Schuylkill Valley School District High School, Leroy Seip Meeting Room, on March 1, 2022 at 1:00 pm.

Bid security shall be furnished in accordance with the Instructions to Bidders.

Attention is called to the fact that prevailing minimum wage rates as determined by the Secretary of the Department of Labor and Industry must be paid by the Contractors on this project and that employees and applicants for employment shall not be discriminated against because of their race, age, color, religion, sex, national origin, or handicap. Each Bidder is required to meet the requirements of the Public Works Employment Verification Act, Act 127 of 2012.

Any and all steel products used or supplied in the performance of the contract or any subcontracts shall be from steel made in the United States.

The Schuylkill Valley School District, Owner, hereby reserves the right, which is understood and agreed to by all bidders, to refuse and reject any or all bids submitted, and also reserves the right to waive any informality in bids received.

+ + END OF ADVERTISEMENT FOR BIDS + +

# INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<b>Page</b>
ARTICLE 1 – Defined Terms.....	1
ARTICLE 2 – Copies of Bidding Documents.....	1
ARTICLE 3 – Qualifications of Bidders.....	1
ARTICLE 4 – Site and Other Areas; Existing Site Conditions; Examination of Site; Owner’s Safety Program; Other Work at the Site .....	2
ARTICLE 5 – Bidder’s Representations.....	3
ARTICLE 6 – Pre-Bid Conference.....	4
ARTICLE 7 – Interpretations and Addenda .....	5
ARTICLE 8 – Bid Security.....	5
ARTICLE 9 – Contract Times.....	5
ARTICLE 10 – Liquidated Damages .....	5
ARTICLE 11 – Substitute and “Or-Equal” Items .....	6
ARTICLE 12 – Subcontractors, Suppliers, and Others .....	6
ARTICLE 13 – Preparation of Bid.....	6
ARTICLE 14 – Basis of Bid.....	7
ARTICLE 15 – Submittal of Bid .....	8
ARTICLE 16 – Modification and Withdrawal of Bid.....	8
ARTICLE 17 – Opening of Bids.....	9
ARTICLE 18 – Bids to Remain Subject to Acceptance .....	9
ARTICLE 19 – Evaluation of Bids and Award of Contract .....	9
ARTICLE 20 – Bonds and Insurance.....	10
ARTICLE 21 – Signing of Agreement .....	10
ARTICLE 22 – Sales and Use Taxes .....	10

## ARTICLE 1 – DEFINED TERMS

- 1.01 Terms used in these Instructions to Bidders have the meanings indicated in the General Conditions and Supplementary Conditions. Additional terms used in these Instructions to Bidders have the meanings indicated below:
- A. *Issuing Office* – The office from which the Bidding Documents are to be issued, which for this project is identified in the Advertisement for bids.
  - B. *Bidder* – one who submits a Bid directly to Owner as distinct from a sub bidder, who submits a bid to a Bidder.

## ARTICLE 2 – COPIES OF BIDDING DOCUMENTS

- 2.01 Complete sets of the Bidding Documents are available online for no fee (except to the successful bidder) by way of the PennBid Program ([pennbid.procurement.com](http://pennbid.procurement.com)).
- 2.02 Complete sets of Bidding Documents shall be used in preparing Bids; neither Owner nor Engineer assumes any responsibility for errors or misinterpretations resulting from the use of incomplete sets of Bidding Documents.
- 2.03 Owner and Engineer, in making copies of Bidding Documents available on the above terms, do so only for the purpose of obtaining Bids for the Work and do not authorize or confer a license for any other use.

## ARTICLE 3 – QUALIFICATIONS OF BIDDERS

- 3.01 To demonstrate Bidder's qualifications to perform the Work, Bidder shall submit with its Bid (a) written evidence establishing its qualifications such as financial data, previous experience, and present commitments, and (b) whether the bidder:
- A. Maintains a permanent place of business.
  - B. Has a bidder's state or other contractor license number.
  - C. Has adequate equipment to do the Work properly and expeditiously.
  - D. Has suitable financial status to meet the obligations incident to the Work.
  - E. Has had recent experience on projects of similar character and magnitude.
  - F. Has qualifications to do business in the state where the Project is located.
- Owner may require the Bidder to furnish proof of the foregoing.
- 3.02 A Bidder's failure to submit required qualification information within the times indicated may disqualify Bidder from receiving an award of the Contract.
- 3.03 No requirement in this Article 3 to submit information will prejudice the right of Owner to seek additional pertinent information regarding Bidder's qualifications.
- 3.04 Bidder is advised to carefully review those portions of the Bid Form requiring Bidder's representations and certifications.
- 3.05 Owner reserves the right to reject the proposal of any bidder who the Owner feels does not possess satisfactory qualifications.

## ARTICLE 4 – SITE AND OTHER AREAS; EXISTING SITE CONDITIONS; EXAMINATION OF SITE; OWNER'S SAFETY PROGRAM; OTHER WORK AT THE SITE

### 4.01 *Site and Other Areas*

- A. The Site is identified in the Bidding Documents. By definition, the Site includes rights-of-way, easements, and other lands furnished by Owner for the use of the Contractor. Any additional lands required for temporary construction facilities, construction equipment, or storage of materials and equipment, and any access needed for such additional lands, are to be obtained and paid for by Contractor.

### 4.02 *Existing Site Conditions*

- A. Subsurface and Physical Conditions; Hazardous Environmental Conditions
  - 1. The Supplementary Conditions identify:
    - a. those reports known to Owner of explorations and tests of subsurface conditions at or adjacent to the Site.
    - b. those drawings known to Owner of physical conditions relating to existing surface or subsurface structures at the Site (except Underground Facilities).
    - c. reports and drawings known to Owner relating to Hazardous Environmental Conditions that have been identified at or adjacent to the Site.
    - d. Technical Data contained in such reports and drawings.
  - 2. Owner will make copies of reports and drawings referenced above available to any Bidder on request. These reports and drawings are not part of the Contract Documents, but the Technical Data contained therein upon whose accuracy Bidder is entitled to rely, as provided in the General Conditions, has been identified and established in the Supplementary Conditions. Bidder is responsible for any interpretation or conclusion Bidder draws from any Technical Data or any other data, interpretations, opinions, or information contained in such reports or shown or indicated in such drawings.
  - 3. If the Supplementary Conditions do not identify Technical Data, the default definition of Technical Data set forth in Article 1 of the General Conditions will apply.
- B. Underground Facilities: Information and data shown or indicated in the Bidding Documents with respect to existing Underground Facilities at or adjacent to the Site are set forth in the Contract Documents and are based upon information and data furnished to Owner and Engineer by owners of such Underground Facilities, including Owner, or others.
- C. Adequacy of Data: Provisions concerning responsibilities for the adequacy of data furnished to prospective Bidders with respect to subsurface conditions, other physical conditions, and Underground Facilities, and possible changes in the Bidding Documents due to differing or unanticipated subsurface or physical conditions appear in Paragraphs 5.03, 5.04, and 5.05 of the General Conditions. Provisions concerning responsibilities for the adequacy of data furnished to prospective Bidders with respect to a Hazardous Environmental Condition at the Site, if any, and possible changes in the Contract Documents due to any Hazardous Environmental Condition uncovered or revealed at the Site which was not shown or indicated in the Drawings or Specifications or identified in the Contract Documents to be within the scope of the Work, appear in Paragraph 5.06 of the General Conditions.

#### 4.03 *Site Visit and Testing by Bidders*

- A. Bidder shall conduct the required Site visit during normal working hours, and shall not disturb any ongoing operations at the Site. The required site visit shall be scheduled with the Owner ahead of time.
- B. Bidder is not required to conduct any subsurface testing, or exhaustive investigations of Site conditions.
- C. On request, and to the extent Owner has control over the Site, and schedule permitting, the Owner will provide Bidder access to the Site to conduct such additional examinations, investigations, explorations, tests, and studies as Bidder deems necessary for preparing and submitting a successful Bid. Owner will not have any obligation to grant such access if doing so is not practical because of existing operations, security or safety concerns, or restraints on Owner's authority regarding the Site.
- D. Bidder shall comply with all applicable Laws and Regulations regarding excavation and location of utilities, obtain all permits, and comply with all terms and conditions established by Owner or by property owners or other entities controlling the Site with respect to schedule, access, existing operations, security, liability insurance, and applicable safety programs.
- E. Bidder shall fill all holes and clean up and restore the Site to its former condition upon completion of such explorations, investigations, tests, and studies.

#### 4.04 *Owner's Safety Program*

- A. Site visits and work at the Site may be governed by an Owner safety program. As the General Conditions indicate, if an Owner safety program exists, it will be noted in the Supplementary Conditions.

#### 4.05 *Other Work at the Site*

- A. Reference is made to Article 8 of the Supplementary Conditions for the identification of the general nature of other work of which Owner is aware (if any) that is to be performed at the Site by Owner or others (such as utilities and other prime contractors) and relates to the Work contemplated by these Bidding Documents. If Owner is party to a written contract for such other work, then on request, Owner will provide to each Bidder access to examine such contracts (other than portions thereof related to price and other confidential matters), if any.

### **ARTICLE 5 – BIDDER'S REPRESENTATIONS**

#### 5.01 It is the responsibility of each Bidder before submitting a Bid to:

- A. examine and carefully study the Bidding Documents, and any data and reference items identified in the Bidding Documents;
- B. visit the Site, conduct a thorough, alert visual examination of the Site and adjacent areas, and become familiar with and satisfy itself as to the general, local, and Site conditions that may affect cost, progress, and performance of the Work;
- C. become familiar with and satisfy itself as to all Laws and Regulations that may affect cost, progress, and performance of the Work;
- D. carefully study all: (1) reports of explorations and tests of subsurface conditions at or adjacent to the Site and all drawings of physical conditions relating to existing surface or subsurface structures at the Site that have been identified in the Supplementary



Conditions, especially with respect to Technical Data in such reports and drawings, and (2) reports and drawings relating to Hazardous Environmental Conditions, if any, at or adjacent to the Site that have been identified in the Supplementary Conditions, especially with respect to Technical Data in such reports and drawings;

- E. consider the information known to Bidder itself; information commonly known to contractors doing business in the locality of the Site; information and observations obtained from visits to the Site; the Bidding Documents; and the Site-related reports and drawings identified in the Bidding Documents, with respect to the effect of such information, observations, and documents on (1) the cost, progress, and performance of the Work; (2) the means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures of construction to be employed by Bidder; and (3) Bidder's safety precautions and programs;
- F. agree, based on the information and observations referred to in the preceding paragraph, that at the time of submitting its Bid no further examinations, investigations, explorations, tests, studies, or data are necessary for the determination of its Bid for performance of the Work at the price bid and within the times required, and in accordance with the other terms and conditions of the Bidding Documents;
- G. become aware of the general nature of the work to be performed by Owner and others at the Site that relates to the Work as indicated in the Bidding Documents;
- H. promptly give Engineer written notice of all conflicts, errors, ambiguities, or discrepancies that Bidder discovers in the Bidding Documents and confirm that the written resolution thereof by Engineer is acceptable to Bidder;
- I. determine that the Bidding Documents are generally sufficient to indicate and convey understanding of all terms and conditions for the performance and furnishing of the Work; and
- J. agree that the submission of a Bid will constitute an incontrovertible representation by Bidder that Bidder has complied with every requirement of this Article, that without exception the Bid and all prices in the Bid are premised upon performing and furnishing the Work required by the Bidding Documents.

#### **ARTICLE 6 – PRE-BID CONFERENCE**

- 6.01 A pre-Bid conference (if scheduled) will be held at the time and location stated in the Advertisement for Bids. Representatives of Owner and Engineer will be present to discuss the Project. Bidders are encouraged to attend and participate in the conference. Engineer will transmit to all prospective Bidders of record such Addenda as Engineer considers necessary in response to questions arising at the conference. Oral statements may not be relied upon and will not be binding or legally effective.

#### **ARTICLE 7 – INTERPRETATIONS AND ADDENDA**

- 7.01 All questions about the meaning or intent of the Bidding Documents are to be submitted to Engineer in writing. Interpretations or clarifications considered necessary by Engineer in response to such questions will be issued by Addenda delivered to all parties recorded as having received the Bidding Documents. Questions received less than seven days prior to the date for opening of Bids may not be answered. Only questions answered by Addenda will be binding. Oral and other interpretations or clarifications will be without legal effect.
- 7.02 Addenda may be issued to clarify, correct, supplement, or change the Bidding Documents.

- 7.03 Addenda, if any, will be issued to only those persons whose name and address are on record with the Engineer as having obtained Contract Documents.

#### **ARTICLE 8 – BID SECURITY**

- 8.01 A Bid must be accompanied by Bid security made payable to Owner in an amount of ten (10%) percent of Bidder’s maximum Bid price (determined by adding the base bid and all alternates) and in the form of a certified check, bank money order, or a Bid bond (on the form included in the Bidding Documents) issued by a surety meeting the requirements of Paragraphs 6.01 and 6.02 of the General Conditions.
- 8.02 The Bid security of the apparent Successful Bidder will be retained until Owner awards the contract to such Bidder, and such Bidder has executed the Contract Documents, furnished the required contract security, and met the other conditions of the Notice of Award, whereupon the Bid security will be released. If the Successful Bidder fails to execute and deliver the Contract Documents and furnish the required contract security within 15 days after the Notice of Award, Owner may consider Bidder to be in default, annul the Notice of Award, and the Bid security of that Bidder will be forfeited. Such forfeiture shall be Owner’s exclusive remedy if Bidder defaults.
- 8.03 The Bid security of other Bidders that Owner believes to have a reasonable chance of receiving the award may be retained by Owner until the earlier of seven days after the Effective Date of the Contract or 61 days after the Bid opening, whereupon Bid security furnished by such Bidders will be released.
- 8.04 Bid security of other Bidders that Owner believes do not have a reasonable chance of receiving the award will be released within seven days after the Bid opening.

#### **ARTICLE 9 – CONTRACT TIMES**

- 9.01 The number of days within which, or the dates by which, the Work is to be substantially completed, and completed and ready for final payment, are set forth in the Agreement.

#### **ARTICLE 10 – LIQUIDATED DAMAGES**

- 10.01 Provisions for liquidated damages, if any, for failure to timely attain Substantial Completion, or completion of the Work in readiness for final payment, are set forth in the Agreement.

#### **ARTICLE 11 – SUBSTITUTE AND “OR-EQUAL” ITEMS**

- 11.01 The Contract for the Work, as awarded, will be on the basis of materials and equipment specified or described in the Bidding Documents without consideration during the bidding and Contract award process of possible substitute or “or-equal” items. In cases in which the Contract allows the Contractor to request that Engineer authorize the use of a substitute or “or-equal” item of material or equipment, application for such acceptance may not be made to and will not be considered by Engineer until after the Effective Date of the Contract.
- 11.02 All prices that Bidder sets forth in its Bid shall be based on the presumption that the Contractor will furnish the materials and equipment specified or described in the Bidding Documents, as supplemented by Addenda. Any assumptions regarding the possibility of post-Bid approvals of “or-equal” or substitution requests are made at Bidder’s sole risk.

## **ARTICLE 12 – SUBCONTRACTORS, SUPPLIERS, AND OTHERS**

- 12.01 If the Supplementary Conditions require the identity of certain Subcontractors, Suppliers and other persons and organizations (including those who are to furnish the principal items of material and equipment) to be submitted to Owner in advance of a specified date prior to the Effective Date of the Agreement, the apparent Successful Bidder, and any other Bidder so requested, shall within five days after Bid opening, submit to Owner a list of the Subcontractors or Suppliers proposed for the following portions of the Work for which such identification is required.
- 12.02 If requested by Owner, such list shall be accompanied by an experience statement with pertinent information regarding similar projects and other evidence of qualification for each such Subcontractor, Supplier, or other individual or entity. If Owner or Engineer, after due investigation, has reasonable objection to any proposed Subcontractor, Supplier, individual, or entity, Owner may, before the Notice of Award is given, request apparent Successful Bidder to submit an acceptable substitute, in which case apparent Successful Bidder shall submit a substitute, Bidder's Bid price will be increased (or decreased) by the difference in cost occasioned by such substitution, and Owner may consider such price adjustment in evaluating Bids and making the Contract award.
- 12.03 If apparent Successful Bidder declines to make any such substitution, Owner may award the Contract to the next lowest Bidder that proposes to use acceptable Subcontractors, Suppliers, or other individuals or entities. Declining to make requested substitutions will constitute grounds for forfeiture of the Bid security of any Bidder. Any Subcontractor, Supplier, individual, or entity so listed and against which Owner or Engineer makes no written objection prior to the giving of the Notice of Award will be deemed acceptable to Owner and Engineer subject to subsequent revocation of such acceptance as provided in Paragraph 7.06 of the General Conditions.

## **ARTICLE 13 – PREPARATION OF BID**

- 13.01 The electronic portion of the Bid Form is available anytime by clicking on "Bid" within the PennBid website for the Project. All blanks in the electronic bid form must be completed.
- A. Additionally, each Bidder shall print, fill out, scan and upload to the PennBid site a paper copy of the Bid Form, Bid Security (if Bid Bond use form C-430), Bidder's Sworn Qualification Statement with all required attachments, and Non Collusion Statement. Refer to Section 00100PB entitled "PennBid Instructions to Bidders" for additional details.
- If Bidder elects to use a certified or bank check in place of a Bid Bond, in addition to a scanned copy of the check, the original signature check must be delivered to Owner prior to the time of the bid opening.
- 13.02 On the scanned bid form, a Bid by a corporation shall be executed in the corporate name by a corporate officer (whose title must appear under the signature), accompanied by evidence of authority to sign. The corporate address and state of incorporation shall be shown.
- 13.03 On the scanned bid form a Bid by a partnership shall be executed in the partnership name and signed by a partner (whose title must appear under the signature), accompanied by evidence of authority to sign. The partnership's address for receiving notices shall be shown.
- 13.04 On the scanned bid form a Bid by a limited liability company shall be executed in the name of the firm by a member or other authorized person and accompanied by evidence of authority to sign. The state of formation of the firm and the firm's address for receiving notices shall be shown.

- 13.05 On the scanned bid form, a Bid by an individual shall show the Bidder's name and address for receiving notices.
- 13.06 On the scanned bid form a Bid by a joint venture shall be executed by an authorized representative of each joint venture in the manner indicated on the Bid Form. The joint venture's address for receiving notices shall be shown.
- 13.07 All names shall be printed in ink below the signatures.
- 13.08 The Bid shall contain an acknowledgment of receipt of all Addenda, the numbers of which shall be filled in on the Bid Form.
- 13.09 Postal and e-mail addresses and telephone number for communications regarding the Bid shall be shown.
- 13.10 The Bid shall contain evidence of Bidder's authority and qualification to do business in the state where the Project is located, or Bidder shall covenant in writing to obtain such authority and qualification prior to award of the Contract and attach such covenant to the Bid. Bidder's state contractor license number, if any, shall also be shown on the Bid Form.

#### **ARTICLE 14 – BASIS OF BID**

##### **14.01 *Lump Sum***

- A. Bidders shall submit a Bid on a lump sum basis as set forth in the Bid Form. Discrepancies between words and figures will be resolved in favor of words.

##### **14.02 *Unit Price***

- A. Bidders shall submit a Bid on a unit price basis for each item of Work listed in the unit price section of the Bid Form.
- B. The "Bid Price" (sometimes referred to as the extended price) for each unit price Bid item will be the product of the "Estimated Quantity" (which Owner or its representative has set forth in the Bid Form) for the item and the corresponding "Bid Unit Price" offered by the Bidder. The total of all unit price Bid items will be the sum of these "Bid Prices"; such total will be used by Owner for Bid comparison purposes. The final quantities and Contract Price will be determined in accordance with Paragraph 13.03 of the General Conditions.
- C. Discrepancies between the multiplication of units of Work and unit prices will be resolved in favor of the unit prices. Discrepancies between the indicated sum of any column of figures and the correct sum thereof will be resolved in favor of the correct sum. Discrepancies between words and figures will be resolved in favor of words.

##### **14.03 *Allowances***

- A. For cash allowances the Bid price shall include such amounts as the Bidder deems proper for Contractor's overhead, costs, profit, and other expenses on account of cash allowances, if any, named in the Contract Documents, in accordance with Paragraph 13.02.B of the General Conditions.

#### **ARTICLE 15 – SUBMITTAL OF BID**

- 15.01 The electronic Bid Form and electronic Schedule of Prices are provided on the PennBid website and shall be completed and submitted by way of the PennBid website.

- 15.02 Bids shall be submitted through the PennBid website exclusively. No bid will be opened that is hand delivered, mailed or transmitted by facsimile process. No paper bids will be accepted for this work, only electronic bids submitted through the PennBid program.
- 15.03 A response, number or value must be provided for all blanks and all questions on the forms. All pages for the forms must be submitted with the Bid.
- 15.04 A single electronic file or zipped folder containing scanned copies of documents listed in Article 13 shall be uploaded.

#### **ARTICLE 16 – MODIFICATION AND WITHDRAWAL OF BID**

- 16.01 A Bid may be modified or withdrawn electronically anytime up to the due date and time of the bid opening.
- 16.02 If within two (2) business days after Bids are opened any Bidder files a duly signed written notice with Owner and promptly thereafter demonstrates to the reasonable satisfaction of Owner that there was a material and substantial mistake in the preparation of its Bid, that Bidder may withdraw its Bid in accordance with Commonwealth of Pennsylvania law and statutes (including but not limited to Pennsylvania Act of January 23, 1974 as may be amended), and the Bid security will be returned. Thereafter, if the Work is rebid, that Bidder will be disqualified from further bidding on the Work.

#### **ARTICLE 17 – OPENING OF BIDS**

- 17.01 Bids will be opened at the time and place indicated in the Advertisement for Bid. Bid results will be displayed online shortly thereafter

#### **ARTICLE 18 – BIDS TO REMAIN SUBJECT TO ACCEPTANCE**

- 18.01 All Bids will remain subject to acceptance for sixty (60) calendar days after the day of the Bid opening, unless award is delayed by a required approval from a governmental agency, the sale of bonds, or the award of a grant or grants, in which event, the bids shall remain open for a period of one hundred twenty (120) calendar days from the date of the bid opening. The Owner will either award the contract within the applicable time period or reject all Bids, returning the Bid Security to the Bidders. A thirty (30) calendar day time extension of the date for the award may be made by the mutual written consent of the Owner and the lowest responsible bidder.

#### **ARTICLE 19 – EVALUATION OF BIDS AND AWARD OF CONTRACT**

- 19.01 Owner reserves the right to reject any or all Bids, including without limitation, nonconforming, nonresponsive, unbalanced, or conditional Bids. Owner will reject the Bid of any Bidder that Owner finds, after reasonable inquiry and evaluation, to not be responsible. If Bidder purports to add terms or conditions to its Bid, takes exception to any provision of the Bidding Documents, or attempts to alter the contents of the Contract Documents for purposes of the Bid, then the Owner will reject the Bid as nonresponsive. Owner may also reject the Bid of any Bidder if Owner believes that it would not be in the best interest of the Project to make an award to that bidder. Owner also reserves the right to waive all minor informalities not involving price, time, or changes in the Work. The owner reserves the right to waive at its discretion any discrepancies or inconsistencies which do not materially affect the Proposal, and are capable of reasonable resolution within the discretion of the Owner.
- 19.02 If Owner awards the contract for the Work, such award shall be to the responsible Bidder submitting the lowest responsive Bid.

### 19.03 Evaluation of Bids

- A. In evaluating Bids, Owner will consider whether or not the Bids comply with the prescribed requirements, and such alternates, unit prices, and other data, as may be requested in the Bid Form or prior to the Notice of Award.
- B. For the determination of the apparent low Bidder when unit price bids are submitted, Bids will be compared on the basis of the total of the products of the estimated quantity of each item and unit price Bid for that item, together with any lump sum items.

19.04 In evaluating whether a Bidder is responsible, Owner will consider the qualifications of the Bidder and may consider the qualifications and experience of Subcontractors and Suppliers proposed for those portions of the Work for which the identity of Subcontractors and Suppliers must be submitted as provided in the Bidding Documents.

19.05 Owner may conduct such investigations as Owner deems necessary to establish the responsibility, qualifications, and financial ability of Bidders and any proposed Subcontractors or Suppliers.

### **ARTICLE 20 – BONDS AND INSURANCE**

20.01 Article 6 of the General Conditions, as may be modified by the Supplementary Conditions, sets forth Owner’s requirements as to performance and payment bonds and insurance. When the Successful Bidder delivers the Agreement (executed by Successful Bidder) to Owner, it shall be accompanied by required bonds and insurance documentation.

### **ARTICLE 21 – SIGNING OF AGREEMENT**

21.01 When Owner issues a Notice of Award to the Successful Bidder, it shall be accompanied by the unexecuted counterparts of the Agreement along with the other Contract Documents as identified in the Agreement. Within 15 days thereafter, Successful Bidder shall execute and deliver the required number of counterparts of the Agreement (and any bonds and insurance documentation required to be delivered by the Contract Documents) to Owner. Thereafter, Owner shall deliver one fully executed counterpart of the Agreement to Successful Bidder.

### **ARTICLE 22 – SALES AND USE TAXES**

22.01 Owner may be exempt from Pennsylvania state sales and use taxes on materials and equipment to be incorporated in the Work. Said taxes shall not be included in the Bid. Refer to Paragraph SC-7.09 of the Supplementary Conditions for additional information.

++ END OF INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS ++

**BID FORM**

Elementary School HVAC Upgrade and High School Rooftop Unit Project  
Contract 1 – General Construction

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

	<b>Page</b>
Article 1 – Bid Recipient .....	1
Article 2 – Bidder’s Acknowledgements .....	1
Article 3 – Bidder’s Representations.....	1
Article 4 – Bidder’s Certification .....	2
Article 5 – Basis of Bid.....	3
Article 6 – Time of Completion .....	4
Article 7 – Attachments to this Bid .....	4
Article 8 – Defined Terms.....	4
Article 9 – Bid Submittal.....	5

**ARTICLE 1 – BID RECIPIENT**

- 1.01 This Bid is submitted to:  
Schuylkill Valley School District  
929 Lakeshore Drive  
Leesport PA 19533
- 1.02 The undersigned Bidder proposes and agrees, if this Bid is accepted, to enter into an Agreement with Owner in the form included in the Bidding Documents to perform all Work as specified or indicated in the Bidding Documents for the prices and within the times indicated in this Bid and in accordance with the other terms and conditions of the Bidding Documents.

**ARTICLE 2 – BIDDER’S ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS**

- 2.01 Bidder accepts all of the terms and conditions of the Instructions to Bidders, including without limitation those dealing with the disposition of Bid security. This Bid will remain subject to acceptance for 60 days after the Bid opening, unless award is delayed by a required approval from a government agency, the sale of bonds, or the award of a grant, in which event, the Bids shall remain open for a period of one hundred twenty (120) calendar days from the date of bid opening. The Owner will either award the contract within the applicable time period or reject all Bids, returning the Bid Security to the Bidders. A thirty (30) day time extension of the date for the award may be made by the mutual written consent of the Owner and the lowest responsible, responsive Bidder.
- 2.02 Bidder will sign and submit the Agreement along with the Bonds and other documents required by the Bidding Requirement within the time period indicated in the Notice of Award.

**ARTICLE 3 – BIDDER’S REPRESENTATIONS**

- 3.01 In submitting this Bid, Bidder represents that:
  - A. Bidder has examined and carefully studied the Bidding Documents, and any data and reference items identified in the Bidding Documents, and hereby acknowledges receipt of the following Addenda:

<u>Addendum No.</u>	<u>Addendum, Date</u>
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

- B. Bidder has visited the Site, conducted a thorough, alert visual examination of the Site and adjacent areas, and become familiar with and satisfied itself as to the general, local, and Site conditions that may affect cost, progress, and performance of the Work.
- C. Bidder is familiar with and has satisfied itself as to all Laws and Regulations that may affect cost, progress, and performance of the Work.
- D. Bidder has carefully studied all: (1) reports of explorations and tests of subsurface conditions at or adjacent to the Site and all drawings of physical conditions relating to existing surface or subsurface structures at the Site that have been identified in the



Supplementary Conditions, especially with respect to Technical Data in such reports and drawings, and (2) reports and drawings relating to Hazardous Environmental Conditions, if any, at or adjacent to the Site that have been identified in the Supplementary Conditions, especially with respect to Technical Data in such reports and drawings.

- E. Bidder has considered the information known to Bidder itself; information commonly known to contractors doing business in the locality of the Site; information and observations obtained from visits to the Site; the Bidding Documents; and any Site-related reports and drawings identified in the Bidding Documents, with respect to the effect of such information, observations, and documents on (1) the cost, progress, and performance of the Work; (2) the means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures of construction to be employed by Bidder; and (3) Bidder's safety precautions and programs.
- F. Bidder agrees, based on the information and observations referred to in the preceding paragraph, that no further examinations, investigations, explorations, tests, studies, or data are necessary for the determination of this Bid for performance of the Work at the price bid and within the times required, and in accordance with the other terms and conditions of the Bidding Documents.
- G. Bidder is aware of the general nature of work to be performed by Owner and others at the Site that relates to the Work as indicated in the Bidding Documents.
- H. Bidder has given Engineer written notice of all conflicts, errors, ambiguities, or discrepancies that Bidder has discovered in the Bidding Documents, and confirms that the written resolution thereof by Engineer is acceptable to Bidder.
- I. The Bidding Documents are generally sufficient to indicate and convey understanding of all terms and conditions for the performance and furnishing of the Work.
- J. The submission of this Bid constitutes an incontrovertible representation by Bidder that Bidder has complied with every requirement of this Article, and that without exception the Bid and all prices in the Bid are premised upon performing and furnishing the Work required by the Bidding Documents.

#### **ARTICLE 4 – BIDDER'S CERTIFICATION**

4.01 Bidder certifies that:

- A. This Bid is genuine and not made in the interest of or on behalf of any undisclosed individual or entity and is not submitted in conformity with any collusive agreement or rules of any group, association, organization, or corporation;
- B. Bidder has not directly or indirectly induced or solicited any other Bidder to submit a false or sham Bid;
- C. Bidder has not solicited or induced any individual or entity to refrain from bidding; and
- D. Bidder has not sought by collusion to obtain for itself any advantage over any other Bidder or over Owner, and
- E. Bidder has not engaged in corrupt, fraudulent, collusive, or coercive practices in competing for the Contract. For the purposes of this Paragraph 4.01.E:
  - 1. "corrupt practice" means the offering, giving, receiving, or soliciting of any thing of value likely to influence the action of a public official in the bidding process;
  - 2. "fraudulent practice" means an intentional misrepresentation of facts made (a) to influence the bidding process to the detriment of Owner, (b) to establish bid prices at

artificial non-competitive levels, or (c) to deprive Owner of the benefits of free and open competition;

3. "collusive practice" means a scheme or arrangement between two or more Bidders, with or without the knowledge of Owner, a purpose of which is to establish bid prices at artificial, non-competitive levels; and
4. "coercive practice" means harming or threatening to harm, directly or indirectly, persons or their property to influence their participation in the bidding process or affect the execution of the Contract.

**ARTICLE 5 – BASIS OF BID**

5.01 Bidder will complete the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents for the following Lump Sum and Unit Price(s):

**SCHEDULE OF PRICES**

	<u>Description</u>	<u>Units</u>	<u>Estimated Quantity</u>	<u>Bid Unit Price</u>	<u>Bid Price</u>
1.	Bonds and Insurance	LS	1		\$
2.	Mobilization and Demobilization	LS	1		\$
3.	Construction of General Contract Scope as required by the drawings and specifications complete in place	LS	1		\$
4.	Inspection and Testing Allowance	LS	1		\$5,000
5.	Allowance for miscellaneous work ordered by the Owner and/or Engineer	LS	1		\$5,000
6.	Add/deduct for execution of contract at 180 days to Substantial Completion and 210 Days for Final Completion	LS	1		\$

---

**Total of All Lump Sum and Unit Price Items 1 through 5 equals the Total Bid Price (Base Bid) \$ \_\_\_\_\_**

---

Total Amount of Base Bid in written words

---

**Total of All Lump Sum and Unit Price Items 1 through 6  
equals the Total Alternate Bid Price (Alternate Bid) \$ \_\_\_\_\_**

---

**Total Amount of Alternate Bid in written words**

At the discretion of the Owner, the Contract may be awarded to the responsive Bidder with the lowest Total Bid Price of all Lump Sum and Unit Price bid items for the Base Bid (Item Nos. 1 through 5) or to the responsive Bidder with the lowest Total Bid Price of all Lump Sum and Unit Price bid items for the Alternate Bid (Item Nos. 1 through 6).

Bidder acknowledges that (1) each Bid Unit Price includes an amount considered by Bidder to be adequate to cover Contractor's overhead and profit for each separately identified item, and (2) estimated quantities are not guaranteed, and are solely for the purpose of comparison of Bids, and final payment for all unit price Bid items will be based on actual quantities, determined as provided in the Contract Documents.

The use of the word "complete" or "in place" in the Schedule of Prices shall be understood to mean the item of Work includes all labor, materials, tools, equipment, excavation (regardless of material encountered), backfill, restoration, reseeding and incidental work necessary to complete the item.

All specified cash allowances are included in the price(s) set forth above, and have been computed in accordance with Paragraph 13.02 of the General Conditions.

#### **ARTICLE 6 – TIME OF COMPLETION**

- 6.01 Bidder agrees that the Work will be substantially complete and will be completed and ready for final payment in accordance with Paragraph 15.06 of the General Conditions on or before the dates or within the number of calendar days indicated in the Agreement.
- 6.02 Bidder accepts the provisions of the Agreement as to liquidated damages.

#### **ARTICLE 7 – ATTACHMENTS TO THIS BID**

- 7.01 The following documents are submitted with and made a condition of this Bid:
- A. Required Bid security; if Bid Bond use only the two page form included with the Bidding Documents;
  - B. Noncollusion Affidavit;
  - C. Required Bidder Qualification Statement with supporting data; and
  - D. Public Works Verification Form – Act 127
  - E. **Project Schedule (for Base and Alternate Bids) demonstrating compliance with the contract times per Paragraph 4.02 of the Agreement between Owner and Contractor**

#### **ARTICLE 8 – DEFINED TERMS**

- 8.01 The terms used in this Bid with initial capital letters have the meanings stated in the Instructions to Bidders, the General Conditions, and the Supplementary Conditions.

**ARTICLE 9 – BID SUBMITTAL**

BIDDER: *[Indicate correct name of bidding entity]*

\_\_\_\_\_  
By:  
*[Signature]* \_\_\_\_\_

*[Printed name]* \_\_\_\_\_  
*(If Bidder is a corporation, a limited liability company, a partnership, or a joint venture, attach evidence of authority to sign.)*

Attest:  
*[Signature]* \_\_\_\_\_

*[Printed name]* \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

Submittal Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Address for giving notices:  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Telephone Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Fax Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Contact Name and e-mail address: \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Bidder's License No.: \_\_\_\_\_  
*(where applicable)*

++ END OF BID FORM ++

**BID FORM**

Elementary School HVAC Upgrade and High School Rooftop Unit Project  
Contract 2 – Electrical

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

	<b>Page</b>
Article 1 – Bid Recipient .....	1
Article 2 – Bidder’s Acknowledgements .....	1
Article 3 – Bidder’s Representations.....	1
Article 4 – Bidder’s Certification .....	2
Article 5 – Basis of Bid.....	3
Article 6 – Time of Completion .....	4
Article 7 – Attachments to this Bid .....	4
Article 8 – Defined Terms.....	4
Article 9 – Bid Submittal.....	5

**ARTICLE 1 – BID RECIPIENT**

1.01 This Bid is submitted to:

Schuylkill Valley School District  
929 Lakeshore Drive  
Leesport PA 19533

1.02 The undersigned Bidder proposes and agrees, if this Bid is accepted, to enter into an Agreement with Owner in the form included in the Bidding Documents to perform all Work as specified or indicated in the Bidding Documents for the prices and within the times indicated in this Bid and in accordance with the other terms and conditions of the Bidding Documents.

**ARTICLE 2 – BIDDER’S ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS**

2.01 Bidder accepts all of the terms and conditions of the Instructions to Bidders, including without limitation those dealing with the disposition of Bid security. This Bid will remain subject to acceptance for 60 days after the Bid opening, unless award is delayed by a required approval from a government agency, the sale of bonds, or the award of a grant, in which event, the Bids shall remain open for a period of one hundred twenty (120) calendar days from the date of bid opening. The Owner will either award the contract within the applicable time period or reject all Bids, returning the Bid Security to the Bidders. A thirty (30) day time extension of the date for the award may be made by the mutual written consent of the Owner and the lowest responsible, responsive Bidder.

2.02 Bidder will sign and submit the Agreement along with the Bonds and other documents requires by the Bidding Requirement within the time period indicated in the Notice of Award.

**ARTICLE 3 – BIDDER’S REPRESENTATIONS**

3.01 In submitting this Bid, Bidder represents that:

A. Bidder has examined and carefully studied the Bidding Documents, and any data and reference items identified in the Bidding Documents, and hereby acknowledges receipt of the following Addenda:

<u>Addendum No.</u>	<u>Addendum, Date</u>
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

B. Bidder has visited the Site, conducted a thorough, alert visual examination of the Site and adjacent areas, and become familiar with and satisfied itself as to the general, local, and Site conditions that may affect cost, progress, and performance of the Work.

C. Bidder is familiar with and has satisfied itself as to all Laws and Regulations that may affect cost, progress, and performance of the Work.

D. Bidder has carefully studied all: (1) reports of explorations and tests of subsurface conditions at or adjacent to the Site and all drawings of physical conditions relating to existing surface or subsurface structures at the Site that have been identified in the Supplementary Conditions, especially with respect to Technical Data in such reports and

drawings, and (2) reports and drawings relating to Hazardous Environmental Conditions, if any, at or adjacent to the Site that have been identified in the Supplementary Conditions, especially with respect to Technical Data in such reports and drawings.

- E. Bidder has considered the information known to Bidder itself; information commonly known to contractors doing business in the locality of the Site; information and observations obtained from visits to the Site; the Bidding Documents; and any Site-related reports and drawings identified in the Bidding Documents, with respect to the effect of such information, observations, and documents on (1) the cost, progress, and performance of the Work; (2) the means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures of construction to be employed by Bidder; and (3) Bidder's safety precautions and programs.
- F. Bidder agrees, based on the information and observations referred to in the preceding paragraph, that no further examinations, investigations, explorations, tests, studies, or data are necessary for the determination of this Bid for performance of the Work at the price bid and within the times required, and in accordance with the other terms and conditions of the Bidding Documents.
- G. Bidder is aware of the general nature of work to be performed by Owner and others at the Site that relates to the Work as indicated in the Bidding Documents.
- H. Bidder has given Engineer written notice of all conflicts, errors, ambiguities, or discrepancies that Bidder has discovered in the Bidding Documents, and confirms that the written resolution thereof by Engineer is acceptable to Bidder.
- I. The Bidding Documents are generally sufficient to indicate and convey understanding of all terms and conditions for the performance and furnishing of the Work.
- J. The submission of this Bid constitutes an incontrovertible representation by Bidder that Bidder has complied with every requirement of this Article, and that without exception the Bid and all prices in the Bid are premised upon performing and furnishing the Work required by the Bidding Documents.

#### **ARTICLE 4 – BIDDER'S CERTIFICATION**

4.01 Bidder certifies that:

- A. This Bid is genuine and not made in the interest of or on behalf of any undisclosed individual or entity and is not submitted in conformity with any collusive agreement or rules of any group, association, organization, or corporation;
- B. Bidder has not directly or indirectly induced or solicited any other Bidder to submit a false or sham Bid;
- C. Bidder has not solicited or induced any individual or entity to refrain from bidding; and
- D. Bidder has not sought by collusion to obtain for itself any advantage over any other Bidder or over Owner, and
- E. Bidder has not engaged in corrupt, fraudulent, collusive, or coercive practices in competing for the Contract. For the purposes of this Paragraph 4.01.E:
  - 1. "corrupt practice" means the offering, giving, receiving, or soliciting of any thing of value likely to influence the action of a public official in the bidding process;
  - 2. "fraudulent practice" means an intentional misrepresentation of facts made (a) to influence the bidding process to the detriment of Owner, (b) to establish bid prices at

artificial non-competitive levels, or (c) to deprive Owner of the benefits of free and open competition;

3. "collusive practice" means a scheme or arrangement between two or more Bidders, with or without the knowledge of Owner, a purpose of which is to establish bid prices at artificial, non-competitive levels; and
4. "coercive practice" means harming or threatening to harm, directly or indirectly, persons or their property to influence their participation in the bidding process or affect the execution of the Contract.

**ARTICLE 5 – BASIS OF BID**

5.01 Bidder will complete the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents for the following Lump Sum and Unit Price(s):

**SCHEDULE OF PRICES**

	<u>Description</u>	<u>Units</u>	<u>Estimated Quantity</u>	<u>Bid Unit Price</u>	<u>Bid Price</u>
1.	Bonds and Insurance	LS	1		\$
2.	Mobilization and Demobilization	LS	1		\$
3.	Construction of Electrical Scope as required by the drawings and specifications complete in place	LS	1		\$
4.	Electrical demolition and temporary power connections	LS	1		\$
5.	Inspection and Testing Allowance	LS	1		\$5,000
6.	Allowance for Miscellaneous work ordered by the Owner and/or Engineer	LS	1		\$5,000
7.	Add/deduct for execution of contract at 180 days to Substantial Completion and 210 Days for Final Completion*	LS	1		\$

---

**Total of All Lump Sum and Unit Price Items 1 through 6 equals the Total Bid Price (Base Bid) \$ \_\_\_\_\_**

---

Total Amount of Base Bid in written words



---

**Total of All Lump Sum and Unit Price Items 1 through 7  
equals the Total Alternate Bid Price (Alternate Bid) \$ \_\_\_\_\_**

---

**Total Amount of Alternate Bid in written words**

At the discretion of the Owner, the Contract may be awarded to the responsive Bidder with the lowest Total Bid Price of all Lump Sum and Unit Price bid items for the Base Bid (Item Nos. 1 through 6) or to the responsive Bidder with the lowest Total Bid Price of all Lump Sum and Unit Price bid items for the Alternate Bid (Item Nos. 1 through 7).

Bidder acknowledges that (1) each Bid Unit Price includes an amount considered by Bidder to be adequate to cover Contractor's overhead and profit for each separately identified item, and (2) estimated quantities are not guaranteed, and are solely for the purpose of comparison of Bids, and final payment for all unit price Bid items will be based on actual quantities, determined as provided in the Contract Documents.

The use of the word "complete" or "in place" in the Schedule of Prices shall be understood to mean the item of Work includes all labor, materials, tools, equipment, excavation (regardless of material encountered), backfill, restoration, reseeding and incidental work necessary to complete the item.

All specified cash allowances are included in the price(s) set forth above, and have been computed in accordance with Paragraph 13.02 of the General Conditions.

#### **ARTICLE 6 – TIME OF COMPLETION**

6.01 Bidder agrees that the Work will be substantially complete and will be completed and ready for final payment in accordance with Paragraph 15.06 of the General Conditions on or before the dates or within the number of calendar days indicated in the Agreement.

6.02 Bidder accepts the provisions of the Agreement as to liquidated damages.

#### **ARTICLE 7 – ATTACHMENTS TO THIS BID**

7.01 The following documents are submitted with and made a condition of this Bid:

- A. Required Bid security; if Bid Bond use only the two page form included with the Bidding Documents;
- B. Noncollusion Affidavit;
- C. Required Bidder Qualification Statement with supporting data; and
- D. Public Works Verification Form – Act 127
- E. **Project Schedule (for Base and Alternate Bids) demonstrating compliance with the contract times per Paragraph 4.02 of the Agreement between Owner and Contractor**

#### **ARTICLE 8 – DEFINED TERMS**

8.01 The terms used in this Bid with initial capital letters have the meanings stated in the Instructions to Bidders, the General Conditions, and the Supplementary Conditions.

**ARTICLE 9 – BID SUBMITTAL**

BIDDER: *[Indicate correct name of bidding entity]*

By:

*[Signature]* \_\_\_\_\_

*[Printed name]* \_\_\_\_\_

*(If Bidder is a corporation, a limited liability company, a partnership, or a joint venture, attach evidence of authority to sign.)*

Attest:

*[Signature]* \_\_\_\_\_

*[Printed name]* \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

Submittal Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Address for giving notices:

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Telephone Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Fax Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Contact Name and e-mail address: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Bidder's License No.: \_\_\_\_\_

*(where applicable)*

**++ END OF BID FORM ++**

**BID FORM**

Elementary School HVAC Upgrade and High School Rooftop Unit Project  
Contract 3 – HVAC

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

	<b>Page</b>
Article 1 – Bid Recipient .....	1
Article 2 – Bidder’s Acknowledgements .....	1
Article 3 – Bidder’s Representations.....	1
Article 4 – Bidder’s Certification .....	2
Article 5 – Basis of Bid.....	3
Article 6 – Time of Completion .....	4
Article 7 – Attachments to this Bid .....	5
Article 8 – Defined Terms.....	5
Article 9 – Bid Submittal.....	6

**ARTICLE 1 – BID RECIPIENT**

1.01 This Bid is submitted to:

Schuylkill Valley School District  
929 Lakeshore Drive  
Leesport PA 19533

1.02 The undersigned Bidder proposes and agrees, if this Bid is accepted, to enter into an Agreement with Owner in the form included in the Bidding Documents to perform all Work as specified or indicated in the Bidding Documents for the prices and within the times indicated in this Bid and in accordance with the other terms and conditions of the Bidding Documents.

**ARTICLE 2 – BIDDER’S ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS**

2.01 Bidder accepts all of the terms and conditions of the Instructions to Bidders, including without limitation those dealing with the disposition of Bid security. This Bid will remain subject to acceptance for 60 days after the Bid opening, unless award is delayed by a required approval from a government agency, the sale of bonds, or the award of a grant, in which event, the Bids shall remain open for a period of one hundred twenty (120) calendar days from the date of bid opening. The Owner will either award the contract within the applicable time period or reject all Bids, returning the Bid Security to the Bidders. A thirty (30) day time extension of the date for the award may be made by the mutual written consent of the Owner and the lowest responsible, responsive Bidder.

2.02 Bidder will sign and submit the Agreement along with the Bonds and other documents requires by the Bidding Requirement within the time period indicated in the Notice of Award.

**ARTICLE 3 – BIDDER’S REPRESENTATIONS**

3.01 In submitting this Bid, Bidder represents that:

A. Bidder has examined and carefully studied the Bidding Documents, and any data and reference items identified in the Bidding Documents, and hereby acknowledges receipt of the following Addenda:

<u>Addendum No.</u>	<u>Addendum, Date</u>
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

B. Bidder has visited the Site, conducted a thorough, alert visual examination of the Site and adjacent areas, and become familiar with and satisfied itself as to the general, local, and Site conditions that may affect cost, progress, and performance of the Work.

C. Bidder is familiar with and has satisfied itself as to all Laws and Regulations that may affect cost, progress, and performance of the Work.

D. Bidder has carefully studied all: (1) reports of explorations and tests of subsurface conditions at or adjacent to the Site and all drawings of physical conditions relating to existing surface or subsurface structures at the Site that have been identified in the Supplementary Conditions, especially with respect to Technical Data in such reports and

drawings, and (2) reports and drawings relating to Hazardous Environmental Conditions, if any, at or adjacent to the Site that have been identified in the Supplementary Conditions, especially with respect to Technical Data in such reports and drawings.

- E. Bidder has considered the information known to Bidder itself; information commonly known to contractors doing business in the locality of the Site; information and observations obtained from visits to the Site; the Bidding Documents; and any Site-related reports and drawings identified in the Bidding Documents, with respect to the effect of such information, observations, and documents on (1) the cost, progress, and performance of the Work; (2) the means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures of construction to be employed by Bidder; and (3) Bidder's safety precautions and programs.
- F. Bidder agrees, based on the information and observations referred to in the preceding paragraph, that no further examinations, investigations, explorations, tests, studies, or data are necessary for the determination of this Bid for performance of the Work at the price bid and within the times required, and in accordance with the other terms and conditions of the Bidding Documents.
- G. Bidder is aware of the general nature of work to be performed by Owner and others at the Site that relates to the Work as indicated in the Bidding Documents.
- H. Bidder has given Engineer written notice of all conflicts, errors, ambiguities, or discrepancies that Bidder has discovered in the Bidding Documents, and confirms that the written resolution thereof by Engineer is acceptable to Bidder.
- I. The Bidding Documents are generally sufficient to indicate and convey understanding of all terms and conditions for the performance and furnishing of the Work.
- J. The submission of this Bid constitutes an incontrovertible representation by Bidder that Bidder has complied with every requirement of this Article, and that without exception the Bid and all prices in the Bid are premised upon performing and furnishing the Work required by the Bidding Documents.

#### **ARTICLE 4 – BIDDER'S CERTIFICATION**

4.01 Bidder certifies that:

- A. This Bid is genuine and not made in the interest of or on behalf of any undisclosed individual or entity and is not submitted in conformity with any collusive agreement or rules of any group, association, organization, or corporation;
- B. Bidder has not directly or indirectly induced or solicited any other Bidder to submit a false or sham Bid;
- C. Bidder has not solicited or induced any individual or entity to refrain from bidding; and
- D. Bidder has not sought by collusion to obtain for itself any advantage over any other Bidder or over Owner, and
- E. Bidder has not engaged in corrupt, fraudulent, collusive, or coercive practices in competing for the Contract. For the purposes of this Paragraph 4.01.E:
  - 1. "corrupt practice" means the offering, giving, receiving, or soliciting of any thing of value likely to influence the action of a public official in the bidding process;
  - 2. "fraudulent practice" means an intentional misrepresentation of facts made (a) to influence the bidding process to the detriment of Owner, (b) to establish bid prices at

artificial non-competitive levels, or (c) to deprive Owner of the benefits of free and open competition;

3. "collusive practice" means a scheme or arrangement between two or more Bidders, with or without the knowledge of Owner, a purpose of which is to establish bid prices at artificial, non-competitive levels; and
4. "coercive practice" means harming or threatening to harm, directly or indirectly, persons or their property to influence their participation in the bidding process or affect the execution of the Contract.

**ARTICLE 5 – BASIS OF BID**

5.01 Bidder will complete the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents for the following Lump Sum and Unit Price(s):

**SCHEDULE OF PRICES**

	<u>Description</u>	<u>Units</u>	<u>Estimated Quantity</u>	<u>Bid Unit Price</u>	<u>Bid Price</u>
1.	Bonds and Insurance	LS	1		\$
2.	Mobilization and Demobilization	LS	1		\$
3.	Project Management	LS	1		\$
4.	Construction of HVAC Scope as required by the drawings and specifications complete in place	LS	1		\$
5.	Inspection and Testing Allowance	LS	1		\$5,000
6.	Allowance for Miscellaneous work ordered by the Owner and/or Engineer	LS	1		\$5,000
7.	Add/deduct for execution of contract at 180 days to Substantial Completion and 210 Days for Final Completion	LS	1		\$

---

**Total of All Lump Sum and Unit Price Items 1 through 6 equals the Total Bid Price (Base Bid) \$ \_\_\_\_\_**

---

Total Amount of Base Bid in written words

---

**Total of All Lump Sum and Unit Price Items 1 through 7 equals the Total Alternate Bid Price (Alternate Bid) \$ \_\_\_\_\_**

---

**Total Amount of Alternate Bid in written words**

The following items of Work are EXTRA items. They are not part of the scope of work for this project as described on the plans and specifications. They shall only be provided by the Contractor and paid by the Owner if so directed in writing by the Engineer or Owner. The EXTRA Work items are included in the Contract but will not be used in determining the low bidder and awarding the Contract.

	<u>Description</u>	<u>Units</u>	<u>Estimated Quantity</u>	<u>Bid Unit Price</u>	<u>Bid Price</u>
8.	Provide one portable air conditioning unit, 1 ton capacity, complete in place*	Weekly	4 weeks		\$
9.	Provide one portable air conditioning unit, 5 ton capacity, complete in place*	Weekly	4 weeks		\$

\*Owner may request that multiple units be installed at the Bid Price.

At the discretion of the Owner, the Contract may be awarded to the responsive Bidder with the lowest Total Bid Price of all Lump Sum and Unit Price bid items for the Base Bid (Item Nos. 1 through 6) or to the responsive Bidder with the lowest Total Bid Price of all Lump Sum and Unit Price bid items for the Alternate Bid (Item Nos. 1 through 7).

Bidder acknowledges that (1) each Bid Unit Price includes an amount considered by Bidder to be adequate to cover Contractor's overhead and profit for each separately identified item, and (2) estimated quantities are not guaranteed, and are solely for the purpose of comparison of Bids, and final payment for all unit price Bid items will be based on actual quantities, determined as provided in the Contract Documents.

The use of the word "complete" or "in place" in the Schedule of Prices shall be understood to mean the item of Work includes all labor, materials, tools, equipment, excavation (regardless of material encountered), backfill, restoration, reseeding and incidental work necessary to complete the item.

All specified cash allowances are included in the price(s) set forth above, and have been computed in accordance with Paragraph 13.02 of the General Conditions.

## **ARTICLE 6 – TIME OF COMPLETION**

- 6.01 Bidder agrees that the Work will be substantially complete and will be completed and ready for final payment in accordance with Paragraph 15.06 of the General Conditions on or before the dates or within the number of calendar days indicated in the Agreement.
- 6.02 Bidder accepts the provisions of the Agreement as to liquidated damages.

## **ARTICLE 7 – ATTACHMENTS TO THIS BID**

7.01 The following documents are submitted with and made a condition of this Bid:

- A. Required Bid security; if Bid Bond use only the two page form included with the Bidding Documents;
- B. Noncollusion Affidavit;
- C. Required Bidder Qualification Statement with supporting data; and
- D. Public Works Verification Form – Act 127
- E. **Project Schedule (for Base and Alternate Bids) demonstrating compliance with the contract times per Paragraph 4.02 of the Agreement between Owner and Contractor**

## **ARTICLE 8 – DEFINED TERMS**

8.01 The terms used in this Bid with initial capital letters have the meanings stated in the Instructions to Bidders, the General Conditions, and the Supplementary Conditions.



**ARTICLE 9 – BID SUBMITTAL**

BIDDER: *[Indicate correct name of bidding entity]*

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
*[Signature]*

\_\_\_\_\_  
*[Printed name]*  
*(If Bidder is a corporation, a limited liability company, a partnership, or a joint venture, attach evidence of authority to sign.)*

Attest: \_\_\_\_\_  
*[Signature]*

\_\_\_\_\_  
*[Printed name]*

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

Submittal Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Address for giving notices:  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Telephone Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Fax Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Contact Name and e-mail address: \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Bidder's License No.: \_\_\_\_\_  
*(where applicable)*

**++ END OF BID FORM ++**

## BID BOND

Any singular reference to Bidder, Surety, Owner or other party shall be considered plural where applicable.

---

BIDDER (*Name and Address*):

SURETY (*Name, and Address of Principal Place of Business*):

OWNER (*Name and Address*):

Schuylkill Valley School District  
929 Lakeshore Drive  
Leesport PA 19533

BID

Bid Due Date:

Description (*Project Name— Include Location*): Elementary School HVAC Upgrade and High School Rooftop Unit Project

BOND

Bond Number:

Date:

Penal sum

\$

(Words)

(Figures)

Surety and Bidder, intending to be legally bound hereby, subject to the terms set forth below, do each cause this Bid Bond to be duly executed by an authorized officer, agent, or representative.

**BIDDER**

**SURETY**

(Seal)

(Seal)

\_\_\_\_\_  
Bidder's Name and Corporate Seal

\_\_\_\_\_  
Surety's Name and Corporate Seal

By:

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature

By:

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature (Attach Power of Attorney)

\_\_\_\_\_  
Print Name

\_\_\_\_\_  
Print Name

\_\_\_\_\_  
Title

\_\_\_\_\_  
Title

Attest:

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature

Attest:

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature

\_\_\_\_\_  
Title

\_\_\_\_\_  
Title

*Note: Addresses are to be used for giving any required notice.*

*Provide execution by any additional parties, such as joint venturers, if necessary.*

1. Bidder and Surety, jointly and severally, bind themselves, their heirs, executors, administrators, successors, and assigns to pay to Owner upon default of Bidder the penal sum set forth on the face of this Bond. Payment of the penal sum is the extent of Bidder's and Surety's liability. Recovery of such penal sum under the terms of this Bond shall be Owner's sole and exclusive remedy upon default of Bidder.
2. Default of Bidder shall occur upon the failure of Bidder to deliver within the time required by the Bidding Documents (or any extension thereof agreed to in writing by Owner) the executed Agreement required by the Bidding Documents and any performance and payment bonds required by the Bidding Documents.
3. This obligation shall be null and void if:
  - 3.1 Owner accepts Bidder's Bid and Bidder delivers within the time required by the Bidding Documents (or any extension thereof agreed to in writing by Owner) the executed Agreement required by the Bidding Documents and any performance and payment bonds required by the Bidding Documents, or
  - 3.2 All Bids are rejected by Owner, or
  - 3.3 Owner fails to issue a Notice of Award to Bidder within the time specified in the Bidding Documents (or any extension thereof agreed to in writing by Bidder and, if applicable, consented to by Surety when required by Paragraph 5 hereof).
4. Payment under this Bond will be due and payable upon default of Bidder and within 30 calendar days after receipt by Bidder and Surety of written notice of default from Owner, which notice will be given with reasonable promptness, identifying this Bond and the Project and including a statement of the amount due.
5. Surety waives notice of any and all defenses based on or arising out of any time extension to issue Notice of Award agreed to in writing by Owner and Bidder, provided that the total time for issuing Notice of Award including extensions shall not in the aggregate exceed 120 days from the Bid due date without Surety's written consent.
6. No suit or action shall be commenced under this Bond prior to 30 calendar days after the notice of default required in Paragraph 4 above is received by Bidder and Surety and in no case later than one year after the Bid due date.
7. Any suit or action under this Bond shall be commenced only in a court of competent jurisdiction located in the state in which the Project is located.
8. Notices required hereunder shall be in writing and sent to Bidder and Surety at their respective addresses shown on the face of this Bond. Such notices may be sent by personal delivery, commercial courier, or by United States Registered or Certified Mail, return receipt requested, postage pre-paid, and shall be deemed to be effective upon receipt by the party concerned.
9. Surety shall cause to be attached to this Bond a current and effective Power of Attorney evidencing the authority of the officer, agent, or representative who executed this Bond on behalf of Surety to execute, seal, and deliver such Bond and bind the Surety thereby.
10. This Bond is intended to conform to all applicable statutory requirements. Any applicable requirement of any applicable statute that has been omitted from this Bond shall be deemed to be included herein as if set forth at length. If any provision of this Bond conflicts with any applicable statute, then the provision of said statute shall govern and the remainder of this Bond that is not in conflict therewith shall continue in full force and effect.
11. The term "Bid" as used herein includes a Bid, offer, or proposal as applicable.

# QUALIFICATIONS STATEMENT

THE INFORMATION SUPPLIED IN THIS DOCUMENT IS CONFIDENTIAL TO THE  
EXTENT PERMITTED BY LAWS AND REGULATIONS

**1. SUBMITTED BY:**

Official Name of Firm: \_\_\_\_\_

Address: \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**2. SUBMITTED TO:**

Schuylkill Valley School District

**3. SUBMITTED FOR:**

Owner:

Schuylkill Valley School District

Project Name:

Elementary School HVAC Upgrade and High School  
Rooftop Unit Project

**TYPE OF WORK:**

**4. CONTRACTOR'S CONTACT INFORMATION**

Contact Person: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

Phone: \_\_\_\_\_

Email: \_\_\_\_\_

**5. AFFILIATED COMPANIES:**

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Address: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

**6. TYPE OF ORGANIZATION:**

SOLE PROPRIETORSHIP

Name of Owner: \_\_\_\_\_

Doing Business As: \_\_\_\_\_

Date of Organization: \_\_\_\_\_

PARTNERSHIP

Date of Organization: \_\_\_\_\_

Type of Partnership: \_\_\_\_\_

Name of General Partner(s): \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

CORPORATION

State of Organization: \_\_\_\_\_

Date of Organization: \_\_\_\_\_

Executive Officers:

- President: \_\_\_\_\_

- Vice President(s): \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

- Treasurer: \_\_\_\_\_

- Secretary: \_\_\_\_\_

LIMITED LIABILITY COMPANY

State of Organization: \_\_\_\_\_

Date of Organization: \_\_\_\_\_

Members: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

JOINT VENTURE

Sate of Organization: \_\_\_\_\_

Date of Organization: \_\_\_\_\_

Form of Organization: \_\_\_\_\_

Joint Venture Managing Partner

- Name: \_\_\_\_\_

- Address: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Joint Venture Managing Partner

- Name: \_\_\_\_\_

- Address: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Joint Venture Managing Partner

- Name: \_\_\_\_\_

- Address: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

**7. LICENSING**

Jurisdiction: \_\_\_\_\_

Type of License: \_\_\_\_\_

License Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Jurisdiction: \_\_\_\_\_

Type of License: \_\_\_\_\_

License Number: \_\_\_\_\_

**8. CERTIFICATIONS**

**CERTIFIED BY:**

Disadvantage Business Enterprise: \_\_\_\_\_

Minority Business Enterprise: \_\_\_\_\_

Woman Owned Enterprise: \_\_\_\_\_

Small Business Enterprise: \_\_\_\_\_

Other (\_\_\_\_\_): \_\_\_\_\_

**9. BONDING INFORMATION**

Bonding Company: \_\_\_\_\_

Address: \_\_\_\_\_

Bonding Agent: \_\_\_\_\_

Address: \_\_\_\_\_

Contact Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Phone: \_\_\_\_\_

Aggregate Bonding Capacity: \_\_\_\_\_

Available Bonding Capacity as of date of this submittal: \_\_\_\_\_

**10. FINANCIAL INFORMATION**

Financial Institution: \_\_\_\_\_

Address: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Account Manager: \_\_\_\_\_

Phone: \_\_\_\_\_

INCLUDE AS AN ATTACHMENT AN AUDITED BALANCE SHEET FOR EACH OF THE LAST 3 YEARS

**11. CONSTRUCTION EXPERIENCE: Current and previous experience must demonstrate the capability of Bidder to complete work of similar scope and cost as that required by this project.**

Current Experience:

List on **Schedule A** all uncompleted projects currently under contract (If Joint Venture list each participant's projects separately).

Previous Experience:

List on **Schedule B** all projects completed within the last 5 Years (If Joint Venture list each participant's projects separately).

Has firm listed in Section 1 ever failed to complete a construction contract awarded to it?

YES  NO

If YES, attach as an Attachment details including Project Owner's contact information.

Has any Corporate Officer, Partner, Joint Venture participant or Proprietor ever failed to complete a construction contract awarded to them in their name or when acting as a principal of another entity?

YES  NO

If YES, attach as an Attachment details including Project Owner's contact information.

Are there any judgments, claims, disputes or litigation pending or outstanding involving the firm listed in Section 1 or any of its officers (or any of its partners if a partnership or any of the individual entities if a joint venture)?

YES  NO



If YES, attach as an Attachment details including Project Owner's contact information.

**12. SAFETY PROGRAM:**

Name of Contractor's Safety Officer: \_\_\_\_\_

Include the following as attachments:

Provide as an Attachment Contractor's (and Contractor's proposed Subcontractors and Suppliers furnishing or performing Work having a value in excess of 10 percent of the total amount of the Bid) OSHA No. 500- Log & Summary of Occupational Injuries & Illnesses for the past 5 years.

Provide as an Attachment Contractor's (and Contractor's proposed Subcontractors and Suppliers furnishing or performing Work having a value in excess of 10 percent of the total amount of the Bid) list of all OSHA Citations & Notifications of Penalty (monetary or other) received within the last 5 years (indicate disposition as applicable) - IF NONE SO STATE.

Provide as an Attachment Contractor's (and Contractor's proposed Subcontractors and Suppliers furnishing or performing Work having a value in excess of 10 percent of the total amount of the Bid) list of all safety citations or violations under any state all received within the last 5 years (indicate disposition as applicable) - IF NONE SO STATE.

Provide the following for the firm listed in Section V (and for each proposed Subcontractor furnishing or performing Work having a value in excess of 10 percent of the total amount of the Bid) the following (attach additional sheets as necessary):

Workers' compensation Experience Modification Rate (EMR) for the last 5 years:

YEAR _____	EMR _
YEAR _____	EMR _
YEAR _____	EMR _
YEAR _____	EMR _
YEAR _____	EMR _

Total Recordable Frequency Rate (TRFR) for the last 5 years:

YEAR _____	TRFR _
YEAR _____	TRFR _
YEAR _____	TRFR _
YEAR _____	TRFR _
YEAR _____	TRFR _

Total number of man-hours worked for the last 5 Years:

YEAR	TOTAL NUMBER OF MAN-HOURS	_____
YEAR	TOTAL NUMBER OF MAN-HOURS	_____
YEAR	TOTAL NUMBER OF MAN-HOURS	_____
YEAR	TOTAL NUMBER OF MAN-HOURS	_____
YEAR	TOTAL NUMBER OF MAN-HOURS	_____

Provide Contractor's (and Contractor's proposed Subcontractors and Suppliers furnishing or performing Work having a value in excess of 10 percent of the total amount of the Bid) Days Away From Work, Days of Restricted Work Activity or Job Transfer (DART) incidence rate for the particular industry or type of Work to be performed by Contractor and each of Contractor's proposed Subcontractors and Suppliers) for the last 5 years:

YEAR _____	DART _
YEAR _____	DART _
YEAR _____	DART _
YEAR _____	DART _
YEAR _____	DART _

**13. EQUIPMENT:**

MAJOR EQUIPMENT:

List on **Schedule C** all pieces of major equipment available for use on Owner's Project.

I HEREBY CERTIFY THAT THE INFORMATION SUBMITTED HERewith, INCLUDING ANY ATTACHMENTS, IS TRUE TO THE BEST OF MY KNOWLEDGE AND BELIEF.

NAME OF ORGANIZATION: \_\_\_\_\_

BY: \_\_\_\_\_

TITLE: \_\_\_\_\_

DATED: \_\_\_\_\_

NOTARY ATTEST:

SUBSCRIBED AND SWORN TO BEFORE ME

THIS \_\_\_\_\_ DAY OF \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_

NOTARY PUBLIC - STATE OF \_\_\_\_\_

MY COMMISSION EXPIRES: \_\_\_\_\_

REQUIRED ATTACHMENTS

1. Schedule A (Current Experience).
2. Schedule B (Previous Experience).
3. Schedule C (Major Equipment).
4. Audited balance sheet for each of the last 3 years for firm named in Section 1.
5. Evidence of authority for individuals listed in Section 7 to bind organization to an agreement.
6. Resumes of officers and key individuals (including Safety Officer) of firm named in Section 1.
7. Required safety program submittals listed in Section 13.
8. Additional items as pertinent.

## SCHEDULE A

### CURRENT EXPERIENCE

Project Name	Owner's Contact Person	Design Engineer	Contract Date	Type of Work	Status	Cost of Work
	Name: Address: Telephone:	Name: Company: Telephone:				
	Name: Address: Telephone:	Name: Company: Telephone:				
	Name: Address: Telephone:	Name: Company: Telephone:				
	Name: Address: Telephone:	Name: Company: Telephone:				
	Name: Address: Telephone:	Name: Company: Telephone:				
	Name: Address: Telephone:	Name: Company: Telephone:				
	Name: Address: Telephone:	Name: Company: Telephone:				
	Name: Address: Telephone:	Name: Company: Telephone:				

## SCHEDULE B

PREVIOUS EXPERIENCE (Include ALL Projects Completed within last 5 years)

Project Name	Owner's Contact Person	Design Engineer	Contract Date	Type of Work	Status	Cost of Work
	Name: Address: Telephone:	Name: Company: Telephone:				
	Name: Address: Telephone:	Name: Company: Telephone:				
	Name: Address: Telephone:	Name: Company: Telephone:				
	Name: Address: Telephone:	Name: Company: Telephone:				
	Name: Address: Telephone:	Name: Company: Telephone:				
	Name: Address: Telephone:	Name: Company: Telephone:				
	Name: Address: Telephone:	Name: Company: Telephone:				
	Name: Address: Telephone:	Name: Company: Telephone:				

## SCHEDULE B

PREVIOUS EXPERIENCE (Include ALL Projects Completed within last 5 years)

Project Name	Owner's Contact Person	Design Engineer	Contract Date	Type of Work	Status	Cost of Work
	Name: Address: Telephone:	Name: Company: Telephone:				
	Name: Address: Telephone:	Name: Company: Telephone:				
	Name: Address: Telephone:	Name: Company: Telephone:				
	Name: Address: Telephone:	Name: Company: Telephone:				
	Name: Address: Telephone:	Name: Company: Telephone:				
	Name: Address: Telephone:	Name: Company: Telephone:				
	Name: Address: Telephone:	Name: Company: Telephone:				
	Name: Address: Telephone:	Name: Company: Telephone:				

SCHEDULE C - LIST OF MAJOR EQUIPMENT AVAILABLE

ITEM	PURCHASE DATE	CONDITION	ACQUIRED VALUE

## INSTRUCTIONS FOR NONCOLLUSION AFFIDAVIT

1. This Noncollusion Affidavit is material to any contract awarded pursuant to this bid. According to the Pennsylvania Antbid-Rigging Act, 73 P.S. §§ 1611 et seq., governmental agencies may require Noncollusion Affidavits to be submitted together with bids.
2. This Noncollusion Affidavit must be executed by the member, officer or employee of the bidder who makes the final decision on prices and the amount quoted in the bid.
3. Bid rigging and other efforts to restrain competition, and the making of false sworn statements in connection with the submission of bids are unlawful and may be subject to criminal prosecution. The person who signs the Affidavit should examine it carefully before signing and assure himself or herself that each statement is true and accurate, making diligent inquiry, as necessary, of all other persons employed by or associated with the bidder with responsibilities for the preparation, approval or submission of the bid.
4. In the case of a bid submitted by a joint venture, each party to the venture must be identified in the bid documents, and an Affidavit must be submitted separately on behalf of each party.
5. The term "complementary bid" as used in the Affidavit has the meaning commonly associated with that term in the bidding process, and includes the knowing submission of bids higher than the bid of another firm, any intentionally high or noncompetitive bid, and any other form of bid submitted for the purpose of giving a false appearance of competition.
6. Failure to file an Affidavit in compliance with these instructions will result in disqualification of the bid.



NONCOLLUSION AFFIDAVIT

Contract/Bid No. \_\_\_\_\_

State of \_\_\_\_\_:

§

County of \_\_\_\_\_:

I state that I am \_\_\_\_\_ of  
(Title)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Name of my firm)

and that I am authorized to make this affidavit on behalf of my firm, and its owners, directors, and officers. I am the person responsible in my firm for the price(s) and the amount of this bid.

I state that:

1. The price(s) and amount of this bid have been arrived at independently and without consultation, communication or agreement with any other contractor, bidder or potential bidder.
2. Neither the price(s) nor the amount of this bid, and neither the approximate price(s) nor approximate amount of this bid, have been disclosed to any other firm or person who is a bidder or potential bidder, and they will not be disclosed before bid opening.
3. No attempt has been made or will be made to induce any firm or person to refrain from bidding on this contract, or to submit a bid higher than this bid, or to submit any intentionally high or noncompetitive bid or other form of complementary bid.
4. The bid of my firm is made in good faith and not pursuant to any agreement or discussion with, or inducement from, any firm or person to submit a complementary or other noncompetitive bid.
5. \_\_\_\_\_, its affiliates,  
(Name of my firm)

subsidiaries, officers, directors and employees are not currently under investigation by any governmental agency and have not in the last four years been convicted or found liable for any act prohibited by State or Federal law in any jurisdiction, involving conspiracy or collusion with respect to bidding on any public contract, except as follows:

I state that \_\_\_\_\_ understands  
(Name of my firm)

and acknowledges that the above representations are material and important, and will be relied on by \_\_\_\_\_, in awarding the  
(Name of public entity)

contract(s) for which this bid is submitted. I understand and my firm understands that any misstatement in this affidavit is and shall be treated as fraudulent concealment from

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Name of public entity)

of the true facts relating to submission of bids for this contract.

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Name and Company Position)

SWORN TO AND SUBSCRIBED  
BEFORE ME THIS \_\_\_\_\_  
DAY OF \_\_\_\_\_,  
20 \_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
Notary Public

My Commission Expires:

---

## NOTICE OF AWARD

---

Date of Issuance:

Owner: Schuylkill Valley School District                      Owner's Contract No.:  
Engineer: Spotts, Stevens and McCoy                      Engineer's Project No.: 103916.0008  
Project: Elementary School HVAC Upgrade and High School Rooftop Unit Project                      Contract Name:

Bidder:

Bidder's Address:

### TO BIDDER:

You are notified that Owner has accepted your Bid dated [ \_\_\_\_\_ ] for the above Contract, and that you are the Successful Bidder and are awarded a Contract for:

\_\_\_\_\_.  
*[describe Work, alternates, or sections of Work awarded]*

The Contract Price of the awarded Contract is: \$ \_\_\_\_\_ *[note if subject to unit prices, cost plus amount]*

[    ] unexecuted counterparts of the Agreement accompany this Notice of Award, and one copy of the Contract Documents accompanies this Notice of Award, or has been transmitted or made available to Bidder electronically. *[revise if multiple copies accompany the Notice of Award]*

a set of the Drawings will be delivered separately from the other Contract Documents.

You must comply with the following conditions precedent within 15 days of the date of this Notice of Award:

1. Deliver to Owner [    ] counterparts of the Agreement, fully executed by Bidder.
2. Deliver with the executed Agreement(s) the Contract security *[e.g., performance and payment bonds]* and insurance documentation as specified in the Instructions to Bidders and General Conditions, Articles 2 and 6.
3. Deliver to Owner one (1) signed copy of this Notice of Award.
4. Other conditions precedent (if any):

Failure to comply with these conditions within the time specified will entitle Owner to consider you in default, annul this Notice of Award, and declare your Bid security forfeited. The Owner will not enter into the Agreement until the required bonds and insurance are submitted and deemed satisfactory, and the Contractor has executed the Agreement and delivered to the Owner.

Owner will return to you one fully executed counterpart of the Agreement, together with any additional copies of the Contract Documents as indicated in Paragraph 2.02 of the General Conditions.

### ACCEPTANCE OF NOTICE

Acceptance of this Notice of Award

Is hereby acknowledged this \_\_\_\_\_

Day of \_\_\_\_\_, 2022

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
(contractor)

For: Schuylkill Valley School District

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Spotts, Stevens and McCoy

AGREEMENT  
BETWEEN OWNER AND CONTRACTOR  
FOR CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT (STIPULATED PRICE)

THIS AGREEMENT is by and between \_\_\_\_\_ (“Owner”) and \_\_\_\_\_ (“Contractor”).

Owner and Contractor hereby agree as follows:

**ARTICLE 1 – WORK**

- 1.01 Contractor shall complete all Work as specified or indicated in the Contract Documents. The Work is generally described as follows- Upgrades to elementary school HVAC and High School rooftop unit.

**Contract 1 – General Construction**  
**Contract 2 – Electrical Construction**  
**Contract 3 – HVAC Construction**

**ARTICLE 2 – THE PROJECT**

- 2.01 The Project, of which the Work under the Contract Documents is a part, is generally described as follows:

**Schuylkill Valley School District: Elementary School HVAC Upgrade and High School Rooftop Unit Project**

**ARTICLE 3 – ENGINEER**

- 3.01 The Project has been designed by Spotts, Stevens and McCoy.
- 3.02 The Owner has retained Spotts, Stevens and McCoy (“Engineer”) to act as Owner’s representative, assume all duties and responsibilities, and have the rights and authority assigned to Engineer in the Contract Documents in connection with the completion of the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

**ARTICLE 4 – CONTRACT TIMES**

- 4.01 *Time of the Essence*
- A. All time limits for Milestones, if any, Substantial Completion, and completion and readiness for final payment as stated in the Contract Documents are of the essence of the Contract.
- 4.02 *Contract Times: Days*
- A. **The Work will be substantially completed on or before Two Hundred Ten (210) days after the date when the Contract Times commence to run as provided in Paragraph 4.01 of the General Conditions, and completed and ready for final payment in accordance with Paragraph 15.06 of the General Conditions within Two Hundred Forty (240) days after the date when the Contract Times commence to run.” Should the owner award the Alternate Bid, the Work will be substantially completed on or before One Hundred Eighty (180) days after the date when the Contract Times**

commence to run as provided in Paragraph 4.01 of the General Conditions, and completed and ready for final payment in accordance with Paragraph 15.06 of the General Conditions within **Two Hundred Ten (210) days** after the date when the Contract Times commence to run.

#### 4.03 *Liquidated Damages*

- A. Contractor and Owner recognize that time is of the essence as stated in Paragraph 4.01 above and that Owner will suffer financial and other losses if the Work is not completed and Milestones not achieved within the times specified in Paragraph 4.02 above, plus any extensions thereof allowed in accordance with the Contract. The parties also recognize the delays, expense, and difficulties involved in proving in a legal or arbitration proceeding the actual loss suffered by Owner if the Work is not completed on time. Accordingly, instead of requiring any such proof, Owner and Contractor agree that as liquidated damages for delay (but not as a penalty):
1. Substantial Completion: Contractor shall pay Owner \$250.00 for each day that expires after the time (as duly adjusted pursuant to the Contract) specified in Paragraph 4.02.A above for Substantial Completion until the Work is substantially complete.
  2. Completion of Remaining Work: After Substantial Completion, if Contractor shall neglect, refuse, or fail to complete the remaining Work within the Contract Time (as duly adjusted pursuant to the Contract) for completion and readiness for final payment, Contractor shall pay Owner \$250.00 for each day that expires after such time until the Work is completed and ready for final payment.
  3. Liquidated damages for failing to timely attain Substantial Completion and Final Completion are not additive and will not be imposed concurrently.

### **ARTICLE 5 – CONTRACT PRICE**

5.01 Owner shall pay Contractor for completion of the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents the amounts that follow, subject to adjustment under the Contract:

- A. For all Work other than Unit Price Work, a lump sum as  
shown on the bid form: \$  .

All specific cash allowances are included in the above price in accordance with Paragraph 13.02 of the General Conditions.

- B. For all Unit Price Work, an amount equal to the sum of the extended prices (established for each separately identified item of Unit Price Work by multiplying the unit price times the actual quantity of that item) as shown on the bid form.

The extended prices for Unit Price Work set forth as of the Effective Date of the Contract are based on estimated quantities. As provided in Paragraph 13.03 of the General Conditions, estimated quantities are not guaranteed, and determinations of actual quantities and classifications are to be made by Engineer.

### **ARTICLE 6 – PAYMENT PROCEDURES**

#### 6.01 *Submittal and Processing of Payments*

- A. Contractor shall submit Applications for Payment in accordance with Article 15 of the General Conditions. Applications for Payment will be processed by Engineer as provided in the General Conditions.

#### 6.02 *Progress Payments; Retainage*

- A. Owner shall make progress payments on account of the Contract Price on the basis of Contractor's Applications for Payment as recommended by ENGINEER, as provided below. All progress payments will be on the basis of the progress of the Work as provided in

Paragraph 6.02.A.1 below, provided that such Applications for Payment have been submitted in a timely manner and otherwise meet the requirements of the Contract. All such payments will be measured by the Schedule of Values established as provided in the General Conditions (and in the case of Unit Price Work based on the number of units completed) or, in the event there is no Schedule of Values, as provided elsewhere in the Contract.

1. Prior to Substantial Completion, progress payments will be made in an amount equal to the percentage indicated below but, in each case, less the aggregate of payments previously made and less such amounts as Owner may withhold, including but not limited to liquidated damages, in accordance with the Contract
  - a. 90% percent of Work completed (with the balance being retainage); If the Work has been 50 percent completed as determined by Engineer, and if the character and progress of the Work have been satisfactory to Owner and Engineer, then as long as the character and progress of the Work remain satisfactory to Owner and Engineer, there will be no additional retainage; and
- B. Upon Substantial Completion of the entire construction to be provided under the Contract Documents, Owner shall pay an amount sufficient to increase total payments to Contractor to 100 percent of the Work completed, less such amounts set off by Owner pursuant to Paragraph 15.01.E of the General Conditions, and less 150 percent of Engineer's estimate of the value of Work to be completed or corrected as shown on the punch list of items to be completed or corrected prior to final payment.

#### 6.03 *Final Payment*

- A. Upon final completion and acceptance of the Work in accordance with Paragraph 15.06 of the General Conditions, Owner shall pay the remainder of the Contract Price as recommended by Engineer as provided in said Paragraph 15.06.

### **ARTICLE 7 – INTEREST**

7.01 All amounts not paid when due shall bear interest at the rate of five (5) percent per annum.

### **ARTICLE 8 – CONTRACTOR'S REPRESENTATIONS**

- 8.01 In order to induce Owner to enter into this Contract, Contractor makes the following representations:
- A. Contractor has examined and carefully studied the Contract Documents, and any data and reference items identified in the Contract Documents.
  - B. Contractor has visited the Site, conducted a thorough, alert visual examination of the Site and adjacent areas, and become familiar with and is satisfied as to the general, local, and Site conditions that may affect cost, progress, and performance of the Work.
  - C. Contractor is familiar with and is satisfied as to all Laws and Regulations that may affect cost, progress, and performance of the Work.
  - D. Contractor has carefully studied all: (1) reports of explorations and tests of subsurface conditions at or adjacent to the Site and all drawings of physical conditions relating to existing surface or subsurface structures at the Site that have been identified in the Supplementary Conditions, especially with respect to Technical Data in such reports and drawings, and (2) reports and drawings relating to Hazardous Environmental Conditions, if any, at or adjacent to the Site that have been identified in the Supplementary Conditions, especially with respect to Technical Data in such reports and drawings.
  - E. Contractor has considered the information known to Contractor itself; information commonly known to contractors doing business in the locality of the Site; information and observations obtained from visits to the Site; the Contract Documents; and the Site-related

reports and drawings identified in the Contract Documents, with respect to the effect of such information, observations, and documents on (1) the cost, progress, and performance of the Work; (2) the means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures of construction to be employed by Contractor; and (3) Contractor's safety precautions and programs.

- F. Based on the information and observations referred to in the preceding paragraph, Contractor agrees that no further examinations, investigations, explorations, tests, studies, or data are necessary for the performance of the Work at the Contract Price, within the Contract Times, and in accordance with the other terms and conditions of the Contract.
- G. Contractor is aware of the general nature of work to be performed by Owner and others at the Site that relates to the Work as indicated in the Contract Documents.
- H. Contractor has given Engineer written notice of all conflicts, errors, ambiguities, or discrepancies that Contractor has discovered in the Contract Documents, and the written resolution thereof by Engineer is acceptable to Contractor.
- I. The Contract Documents are generally sufficient to indicate and convey understanding of all terms and conditions for performance and furnishing of the Work.
- J. Contractor's entry into this Contract constitutes an incontrovertible representation by Contractor that without exception all prices in the Agreement are premised upon performing and furnishing the Work required by the Contract Documents.

## ARTICLE 9 – CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

### 9.01 Contents

A. The Contract Documents consist of the following:

- 1. This Agreement (pages 1 to \_\_\_\_\_ inclusive)
- 2. Performance Bond (pages \_\_\_ to \_\_\_ inclusive)
- 3. Payment Bond (pages \_\_\_ to \_\_\_ inclusive)
- 4. General Conditions (pages \_\_\_ to \_\_\_ inclusive)
- 5. Supplementary Conditions (pages \_\_\_ to \_\_\_ inclusive)
- 6. Specifications as listed in the Table of Contents of the Project Manual
- 7. Drawings, (not attached but incorporated by reference) consisting of \_\_\_ sheets, with each sheet bearing the following general title:  
“ \_\_\_\_\_ ”
- 8. Addenda (numbers \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_ inclusive)
- 9. Exhibits to this Agreement
  - a. Contractor's Bid (pages \_\_\_ to \_\_\_ inclusive), including documentation accompanying Bid.
- 10 The following which may be delivered or issued on or after the Effective Date of the Contract and are not attached hereto:
  - a. Notice to Proceed
  - b. Work Change Directive
  - c. Change Orders
  - d. Field Orders

- B. The documents listed in Paragraph 9.01.A are attached to this Agreement (except as expressly noted otherwise above).
- C. There are no Contract Documents other than those listed above in this Article 9.
- D. The Contract Documents may only be amended, modified, or supplemented as provided in the General Conditions.

## ARTICLE 10 – MISCELLANEOUS

### 10.01 *Terms*

- A. Terms used in this Agreement will have the meanings stated in the General Conditions and the Supplementary Conditions.

### 10.02 *Assignment of Contract*

- A. Unless expressly agreed to elsewhere in the Contract, no assignment by a party hereto of any rights under or interests in the Contract will be binding on another party hereto without the written consent of the party sought to be bound; and, specifically but without limitation, money that may become due and money that is due may not be assigned without such consent (except to the extent that the effect of this restriction may be limited by law), and unless specifically stated to the contrary in any written consent to an assignment, no assignment will release or discharge the assignor from any duty or responsibility under the Contract Documents.

### 10.03 *Successors and Assigns*

- A. Owner and Contractor each binds itself, its successors, assigns, and legal representatives to the other party hereto, its successors, assigns, and legal representatives in respect to all covenants, agreements, and obligations contained in the Contract Documents.

### 10.04 *Severability*

- A. Any provision or part of the Contract Documents held to be void or unenforceable under any Law or Regulation shall be deemed stricken, and all remaining provisions shall continue to be valid and binding upon Owner and Contractor, who agree that the Contract Documents shall be reformed to replace such stricken provision or part thereof with a valid and enforceable provision that comes as close as possible to expressing the intention of the stricken provision.

### 10.05 *Contractor's Certifications*

- A. Contractor certifies that it has not engaged in corrupt, fraudulent, collusive, or coercive practices in competing for or in executing the Contract. For the purposes of this Paragraph 10.05:
  1. "corrupt practice" means the offering, giving, receiving, or soliciting of anything of value likely to influence the action of a public official in the bidding process or in the Contract execution;
  2. "fraudulent practice" means an intentional misrepresentation of facts made (a) to influence the bidding process or the execution of the Contract to the detriment of Owner, (b) to establish Bid or Contract prices at artificial non- competitive levels, or (c) to deprive Owner of the benefits of free and open competition;
  3. "collusive practice" means a scheme or arrangement between two or more Bidders, with or without the knowledge of Owner, a purpose of which is to establish Bid prices at artificial, non-competitive levels; and
  4. "coercive practice" means harming or threatening to harm, directly or indirectly, persons or their property to influence their participation in the bidding process or affect the execution of the Contract.

### 10.06 *Other Provisions*

- A. Owner stipulates that if the General Conditions that are made a part of this Contract are based on EJCDC® C-700, Standard General Conditions for the Construction Contract, published by the Engineers Joint Contract Documents Committee®, and if Owner is the party that has furnished said General Conditions, then Owner has plainly shown all modifications to the standard wording of such published document to the Contractor, through a process such as highlighting or "track changes" (redline/strikeout), or in the Supplementary Conditions.



IN WITNESS WHEREOF, Owner and Contractor have signed this Agreement.

This Agreement will be effective on \_\_\_\_\_ (which is the Effective Date of the Contract).

OWNER: Schuylkill Valley School District

CONTRACTOR:

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

By: \_\_\_\_\_

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

*If Owner is a corporation, attach evidence of Authority to sign. If Owner is a public body, attach evidence of authority to sign and resolution or other Documents authorizing execution of this Agreement.*

*If Contractor is a corporation, a partnership, or a joint venture, attach evidence of authority to sign.*

Attest: \_\_\_\_\_

Attest: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

Address for giving notices:

Address for giving notices:

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

License Number (where applicable)

---

**NOTICE TO PROCEED**

---

Owner:	Schuylkill Valley School District	Owner's Contract No.:	
Contractor:		Contractor's Project No.:	
Engineer:	Spotts, Stevens and McCoy	Engineer's Project No.:	103916.0008
Project:	Elementary School HVAC Upgrade and High School Rooftop Unit Project	Contract Name:	
		Effective Date of Contract:	

---

**TO CONTRACTOR:**

Owner hereby notifies Contractor that the Contract Times under the above Contract will commence to run on [REDACTED], 2022. *[see Paragraph 4.01 of the General Conditions]*

On that date, Contractor shall start performing its obligations under the Contract Documents. No Work shall be done at the Site prior to such date. In accordance with the Agreement, the date of Substantial Completion is \_\_\_\_\_, and the date of readiness for final payment is \_\_\_\_\_.

---

Owner: Schuylkill Valley School District

Authorized Signature

By:

Title:

Date Issued:

Copy: Engineer

## PERFORMANCE BOND

CONTRACTOR *(name and address):*

SURETY *(name and address of principal place of business):*

OWNER *(name and address):*

Schuylkill Valley School District, 929 Lakeshore Drive, Leesport PA 19533

### CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT

Effective Date of the Agreement:

Amount:

Description *(name and location):* Elementary School HVAC Upgrade and High School Rooftop Unit Project

### BOND

Bond Number:

Date *(not earlier than the Effective Date of the Agreement of the Construction Contract):*

Amount:

Modifications to this Bond Form:  None  See Paragraph 16

Surety and Contractor, intending to be legally bound hereby, subject to the terms set forth below, do each cause this Performance Bond to be duly executed by an authorized officer, agent, or representative.

### CONTRACTOR AS PRINCIPAL

### SURETY

\_\_\_\_\_  
Contractor's Name and Corporate Seal *(seal)*

\_\_\_\_\_  
Surety's Name and Corporate Seal *(seal)*

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Signature

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Signature *(attach power of attorney)*

\_\_\_\_\_  
Print Name

\_\_\_\_\_  
Print Name

\_\_\_\_\_  
Title

\_\_\_\_\_  
Title

Attest: \_\_\_\_\_  
Signature

Attest: \_\_\_\_\_  
Signature

\_\_\_\_\_  
Title

\_\_\_\_\_  
Title

**Notes: (1) Provide supplemental execution by any additional parties, such as joint venturers. (2) Any singular reference to Contractor, Surety, Owner, or other party shall be considered plural where applicable.**

1. The Contractor and Surety, jointly and severally, bind themselves, their heirs, executors, administrators, successors, and assigns to the Owner for the performance of the Construction Contract, which is incorporated herein by reference.

2. If the Contractor performs the Construction Contract, the Surety and the Contractor shall have no obligation under this Bond, except when applicable to participate in a conference as provided in Paragraph 3.

3. If there is no Owner Default under the Construction Contract, the Surety's obligation under this Bond shall arise after:

3.1 The Owner first provides notice to the Contractor and the Surety that the Owner is considering declaring a Contractor Default. Such notice shall indicate whether the Owner is requesting a conference among the Owner, Contractor, and Surety to discuss the Contractor's performance. If the Owner does not request a conference, the Surety may, within five (5) business days after receipt of the Owner's notice, request such a conference. If the Surety timely requests a conference, the Owner shall attend. Unless the Owner agrees otherwise, any conference requested under this Paragraph 3.1 shall be held within ten (10) business days of the Surety's receipt of the Owner's notice. If the Owner, the Contractor, and the Surety agree, the Contractor shall be allowed a reasonable time to perform the Construction Contract, but such an agreement shall not waive the Owner's right, if any, subsequently to declare a Contractor Default;

3.2 The Owner declares a Contractor Default, terminates the Construction Contract and notifies the Surety; and

3.3 The Owner has agreed to pay the Balance of the Contract Price in accordance with the terms of the Construction Contract to the Surety or to a contractor selected to perform the Construction Contract.

4. Failure on the part of the Owner to comply with the notice requirement in Paragraph 3.1 shall not constitute a failure to comply with a condition precedent to the Surety's obligations, or release the Surety from its obligations, except to the extent the Surety demonstrates actual prejudice.

5. When the Owner has satisfied the conditions of Paragraph 3, the Surety shall promptly and at the Surety's expense take one of the following actions:

5.1 Arrange for the Contractor, with the consent of the Owner, to perform and complete the Construction Contract;

5.2 Undertake to perform and complete the Construction Contract itself, through its agents or independent contractors;

5.3 Obtain bids or negotiated proposals from qualified contractors acceptable to the Owner for a contract for performance and completion of the Construction Contract, arrange for a contract to be prepared for execution by the

Owner and a contractor selected with the Owners concurrence, to be secured with performance and payment bonds executed by a qualified surety equivalent to the bonds issued on the Construction Contract, and pay to the Owner the amount of damages as described in Paragraph 7 in excess of the Balance of the Contract Price incurred by the Owner as a result of the Contractor Default; or

5.4 Waive its right to perform and complete, arrange for completion, or obtain a new contractor, and with reasonable promptness under the circumstances:

5.4.1 After investigation, determine the amount for which it may be liable to the Owner and, as soon as practicable after the amount is determined, make payment to the Owner; or

5.4.2 Deny liability in whole or in part and notify the Owner, citing the reasons for denial.

6. If the Surety does not proceed as provided in Paragraph 5 with reasonable promptness, the Surety shall be deemed to be in default on this Bond seven days after receipt of an additional written notice from the Owner to the Surety demanding that the Surety perform its obligations under this Bond, and the Owner shall be entitled to enforce any remedy available to the Owner. If the Surety proceeds as provided in Paragraph 5.4, and the Owner refuses the payment or the Surety has denied liability, in whole or in part, without further notice the Owner shall be entitled to enforce any remedy available to the Owner.

7. If the Surety elects to act under Paragraph 5.1, 5.2, or 5.3, then the responsibilities of the Surety to the Owner shall not be greater than those of the Contractor under the Construction Contract, and the responsibilities of the Owner to the Surety shall not be greater than those of the Owner under the Construction Contract. Subject to the commitment by the Owner to pay the Balance of the Contract Price, the Surety is obligated, without duplication for:

7.1 the responsibilities of the Contractor for correction of defective work and completion of the Construction Contract;

7.2 additional legal, design professional, and delay costs resulting from the Contractor's Default, and resulting from the actions or failure to act of the Surety under Paragraph 5; and

7.3 liquidated damages, or if no liquidated damages are specified in the Construction Contract, actual damages caused by delayed performance or non-performance of the Contractor.

8. If the Surety elects to act under Paragraph 5.1, 5.3, or 5.4, the Surety's liability is limited to the amount of this Bond.

9. The Surety shall not be liable to the Owner or others for obligations of the Contractor that are unrelated to the Construction Contract, and the Balance of the Contract Price shall not be reduced or set off on account of any such unrelated obligations. No right of action shall accrue on this Bond to any person or entity other than

the Owner or its heirs, executors, administrators, successors, and assigns.

10. The Surety hereby waives notice of any change, including changes of time, to the Construction Contract or to related subcontracts, purchase orders, and other obligations.

11. Any proceeding, legal or equitable, under this Bond may be instituted in any court of competent jurisdiction in the location in which the work or part of the work is located and shall be instituted within two years after a declaration of Contractor Default or within two years after the Contractor ceased working or within two years after the Surety refuses or fails to perform its obligations under this Bond, whichever occurs first. If the provisions of this paragraph are void or prohibited by law, the minimum periods of limitations available to sureties as a defense in the jurisdiction of the suit shall be applicable.

12. Notice to the Surety, the Owner, or the Contractor shall be mailed or delivered to the address shown on the page on which their signature appears.

13. When this Bond has been furnished to comply with a statutory or other legal requirement in the location where the construction was to be performed, any provision in this Bond conflicting with said statutory or legal requirement shall be deemed deleted herefrom and provisions conforming to such statutory or other legal requirement shall be deemed incorporated herein. When so furnished, the intent is that this Bond shall be construed as a statutory bond and not as a common law bond.

#### 14. Definitions

14.1 Balance of the Contract Price: The total amount payable by the Owner to the Contractor under the Construction Contract after all proper adjustments have been made including allowance for the Contractor for any amounts received or to be

received by the Owner in settlement of insurance or other claims for damages to which the Contractor is entitled, reduced by all valid and proper payments made to or on behalf of the Contractor under the Construction Contract.

14.2 Construction Contract: The agreement between the Owner and Contractor identified on the cover page, including all Contract Documents and changes made to the agreement and the Contract Documents.

14.3 Contractor Default: Failure of the Contractor, which has not been remedied or waived, to perform or otherwise to comply with a material term of the Construction Contract.

14.4 Owner Default: Failure of the Owner, which has not been remedied or waived, to pay the Contractor as required under the Construction Contract or to perform and complete or comply with the other material terms of the Construction Contract.

14.5 Contract Documents: All the documents that comprise the agreement between the Owner and Contractor.

15. If this Bond is issued for an agreement between a contractor and subcontractor, the term Contractor in this Bond shall be deemed to be Subcontractor and the term Owner shall be deemed to be Contractor.

16. Modifications to this Bond are as follows:

## PAYMENT BOND

CONTRACTOR *(name and address)*:

SURETY *(name and address of principal place of business)*:

OWNER *(name and address)*: Schuylkill Valley School District, 929 Lakeshore Drive, Leesport PA 19533

### CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT

Effective Date of the Agreement:

Amount:

Description *(name and location)*: Elementary School HVAC Upgrade and High School Rooftop Unit Project

### BOND

Bond Number:

Date *(not earlier than the Effective Date of the Agreement of the Construction Contract)*:

Amount:

Modifications to this Bond Form:  None  See Paragraph 18

Surety and Contractor, intending to be legally bound hereby, subject to the terms set forth below, do each cause this Payment Bond to be duly executed by an authorized officer, agent, or representative.

### CONTRACTOR AS PRINCIPAL

### SURETY

\_\_\_\_\_ *(seal)*

Contractor's Name and Corporate Seal

\_\_\_\_\_ *(seal)*

Surety's Name and Corporate Seal

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Signature

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Signature *(attach power of attorney)*

Print Name

Print Name

Title

Title

Attest: \_\_\_\_\_

Signature

Attest: \_\_\_\_\_

Signature

Title

Title

**Notes: (1) Provide supplemental execution by any additional parties, such as joint venturers. (2) Any singular reference to Contractor, Surety, Owner, or other party shall be considered plural where applicable.**

1. The Contractor and Surety, jointly and severally, bind themselves, their heirs, executors, administrators, successors, and assigns to the Owner to pay for labor, materials, and equipment furnished for use in the performance of the Construction Contract, which is incorporated herein by reference, subject to the following terms.
2. If the Contractor promptly makes payment of all sums due to Claimants, and defends, indemnifies, and holds harmless the Owner from claims, demands, liens, or suits by any person or entity seeking payment for labor, materials, or equipment furnished for use in the performance of the Construction Contract, then the Surety and the Contractor shall have no obligation under this Bond.
3. If there is no Owner Default under the Construction Contract, the Surety's obligation to the Owner under this Bond shall arise after the Owner has promptly notified the Contractor and the Surety (at the address described in Paragraph 13) of claims, demands, liens, or suits against the Owner or the Owner's property by any person or entity seeking payment for labor, materials, or equipment furnished for use in the performance of the Construction Contract, and tendered defense of such claims, demands, liens, or suits to the Contractor and the Surety.
4. When the Owner has satisfied the conditions in Paragraph 3, the Surety shall promptly and at the Surety's expense defend, indemnify, and hold harmless the Owner against a duly tendered claim, demand, lien, or suit.
5. The Surety's obligations to a Claimant under this Bond shall arise after the following:
  - 5.1 Claimants who do not have a direct contract with the Contractor,
    - 5.1.1 have furnished a written notice of non-payment to the Contractor, stating with substantial accuracy the amount claimed and the name of the party to whom the materials were, or equipment was, furnished or supplied or for whom the labor was done or performed, within ninety (90) days after having last performed labor or last furnished materials or equipment included in the Claim; and
    - 5.1.2 have sent a Claim to the Surety (at the address described in Paragraph 13).
  - 5.2 Claimants who are employed by or have a direct contract with the Contractor have sent a Claim to the Surety (at the address described in Paragraph 13).
6. If a notice of non-payment required by Paragraph 5.1.1 is given by the Owner to the Contractor, that is sufficient to satisfy a Claimant's obligation to furnish a written notice of non-payment under Paragraph 5.1.1.
7. When a Claimant has satisfied the conditions of Paragraph 5.1 or 5.2, whichever is applicable, the Surety shall promptly and at the Surety's expense take the following actions:
  - 7.1 Send an answer to the Claimant, with a copy to the Owner, within sixty (60) days after receipt of the Claim, stating the amounts that are undisputed and the basis for challenging any amounts that are disputed; and
  - 7.2 Pay or arrange for payment of any undisputed amounts.
  - 7.3 The Surety's failure to discharge its obligations under Paragraph 7.1 or 7.2 shall not be deemed to constitute a waiver of defenses the Surety or Contractor may have or acquire as to a Claim, except as to undisputed amounts for which the Surety and Claimant have reached agreement. If, however, the Surety fails to discharge its obligations under Paragraph 7.1 or 7.2, the Surety shall indemnify the Claimant for the reasonable attorney's fees the Claimant incurs thereafter to recover any sums found to be due and owing to the Claimant.
8. The Surety's total obligation shall not exceed the amount of this Bond, plus the amount of reasonable attorney's fees provided under Paragraph 7.3, and the amount of this Bond shall be credited for any payments made in good faith by the Surety.
9. Amounts owed by the Owner to the Contractor under the Construction Contract shall be used for the performance of the Construction Contract and to satisfy claims, if any, under any construction performance bond. By the Contractor furnishing and the Owner accepting this Bond, they agree that all funds earned by the Contractor in the performance of the Construction Contract are dedicated to satisfy obligations of the Contractor and Surety under this Bond, subject to the Owner's priority to use the funds for the completion of the work.
10. The Surety shall not be liable to the Owner, Claimants, or others for obligations of the Contractor that are unrelated to the Construction Contract. The Owner shall not be liable for the payment of any costs or expenses of any Claimant under this Bond, and shall have under this Bond no obligation to make payments to or give notice on behalf of Claimants, or otherwise have any obligations to Claimants under this Bond.
11. The Surety hereby waives notice of any change, including

changes of time, to the Construction Contract or to related subcontracts, purchase orders, and other obligations.

12. No suit or action shall be commenced by a Claimant under this Bond other than in a court of competent jurisdiction in the state in which the project that is the subject of the Construction Contract is located or after the expiration of one year from the date (1) on which the Claimant sent a Claim to the Surety pursuant to Paragraph 5.1.2 or 5.2, or (2) on which the last labor or service was performed by anyone or the last materials or equipment were furnished by anyone under the Construction Contract, whichever of (1) or (2) first occurs. If the provisions of this paragraph are void or prohibited by law, the minimum period of limitation available to sureties as a defense in the jurisdiction of the suit shall be applicable.
13. Notice and Claims to the Surety, the Owner, or the Contractor shall be mailed or delivered to the address shown on the page on which their signature appears. Actual receipt of notice or Claims, however accomplished, shall be sufficient compliance as of the date received.
14. When this Bond has been furnished to comply with a statutory or other legal requirement in the location where the construction was to be performed, any provision in this Bond conflicting with said statutory or legal requirement shall be deemed deleted herefrom and provisions conforming to such statutory or other legal requirement shall be deemed incorporated herein. When so furnished, the intent is that this Bond shall be construed as a statutory bond and not as a common law bond.
15. Upon requests by any person or entity appearing to be a potential beneficiary of this Bond, the Contractor and Owner shall promptly furnish a copy of this Bond or shall permit a copy to be made.

## 16. Definitions

16.1 **Claim:** A written statement by the Claimant including at a minimum:

1. The name of the Claimant;
2. The name of the person for whom the labor was done, or materials or equipment furnished;
3. A copy of the agreement or purchase order pursuant to which labor, materials, or equipment was furnished for use in the performance of the Construction Contract;
4. A brief description of the labor, materials, or equipment furnished;
5. The date on which the Claimant last performed labor or last furnished materials or equipment for use in the performance of the Construction Contract;
6. The total amount earned by the Claimant for labor, materials, or equipment furnished as of the date of the Claim;

7. The total amount of previous payments received by the Claimant; and
8. The total amount due and unpaid to the Claimant for labor, materials, or equipment furnished as of the date of the Claim.

16.2 **Claimant:** An individual or entity having a direct contract with the Contractor or with a subcontractor of the Contractor to furnish labor, materials, or equipment for use in the performance of the Construction Contract. The term Claimant also includes any individual or entity that has rightfully asserted a claim under an applicable mechanic's lien or similar statute against the real property upon which the Project is located. The intent of this Bond shall be to include without limitation in the terms of "labor, materials, or equipment" that part of the water, gas, power, light, heat, oil, gasoline, telephone service, or rental equipment used in the Construction Contract, architectural and engineering services required for performance of the work of the Contractor and the Contractor's subcontractors, and all other items for which a mechanic's lien may be asserted in the jurisdiction where the labor, materials, or equipment were furnished.

16.3 **Construction Contract:** The agreement between the Owner and Contractor identified on the cover page, including all Contract Documents and all changes made to the agreement and the Contract Documents.

16.4 **Owner Default:** Failure of the Owner, which has not been remedied or waived, to pay the Contractor as required under the Construction Contract or to perform and complete or comply with the other material terms of the Construction Contract.

16.5 **Contract Documents:** All the documents that comprise the agreement between the Owner and Contractor.

17. If this Bond is issued for an agreement between a contractor and subcontractor, the term Contractor in this Bond shall be deemed to be Subcontractor and the term Owner shall be deemed to be Contractor.

18. Modifications to this Bond are as follows:





**Contractor's Application for Payment No.**

	Application Period:	Application Date:
To (Owner):	From (Contractor):	Via (Engineer):
Project:	Contract:	
Owner's Contract No.:	Contractor's Project No.:	Engineer's Project No.:

**Application For Payment  
Change Order Summary**

Approved Change Orders	Number	Additions	Deductions	
				1. ORIGINAL CONTRACT PRICE..... \$ _____
				2. Net change by Change Orders..... \$ _____
				3. Current Contract Price (Line 1 ± 2)..... \$ _____
				4. TOTAL COMPLETED AND STORED TO DATE (Column F total on Progress Estimates)..... \$ _____
				5. RETAINAGE:
				a.     X                   Work Completed..... \$ _____
				b.     X                   Stored Material..... \$ _____
				c. Total Retainage (Line 5.a + Line 5.b)..... \$ _____
				6. AMOUNT ELIGIBLE TO DATE (Line 4 - Line 5.c)..... \$ _____
				7. LESS PREVIOUS PAYMENTS (Line 6 from prior Application)..... \$ _____
				8. AMOUNT DUE THIS APPLICATION..... \$ _____
				9. BALANCE TO FINISH, PLUS RETAINAGE (Column G total on Progress Estimates + Line 5.c above)..... \$ _____
TOTALS				
NET CHANGE BY CHANGE ORDERS				

**Contractor's Certification**

The undersigned Contractor certifies, to the best of its knowledge, the following:

(1) All previous progress payments received from Owner on account of Work done under the Contract have been applied on account to discharge Contractor's legitimate obligations incurred in connection with the Work covered by prior Applications for Payment;

(2) Title to all Work, materials and equipment incorporated in said Work, or otherwise listed in or covered by this Application for Payment, will pass to Owner at time of payment free and clear of all Liens, security interests, and encumbrances (except such as are covered by a bond acceptable to Owner indemnifying Owner against any such Liens, security interest, or encumbrances); and

(3) All the Work covered by this Application for Payment is in accordance with the Contract Documents and is not defective.

---

**Contractor Signature**

By: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Payment of: \$ \_\_\_\_\_  
(Line 8 or other - attach explanation of the other amount)

is recommended by: \_\_\_\_\_ (Engineer) \_\_\_\_\_ (Date)

Payment of: \$ \_\_\_\_\_  
(Line 8 or other - attach explanation of the other amount)

is approved by: \_\_\_\_\_ (Owner) \_\_\_\_\_ (Date)

Approved by: \_\_\_\_\_ (Date)  
Funding or Financing Entity (if applicable)

# Progress Estimate - Lump Sum Work

# Contractor's Application

For (Contract):				Application Number:				
Application Period:				Application Date:				
A		B	Work Completed		E	F		G
Specification Section No.	Description	Scheduled Value (\$)	From Previous Application (C+D)	This Period	Materials Presently Stored (not in C or D)	Total Completed and Stored to Date (C + D + E)	% (F / B)	Balance to Finish (B - F)
<b>Totals</b>								





**CERTIFICATE OF SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION**

Owner: Schuylkill Valley School District	Owner's Contract No.:
Contractor:	Contractor's Project No.:
Engineer: Spotts, Stevens and McCoy	Engineer's Project No.: 103916.0008
Project: Elementary School HVAC Upgrade and High School Rooftop Unit Project	Contract Name:

**This [preliminary] [final] Certificate of Substantial Completion applies to:**

All Work  The following specified portions of the Work:

**Date of Substantial Completion**

The Work to which this Certificate applies has been inspected by authorized representatives of Owner, Contractor, and Engineer, and found to be substantially complete. The Date of Substantial Completion of the Work or portion thereof designated above is hereby established, subject to the provisions of the Contract pertaining to Substantial Completion. The date of Substantial Completion in the final Certificate of Substantial Completion marks the commencement of the contractual correction period and applicable warranties required by the Contract.

A punch list of items to be completed or corrected is attached to this Certificate. This list may not be all-inclusive, and the failure to include any items on such list does not alter the responsibility of the Contractor to complete all Work in accordance with the Contract.

The responsibilities between Owner and Contractor for security, operation, safety, maintenance, heat, utilities, insurance, and warranties upon Owner's use or occupancy of the Work shall be as provided in the Contract, except as amended as follows: *[Note: Amendments of contractual responsibilities recorded in this Certificate should be the product of mutual agreement of Owner and Contractor; see Paragraph 15.03.D of the General Conditions.]*

Amendments to Owner's responsibilities:  None  
 As follows

Amendments to Contractor's responsibilities:  None  
 As follows:

The following documents are attached to and made a part of this Certificate: *[punch list; others]*

This Certificate does not constitute an acceptance of Work not in accordance with the Contract Documents, nor is it a release of Contractor's obligation to complete the Work in accordance with the Contract.

EXECUTED BY ENGINEER:	RECEIVED:	RECEIVED:
By: _____ (Authorized signature)	By: _____ Owner (Authorized Signature)	By: _____ Contractor (Authorized Signature)
Title: _____	Title: _____	Title: _____
Date: _____	Date: _____	Date: _____

This document has important legal consequences; consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its use or modification. This document should be adapted to the particular circumstances of the contemplated Project and the controlling Laws and Regulations.

## STANDARD GENERAL CONDITIONS OF THE CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT

Prepared by



Issued and Published Jointly by



These General Conditions have been prepared for use with the Agreement Between Owner and Contractor for Construction Contract (EJCDC® C-520, Stipulated Sum, or C-525, Cost-Plus, 2013 Editions). Their provisions are interrelated and a change in one may necessitate a change in the other.

To prepare supplementary conditions that are coordinated with the General Conditions, use EJCDC's Guide to the Preparation of Supplementary Conditions (EJCDC® C-800, 2013 Edition). The full EJCDC Construction series of documents is discussed in the Commentary on the 2013 EJCDC Construction Documents (EJCDC® C-001, 2013 Edition).

Copyright © 2013:

National Society of Professional Engineers  
1420 King Street, Alexandria, VA 22314-2794  
(703) 684-2882  
[www.nspe.org](http://www.nspe.org)

American Council of Engineering Companies  
1015 15th Street N.W., Washington, DC 20005  
(202) 347-7474  
[www.acec.org](http://www.acec.org)

American Society of Civil Engineers  
1801 Alexander Bell Drive, Reston, VA 20191-4400  
(800) 548-2723  
[www.asce.org](http://www.asce.org)

The copyright for this document is owned jointly by the three sponsoring organizations listed above. The National Society of Professional Engineers is the Copyright Administrator for the EJCDC documents; please direct all inquiries regarding EJCDC copyrights to NSPE.

NOTE: EJCDC publications may be purchased at [www.ejcdc.org](http://www.ejcdc.org), or from any of the sponsoring organizations above.

# STANDARD GENERAL CONDITIONS OF THE CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<b>Page</b>
Article 1 – Definitions and Terminology .....	1
1.01 Defined Terms.....	1
1.02 Terminology.....	4
Article 2 – Preliminary Matters.....	5
2.01 Delivery of Bonds and Evidence of Insurance .....	5
2.02 Copies of Documents .....	5
2.03 Before Starting Construction .....	6
2.04 Preconstruction Conference; Designation of Authorized Representatives .....	6
2.05 Initial Acceptance of Schedules .....	6
2.06 Electronic Transmittals .....	6
Article 3 – Documents: Intent, Requirements, Reuse .....	7
3.01 Intent .....	7
3.02 Reference Standards.....	7
3.03 Reporting and Resolving Discrepancies .....	7
3.04 Requirements of the Contract Documents .....	8
3.05 Reuse of Documents.....	9
Article 4 – Commencement and Progress of the Work .....	9
4.01 Commencement of Contract Times; Notice to Proceed .....	9
4.02 Starting the Work.....	9
4.03 Reference Points .....	9
4.04 Progress Schedule .....	9
4.05 Delays in Contractor’s Progress .....	10
Article 5 – Availability of Lands; Subsurface and Physical Conditions; Hazardous Environmental Conditions.....	10
5.01 Availability of Lands .....	10
5.02 Use of Site and Other Areas.....	11
5.03 Subsurface and Physical Conditions.....	11
5.04 Differing Subsurface or Physical Conditions .....	12
5.05 Underground Facilities.....	13



5.06	Hazardous Environmental Conditions at Site .....	15
Article 6 – Bonds and Insurance .....		16
6.01	Performance, Payment, and Other Bonds .....	16
6.02	Insurance—General Provisions.....	17
6.03	Contractor’s Insurance.....	18
6.04	Owner’s Liability Insurance.....	20
6.05	Property Insurance .....	20
6.06	Waiver of Rights.....	22
6.07	Receipt and Application of Property Insurance Proceeds.....	22
Article 7 – Contractor’s Responsibilities .....		23
7.01	Supervision and Superintendence .....	23
7.02	Labor; Working Hours.....	23
7.03	Services, Materials, and Equipment.....	23
7.04	“Or Equals” .....	23
7.05	Substitutes .....	24
7.06	Concerning Subcontractors, Suppliers, and Others .....	26
7.07	Patent Fees and Royalties.....	27
7.08	Permits.....	28
7.09	Taxes .....	28
7.10	Laws and Regulations.....	28
7.11	Record Documents.....	28
7.12	Safety and Protection .....	28
7.13	Safety Representative.....	29
7.14	Hazard Communication Programs .....	29
7.15	Emergencies.....	29
7.16	Shop Drawings, Samples, and Other Submittals.....	30
7.17	Contractor’s General Warranty and Guarantee.....	32
7.18	Indemnification.....	32
7.19	Delegation of Professional Design Services .....	33
Article 8 – Other Work at the Site .....		33
8.01	Other Work .....	33
8.02	Coordination .....	34
8.03	Legal Relationships .....	34

Article 9 – Owner’s Responsibilities .....	35
9.01 Communications to Contractor .....	35
9.02 Replacement of Engineer .....	35
9.03 Furnish Data.....	35
9.04 Pay When Due .....	35
9.05 Lands and Easements; Reports, Tests, and Drawings .....	35
9.06 Insurance .....	35
9.07 Change Orders .....	36
9.08 Inspections, Tests, and Approvals.....	36
9.09 Limitations on Owner’s Responsibilities .....	36
9.10 Undisclosed Hazardous Environmental Condition.....	36
9.11 Evidence of Financial Arrangements.....	36
9.12 Safety Programs .....	36
Article 10 – Engineer’s Status During Construction .....	36
10.01 Owner’s Representative .....	36
10.02 Visits to Site .....	36
10.03 Project Representative .....	37
10.04 Rejecting Defective Work .....	37
10.05 Shop Drawings, Change Orders and Payments.....	37
10.06 Determinations for Unit Price Work .....	37
10.07 Decisions on Requirements of Contract Documents and Acceptability of Work.....	37
10.08 Limitations on Engineer’s Authority and Responsibilities.....	37
10.09 Compliance with Safety Program.....	38
Article 11 – Amending the Contract Documents; Changes in the Work.....	38
11.01 Amending and Supplementing Contract Documents .....	38
11.02 Owner-Authorized Changes in the Work .....	39
11.03 Unauthorized Changes in the Work.....	39
11.04 Change of Contract Price .....	39
11.05 Change of Contract Times.....	40
11.06 Change Proposals.....	40
11.07 Execution of Change Orders .....	41
11.08 Notification to Surety.....	41
Article 12 – Claims .....	41

12.01	Claims.....	41
Article 13 –	Cost of the Work; Allowances; Unit Price Work.....	42
13.01	Cost of the Work.....	42
13.02	Allowances.....	44
13.03	Unit Price Work.....	45
Article 14 –	Tests and Inspections; Correction, Removal or Acceptance of Defective Work .....	45
14.01	Access to Work .....	45
14.02	Tests, Inspections, and Approvals.....	46
14.03	Defective Work .....	46
14.04	Acceptance of Defective Work .....	47
14.05	Uncovering Work .....	47
14.06	Owner May Stop the Work .....	48
14.07	Owner May Correct Defective Work.....	48
Article 15 –	Payments to Contractor; Set-Offs; Completion; Correction Period .....	48
15.01	Progress Payments.....	48
15.02	Contractor’s Warranty of Title.....	51
15.03	Substantial Completion.....	51
15.04	Partial Use or Occupancy .....	52
15.05	Final Inspection .....	52
15.06	Final Payment .....	52
15.07	Waiver of Claims .....	53
15.08	Correction Period.....	54
Article 16 –	Suspension of Work and Termination .....	54
16.01	Owner May Suspend Work .....	54
16.02	Owner May Terminate for Cause.....	55
16.03	Owner May Terminate For Convenience .....	55
16.04	Contractor May Stop Work or Terminate .....	56
Article 17 –	Final Resolution of Disputes .....	56
17.01	Methods and Procedures.....	56
Article 18 –	Miscellaneous.....	57
18.01	Giving Notice.....	57
18.02	Computation of Times .....	57
18.03	Cumulative Remedies .....	57

18.04	Limitation of Damages .....	57
18.05	No Waiver .....	57
18.06	Survival of Obligations .....	57
18.07	Controlling Law .....	57
18.08	Headings .....	57

## ARTICLE 1 – DEFINITIONS AND TERMINOLOGY

### 1.01 *Defined Terms*

- A. Wherever used in the Bidding Requirements or Contract Documents, a term printed with initial capital letters, including the term's singular and plural forms, will have the meaning indicated in the definitions below. In addition to terms specifically defined, terms with initial capital letters in the Contract Documents include references to identified articles and paragraphs, and the titles of other documents or forms.
1. *Addenda*—Written or graphic instruments issued prior to the opening of Bids which clarify, correct, or change the Bidding Requirements or the proposed Contract Documents.
  2. *Agreement*—The written instrument, executed by Owner and Contractor, that sets forth the Contract Price and Contract Times, identifies the parties and the Engineer, and designates the specific items that are Contract Documents.
  3. *Application for Payment*—The form acceptable to Engineer which is to be used by Contractor during the course of the Work in requesting progress or final payments and which is to be accompanied by such supporting documentation as is required by the Contract Documents.
  4. *Bid*—The offer of a Bidder submitted on the prescribed form setting forth the prices for the Work to be performed.
  5. *Bidder*—An individual or entity that submits a Bid to Owner.
  6. *Bidding Documents*—The Bidding Requirements, the proposed Contract Documents, and all Addenda.
  7. *Bidding Requirements*—The advertisement or invitation to bid, Instructions to Bidders, Bid Bond or other Bid security, if any, the Bid Form, and the Bid with any attachments.
  8. *Change Order*—A document which is signed by Contractor and Owner and authorizes an addition, deletion, or revision in the Work or an adjustment in the Contract Price or the Contract Times, or other revision to the Contract, issued on or after the Effective Date of the Contract. **[Refer to SC →]**
  9. *Change Proposal*—A written request by Contractor, duly submitted in compliance with the procedural requirements set forth herein, seeking an adjustment in Contract Price or Contract Times, or both; contesting an initial decision by Engineer concerning the requirements of the Contract Documents or the acceptability of Work under the Contract Documents; challenging a set-off against payments due; or seeking other relief with respect to the terms of the Contract.
  10. *Claim*—(a) A demand or assertion by Owner directly to Contractor, duly submitted in compliance with the procedural requirements set forth herein: seeking an adjustment of Contract Price or Contract Times, or both; contesting an initial decision by Engineer concerning the requirements of the Contract Documents or the acceptability of Work under the Contract Documents; contesting Engineer's decision regarding a Change Proposal; seeking resolution of a contractual issue that Engineer has declined to address; or seeking other relief with respect to the terms of the Contract; or (b) a demand or assertion by Contractor directly to Owner, duly submitted in compliance with the procedural requirements set forth herein, contesting Engineer's decision regarding a Change Proposal; or seeking resolution of a contractual issue that Engineer has declined to address. A demand for money or services by a third party is not a Claim.
  11. *Constituent of Concern*—Asbestos, petroleum, radioactive materials, polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs), hazardous waste, and any substance, product, waste, or other material of any nature whatsoever that is or becomes listed, regulated, or addressed pursuant to (a) the Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation and

Liability Act, 42 U.S.C. §§9601 et seq. (“CERCLA”); (b) the Hazardous Materials Transportation Act, 49 U.S.C. §§5101 et seq.; (c) the Resource Conservation and Recovery Act, 42 U.S.C. §§6901 et seq. (“RCRA”); (d) the Toxic Substances Control Act, 15 U.S.C. §§2601 et seq.; (e) the Clean Water Act, 33 U.S.C. §§1251 et seq.; (f) the Clean Air Act, 42 U.S.C. §§7401 et seq.; or (g) any other federal, state, or local statute, law, rule, regulation, ordinance, resolution, code, order, or decree regulating, relating to, or imposing liability or standards of conduct concerning, any hazardous, toxic, or dangerous waste, substance, or material.

12. *Contract*—The entire and integrated written contract between the Owner and Contractor concerning the Work.
13. *Contract Documents*—Those items so designated in the Agreement, and which together comprise the Contract.
14. *Contract Price*—The money that Owner has agreed to pay Contractor for completion of the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents. .
15. *Contract Times*—The number of days or the dates by which Contractor shall: (a) achieve Milestones, if any; (b) achieve Substantial Completion; and (c) complete the Work.
16. *Contractor*—The individual or entity with which Owner has contracted for performance of the Work.
17. *Cost of the Work*—See Paragraph 13.01 for definition.
18. *Drawings*—The part of the Contract that graphically shows the scope, extent, and character of the Work to be performed by Contractor.
19. *Effective Date of the Contract*—The date, indicated in the Agreement, on which the Contract becomes effective.
20. *Engineer*—The individual or entity named as such in the Agreement.
21. *Field Order*—A written order issued by Engineer which requires minor changes in the Work but does not change the Contract Price or the Contract Times.
22. *Hazardous Environmental Condition*—The presence at the Site of Constituents of Concern in such quantities or circumstances that may present a danger to persons or property exposed thereto. The presence at the Site of materials that are necessary for the execution of the Work, or that are to be incorporated in the Work, and that are controlled and contained pursuant to industry practices, Laws and Regulations, and the requirements of the Contract, does not establish a Hazardous Environmental Condition.
23. *Laws and Regulations; Laws or Regulations*—Any and all applicable laws, statutes, rules, regulations, ordinances, codes, and orders of any and all governmental bodies, agencies, authorities, and courts having jurisdiction.
24. *Liens*—Charges, security interests, or encumbrances upon Contract-related funds, real property, or personal property.
25. *Milestone*—A principal event in the performance of the Work that the Contract requires Contractor to achieve by an intermediate completion date or by a time prior to Substantial Completion of all the Work.
26. *Notice of Award*—The written notice by Owner to a Bidder of Owner’s acceptance of the Bid.
27. *Notice to Proceed*—A written notice by Owner to Contractor fixing the date on which the Contract Times will commence to run and on which Contractor shall start to perform the Work.

28. *Owner*—The individual or entity with which Contractor has contracted regarding the Work, and which has agreed to pay Contractor for the performance of the Work, pursuant to the terms of the Contract.
29. *Progress Schedule*—A schedule, prepared and maintained by Contractor, describing the sequence and duration of the activities comprising the Contractor's plan to accomplish the Work within the Contract Times.
30. *Project*—The total undertaking to be accomplished for Owner by engineers, contractors, and others, including planning, study, design, construction, testing, commissioning, and start-up, and of which the Work to be performed under the Contract Documents is a part.
31. *Project Manual*—The written documents prepared for, or made available for, procuring and constructing the Work, including but not limited to the Bidding Documents or other construction procurement documents, geotechnical and existing conditions information, the Agreement, bond forms, General Conditions, Supplementary Conditions, and Specifications. The contents of the Project Manual may be bound in one or more volumes.
32. *Resident Project Representative*—The authorized representative of Engineer assigned to assist Engineer at the Site. As used herein, the term Resident Project Representative or "RPR" includes any assistants or field staff of Resident Project Representative.
33. *Samples*—Physical examples of materials, equipment, or workmanship that are representative of some portion of the Work and that establish the standards by which such portion of the Work will be judged.
34. *Schedule of Submittals*—A schedule, prepared and maintained by Contractor, of required submittals and the time requirements for Engineer's review of the submittals and the performance of related construction activities.
35. *Schedule of Values*—A schedule, prepared and maintained by Contractor, allocating portions of the Contract Price to various portions of the Work and used as the basis for reviewing Contractor's Applications for Payment.
36. *Shop Drawings*—All drawings, diagrams, illustrations, schedules, and other data or information that are specifically prepared or assembled by or for Contractor and submitted by Contractor to illustrate some portion of the Work. Shop Drawings, whether approved or not, are not Drawings and are not Contract Documents.
37. *Site*—Lands or areas indicated in the Contract Documents as being furnished by Owner upon which the Work is to be performed, including rights-of-way and easements, and such other lands furnished by Owner which are designated for the use of Contractor.
38. *Specifications*—The part of the Contract that consists of written requirements for materials, equipment, systems, standards, and workmanship as applied to the Work, and certain administrative requirements and procedural matters applicable to the Work.
39. *Subcontractor*—An individual or entity having a direct contract with Contractor or with any other Subcontractor for the performance of a part of the Work.
40. *Substantial Completion*—The time at which the Work (or a specified part thereof) has progressed to the point where, in the opinion of Engineer, the Work (or a specified part thereof) is sufficiently complete, in accordance with the Contract Documents, so that the Work (or a specified part thereof) can be utilized for the purposes for which it is intended. The terms "substantially complete" and "substantially completed" as applied to all or part of the Work refer to Substantial Completion thereof. **[Refer to SC→]**
41. *Successful Bidder*—The Bidder whose Bid the Owner accepts, and to which the Owner makes an award of contract, subject to stated conditions.
42. *Supplementary Conditions*—The part of the Contract that amends or supplements these General Conditions.

43. *Supplier*—A manufacturer, fabricator, supplier, distributor, materialman, or vendor having a direct contract with Contractor or with any Subcontractor to furnish materials or equipment to be incorporated in the Work by Contractor or a Subcontractor.
44. *Technical Data*—Those items expressly identified as Technical Data in the Supplementary Conditions, with respect to either (a) subsurface conditions at the Site, or physical conditions relating to existing surface or subsurface structures at the Site (except Underground Facilities) or (b) Hazardous Environmental Conditions at the Site. If no such express identifications of Technical Data have been made with respect to conditions at the Site, then the data contained in boring logs, recorded measurements of subsurface water levels, laboratory test results, and other factual, objective information regarding conditions at the Site that are set forth in any geotechnical or environmental report prepared for the Project and made available to Contractor are hereby defined as Technical Data with respect to conditions at the Site under Paragraphs 5.03, 5.04, and 5.06.
45. *Underground Facilities*—All underground pipelines, conduits, ducts, cables, wires, manholes, vaults, tanks, tunnels, or other such facilities or attachments, and any encasements containing such facilities, including but not limited to those that convey electricity, gases, steam, liquid petroleum products, telephone or other communications, fiber optic transmissions, cable television, water, wastewater, storm water, other liquids or chemicals, or traffic or other control systems.
46. *Unit Price Work*—Work to be paid for on the basis of unit prices.
47. *Work*—The entire construction or the various separately identifiable parts thereof required to be provided under the Contract Documents. Work includes and is the result of performing or providing all labor, services, and documentation necessary to produce such construction; furnishing, installing, and incorporating all materials and equipment into such construction; and may include related services such as testing, start-up, and commissioning, all as required by the Contract Documents.
48. *Work Change Directive*—A written directive to Contractor issued on or after the Effective Date of the Contract, signed by Owner and recommended by Engineer, ordering an addition, deletion, or revision in the Work. **Refer to SC →**

## 1.02 Terminology

- A. The words and terms discussed in the following paragraphs are not defined but, when used in the Bidding Requirements or Contract Documents, have the indicated meaning.
- B. *Intent of Certain Terms or Adjectives:*
  1. The Contract Documents include the terms “as allowed,” “as approved,” “as ordered,” “as directed” or terms of like effect or import to authorize an exercise of professional judgment by Engineer. In addition, the adjectives “reasonable,” “suitable,” “acceptable,” “proper,” “satisfactory,” or adjectives of like effect or import are used to describe an action or determination of Engineer as to the Work. It is intended that such exercise of professional judgment, action, or determination will be solely to evaluate, in general, the Work for compliance with the information in the Contract Documents and with the design concept of the Project as a functioning whole as shown or indicated in the Contract Documents (unless there is a specific statement indicating otherwise). The use of any such term or adjective is not intended to and shall not be effective to assign to Engineer any duty or authority to supervise or direct the performance of the Work, or any duty or authority to undertake responsibility contrary to the provisions of Article 10 or any other provision of the Contract Documents.
- C. *Day:*
  1. The word “day” means a calendar day of 24 hours measured from midnight to the next midnight.



- D. *Defective:*
1. The word “defective,” when modifying the word “Work,” refers to Work that is unsatisfactory, faulty, or deficient in that it:
    - a. does not conform to the Contract Documents; or
    - b. does not meet the requirements of any applicable inspection, reference standard, test, or approval referred to in the Contract Documents; or
    - c. has been damaged prior to Engineer’s recommendation of final payment (unless responsibility for the protection thereof has been assumed by Owner at Substantial Completion in accordance with Paragraph 15.03 or 15.04).
- E. *Furnish, Install, Perform, Provide:*
1. The word “furnish,” when used in connection with services, materials, or equipment, shall mean to supply and deliver said services, materials, or equipment to the Site (or some other specified location) ready for use or installation and in usable or operable condition.
  2. The word “install,” when used in connection with services, materials, or equipment, shall mean to put into use or place in final position said services, materials, or equipment complete and ready for intended use.
  3. The words “perform” or “provide,” when used in connection with services, materials, or equipment, shall mean to furnish and install said services, materials, or equipment complete and ready for intended use.
  4. If the Contract Documents establish an obligation of Contractor with respect to specific services, materials, or equipment, but do not expressly use any of the four words “furnish,” “install,” “perform,” or “provide,” then Contractor shall furnish and install said services, materials, or equipment complete and ready for intended use.
- F. Unless stated otherwise in the Contract Documents, words or phrases that have a well-known technical or construction industry or trade meaning are used in the Contract Documents in accordance with such recognized meaning.

## ARTICLE 2 – PRELIMINARY MATTERS

### 2.01 *Delivery of Bonds and Evidence of Insurance*

- A. *Bonds:* When Contractor delivers the executed counterparts of the Agreement to Owner, Contractor shall also deliver to Owner such bonds as Contractor may be required to furnish. **[Refer to SC →]**
- B. *Evidence of Contractor’s Insurance:* When Contractor delivers the executed counterparts of the Agreement to Owner, Contractor shall also deliver to Owner, with copies to each named insured and additional insured (as identified in the Supplementary Conditions or elsewhere in the Contract), the certificates and other evidence of insurance required to be provided by Contractor in accordance with Article 6.
- C. *Evidence of Owner’s Insurance:* After receipt of the executed counterparts of the Agreement and all required bonds and insurance documentation, Owner shall promptly deliver to Contractor, with copies to each named insured and additional insured (as identified in the Supplementary Conditions or otherwise), the certificates and other evidence of insurance required to be provided by Owner under Article 6.

### 2.02 *Copies of Documents*

- A. Owner shall furnish to Contractor four printed copies of the Contract (including one fully executed counterpart of the Agreement), and one copy in electronic portable document format (PDF). Additional printed copies will be furnished upon request at the cost of reproduction. **[Refer to SC →]**

- B. Owner shall maintain and safeguard at least one original printed record version of the Contract, including Drawings and Specifications signed and sealed by Engineer and other design professionals. Owner shall make such original printed record version of the Contract available to Contractor for review. Owner may delegate the responsibilities under this provision to Engineer.

#### 2.03 *Before Starting Construction*

- A. *Preliminary Schedules:* Within 10 days after the Effective Date of the Contract (or as otherwise specifically required by the Contract Documents), Contractor shall submit to Engineer for timely review:
  - 1. a preliminary Progress Schedule indicating the times (numbers of days or dates) for starting and completing the various stages of the Work, including any Milestones specified in the Contract;
  - 2. a preliminary Schedule of Submittals; and
  - 3. a preliminary Schedule of Values for all of the Work which includes quantities and prices of items which when added together equal the Contract Price and subdivides the Work into component parts in sufficient detail to serve as the basis for progress payments during performance of the Work. Such prices will include an appropriate amount of overhead and profit applicable to each item of Work.

#### 2.04 *Preconstruction Conference; Designation of Authorized Representatives*

- A. Before any Work at the Site is started, a conference attended by Owner, Contractor, Engineer, and others as appropriate will be held to establish a working understanding among the parties as to the Work and to discuss the schedules referred to in Paragraph 2.03.A, procedures for handling Shop Drawings, Samples, and other submittals, processing Applications for Payment, electronic or digital transmittals, and maintaining required records.
- B. At this conference Owner and Contractor each shall designate, in writing, a specific individual to act as its authorized representative with respect to the services and responsibilities under the Contract. Such individuals shall have the authority to transmit and receive information, render decisions relative to the Contract, and otherwise act on behalf of each respective party.

#### 2.05 *Initial Acceptance of Schedules*

- A. At least 10 days before submission of the first Application for Payment a conference, attended by Contractor, Engineer, and others as appropriate, will be held to review for acceptability to Engineer as provided below the schedules submitted in accordance with Paragraph 2.03.A. Contractor shall have an additional 10 days to make corrections and adjustments and to complete and resubmit the schedules. No progress payment shall be made to Contractor until acceptable schedules are submitted to Engineer.
  - 1. The Progress Schedule will be acceptable to Engineer if it provides an orderly progression of the Work to completion within the Contract Times. Such acceptance will not impose on Engineer responsibility for the Progress Schedule, for sequencing, scheduling, or progress of the Work, nor interfere with or relieve Contractor from Contractor's full responsibility therefor. **[ Refer to SC → ]**
  - 2. Contractor's Schedule of Submittals will be acceptable to Engineer if it provides a workable arrangement for reviewing and processing the required submittals.
  - 3. Contractor's Schedule of Values will be acceptable to Engineer as to form and substance if it provides a reasonable allocation of the Contract Price to the component parts of the Work.

#### 2.06 *Electronic Transmittals*

- A. Except as otherwise stated elsewhere in the Contract, the Owner, Engineer, and Contractor may transmit, and shall accept, Project-related correspondence, text, data, documents,

drawings, information, and graphics, including but not limited to Shop Drawings and other submittals, in electronic media or digital format, either directly, or through access to a secure Project website.

- B. If the Contract does not establish protocols for electronic or digital transmittals, then Owner, Engineer, and Contractor shall jointly develop such protocols.
- C. When transmitting items in electronic media or digital format, the transmitting party makes no representations as to long term compatibility, usability, or readability of the items resulting from the recipient's use of software application packages, operating systems, or computer hardware differing from those used in the drafting or transmittal of the items, or from those established in applicable transmittal protocols.

### ARTICLE 3 – DOCUMENTS: INTENT, REQUIREMENTS, REUSE

#### 3.01 *Intent*

- A. The Contract Documents are complementary; what is required by one is as binding as if required by all.
- B. It is the intent of the Contract Documents to describe a functionally complete project (or part thereof) to be constructed in accordance with the Contract Documents.
- C. Unless otherwise stated in the Contract Documents, if there is a discrepancy between the electronic or digital versions of the Contract Documents (including any printed copies derived from such electronic or digital versions) and the printed record version, the printed record version shall govern.
- D. The Contract supersedes prior negotiations, representations, and agreements, whether written or oral.
- E. Engineer will issue clarifications and interpretations of the Contract Documents as provided herein. **[Refer to SC →]**

#### 3.02 *Reference Standards*

- A. Standards Specifications, Codes, Laws and Regulations
  - 1. Reference in the Contract Documents to standard specifications, manuals, reference standards, or codes of any technical society, organization, or association, or to Laws or Regulations, whether such reference be specific or by implication, shall mean the standard specification, manual, reference standard, code, or Laws or Regulations in effect at the time of opening of Bids (or on the Effective Date of the Contract if there were no Bids), except as may be otherwise specifically stated in the Contract Documents.
  - 2. No provision of any such standard specification, manual, reference standard, or code, or any instruction of a Supplier, shall be effective to change the duties or responsibilities of Owner, Contractor, or Engineer, or any of their subcontractors, consultants, agents, or employees, from those set forth in the part of the Contract Documents prepared by or for Engineer. No such provision or instruction shall be effective to assign to Owner, Engineer, or any of their officers, directors, members, partners, employees, agents, consultants, or subcontractors, any duty or authority to supervise or direct the performance of the Work or any duty or authority to undertake responsibility inconsistent with the provisions of the part of the Contract Documents prepared by or for Engineer.

#### 3.03 *Reporting and Resolving Discrepancies*

- A. *Reporting Discrepancies:*
  - 1. *Contractor's Verification of Figures and Field Measurements:* Before undertaking each part of the Work, Contractor shall carefully study the Contract Documents, and check and verify pertinent figures and dimensions therein, particularly with respect to

applicable field measurements. Contractor shall promptly report in writing to Engineer any conflict, error, ambiguity, or discrepancy that Contractor discovers, or has actual knowledge of, and shall not proceed with any Work affected thereby until the conflict, error, ambiguity, or discrepancy is resolved, by a clarification or interpretation by Engineer, or by an amendment or supplement to the Contract Documents issued pursuant to Paragraph 11.01. **[ Refer to SC → ]**

2. *Contractor's Review of Contract Documents:* If, before or during the performance of the Work, Contractor discovers any conflict, error, ambiguity, or discrepancy within the Contract Documents, or between the Contract Documents and (a) any applicable Law or Regulation, (b) actual field conditions, (c) any standard specification, manual, reference standard, or code, or (d) any instruction of any Supplier, then Contractor shall promptly report it to Engineer in writing. Contractor shall not proceed with the Work affected thereby (except in an emergency as required by Paragraph 7.15) until the conflict, error, ambiguity, or discrepancy is resolved, by a clarification or interpretation by Engineer, or by an amendment or supplement to the Contract Documents issued pursuant to Paragraph 11.01.
3. Contractor shall not be liable to Owner or Engineer for failure to report any conflict, error, ambiguity, or discrepancy in the Contract Documents unless Contractor had actual knowledge thereof.

**B. *Resolving Discrepancies:***

1. Except as may be otherwise specifically stated in the Contract Documents, the provisions of the part of the Contract Documents prepared by or for Engineer shall take precedence in resolving any conflict, error, ambiguity, or discrepancy between such provisions of the Contract Documents and:
  - a. the provisions of any standard specification, manual, reference standard, or code, or the instruction of any Supplier (whether or not specifically incorporated by reference as a Contract Document); or
  - b. the provisions of any Laws or Regulations applicable to the performance of the Work (unless such an interpretation of the provisions of the Contract Documents would result in violation of such Law or Regulation).

**3.04 *Requirements of the Contract Documents***

- A. During the performance of the Work and until final payment, Contractor and Owner shall submit to the Engineer all matters in question concerning the requirements of the Contract Documents (sometimes referred to as requests for information or interpretation—RFIs), or relating to the acceptability of the Work under the Contract Documents, as soon as possible after such matters arise. Engineer will be the initial interpreter of the requirements of the Contract Documents, and judge of the acceptability of the Work thereunder.
- B. Engineer will, with reasonable promptness, render a written clarification, interpretation, or decision on the issue submitted, or initiate an amendment or supplement to the Contract Documents. Engineer's written clarification, interpretation, or decision will be final and binding on Contractor, unless it appeals by submitting a Change Proposal, and on Owner, unless it appeals by filing a Claim.
- C. If a submitted matter in question concerns terms and conditions of the Contract Documents that do not involve (1) the performance or acceptability of the Work under the Contract Documents, (2) the design (as set forth in the Drawings, Specifications, or otherwise), or (3) other engineering or technical matters, then Engineer will promptly give written notice to Owner and Contractor that Engineer is unable to provide a decision or interpretation. If Owner and Contractor are unable to agree on resolution of such a matter in question, either party may pursue resolution as provided in Article 12.

### 3.05 *Reuse of Documents*

- A. Contractor and its Subcontractors and Suppliers shall not:
  - 1. have or acquire any title to or ownership rights in any of the Drawings, Specifications, or other documents (or copies of any thereof) prepared by or bearing the seal of Engineer or its consultants, including electronic media editions, or reuse any such Drawings, Specifications, other documents, or copies thereof on extensions of the Project or any other project without written consent of Owner and Engineer and specific written verification or adaptation by Engineer; or
  - 2. have or acquire any title or ownership rights in any other Contract Documents, reuse any such Contract Documents for any purpose without Owner's express written consent, or violate any copyrights pertaining to such Contract Documents.
- B. The prohibitions of this Paragraph 3.05 will survive final payment, or termination of the Contract. Nothing herein shall preclude Contractor from retaining copies of the Contract Documents for record purposes.

## **ARTICLE 4 – COMMENCEMENT AND PROGRESS OF THE WORK**

### 4.01 *Commencement of Contract Times; Notice to Proceed*

- A. The Contract Times will commence to run on the thirtieth day after the Effective Date of the Contract or, if a Notice to Proceed is given, on the day indicated in the Notice to Proceed. A Notice to Proceed may be given at any time within 30 days after the Effective Date of the Contract. In no event will the Contract Times commence to run later than the sixtieth day after the day of Bid opening or the thirtieth day after the Effective Date of the Contract, whichever date is earlier.

### 4.02 *Starting the Work*

- A. Contractor shall start to perform the Work on the date when the Contract Times commence to run. No Work shall be done at the Site prior to such date.

### 4.03 *Reference Points*

- A. Owner shall provide engineering surveys to establish reference points for construction which in Engineer's judgment are necessary to enable Contractor to proceed with the Work. Contractor shall be responsible for laying out the Work, shall protect and preserve the established reference points and property monuments, and shall make no changes or relocations without the prior written approval of Owner. Contractor shall report to Engineer whenever any reference point or property monument is lost or destroyed or requires relocation because of necessary changes in grades or locations, and shall be responsible for the accurate replacement or relocation of such reference points or property monuments by professionally qualified personnel.

### 4.04 *Progress Schedule*

- A. Contractor shall adhere to the Progress Schedule established in accordance with Paragraph 2.05 as it may be adjusted from time to time as provided below.
  - 1. Contractor shall submit to Engineer for acceptance (to the extent indicated in Paragraph 2.05) proposed adjustments in the Progress Schedule that will not result in changing the Contract Times.
  - 2. Proposed adjustments in the Progress Schedule that will change the Contract Times shall be submitted in accordance with the requirements of Article 11.
- B. Contractor shall carry on the Work and adhere to the Progress Schedule during all disputes or disagreements with Owner. No Work shall be delayed or postponed pending resolution of any disputes or disagreements, or during any appeal process, except as permitted by Paragraph 16.04, or as Owner and Contractor may otherwise agree in writing.

#### 4.05 *Delays in Contractor's Progress*

- A. If Owner, Engineer, or anyone for whom Owner is responsible, delays, disrupts, or interferes with the performance or progress of the Work, then Contractor shall be entitled to an equitable adjustment in the Contract Times and Contract Price. Contractor's entitlement to an adjustment of the Contract Times is conditioned on such adjustment being essential to Contractor's ability to complete the Work within the Contract Times.
- B. Contractor shall not be entitled to an adjustment in Contract Price or Contract Times for delay, disruption, or interference caused by or within the control of Contractor. Delay, disruption, and interference attributable to and within the control of a Subcontractor or Supplier shall be deemed to be within the control of Contractor.
- C. If Contractor's performance or progress is delayed, disrupted, or interfered with by unanticipated causes not the fault of and beyond the control of Owner, Contractor, and those for which they are responsible, then Contractor shall be entitled to an equitable adjustment in Contract Times. Contractor's entitlement to an adjustment of the Contract Times is conditioned on such adjustment being essential to Contractor's ability to complete the Work within the Contract Times. Such an adjustment shall be Contractor's sole and exclusive remedy for the delays, disruption, and interference described in this paragraph. Causes of delay, disruption, or interference that may give rise to an adjustment in Contract Times under this paragraph include but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. severe and unavoidable natural catastrophes such as fires, floods, epidemics, and earthquakes;
  - 2. abnormal weather conditions;
  - 3. acts or failures to act of utility owners (other than those performing other work at or adjacent to the Site by arrangement with the Owner, as contemplated in Article 8); and
  - 4. acts of war or terrorism.
- D. Delays, disruption, and interference to the performance or progress of the Work resulting from the existence of a differing subsurface or physical condition, an Underground Facility that was not shown or indicated by the Contract Documents, or not shown or indicated with reasonable accuracy, and those resulting from Hazardous Environmental Conditions, are governed by Article 5.
- E. Paragraph 8.03 governs delays, disruption, and interference to the performance or progress of the Work resulting from the performance of certain other work at or adjacent to the Site.
- F. Contractor shall not be entitled to an adjustment in Contract Price or Contract Times for any delay, disruption, or interference if such delay is concurrent with a delay, disruption, or interference caused by or within the control of Contractor.
- G. Contractor must submit any Change Proposal seeking an adjustment in Contract Price or Contract Times under this paragraph within 30 days of the commencement of the delaying, disrupting, or interfering event.

### **ARTICLE 5 – AVAILABILITY OF LANDS; SUBSURFACE AND PHYSICAL CONDITIONS; HAZARDOUS ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS**

#### 5.01 *Availability of Lands*

- A. Owner shall furnish the Site. Owner shall notify Contractor of any encumbrances or restrictions not of general application but specifically related to use of the Site with which Contractor must comply in performing the Work.
- B. Upon reasonable written request, Owner shall furnish Contractor with a current statement of record legal title and legal description of the lands upon which permanent improvements are to be made and Owner's interest therein as necessary for giving notice of or filing a

mechanic's or construction lien against such lands in accordance with applicable Laws and Regulations.

- C. Contractor shall provide for all additional lands and access thereto that may be required for temporary construction facilities or storage of materials and equipment.

## 5.02 *Use of Site and Other Areas*

### A. *Limitation on Use of Site and Other Areas:*

1. Contractor shall confine construction equipment, temporary construction facilities, the storage of materials and equipment, and the operations of workers to the Site, adjacent areas that Contractor has arranged to use through construction easements or otherwise, and other adjacent areas permitted by Laws and Regulations, and shall not unreasonably encumber the Site and such other adjacent areas with construction equipment or other materials or equipment. Contractor shall assume full responsibility for (a) damage to the Site; (b) damage to any such other adjacent areas used for Contractor's operations; (c) damage to any other adjacent land or areas; and (d) for injuries and losses sustained by the owners or occupants of any such land or areas; provided that such damage or injuries result from the performance of the Work or from other actions or conduct of the Contractor or those for which Contractor is responsible.

2. If a damage or injury claim is made by the owner or occupant of any such land or area because of the performance of the Work, or because of other actions or conduct of the Contractor or those for which Contractor is responsible, Contractor shall (a) take immediate corrective or remedial action as required by Paragraph 7.12, or otherwise; (b) promptly attempt to settle the claim as to all parties through negotiations with such owner or occupant, or otherwise resolve the claim by arbitration or other dispute resolution proceeding, or at law; and (c) to the fullest extent permitted by Laws and Regulations, indemnify and hold harmless Owner and Engineer, and the officers, directors, members, partners, employees, agents, consultants and subcontractors of each and any of them from and against any such claim, and against all costs, losses, and damages (including but not limited to all fees and charges of engineers, architects, attorneys, and other professionals and all court or arbitration or other dispute resolution costs) arising out of or relating to any claim or action, legal or equitable, brought by any such owner or occupant against Owner, Engineer, or any other party indemnified hereunder to the extent caused directly or indirectly, in whole or in part by, or based upon, Contractor's performance of the Work, or because of other actions or conduct of the Contractor or those for which Contractor is responsible.

B. *Removal of Debris During Performance of the Work:* During the progress of the Work the Contractor shall keep the Site and other adjacent areas free from accumulations of waste materials, rubbish, and other debris. Removal and disposal of such waste materials, rubbish, and other debris shall conform to applicable Laws and Regulations.

C. *Cleaning:* Prior to Substantial Completion of the Work Contractor shall clean the Site and the Work and make it ready for utilization by Owner. At the completion of the Work Contractor shall remove from the Site and adjacent areas all tools, appliances, construction equipment and machinery, and surplus materials and shall restore to original condition all property not designated for alteration by the Contract Documents.

D. *Loading of Structures:* Contractor shall not load nor permit any part of any structure to be loaded in any manner that will endanger the structure, nor shall Contractor subject any part of the Work or adjacent structures or land to stresses or pressures that will endanger them.

**[Refer to SC →]**

## 5.03 *Subsurface and Physical Conditions*

### A. *Reports and Drawings:* The Supplementary Conditions identify:

1. those reports known to Owner of explorations and tests of subsurface conditions at or adjacent to the Site;

2. those drawings known to Owner of physical conditions relating to existing surface or subsurface structures at the Site (except Underground Facilities); and
  3. Technical Data contained in such reports and drawings.
- B. *Reliance by Contractor on Technical Data Authorized:* Contractor may rely upon the accuracy of the Technical Data expressly identified in the Supplementary Conditions with respect to such reports and drawings, but such reports and drawings are not Contract Documents. If no such express identification has been made, then Contractor may rely upon the accuracy of the Technical Data (as defined in Article 1) contained in any geotechnical or environmental report prepared for the Project and made available to Contractor. Except for such reliance on Technical Data, Contractor may not rely upon or make any claim against Owner or Engineer, or any of their officers, directors, members, partners, employees, agents, consultants, or subcontractors, with respect to:
1. the completeness of such reports and drawings for Contractor's purposes, including, but not limited to, any aspects of the means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures of construction to be employed by Contractor, and safety precautions and programs incident thereto; or
  2. other data, interpretations, opinions, and information contained in such reports or shown or indicated in such drawings; or
  3. any Contractor interpretation of or conclusion drawn from any Technical Data or any such other data, interpretations, opinions, or information.

**[Refer to SC →]**

#### 5.04 *Differing Subsurface or Physical Conditions*

- A. *Notice by Contractor:* If Contractor believes that any subsurface or physical condition that is uncovered or revealed at the Site either:
1. is of such a nature as to establish that any Technical Data on which Contractor is entitled to rely as provided in Paragraph 5.03 is materially inaccurate; or
  2. is of such a nature as to require a change in the Drawings or Specifications; or
  3. differs materially from that shown or indicated in the Contract Documents; or
  4. is of an unusual nature, and differs materially from conditions ordinarily encountered and generally recognized as inherent in work of the character provided for in the Contract Documents;

then Contractor shall, promptly after becoming aware thereof and before further disturbing the subsurface or physical conditions or performing any Work in connection therewith (except in an emergency as required by Paragraph 7.15), notify Owner and Engineer in writing about such condition. Contractor shall not further disturb such condition or perform any Work in connection therewith (except with respect to an emergency) until receipt of a written statement permitting Contractor to do so.

- B. *Engineer's Review:* After receipt of written notice as required by the preceding paragraph, Engineer will promptly review the subsurface or physical condition in question; determine the necessity of Owner's obtaining additional exploration or tests with respect to the condition; conclude whether the condition falls within any one or more of the differing site condition categories in Paragraph 5.04.A above; obtain any pertinent cost or schedule information from Contractor; prepare recommendations to Owner regarding the Contractor's resumption of Work in connection with the subsurface or physical condition in question and the need for any change in the Drawings or Specifications; and advise Owner in writing of Engineer's findings, conclusions, and recommendations.
- C. *Owner's Statement to Contractor Regarding Site Condition:* After receipt of Engineer's written findings, conclusions, and recommendations, Owner shall issue a written statement to Contractor (with a copy to Engineer) regarding the subsurface or physical condition in



question, addressing the resumption of Work in connection with such condition, indicating whether any change in the Drawings or Specifications will be made, and adopting or rejecting Engineer's written findings, conclusions, and recommendations, in whole or in part.

D. *Possible Price and Times Adjustments:*

1. Contractor shall be entitled to an equitable adjustment in Contract Price or Contract Times, or both, to the extent that the existence of a differing subsurface or physical condition, or any related delay, disruption, or interference, causes an increase or decrease in Contractor's cost of, or time required for, performance of the Work; subject, however, to the following:
  - a. such condition must fall within any one or more of the categories described in Paragraph 5.04.A;
  - b. with respect to Work that is paid for on a unit price basis, any adjustment in Contract Price will be subject to the provisions of Paragraph 13.03; and,
  - c. Contractor's entitlement to an adjustment of the Contract Times is conditioned on such adjustment being essential to Contractor's ability to complete the Work within the Contract Times.
2. Contractor shall not be entitled to any adjustment in the Contract Price or Contract Times with respect to a subsurface or physical condition if:
  - a. Contractor knew of the existence of such condition at the time Contractor made a commitment to Owner with respect to Contract Price and Contract Times by the submission of a Bid or becoming bound under a negotiated contract, or otherwise; or
  - b. the existence of such condition reasonably could have been discovered or revealed as a result of any examination, investigation, exploration, test, or study of the Site and contiguous areas expressly required by the Bidding Requirements or Contract Documents to be conducted by or for Contractor prior to Contractor's making such commitment; or
  - c. Contractor failed to give the written notice as required by Paragraph 5.04.A.
3. If Owner and Contractor agree regarding Contractor's entitlement to and the amount or extent of any adjustment in the Contract Price or Contract Times, or both, then any such adjustment shall be set forth in a Change Order.
4. Contractor may submit a Change Proposal regarding its entitlement to or the amount or extent of any adjustment in the Contract Price or Contract Times, or both, no later than 30 days after Owner's issuance of the Owner's written statement to Contractor regarding the subsurface or physical condition in question.

5.05 *Underground Facilities*

- A. *Contractor's Responsibilities:* The information and data shown or indicated in the Contract Documents with respect to existing Underground Facilities at or adjacent to the Site is based on information and data furnished to Owner or Engineer by the owners of such Underground Facilities, including Owner, or by others. Unless it is otherwise expressly provided in the Supplementary Conditions:
1. Owner and Engineer do not warrant or guarantee the accuracy or completeness of any such information or data provided by others; and
  2. the cost of all of the following will be included in the Contract Price, and Contractor shall have full responsibility for:
    - a. reviewing and checking all information and data regarding existing Underground Facilities at the Site;

- b. locating all Underground Facilities shown or indicated in the Contract Documents as being at the Site;
  - c. coordination of the Work with the owners (including Owner) of such Underground Facilities, during construction; and
  - d. the safety and protection of all existing Underground Facilities at the Site, and repairing any damage thereto resulting from the Work.
- B. *Notice by Contractor:* If Contractor believes that an Underground Facility that is uncovered or revealed at the Site was not shown or indicated in the Contract Documents, or was not shown or indicated with reasonable accuracy, then Contractor shall, promptly after becoming aware thereof and before further disturbing conditions affected thereby or performing any Work in connection therewith (except in an emergency as required by Paragraph 7.15), identify the owner of such Underground Facility and give written notice to that owner and to Owner and Engineer.
- C. *Engineer's Review:* Engineer will promptly review the Underground Facility and conclude whether such Underground Facility was not shown or indicated in the Contract Documents, or was not shown or indicated with reasonable accuracy; obtain any pertinent cost or schedule information from Contractor; prepare recommendations to Owner regarding the Contractor's resumption of Work in connection with the Underground Facility in question; determine the extent, if any, to which a change is required in the Drawings or Specifications to reflect and document the consequences of the existence or location of the Underground Facility; and advise Owner in writing of Engineer's findings, conclusions, and recommendations. During such time, Contractor shall be responsible for the safety and protection of such Underground Facility.
- D. *Owner's Statement to Contractor Regarding Underground Facility:* After receipt of Engineer's written findings, conclusions, and recommendations, Owner shall issue a written statement to Contractor (with a copy to Engineer) regarding the Underground Facility in question, addressing the resumption of Work in connection with such Underground Facility, indicating whether any change in the Drawings or Specifications will be made, and adopting or rejecting Engineer's written findings, conclusions, and recommendations in whole or in part.
- E. *Possible Price and Times Adjustments:*
1. Contractor shall be entitled to an equitable adjustment in the Contract Price or Contract Times, or both, to the extent that any existing Underground Facility at the Site that was not shown or indicated in the Contract Documents, or was not shown or indicated with reasonable accuracy, or any related delay, disruption, or interference, causes an increase or decrease in Contractor's cost of, or time required for, performance of the Work; subject, however, to the following:
    - a. Contractor did not know of and could not reasonably have been expected to be aware of or to have anticipated the existence or actual location of the Underground Facility in question;
    - b. With respect to Work that is paid for on a unit price basis, any adjustment in Contract Price will be subject to the provisions of Paragraph 13.03;
    - c. Contractor's entitlement to an adjustment of the Contract Times is conditioned on such adjustment being essential to Contractor's ability to complete the Work within the Contract Times; and
    - d. Contractor gave the notice required in Paragraph 5.05.B.
  2. If Owner and Contractor agree regarding Contractor's entitlement to and the amount or extent of any adjustment in the Contract Price or Contract Times, or both, then any such adjustment shall be set forth in a Change Order.
  3. Contractor may submit a Change Proposal regarding its entitlement to or the amount or extent of any adjustment in the Contract Price or Contract Times, or both, no later than

30 days after Owner's issuance of the Owner's written statement to Contractor regarding the Underground Facility in question. **[Refer to SC →]**

5.06 *Hazardous Environmental Conditions at Site* **[Refer to SC →]**

- A. *Reports and Drawings*: The Supplementary Conditions identify:
1. those reports and drawings known to Owner relating to Hazardous Environmental Conditions that have been identified at or adjacent to the Site; and
  2. Technical Data contained in such reports and drawings.
- B. *Reliance by Contractor on Technical Data Authorized*: Contractor may rely upon the accuracy of the Technical Data expressly identified in the Supplementary Conditions with respect to such reports and drawings, but such reports and drawings are not Contract Documents. If no such express identification has been made, then Contractor may rely on the accuracy of the Technical Data (as defined in Article 1) contained in any geotechnical or environmental report prepared for the Project and made available to Contractor. Except for such reliance on Technical Data, Contractor may not rely upon or make any claim against Owner or Engineer, or any of their officers, directors, members, partners, employees, agents, consultants, or subcontractors with respect to:
1. the completeness of such reports and drawings for Contractor's purposes, including, but not limited to, any aspects of the means, methods, techniques, sequences and procedures of construction to be employed by Contractor and safety precautions and programs incident thereto; or
  2. other data, interpretations, opinions and information contained in such reports or shown or indicated in such drawings; or
  3. any Contractor interpretation of or conclusion drawn from any Technical Data or any such other data, interpretations, opinions or information.
- C. Contractor shall not be responsible for removing or remediating any Hazardous Environmental Condition encountered, uncovered, or revealed at the Site unless such removal or remediation is expressly identified in the Contract Documents to be within the scope of the Work.
- D. Contractor shall be responsible for controlling, containing, and duly removing all Constituents of Concern brought to the Site by Contractor, Subcontractors, Suppliers, or anyone else for whom Contractor is responsible, and for any associated costs; and for the costs of removing and remediating any Hazardous Environmental Condition created by the presence of any such Constituents of Concern.
- E. If Contractor encounters, uncovers, or reveals a Hazardous Environmental Condition whose removal or remediation is not expressly identified in the Contract Documents as being within the scope of the Work, or if Contractor or anyone for whom Contractor is responsible creates a Hazardous Environmental Condition, then Contractor shall immediately: (1) secure or otherwise isolate such condition; (2) stop all Work in connection with such condition and in any area affected thereby (except in an emergency as required by Paragraph 7.15); and (3) notify Owner and Engineer (and promptly thereafter confirm such notice in writing). Owner shall promptly consult with Engineer concerning the necessity for Owner to retain a qualified expert to evaluate such condition or take corrective action, if any. Promptly after consulting with Engineer, Owner shall take such actions as are necessary to permit Owner to timely obtain required permits and provide Contractor the written notice required by Paragraph 5.06.F. If Contractor or anyone for whom Contractor is responsible created the Hazardous Environmental Condition in question, then Owner may remove and remediate the Hazardous Environmental Condition, and impose a set-off against payments to account for the associated costs.
- F. Contractor shall not resume Work in connection with such Hazardous Environmental Condition or in any affected area until after Owner has obtained any required permits related thereto, and delivered written notice to Contractor either (1) specifying that such condition

and any affected area is or has been rendered safe for the resumption of Work, or (2) specifying any special conditions under which such Work may be resumed safely.

- G. If Owner and Contractor cannot agree as to entitlement to or on the amount or extent, if any, of any adjustment in Contract Price or Contract Times, or both, as a result of such Work stoppage or such special conditions under which Work is agreed to be resumed by Contractor, then within 30 days of Owner's written notice regarding the resumption of Work, Contractor may submit a Change Proposal, or Owner may impose a set-off.
- H. If after receipt of such written notice Contractor does not agree to resume such Work based on a reasonable belief it is unsafe, or does not agree to resume such Work under such special conditions, then Owner may order the portion of the Work that is in the area affected by such condition to be deleted from the Work, following the contractual change procedures in Article 11. Owner may have such deleted portion of the Work performed by Owner's own forces or others in accordance with Article 8.
- I. To the fullest extent permitted by Laws and Regulations, Owner shall indemnify and hold harmless Contractor, Subcontractors, and Engineer, and the officers, directors, members, partners, employees, agents, consultants, and subcontractors of each and any of them from and against all claims, costs, losses, and damages (including but not limited to all fees and charges of engineers, architects, attorneys, and other professionals and all court or arbitration or other dispute resolution costs) arising out of or relating to a Hazardous Environmental Condition, provided that such Hazardous Environmental Condition (1) was not shown or indicated in the Drawings, Specifications, or other Contract Documents, identified as Technical Data entitled to limited reliance pursuant to Paragraph 5.06.B, or identified in the Contract Documents to be included within the scope of the Work, and (2) was not created by Contractor or by anyone for whom Contractor is responsible. Nothing in this Paragraph 5.06.I shall obligate Owner to indemnify any individual or entity from and against the consequences of that individual's or entity's own negligence.
- J. To the fullest extent permitted by Laws and Regulations, Contractor shall indemnify and hold harmless Owner and Engineer, and the officers, directors, members, partners, employees, agents, consultants, and subcontractors of each and any of them from and against all claims, costs, losses, and damages (including but not limited to all fees and charges of engineers, architects, attorneys, and other professionals and all court or arbitration or other dispute resolution costs) arising out of or relating to the failure to control, contain, or remove a Constituent of Concern brought to the Site by Contractor or by anyone for whom Contractor is responsible, or to a Hazardous Environmental Condition created by Contractor or by anyone for whom Contractor is responsible. Nothing in this Paragraph 5.06.J shall obligate Contractor to indemnify any individual or entity from and against the consequences of that individual's or entity's own negligence.
- K. The provisions of Paragraphs 5.03, 5.04, and 5.05 do not apply to the presence of Constituents of Concern or to a Hazardous Environmental Condition uncovered or revealed at the Site.

## **ARTICLE 6 – BONDS AND INSURANCE**

### **6.01 *Performance, Payment, and Other Bonds***

- A. Contractor shall furnish a performance bond and a payment bond, each in an amount at least equal to the Contract Price, as security for the faithful performance and payment of all of Contractor's obligations under the Contract. These bonds shall remain in effect until one year after the date when final payment becomes due or until completion of the correction period specified in Paragraph 15.08, whichever is later, except as provided otherwise by Laws or Regulations, the Supplementary Conditions, or other specific provisions of the Contract. Contractor shall also furnish such other bonds as are required by the Supplementary Conditions or other specific provisions of the Contract.
- B. All bonds shall be in the form prescribed by the Contract except as provided otherwise by Laws or Regulations, and shall be executed by such sureties as are named in "Companies

Holding Certificates of Authority as Acceptable Sureties on Federal Bonds and as Acceptable Reinsuring Companies” as published in Circular 570 (as amended and supplemented) by the Financial Management Service, Surety Bond Branch, U.S. Department of the Treasury. A bond signed by an agent or attorney-in-fact must be accompanied by a certified copy of that individual’s authority to bind the surety. The evidence of authority shall show that it is effective on the date the agent or attorney-in-fact signed the accompanying bond.

- C. Contractor shall obtain the required bonds from surety companies that are duly licensed or authorized in the jurisdiction in which the Project is located to issue bonds in the required amounts.
- D. If the surety on a bond furnished by Contractor is declared bankrupt or becomes insolvent, or its right to do business is terminated in any state or jurisdiction where any part of the Project is located, or the surety ceases to meet the requirements above, then Contractor shall promptly notify Owner and Engineer and shall, within 20 days after the event giving rise to such notification, provide another bond and surety, both of which shall comply with the bond and surety requirements above.
- E. If Contractor has failed to obtain a required bond, Owner may exclude the Contractor from the Site and exercise Owner’s termination rights under Article 16.
- F. Upon request, Owner shall provide a copy of the payment bond to any Subcontractor, Supplier, or other person or entity claiming to have furnished labor or materials used in the performance of the Work.

#### 6.02 *Insurance—General Provisions*

- A. Owner and Contractor shall obtain and maintain insurance as required in this Article and in the Supplementary Conditions.
- B. All insurance required by the Contract to be purchased and maintained by Owner or Contractor shall be obtained from insurance companies that are duly licensed or authorized, in the state or jurisdiction in which the Project is located, to issue insurance policies for the required limits and coverages. Unless a different standard is indicated in the Supplementary Conditions, all companies that provide insurance policies required under this Contract shall have an A.M. Best rating of A-VII or better.
- C. Contractor shall deliver to Owner, with copies to each named insured and additional insured (as identified in this Article, in the Supplementary Conditions, or elsewhere in the Contract), certificates of insurance establishing that Contractor has obtained and is maintaining the policies, coverages, and endorsements required by the Contract. Upon request by Owner or any other insured, Contractor shall also furnish other evidence of such required insurance, including but not limited to copies of policies and endorsements, and documentation of applicable self-insured retentions and deductibles. Contractor may block out (redact) any confidential premium or pricing information contained in any policy or endorsement furnished under this provision.
- D. Owner shall deliver to Contractor, with copies to each named insured and additional insured (as identified in this Article, the Supplementary Conditions, or elsewhere in the Contract), certificates of insurance establishing that Owner has obtained and is maintaining the policies, coverages, and endorsements required of Owner by the Contract (if any). Upon request by Contractor or any other insured, Owner shall also provide other evidence of such required insurance (if any), including but not limited to copies of policies and endorsements, and documentation of applicable self-insured retentions and deductibles. Owner may block out (redact) any confidential premium or pricing information contained in any policy or endorsement furnished under this provision.
- E. Failure of Owner or Contractor to demand such certificates or other evidence of the other party’s full compliance with these insurance requirements, or failure of Owner or Contractor to identify a deficiency in compliance from the evidence provided, shall not be construed as a waiver of the other party’s obligation to obtain and maintain such insurance.

- F. If either party does not purchase or maintain all of the insurance required of such party by the Contract, such party shall notify the other party in writing of such failure to purchase prior to the start of the Work, or of such failure to maintain prior to any change in the required coverage.
- G. If Contractor has failed to obtain and maintain required insurance, Owner may exclude the Contractor from the Site, impose an appropriate set-off against payment, and exercise Owner's termination rights under Article 16.
- H. Without prejudice to any other right or remedy, if a party has failed to obtain required insurance, the other party may elect to obtain equivalent insurance to protect such other party's interests at the expense of the party who was required to provide such coverage, and the Contract Price shall be adjusted accordingly.
- I. Owner does not represent that insurance coverage and limits established in this Contract necessarily will be adequate to protect Contractor or Contractor's interests.
- J. The insurance and insurance limits required herein shall not be deemed as a limitation on Contractor's liability under the indemnities granted to Owner and other individuals and entities in the Contract.

### 6.03 Contractor's Insurance

- A. *Workers' Compensation:* Contractor shall purchase and maintain workers' compensation and employer's liability insurance for:
  - 1. claims under workers' compensation, disability benefits, and other similar employee benefit acts.
  - 2. United States Longshoreman and Harbor Workers' Compensation Act and Jones Act coverage (if applicable).
  - 3. claims for damages because of bodily injury, occupational sickness or disease, or death of Contractor's employees (by stop-gap endorsement in monopolist worker's compensation states).
  - 4. Foreign voluntary worker compensation (if applicable).
- B. *Commercial General Liability—Claims Covered:* Contractor shall purchase and maintain commercial general liability insurance, covering all operations by or on behalf of Contractor, on an occurrence basis, against:
  - 1. claims for damages because of bodily injury, sickness or disease, or death of any person other than Contractor's employees.
  - 2. claims for damages insured by reasonably available personal injury liability coverage.
  - 3. claims for damages, other than to the Work itself, because of injury to or destruction of tangible property wherever located, including loss of use resulting therefrom.
- C. *Commercial General Liability—Form and Content:* Contractor's commercial liability policy shall be written on a 1996 (or later) ISO commercial general liability form (occurrence form) and include the following coverages and endorsements:
  - 1. Products and completed operations coverage:
    - a. Such insurance shall be maintained for three years after final payment.
    - b. Contractor shall furnish Owner and each other additional insured (as identified in the Supplementary Conditions or elsewhere in the Contract) evidence of continuation of such insurance at final payment and three years thereafter.
  - 2. Blanket contractual liability coverage, to the extent permitted by law, including but not limited to coverage of Contractor's contractual indemnity obligations in Paragraph 7.18.
  - 3. Broad form property damage coverage.

4. Severability of interest.
  5. Underground, explosion, and collapse coverage.
  6. Personal injury coverage.
  7. Additional insured endorsements that include both ongoing operations and products and completed operations coverage through ISO Endorsements CG 20 10 10 01 and CG 20 37 10 01 (together); or CG 20 10 07 04 and CG 20 37 07 04 (together); or their equivalent.
  8. For design professional additional insureds, ISO Endorsement CG 20 32 07 04, "Additional Insured—Engineers, Architects or Surveyors Not Engaged by the Named Insured" or its equivalent.
- D. *Automobile liability*: Contractor shall purchase and maintain automobile liability insurance against claims for damages because of bodily injury or death of any person or property damage arising out of the ownership, maintenance, or use of any motor vehicle. The automobile liability policy shall be written on an occurrence basis.
- E. *Umbrella or excess liability*: Contractor shall purchase and maintain umbrella or excess liability insurance written over the underlying employer's liability, commercial general liability, and automobile liability insurance described in the paragraphs above. Subject to industry-standard exclusions, the coverage afforded shall follow form as to each and every one of the underlying policies.
- F. *Contractor's pollution liability insurance*: Contractor shall purchase and maintain a policy covering third-party injury and property damage claims, including clean-up costs, as a result of pollution conditions arising from Contractor's operations and completed operations. This insurance shall be maintained for no less than three years after final completion.
- G. *Additional insureds*: The Contractor's commercial general liability, automobile liability, umbrella or excess, and pollution liability policies shall include and list as additional insureds Owner and Engineer, and any individuals or entities identified in the Supplementary Conditions; include coverage for the respective officers, directors, members, partners, employees, agents, consultants, and subcontractors of each and any of all such additional insureds; and the insurance afforded to these additional insureds shall provide primary coverage for all claims covered thereby (including as applicable those arising from both ongoing and completed operations) on a non-contributory basis. Contractor shall obtain all necessary endorsements to support these requirements.
- H. *Contractor's professional liability insurance*: If Contractor will provide or furnish professional services under this Contract, through a delegation of professional design services or otherwise, then Contractor shall be responsible for purchasing and maintaining applicable professional liability insurance. This insurance shall provide protection against claims arising out of performance of professional design or related services, and caused by a negligent error, omission, or act for which the insured party is legally liable. It shall be maintained throughout the duration of the Contract and for a minimum of two years after Substantial Completion. If such professional design services are performed by a Subcontractor, and not by Contractor itself, then the requirements of this paragraph may be satisfied through the purchasing and maintenance of such insurance by such Subcontractor.
- I. *General provisions*: The policies of insurance required by this Paragraph 6.03 shall:
1. include at least the specific coverages provided in this Article.
  2. be written for not less than the limits of liability provided in this Article and in the Supplementary Conditions, or required by Laws or Regulations, whichever is greater.
  3. contain a provision or endorsement that the coverage afforded will not be canceled, materially changed, or renewal refused until at least 10 days prior written notice has been given to Contractor. Within three days of receipt of any such written notice,

Contractor shall provide a copy of the notice to Owner, Engineer, and each other insured under the policy. **[Refer to SC →]**

4. remain in effect at least until final payment (and longer if expressly required in this Article) and at all times thereafter when Contractor may be correcting, removing, or replacing defective Work as a warranty or correction obligation, or otherwise, or returning to the Site to conduct other tasks arising from the Contract Documents.
  5. be appropriate for the Work being performed and provide protection from claims that may arise out of or result from Contractor's performance of the Work and Contractor's other obligations under the Contract Documents, whether it is to be performed by Contractor, any Subcontractor or Supplier, or by anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them to perform any of the Work, or by anyone for whose acts any of them may be liable.
- J. The coverage requirements for specific policies of insurance must be met by such policies, and not by reference to excess or umbrella insurance provided in other policies.

**[Refer to SC →]**

#### 6.04 *Owner's Liability Insurance*

- A. In addition to the insurance required to be provided by Contractor under Paragraph 6.03, Owner, at Owner's option, may purchase and maintain at Owner's expense Owner's own liability insurance as will protect Owner against claims which may arise from operations under the Contract Documents.
- B. Owner's liability policies, if any, operate separately and independently from policies required to be provided by Contractor, and Contractor cannot rely upon Owner's liability policies for any of Contractor's obligations to the Owner, Engineer, or third parties.

#### 6.05 *Property Insurance*

- A. *Builder's Risk:* Unless otherwise provided in the Supplementary Conditions, Contractor shall purchase and maintain builder's risk insurance upon the Work on a completed value basis, in the amount of the full insurable replacement cost thereof (subject to such deductible amounts as may be provided in the Supplementary Conditions or required by Laws and Regulations). This insurance shall:
  1. include the Owner and Contractor as named insureds, and all Subcontractors, and any individuals or entities required by the Supplementary Conditions to be insured under such builder's risk policy, as insureds or named insureds. For purposes of the remainder of this Paragraph 6.05, Paragraphs 6.06 and 6.07, and any corresponding Supplementary Conditions, the parties required to be insured shall collectively be referred to as "insureds." **[Refer to SC →]**
  2. be written on a builder's risk "all risk" policy form that shall at least include insurance for physical loss or damage to the Work, temporary buildings, falsework, and materials and equipment in transit, and shall insure against at least the following perils or causes of loss: fire; lightning; windstorm; riot; civil commotion; terrorism; vehicle impact; aircraft; smoke; theft; vandalism and malicious mischief; mechanical breakdown, boiler explosion, and artificially generated electric current; earthquake; volcanic activity, and other earth movement; flood; collapse; explosion; debris removal; demolition occasioned by enforcement of Laws and Regulations; water damage (other than that caused by flood); and such other perils or causes of loss as may be specifically required by the Supplementary Conditions. If insurance against mechanical breakdown, boiler explosion, and artificially generated electric current; earthquake; volcanic activity, and other earth movement; or flood, are not commercially available under builder's risk policies, by endorsement or otherwise, such insurance may be provided through other insurance policies acceptable to Owner and Contractor. **[Refer to SC →]**
  3. cover, as insured property, at least the following: (a) the Work and all materials, supplies, machinery, apparatus, equipment, fixtures, and other property of a similar



nature that are to be incorporated into or used in the preparation, fabrication, construction, erection, or completion of the Work, including Owner-furnished or assigned property; (b) spare parts inventory required within the scope of the Contract; and (c) temporary works which are not intended to form part of the permanent constructed Work but which are intended to provide working access to the Site, or to the Work under construction, or which are intended to provide temporary support for the Work under construction, including scaffolding, form work, fences, shoring, falsework, and temporary structures.

4. cover expenses incurred in the repair or replacement of any insured property (including but not limited to fees and charges of engineers and architects).
  5. extend to cover damage or loss to insured property while in temporary storage at the Site or in a storage location outside the Site (but not including property stored at the premises of a manufacturer or Supplier).
  6. extend to cover damage or loss to insured property while in transit.
  7. allow for partial occupation or use of the Work by Owner, such that those portions of the Work that are not yet occupied or used by Owner shall remain covered by the builder's risk insurance.
  8. allow for the waiver of the insurer's subrogation rights, as set forth below.
  9. provide primary coverage for all losses and damages caused by the perils or causes of loss covered.
  10. not include a co-insurance clause.
  11. include an exception for ensuing losses from physical damage or loss with respect to any defective workmanship, design, or materials exclusions.
  12. include performance/hot testing and start-up.
  13. be maintained in effect, subject to the provisions herein regarding Substantial Completion and partial occupancy or use of the Work by Owner, until the Work is complete. **[refer to SC →]**
- B. *Notice of Cancellation or Change:* All the policies of insurance (and the certificates or other evidence thereof) required to be purchased and maintained in accordance with this Paragraph 6.05 will contain a provision or endorsement that the coverage afforded will not be canceled or materially changed or renewal refused until at least 10 days prior written notice has been given to the purchasing policyholder. Within three days of receipt of any such written notice, the purchasing policyholder shall provide a copy of the notice to each other insured.
- C. *Deductibles:* The purchaser of any required builder's risk or property insurance shall pay for costs not covered because of the application of a policy deductible.
- D. *Partial Occupancy or Use by Owner:* If Owner will occupy or use a portion or portions of the Work prior to Substantial Completion of all the Work as provided in Paragraph 15.04, then Owner (directly, if it is the purchaser of the builder's risk policy, or through Contractor) will provide notice of such occupancy or use to the builder's risk insurer. The builder's risk insurance shall not be canceled or permitted to lapse on account of any such partial use or occupancy; rather, those portions of the Work that are occupied or used by Owner may come off the builder's risk policy, while those portions of the Work not yet occupied or used by Owner shall remain covered by the builder's risk insurance.
- E. *Additional Insurance:* If Contractor elects to obtain other special insurance to be included in or supplement the builder's risk or property insurance policies provided under this Paragraph 6.05, it may do so at Contractor's expense.
- F. *Insurance of Other Property:* If the express insurance provisions of the Contract do not require or address the insurance of a property item or interest, such as tools, construction

equipment, or other personal property owned by Contractor, a Subcontractor, or an employee of Contractor or a Subcontractor, then the entity or individual owning such property item will be responsible for deciding whether to insure it, and if so in what amount.

#### 6.06 *Waiver of Rights*

- A. All policies purchased in accordance with Paragraph 6.05, expressly including the builder's risk policy, shall contain provisions to the effect that in the event of payment of any loss or damage the insurers will have no rights of recovery against any insureds thereunder, or against Engineer or its consultants, or their officers, directors, members, partners, employees, agents, consultants, or subcontractors. Owner and Contractor waive all rights against each other and the respective officers, directors, members, partners, employees, agents, consultants, and subcontractors of each and any of them, for all losses and damages caused by, arising out of, or resulting from any of the perils or causes of loss covered by such policies and any other property insurance applicable to the Work; and, in addition, waive all such rights against Engineer, its consultants, all Subcontractors, all individuals or entities identified in the Supplementary Conditions as insureds, and the officers, directors, members, partners, employees, agents, consultants, and subcontractors of each and any of them, under such policies for losses and damages so caused. None of the above waivers shall extend to the rights that any party making such waiver may have to the proceeds of insurance held by Owner or Contractor as trustee or fiduciary, or otherwise payable under any policy so issued.
- B. Owner waives all rights against Contractor, Subcontractors, and Engineer, and the officers, directors, members, partners, employees, agents, consultants and subcontractors of each and any of them, for:
  - 1. loss due to business interruption, loss of use, or other consequential loss extending beyond direct physical loss or damage to Owner's property or the Work caused by, arising out of, or resulting from fire or other perils whether or not insured by Owner; and
  - 2. loss or damage to the completed Project or part thereof caused by, arising out of, or resulting from fire or other insured peril or cause of loss covered by any property insurance maintained on the completed Project or part thereof by Owner during partial occupancy or use pursuant to Paragraph 15.04, after Substantial Completion pursuant to Paragraph 15.03, or after final payment pursuant to Paragraph 15.06.
- C. Any insurance policy maintained by Owner covering any loss, damage or consequential loss referred to in Paragraph 6.06.B shall contain provisions to the effect that in the event of payment of any such loss, damage, or consequential loss, the insurers will have no rights of recovery against Contractor, Subcontractors, or Engineer, or the officers, directors, members, partners, employees, agents, consultants, or subcontractors of each and any of them.
- D. Contractor shall be responsible for assuring that the agreement under which a Subcontractor performs a portion of the Work contains provisions whereby the Subcontractor waives all rights against Owner, Contractor, all individuals or entities identified in the Supplementary Conditions as insureds, the Engineer and its consultants, and the officers, directors, members, partners, employees, agents, consultants, and subcontractors of each and any of them, for all losses and damages caused by, arising out of, relating to, or resulting from any of the perils or causes of loss covered by builder's risk insurance and any other property insurance applicable to the Work.

#### 6.07 *Receipt and Application of Property Insurance Proceeds*

- A. Any insured loss under the builder's risk and other policies of insurance required by Paragraph 6.05 will be adjusted and settled with the named insured that purchased the policy. Such named insured shall act as fiduciary for the other insureds, and give notice to such other insureds that adjustment and settlement of a claim is in progress. Any other insured may state its position regarding a claim for insured loss in writing within 15 days after notice of such claim.

- B. Proceeds for such insured losses may be made payable by the insurer either jointly to multiple insureds, or to the named insured that purchased the policy in its own right and as fiduciary for other insureds, subject to the requirements of any applicable mortgage clause. A named insured receiving insurance proceeds under the builder's risk and other policies of insurance required by Paragraph 6.05 shall distribute such proceeds in accordance with such agreement as the parties in interest may reach, or as otherwise required under the dispute resolution provisions of this Contract or applicable Laws and Regulations.
- C. If no other special agreement is reached, the damaged Work shall be repaired or replaced, the money so received applied on account thereof, and the Work and the cost thereof covered by Change Order, if needed.

## ARTICLE 7 – CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES

### 7.01 *Supervision and Superintendence*

- A. Contractor shall supervise, inspect, and direct the Work competently and efficiently, devoting such attention thereto and applying such skills and expertise as may be necessary to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents. Contractor shall be solely responsible for the means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures of construction.
- B. At all times during the progress of the Work, Contractor shall assign a competent resident superintendent who shall not be replaced without written notice to Owner and Engineer except under extraordinary circumstances.

### 7.02 *Labor; Working Hours*

- A. Contractor shall provide competent, suitably qualified personnel to survey and lay out the Work and perform construction as required by the Contract Documents. Contractor shall at all times maintain good discipline and order at the Site.
- B. Except as otherwise required for the safety or protection of persons or the Work or property at the Site or adjacent thereto, and except as otherwise stated in the Contract Documents, all Work at the Site shall be performed during regular working hours, Monday through Friday. Contractor will not perform Work on a Saturday, Sunday, or any legal holiday. Contractor may perform Work outside regular working hours or on Saturdays, Sundays, or legal holidays only with Owner's written consent, which will not be unreasonably withheld.  
**[Refer to SC→]**

### 7.03 *Services, Materials, and Equipment*

- A. Unless otherwise specified in the Contract Documents, Contractor shall provide and assume full responsibility for all services, materials, equipment, labor, transportation, construction equipment and machinery, tools, appliances, fuel, power, light, heat, telephone, water, sanitary facilities, temporary facilities, and all other facilities and incidentals necessary for the performance, testing, start up, and completion of the Work, whether or not such items are specifically called for in the Contract Documents.
- B. All materials and equipment incorporated into the Work shall be of good quality and new, except as otherwise provided in the Contract Documents. All special warranties and guarantees required by the Specifications shall expressly run to the benefit of Owner. If required by Engineer, Contractor shall furnish satisfactory evidence (including reports of required tests) as to the source, kind, and quality of materials and equipment.
- C. All materials and equipment shall be stored, applied, installed, connected, erected, protected, used, cleaned, and conditioned in accordance with instructions of the applicable Supplier, except as otherwise may be provided in the Contract Documents.

### 7.04 *"Or Equals"*

- A. Whenever an item of material or equipment is specified or described in the Contract Documents by using the name of a proprietary item or the name of a particular Supplier, the

Contract Price has been based upon Contractor furnishing such item as specified. The specification or description of such an item is intended to establish the type, function, appearance, and quality required. Unless the specification or description contains or is followed by words reading that no like, equivalent, or "or equal" item is permitted, Contractor may request that Engineer authorize the use of other items of material or equipment, or items from other proposed suppliers under the circumstances described below.

1. If Engineer in its sole discretion determines that an item of material or equipment proposed by Contractor is functionally equal to that named and sufficiently similar so that no change in related Work will be required, Engineer shall deem it an "or equal" item. For the purposes of this paragraph, a proposed item of material or equipment will be considered functionally equal to an item so named if:
  - a. in the exercise of reasonable judgment Engineer determines that:
    - 1) it is at least equal in materials of construction, quality, durability, appearance, strength, and design characteristics;
    - 2) it will reliably perform at least equally well the function and achieve the results imposed by the design concept of the completed Project as a functioning whole;
    - 3) it has a proven record of performance and availability of responsive service; and
    - 4) it is not objectionable to Owner.
  - b. Contractor certifies that, if approved and incorporated into the Work:
    - 1) there will be no increase in cost to the Owner or increase in Contract Times; and
    - 2) it will conform substantially to the detailed requirements of the item named in the Contract Documents.
- B. *Contractor's Expense*: Contractor shall provide all data in support of any proposed "or equal" item at Contractor's expense.
- C. *Engineer's Evaluation and Determination*: Engineer will be allowed a reasonable time to evaluate each "or-equal" request. Engineer may require Contractor to furnish additional data about the proposed "or-equal" item. Engineer will be the sole judge of acceptability. No "or-equal" item will be ordered, furnished, installed, or utilized until Engineer's review is complete and Engineer determines that the proposed item is an "or-equal", which will be evidenced by an approved Shop Drawing or other written communication. Engineer will advise Contractor in writing of any negative determination. **[Refer to SC→]**
- D. *Effect of Engineer's Determination*: Neither approval nor denial of an "or-equal" request shall result in any change in Contract Price. The Engineer's denial of an "or-equal" request shall be final and binding, and may not be reversed through an appeal under any provision of the Contract Documents.
- E. *Treatment as a Substitution Request*: If Engineer determines that an item of material or equipment proposed by Contractor does not qualify as an "or-equal" item, Contractor may request that Engineer considered the proposed item as a substitute pursuant to Paragraph 7.05.

#### 7.05 Substitutes

- A. Unless the specification or description of an item of material or equipment required to be furnished under the Contract Documents contains or is followed by words reading that no substitution is permitted, Contractor may request that Engineer authorize the use of other items of material or equipment under the circumstances described below. To the extent possible such requests shall be made before commencement of related construction at the Site.

1. Contractor shall submit sufficient information as provided below to allow Engineer to determine if the item of material or equipment proposed is functionally equivalent to that named and an acceptable substitute therefor. Engineer will not accept requests for review of proposed substitute items of material or equipment from anyone other than Contractor.
2. The requirements for review by Engineer will be as set forth in Paragraph 7.05.B, as supplemented by the Specifications, and as Engineer may decide is appropriate under the circumstances.
3. Contractor shall make written application to Engineer for review of a proposed substitute item of material or equipment that Contractor seeks to furnish or use. The application:
  - a. shall certify that the proposed substitute item will:
    - 1) perform adequately the functions and achieve the results called for by the general design,
    - 2) be similar in substance to that specified, and
    - 3) be suited to the same use as that specified.
  - b. will state:
    - 1) the extent, if any, to which the use of the proposed substitute item will necessitate a change in Contract Times,
    - 2) whether use of the proposed substitute item in the Work will require a change in any of the Contract Documents (or in the provisions of any other direct contract with Owner for other work on the Project) to adapt the design to the proposed substitute item, and
    - 3) whether incorporation or use of the proposed substitute item in connection with the Work is subject to payment of any license fee or royalty.
  - c. will identify:
    - 1) all variations of the proposed substitute item from that specified, and
    - 2) available engineering, sales, maintenance, repair, and replacement services.
  - d. shall contain an itemized estimate of all costs or credits that will result directly or indirectly from use of such substitute item, including but not limited to changes in Contract Price, shared savings, costs of redesign, and claims of other contractors affected by any resulting change. **[Refer to SC→]**
- B. **Engineer's Evaluation and Determination:** Engineer will be allowed a reasonable time to evaluate each substitute request, and to obtain comments and direction from Owner. Engineer may require Contractor to furnish additional data about the proposed substitute item. Engineer will be the sole judge of acceptability. No substitute will be ordered, furnished, installed, or utilized until Engineer's review is complete and Engineer determines that the proposed item is an acceptable substitute. Engineer's determination will be evidenced by a Field Order or a proposed Change Order accounting for the substitution itself and all related impacts, including changes in Contract Price or Contract Times. Engineer will advise Contractor in writing of any negative determination. **[Refer to SC→]**
- C. **Special Guarantee:** Owner may require Contractor to furnish at Contractor's expense a special performance guarantee or other surety with respect to any substitute.
- D. **Reimbursement of Engineer's Cost:** Engineer will record Engineer's costs in evaluating a substitute proposed or submitted by Contractor. Whether or not Engineer approves a substitute so proposed or submitted by Contractor, Contractor shall reimburse Owner for the reasonable charges of Engineer for evaluating each such proposed substitute. Contractor shall also reimburse Owner for the reasonable charges of Engineer for making changes in

the Contract Documents (or in the provisions of any other direct contract with Owner) resulting from the acceptance of each proposed substitute.

- E. *Contractor's Expense:* Contractor shall provide all data in support of any proposed substitute at Contractor's expense.
- F. *Effect of Engineer's Determination:* If Engineer approves the substitution request, Contractor shall execute the proposed Change Order and proceed with the substitution. The Engineer's denial of a substitution request shall be final and binding, and may not be reversed through an appeal under any provision of the Contract Documents. Contractor may challenge the scope of reimbursement costs imposed under Paragraph 7.05.D, by timely submittal of a Change Proposal.

#### 7.06 *Concerning Subcontractors, Suppliers, and Others*

- A. Contractor may retain Subcontractors and Suppliers for the performance of parts of the Work. Such Subcontractors and Suppliers must be acceptable to Owner. **[Refer to SC →]**
- B. Contractor shall retain specific Subcontractors, Suppliers, or other individuals or entities for the performance of designated parts of the Work if required by the Contract to do so. **[Refer to SC →]**
- C. Subsequent to the submittal of Contractor's Bid or final negotiation of the terms of the Contract, Owner may not require Contractor to retain any Subcontractor, Supplier, or other individual or entity to furnish or perform any of the Work against which Contractor has reasonable objection.
- D. Prior to entry into any binding subcontract or purchase order, Contractor shall submit to Owner the identity of the proposed Subcontractor or Supplier (unless Owner has already deemed such proposed Subcontractor or Supplier acceptable, during the bidding process or otherwise). Such proposed Subcontractor or Supplier shall be deemed acceptable to Owner unless Owner raises a substantive, reasonable objection within five days. **[Refer to SC →]**
- E. Owner may require the replacement of any Subcontractor, Supplier, or other individual or entity retained by Contractor to perform any part of the Work. Owner also may require Contractor to retain specific replacements; provided, however, that Owner may not require a replacement to which Contractor has a reasonable objection. If Contractor has submitted the identity of certain Subcontractors, Suppliers, or other individuals or entities for acceptance by Owner, and Owner has accepted it (either in writing or by failing to make written objection thereto), then Owner may subsequently revoke the acceptance of any such Subcontractor, Supplier, or other individual or entity so identified solely on the basis of substantive, reasonable objection after due investigation. Contractor shall submit an acceptable replacement for the rejected Subcontractor, Supplier, or other individual or entity.
- F. If Owner requires the replacement of any Subcontractor, Supplier, or other individual or entity retained by Contractor to perform any part of the Work, then Contractor shall be entitled to an adjustment in Contract Price or Contract Times, or both, with respect to the replacement; and Contractor shall initiate a Change Proposal for such adjustment within 30 days of Owner's requirement of replacement.
- G. No acceptance by Owner of any such Subcontractor, Supplier, or other individual or entity, whether initially or as a replacement, shall constitute a waiver of the right of Owner to the completion of the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.
- H. On a monthly basis Contractor shall submit to Engineer a complete list of all Subcontractors and Suppliers having a direct contract with Contractor, and of all other Subcontractors and Suppliers known to Contractor at the time of submittal.
- I. Contractor shall be fully responsible to Owner and Engineer for all acts and omissions of the Subcontractors, Suppliers, and other individuals or entities performing or furnishing any of the Work just as Contractor is responsible for Contractor's own acts and omissions.

- J. Contractor shall be solely responsible for scheduling and coordinating the work of Subcontractors, Suppliers, and all other individuals or entities performing or furnishing any of the Work.
- K. Contractor shall restrict all Subcontractors, Suppliers, and such other individuals or entities performing or furnishing any of the Work from communicating with Engineer or Owner, except through Contractor or in case of an emergency, or as otherwise expressly allowed herein.
- L. The divisions and sections of the Specifications and the identifications of any Drawings shall not control Contractor in dividing the Work among Subcontractors or Suppliers or delineating the Work to be performed by any specific trade.
- M. All Work performed for Contractor by a Subcontractor or Supplier shall be pursuant to an appropriate contractual agreement that specifically binds the Subcontractor or Supplier to the applicable terms and conditions of the Contract Documents for the benefit of Owner and Engineer.
- N. Owner may furnish to any Subcontractor or Supplier, to the extent practicable, information about amounts paid to Contractor on account of Work performed for Contractor by the particular Subcontractor or Supplier.
- O. Nothing in the Contract Documents:
  - 1. shall create for the benefit of any such Subcontractor, Supplier, or other individual or entity any contractual relationship between Owner or Engineer and any such Subcontractor, Supplier, or other individual or entity; nor
  - 2. shall create any obligation on the part of Owner or Engineer to pay or to see to the payment of any money due any such Subcontractor, Supplier, or other individual or entity except as may otherwise be required by Laws and Regulations.

#### 7.07 *Patent Fees and Royalties*

- A. Contractor shall pay all license fees and royalties and assume all costs incident to the use in the performance of the Work or the incorporation in the Work of any invention, design, process, product, or device which is the subject of patent rights or copyrights held by others. If a particular invention, design, process, product, or device is specified in the Contract Documents for use in the performance of the Work and if, to the actual knowledge of Owner or Engineer, its use is subject to patent rights or copyrights calling for the payment of any license fee or royalty to others, the existence of such rights shall be disclosed by Owner in the Contract Documents.
- B. To the fullest extent permitted by Laws and Regulations, Owner shall indemnify and hold harmless Contractor, and its officers, directors, members, partners, employees, agents, consultants, and subcontractors from and against all claims, costs, losses, and damages (including but not limited to all fees and charges of engineers, architects, attorneys, and other professionals, and all court or arbitration or other dispute resolution costs) arising out of or relating to any infringement of patent rights or copyrights incident to the use in the performance of the Work or resulting from the incorporation in the Work of any invention, design, process, product, or device specified in the Contract Documents, but not identified as being subject to payment of any license fee or royalty to others required by patent rights or copyrights.
- C. To the fullest extent permitted by Laws and Regulations, Contractor shall indemnify and hold harmless Owner and Engineer, and the officers, directors, members, partners, employees, agents, consultants and subcontractors of each and any of them from and against all claims, costs, losses, and damages (including but not limited to all fees and charges of engineers, architects, attorneys, and other professionals and all court or arbitration or other dispute resolution costs) arising out of or relating to any infringement of patent rights or copyrights incident to the use in the performance of the Work or resulting from the incorporation in the Work of any invention, design, process, product, or device not specified in the Contract Documents.

#### 7.08 *Permits*

- A. Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, Contractor shall obtain and pay for all construction permits and licenses. Owner shall assist Contractor, when necessary, in obtaining such permits and licenses. Contractor shall pay all governmental charges and inspection fees necessary for the prosecution of the Work which are applicable at the time of the submission of Contractor's Bid (or when Contractor became bound under a negotiated contract). Owner shall pay all charges of utility owners for connections for providing permanent service to the Work. **[Refer to SC →]**

#### 7.09 *Taxes*

- A. Contractor shall pay all sales, consumer, use, and other similar taxes required to be paid by Contractor in accordance with the Laws and Regulations of the place of the Project which are applicable during the performance of the Work. **[Refer to SC →]**

#### 7.10 *Laws and Regulations*

- A. Contractor shall give all notices required by and shall comply with all Laws and Regulations applicable to the performance of the Work. Except where otherwise expressly required by applicable Laws and Regulations, neither Owner nor Engineer shall be responsible for monitoring Contractor's compliance with any Laws or Regulations.
- B. If Contractor performs any Work or takes any other action knowing or having reason to know that it is contrary to Laws or Regulations, Contractor shall bear all resulting costs and losses, and shall indemnify and hold harmless Owner and Engineer, and the officers, directors, members, partners, employees, agents, consultants, and subcontractors of each and any of them from and against all claims, costs, losses, and damages (including but not limited to all fees and charges of engineers, architects, attorneys, and other professionals and all court or arbitration or other dispute resolution costs) arising out of or relating to such Work or other action. It shall not be Contractor's responsibility to make certain that the Work described in the Contract Documents is in accordance with Laws and Regulations, but this shall not relieve Contractor of Contractor's obligations under Paragraph 3.03.
- C. Owner or Contractor may give notice to the other party of any changes after the submission of Contractor's Bid (or after the date when Contractor became bound under a negotiated contract) in Laws or Regulations having an effect on the cost or time of performance of the Work, including but not limited to changes in Laws or Regulations having an effect on procuring permits and on sales, use, value-added, consumption, and other similar taxes. If Owner and Contractor are unable to agree on entitlement to or on the amount or extent, if any, of any adjustment in Contract Price or Contract Times resulting from such changes, then within 30 days of such notice Contractor may submit a Change Proposal, or Owner may initiate a Claim. **[Refer to SC →]**

#### 7.11 *Record Documents*

- A. Contractor shall maintain in a safe place at the Site one printed record copy of all Drawings, Specifications, Addenda, Change Orders, Work Change Directives, Field Orders, written interpretations and clarifications, and approved Shop Drawings. Contractor shall keep such record documents in good order and annotate them to show changes made during construction. These record documents, together with all approved Samples, will be available to Engineer for reference. Upon completion of the Work, Contractor shall deliver these record documents to Engineer.

#### 7.12 *Safety and Protection*

- A. Contractor shall be solely responsible for initiating, maintaining, and supervising all safety precautions and programs in connection with the Work. Such responsibility does not relieve Subcontractors of their responsibility for the safety of persons or property in the performance of their work, nor for compliance with applicable safety Laws and Regulations. Contractor shall take all necessary precautions for the safety of, and shall provide the necessary protection to prevent damage, injury, or loss to:



1. all persons on the Site or who may be affected by the Work;
  2. all the Work and materials and equipment to be incorporated therein, whether in storage on or off the Site; and
  3. other property at the Site or adjacent thereto, including trees, shrubs, lawns, walks, pavements, roadways, structures, other work in progress, utilities, and Underground Facilities not designated for removal, relocation, or replacement in the course of construction.
- B. Contractor shall comply with all applicable Laws and Regulations relating to the safety of persons or property, or to the protection of persons or property from damage, injury, or loss; and shall erect and maintain all necessary safeguards for such safety and protection. Contractor shall notify Owner; the owners of adjacent property, Underground Facilities, and other utilities; and other contractors and utility owners performing work at or adjacent to the Site, when prosecution of the Work may affect them, and shall cooperate with them in the protection, removal, relocation, and replacement of their property or work in progress.
- C. Contractor shall comply with the applicable requirements of Owner's safety programs, if any. The Supplementary Conditions identify any Owner's safety programs that are applicable to the Work.
- D. Contractor shall inform Owner and Engineer of the specific requirements of Contractor's safety program with which Owner's and Engineer's employees and representatives must comply while at the Site.
- E. All damage, injury, or loss to any property referred to in Paragraph 7.12.A.2 or 7.12.A.3 caused, directly or indirectly, in whole or in part, by Contractor, any Subcontractor, Supplier, or any other individual or entity directly or indirectly employed by any of them to perform any of the Work, or anyone for whose acts any of them may be liable, shall be remedied by Contractor at its expense (except damage or loss attributable to the fault of Drawings or Specifications or to the acts or omissions of Owner or Engineer or anyone employed by any of them, or anyone for whose acts any of them may be liable, and not attributable, directly or indirectly, in whole or in part, to the fault or negligence of Contractor or any Subcontractor, Supplier, or other individual or entity directly or indirectly employed by any of them).
- F. Contractor's duties and responsibilities for safety and protection shall continue until such time as all the Work is completed and Engineer has issued a notice to Owner and Contractor in accordance with Paragraph 15.06.B that the Work is acceptable (except as otherwise expressly provided in connection with Substantial Completion).
- G. Contractor's duties and responsibilities for safety and protection shall resume whenever Contractor or any Subcontractor or Supplier returns to the Site to fulfill warranty or correction obligations, or to conduct other tasks arising from the Contract Documents.

#### 7.13 *Safety Representative*

- A. Contractor shall designate a qualified and experienced safety representative at the Site whose duties and responsibilities shall be the prevention of accidents and the maintaining and supervising of safety precautions and programs.

#### 7.14 *Hazard Communication Programs*

- A. Contractor shall be responsible for coordinating any exchange of material safety data sheets or other hazard communication information required to be made available to or exchanged between or among employers at the Site in accordance with Laws or Regulations.

#### 7.15 *Emergencies*

- A. In emergencies affecting the safety or protection of persons or the Work or property at the Site or adjacent thereto, Contractor is obligated to act to prevent threatened damage, injury, or loss. Contractor shall give Engineer prompt written notice if Contractor believes that any significant changes in the Work or variations from the Contract Documents have been caused thereby or are required as a result thereof. If Engineer determines that a change in

the Contract Documents is required because of the action taken by Contractor in response to such an emergency, a Work Change Directive or Change Order will be issued.  
**[Refer to SC→]**

7.16 *Shop Drawings, Samples, and Other Submittals*

A. *Shop Drawing and Sample Submittal Requirements:*

1. Before submitting a Shop Drawing or Sample, Contractor shall have:
  - a. reviewed and coordinated the Shop Drawing or Sample with other Shop Drawings and Samples and with the requirements of the Work and the Contract Documents;
  - b. determined and verified all field measurements, quantities, dimensions, specified performance and design criteria, installation requirements, materials, catalog numbers, and similar information with respect thereto;
  - c. determined and verified the suitability of all materials and equipment offered with respect to the indicated application, fabrication, shipping, handling, storage, assembly, and installation pertaining to the performance of the Work; and
  - d. determined and verified all information relative to Contractor's responsibilities for means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures of construction, and safety precautions and programs incident thereto.
2. Each submittal shall bear a stamp or specific written certification that Contractor has satisfied Contractor's obligations under the Contract Documents with respect to Contractor's review of that submittal, and that Contractor approves the submittal.
3. With each submittal, Contractor shall give Engineer specific written notice of any variations that the Shop Drawing or Sample may have from the requirements of the Contract Documents. This notice shall be set forth in a written communication separate from the Shop Drawings or Sample submittal; and, in addition, in the case of Shop Drawings by a specific notation made on each Shop Drawing submitted to Engineer for review and approval of each such variation.

B. *Submittal Procedures for Shop Drawings and Samples:* Contractor shall submit Shop Drawings and Samples to Engineer for review and approval in accordance with the accepted Schedule of Submittals. Each submittal will be identified as Engineer may require.

1. *Shop Drawings:*

- a. Contractor shall submit the number of copies required in the Specifications.
- b. Data shown on the Shop Drawings will be complete with respect to quantities, dimensions, specified performance and design criteria, materials, and similar data to show Engineer the services, materials, and equipment Contractor proposes to provide and to enable Engineer to review the information for the limited purposes required by Paragraph 7.16.D.

2. *Samples:*

- a. Contractor shall submit the number of Samples required in the Specifications.
- b. Contractor shall clearly identify each Sample as to material, Supplier, pertinent data such as catalog numbers, the use for which intended and other data as Engineer may require to enable Engineer to review the submittal for the limited purposes required by Paragraph 7.16.D.

3. Where a Shop Drawing or Sample is required by the Contract Documents or the Schedule of Submittals, any related Work performed prior to Engineer's review and approval of the pertinent submittal will be at the sole expense and responsibility of Contractor.

- C. *Other Submittals:* Contractor shall submit other submittals to Engineer in accordance with the accepted Schedule of Submittals, and pursuant to the applicable terms of the Specifications.
- D. *Engineer's Review:*
1. Engineer will provide timely review of Shop Drawings and Samples in accordance with the Schedule of Submittals acceptable to Engineer. Engineer's review and approval will be only to determine if the items covered by the submittals will, after installation or incorporation in the Work, conform to the information given in the Contract Documents and be compatible with the design concept of the completed Project as a functioning whole as indicated by the Contract Documents.
  2. Engineer's review and approval will not extend to means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures of construction or to safety precautions or programs incident thereto.
  3. Engineer's review and approval of a separate item as such will not indicate approval of the assembly in which the item functions.
  4. Engineer's review and approval of a Shop Drawing or Sample shall not relieve Contractor from responsibility for any variation from the requirements of the Contract Documents unless Contractor has complied with the requirements of Paragraph 7.16.A.3 and Engineer has given written approval of each such variation by specific written notation thereof incorporated in or accompanying the Shop Drawing or Sample. Engineer will document any such approved variation from the requirements of the Contract Documents in a Field Order.
  5. Engineer's review and approval of a Shop Drawing or Sample shall not relieve Contractor from responsibility for complying with the requirements of Paragraph 7.16.A and B.
  6. Engineer's review and approval of a Shop Drawing or Sample, or of a variation from the requirements of the Contract Documents, shall not, under any circumstances, change the Contract Times or Contract Price, unless such changes are included in a Change Order.
  7. Neither Engineer's receipt, review, acceptance or approval of a Shop Drawing, Sample, or other submittal shall result in such item becoming a Contract Document.
  8. Contractor shall perform the Work in compliance with the requirements and commitments set forth in approved Shop Drawings and Samples, subject to the provisions of Paragraph 7.16.D.4.
- E. *Resubmittal Procedures:*
1. Contractor shall make corrections required by Engineer and shall return the required number of corrected copies of Shop Drawings and submit, as required, new Samples for review and approval. Contractor shall direct specific attention in writing to revisions other than the corrections called for by Engineer on previous submittals.
  2. Contractor shall furnish required submittals with sufficient information and accuracy to obtain required approval of an item with no more than three submittals. Engineer will record Engineer's time for reviewing a fourth or subsequent submittal of a Shop Drawings, sample, or other item requiring approval, and Contractor shall be responsible for Engineer's charges to Owner for such time. Owner may impose a set-off against payments due to Contractor to secure reimbursement for such charges.
  3. If Contractor requests a change of a previously approved submittal item, Contractor shall be responsible for Engineer's charges to Owner for its review time, and Owner may impose a set-off against payments due to Contractor to secure reimbursement for such charges, unless the need for such change is beyond the control of Contractor.

#### 7.17 *Contractor's General Warranty and Guarantee*

- A. Contractor warrants and guarantees to Owner that all Work will be in accordance with the Contract Documents and will not be defective. Engineer and its officers, directors, members, partners, employees, agents, consultants, and subcontractors shall be entitled to rely on Contractor's warranty and guarantee.
- B. Contractor's warranty and guarantee hereunder excludes defects or damage caused by:
  - 1. abuse, modification, or improper maintenance or operation by persons other than Contractor, Subcontractors, Suppliers, or any other individual or entity for whom Contractor is responsible; or
  - 2. normal wear and tear under normal usage.
- C. Contractor's obligation to perform and complete the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents shall be absolute. None of the following will constitute an acceptance of Work that is not in accordance with the Contract Documents or a release of Contractor's obligation to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents:
  - 1. observations by Engineer;
  - 2. recommendation by Engineer or payment by Owner of any progress or final payment;
  - 3. the issuance of a certificate of Substantial Completion by Engineer or any payment related thereto by Owner;
  - 4. use or occupancy of the Work or any part thereof by Owner;
  - 5. any review and approval of a Shop Drawing or Sample submittal;
  - 6. the issuance of a notice of acceptability by Engineer;
  - 7. any inspection, test, or approval by others; or
  - 8. any correction of defective Work by Owner.
- D. If the Contract requires the Contractor to accept the assignment of a contract entered into by Owner, then the specific warranties, guarantees, and correction obligations contained in the assigned contract shall govern with respect to Contractor's performance obligations to Owner for the Work described in the assigned contract.

#### 7.18 *Indemnification*

- A. To the fullest extent permitted by Laws and Regulations, and in addition to any other obligations of Contractor under the Contract or otherwise, Contractor shall indemnify and hold harmless Owner and Engineer, and the officers, directors, members, partners, employees, agents, consultants and subcontractors of each and any of them from and against all claims, costs, losses, and damages (including but not limited to all fees and charges of engineers, architects, attorneys, and other professionals and all court or arbitration or other dispute resolution costs) arising out of or relating to the performance of the Work, provided that any such claim, cost, loss, or damage is attributable to bodily injury, sickness, disease, or death, or to injury to or destruction of tangible property (other than the Work itself), including the loss of use resulting therefrom but only to the extent caused by any negligent act or omission of Contractor, any Subcontractor, any Supplier, or any individual or entity directly or indirectly employed by any of them to perform any of the Work or anyone for whose acts any of them may be liable.
- B. In any and all claims against Owner or Engineer or any of their officers, directors, members, partners, employees, agents, consultants, or subcontractors by any employee (or the survivor or personal representative of such employee) of Contractor, any Subcontractor, any Supplier, or any individual or entity directly or indirectly employed by any of them to perform any of the Work, or anyone for whose acts any of them may be liable, the indemnification obligation under Paragraph 7.18.A shall not be limited in any way by any limitation on the amount or type of damages, compensation, or benefits payable by or for Contractor or any

such Subcontractor, Supplier, or other individual or entity under workers' compensation acts, disability benefit acts, or other employee benefit acts.

- C. The indemnification obligations of Contractor under Paragraph 7.18.A shall not extend to the liability of Engineer and Engineer's officers, directors, members, partners, employees, agents, consultants and subcontractors arising out of:
  - 1. the preparation or approval of, or the failure to prepare or approve maps, Drawings, opinions, reports, surveys, Change Orders, designs, or Specifications; or
  - 2. giving directions or instructions, or failing to give them, if that is the primary cause of the injury or damage.

#### 7.19 *Delegation of Professional Design Services*

- A. Contractor will not be required to provide professional design services unless such services are specifically required by the Contract Documents for a portion of the Work or unless such services are required to carry out Contractor's responsibilities for construction means, methods, techniques, sequences and procedures. Contractor shall not be required to provide professional services in violation of applicable Laws and Regulations.
- B. If professional design services or certifications by a design professional related to systems, materials, or equipment are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, Owner and Engineer will specify all performance and design criteria that such services must satisfy. Contractor shall cause such services or certifications to be provided by a properly licensed professional, whose signature and seal shall appear on all drawings, calculations, specifications, certifications, and other submittals prepared by such professional. Shop Drawings and other submittals related to the Work designed or certified by such professional, if prepared by others, shall bear such professional's written approval when submitted to Engineer.
- C. Owner and Engineer shall be entitled to rely upon the adequacy, accuracy, and completeness of the services, certifications, or approvals performed by such design professionals, provided Owner and Engineer have specified to Contractor all performance and design criteria that such services must satisfy.
- D. Pursuant to this paragraph, Engineer's review and approval of design calculations and design drawings will be only for the limited purpose of checking for conformance with performance and design criteria given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents. Engineer's review and approval of Shop Drawings and other submittals (except design calculations and design drawings) will be only for the purpose stated in Paragraph 7.16.D.1.
- E. Contractor shall not be responsible for the adequacy of the performance or design criteria specified by Owner or Engineer.

### **ARTICLE 8 – OTHER WORK AT THE SITE**

#### 8.01 *Other Work*

- A. In addition to and apart from the Work under the Contract Documents, the Owner may perform other work at or adjacent to the Site. Such other work may be performed by Owner's employees, or through contracts between the Owner and third parties. Owner may also arrange to have third-party utility owners perform work on their utilities and facilities at or adjacent to the Site.
- B. If Owner performs other work at or adjacent to the Site with Owner's employees, or through contracts for such other work, then Owner shall give Contractor written notice thereof prior to starting any such other work. If Owner has advance information regarding the start of any utility work at or adjacent to the Site, Owner shall provide such information to Contractor.
- C. Contractor shall afford each other contractor that performs such other work, each utility owner performing other work, and Owner, if Owner is performing other work with Owner's

employees, proper and safe access to the Site, and provide a reasonable opportunity for the introduction and storage of materials and equipment and the execution of such other work. Contractor shall do all cutting, fitting, and patching of the Work that may be required to properly connect or otherwise make its several parts come together and properly integrate with such other work. Contractor shall not endanger any work of others by cutting, excavating, or otherwise altering such work; provided, however, that Contractor may cut or alter others' work with the written consent of Engineer and the others whose work will be affected.

- D. If the proper execution or results of any part of Contractor's Work depends upon work performed by others under this Article 8, Contractor shall inspect such other work and promptly report to Engineer in writing any delays, defects, or deficiencies in such other work that render it unavailable or unsuitable for the proper execution and results of Contractor's Work. Contractor's failure to so report will constitute an acceptance of such other work as fit and proper for integration with Contractor's Work except for latent defects and deficiencies in such other work.

#### 8.02 *Coordination*

- A. If Owner intends to contract with others for the performance of other work at or adjacent to the Site, to perform other work at or adjacent to the Site with Owner's employees, or to arrange to have utility owners perform work at or adjacent to the Site, the following will be set forth in the Supplementary Conditions or provided to Contractor prior to the start of any such other work:
  - 1. the identity of the individual or entity that will have authority and responsibility for coordination of the activities among the various contractors;
  - 2. an itemization of the specific matters to be covered by such authority and responsibility; and
  - 3. the extent of such authority and responsibilities.
- B. Unless otherwise provided in the Supplementary Conditions, Owner shall have sole authority and responsibility for such coordination.

#### 8.03 *Legal Relationships*

- A. If, in the course of performing other work at or adjacent to the Site for Owner, the Owner's employees, any other contractor working for Owner, or any utility owner for whom the Owner is responsible causes damage to the Work or to the property of Contractor or its Subcontractors, or delays, disrupts, interferes with, or increases the scope or cost of the performance of the Work, through actions or inaction, then Contractor shall be entitled to an equitable adjustment in the Contract Price or the Contract Times, or both. Contractor must submit any Change Proposal seeking an equitable adjustment in the Contract Price or the Contract Times under this paragraph within 30 days of the damaging, delaying, disrupting, or interfering event. The entitlement to, and extent of, any such equitable adjustment shall take into account information (if any) regarding such other work that was provided to Contractor in the Contract Documents prior to the submittal of the Bid or the final negotiation of the terms of the Contract. When applicable, any such equitable adjustment in Contract Price shall be conditioned on Contractor assigning to Owner all Contractor's rights against such other contractor or utility owner with respect to the damage, delay, disruption, or interference that is the subject of the adjustment. Contractor's entitlement to an adjustment of the Contract Times is conditioned on such adjustment being essential to Contractor's ability to complete the Work within the Contract Times.
- B. Contractor shall take reasonable and customary measures to avoid damaging, delaying, disrupting, or interfering with the work of Owner, any other contractor, or any utility owner performing other work at or adjacent to the Site. If Contractor fails to take such measures and as a result damages, delays, disrupts, or interferes with the work of any such other contractor or utility owner, then Owner may impose a set-off against payments due to Contractor, and assign to such other contractor or utility owner the Owner's contractual

rights against Contractor with respect to the breach of the obligations set forth in this paragraph.

- C. When Owner is performing other work at or adjacent to the Site with Owner's employees, Contractor shall be liable to Owner for damage to such other work, and for the reasonable direct delay, disruption, and interference costs incurred by Owner as a result of Contractor's failure to take reasonable and customary measures with respect to Owner's other work. In response to such damage, delay, disruption, or interference, Owner may impose a set-off against payments due to Contractor.
- D. If Contractor damages, delays, disrupts, or interferes with the work of any other contractor, or any utility owner performing other work at or adjacent to the Site, through Contractor's failure to take reasonable and customary measures to avoid such impacts, or if any claim arising out of Contractor's actions, inactions, or negligence in performance of the Work at or adjacent to the Site is made by any such other contractor or utility owner against Contractor, Owner, or Engineer, then Contractor shall (1) promptly attempt to settle the claim as to all parties through negotiations with such other contractor or utility owner, or otherwise resolve the claim by arbitration or other dispute resolution proceeding or at law, and (2) indemnify and hold harmless Owner and Engineer, and the officers, directors, members, partners, employees, agents, consultants and subcontractors of each and any of them from and against any such claims, and against all costs, losses, and damages (including but not limited to all fees and charges of engineers, architects, attorneys, and other professionals and all court or arbitration or other dispute resolution costs) arising out of or relating to such damage, delay, disruption, or interference.

## **ARTICLE 9 – OWNER'S RESPONSIBILITIES**

### **9.01 *Communications to Contractor***

- A. Except as otherwise provided in these General Conditions, Owner shall issue all communications to Contractor through Engineer.

### **9.02 *Replacement of Engineer***

- A. Owner may at its discretion appoint an engineer to replace Engineer, provided Contractor makes no reasonable objection to the replacement engineer. The replacement engineer's status under the Contract Documents shall be that of the former Engineer.

### **9.03 *Furnish Data***

- A. Owner shall promptly furnish the data required of Owner under the Contract Documents.

### **9.04 *Pay When Due***

- A. Owner shall make payments to Contractor when they are due as provided in the Agreement.

### **9.05 *Lands and Easements; Reports, Tests, and Drawings***

- A. Owner's duties with respect to providing lands and easements are set forth in Paragraph 5.01.
- B. Owner's duties with respect to providing engineering surveys to establish reference points are set forth in Paragraph 4.03.
- C. Article 5 refers to Owner's identifying and making available to Contractor copies of reports of explorations and tests of conditions at the Site, and drawings of physical conditions relating to existing surface or subsurface structures at the Site.

### **9.06 *Insurance***

- A. Owner's responsibilities, if any, with respect to purchasing and maintaining liability and property insurance are set forth in Article 6.

9.07 *Change Orders*

- A. Owner's responsibilities with respect to Change Orders are set forth in Article 11.

9.08 *Inspections, Tests, and Approvals*

- A. Owner's responsibility with respect to certain inspections, tests, and approvals is set forth in Paragraph 14.02.B.

9.09 *Limitations on Owner's Responsibilities*

- A. The Owner shall not supervise, direct, or have control or authority over, nor be responsible for, Contractor's means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures of construction, or the safety precautions and programs incident thereto, or for any failure of Contractor to comply with Laws and Regulations applicable to the performance of the Work. Owner will not be responsible for Contractor's failure to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

9.10 *Undisclosed Hazardous Environmental Condition*

- A. Owner's responsibility in respect to an undisclosed Hazardous Environmental Condition is set forth in Paragraph 5.06.

9.11 *Evidence of Financial Arrangements*

- A. Upon request of Contractor, Owner shall furnish Contractor reasonable evidence that financial arrangements have been made to satisfy Owner's obligations under the Contract Documents (including obligations under proposed changes in the Work).

9.12 *Safety Programs*

- A. While at the Site, Owner's employees and representatives shall comply with the specific applicable requirements of Contractor's safety programs of which Owner has been informed.
- B. Owner shall furnish copies of any applicable Owner safety programs to Contractor.

**ARTICLE 10 – ENGINEER'S STATUS DURING CONSTRUCTION**

10.01 *Owner's Representative*

- A. Engineer will be Owner's representative during the construction period. The duties and responsibilities and the limitations of authority of Engineer as Owner's representative during construction are set forth in the Contract.

10.02 *Visits to Site*

- A. Engineer will make visits to the Site at intervals appropriate to the various stages of construction as Engineer deems necessary in order to observe as an experienced and qualified design professional the progress that has been made and the quality of the various aspects of Contractor's executed Work. Based on information obtained during such visits and observations, Engineer, for the benefit of Owner, will determine, in general, if the Work is proceeding in accordance with the Contract Documents. Engineer will not be required to make exhaustive or continuous inspections on the Site to check the quality or quantity of the Work. Engineer's efforts will be directed toward providing for Owner a greater degree of confidence that the completed Work will conform generally to the Contract Documents. On the basis of such visits and observations, Engineer will keep Owner informed of the progress of the Work and will endeavor to guard Owner against defective Work.
- B. Engineer's visits and observations are subject to all the limitations on Engineer's authority and responsibility set forth in Paragraph 10.08. Particularly, but without limitation, during or as a result of Engineer's visits or observations of Contractor's Work, Engineer will not supervise, direct, control, or have authority over or be responsible for Contractor's means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures of construction, or the safety precautions



and programs incident thereto, or for any failure of Contractor to comply with Laws and Regulations applicable to the performance of the Work.

10.03 *Project Representative*

- A. If Owner and Engineer have agreed that Engineer will furnish a Resident Project Representative to represent Engineer at the Site and assist Engineer in observing the progress and quality of the Work, then the authority and responsibilities of any such Resident Project Representative will be as provided in the Supplementary Conditions, and limitations on the responsibilities thereof will be as provided in Paragraph 10.08. If Owner designates another representative or agent to represent Owner at the Site who is not Engineer's consultant, agent, or employee, the responsibilities and authority and limitations thereon of such other individual or entity will be as provided in the Supplementary Conditions. **[Refer to SC →]**

10.04 *Rejecting Defective Work*

- A. Engineer has the authority to reject Work in accordance with Article 14.

10.05 *Shop Drawings, Change Orders and Payments*

- A. Engineer's authority, and limitations thereof, as to Shop Drawings and Samples, are set forth in Paragraph 7.16.
- B. Engineer's authority, and limitations thereof, as to design calculations and design drawings submitted in response to a delegation of professional design services, if any, are set forth in Paragraph 7.19.
- C. Engineer's authority as to Change Orders is set forth in Article 11.
- D. Engineer's authority as to Applications for Payment is set forth in Article 15.

10.06 *Determinations for Unit Price Work*

- A. Engineer will determine the actual quantities and classifications of Unit Price Work performed by Contractor as set forth in Paragraph 13.03.

10.07 *Decisions on Requirements of Contract Documents and Acceptability of Work*

- A. Engineer will render decisions regarding the requirements of the Contract Documents, and judge the acceptability of the Work, pursuant to the specific procedures set forth herein for initial interpretations, Change Proposals, and acceptance of the Work. In rendering such decisions and judgments, Engineer will not show partiality to Owner or Contractor, and will not be liable to Owner, Contractor, or others in connection with any proceedings, interpretations, decisions, or judgments conducted or rendered in good faith.

10.08 *Limitations on Engineer's Authority and Responsibilities*

- A. Neither Engineer's authority or responsibility under this Article 10 or under any other provision of the Contract, nor any decision made by Engineer in good faith either to exercise or not exercise such authority or responsibility or the undertaking, exercise, or performance of any authority or responsibility by Engineer, shall create, impose, or give rise to any duty in contract, tort, or otherwise owed by Engineer to Contractor, any Subcontractor, any Supplier, any other individual or entity, or to any surety for or employee or agent of any of them.
- B. Engineer will not supervise, direct, control, or have authority over or be responsible for Contractor's means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures of construction, or the safety precautions and programs incident thereto, or for any failure of Contractor to comply with Laws and Regulations applicable to the performance of the Work. Engineer will not be responsible for Contractor's failure to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.
- C. Engineer will not be responsible for the acts or omissions of Contractor or of any Subcontractor, any Supplier, or of any other individual or entity performing any of the Work.

- D. Engineer's review of the final Application for Payment and accompanying documentation and all maintenance and operating instructions, schedules, guarantees, bonds, certificates of inspection, tests and approvals, and other documentation required to be delivered by Paragraph 15.06.A will only be to determine generally that their content complies with the requirements of, and in the case of certificates of inspections, tests, and approvals, that the results certified indicate compliance with the Contract Documents.
- E. The limitations upon authority and responsibility set forth in this Paragraph 10.08 shall also apply to the Resident Project Representative, if any.

#### 10.09 *Compliance with Safety Program*

- A. While at the Site, Engineer's employees and representatives will comply with the specific applicable requirements of Owner's and Contractor's safety programs (if any) of which Engineer has been informed.

### **ARTICLE 11 – AMENDING THE CONTRACT DOCUMENTS; CHANGES IN THE WORK**

#### 11.01 *Amending and Supplementing Contract Documents*

- A. The Contract Documents may be amended or supplemented by a Change Order, a Work Change Directive, or a Field Order.
  - 1. *Change Orders:*
    - a. If an amendment or supplement to the Contract Documents includes a change in the Contract Price or the Contract Times, such amendment or supplement must be set forth in a Change Order. A Change Order also may be used to establish amendments and supplements of the Contract Documents that do not affect the Contract Price or Contract Times.
    - b. Owner and Contractor may amend those terms and conditions of the Contract Documents that do not involve (1) the performance or acceptability of the Work, (2) the design (as set forth in the Drawings, Specifications, or otherwise), or (3) other engineering or technical matters, without the recommendation of the Engineer. Such an amendment shall be set forth in a Change Order.
  - 2. *Work Change Directives:* A Work Change Directive will not change the Contract Price or the Contract Times but is evidence that the parties expect that the modification ordered or documented by a Work Change Directive will be incorporated in a subsequently issued Change Order, following negotiations by the parties as to the Work Change Directive's effect, if any, on the Contract Price and Contract Times; or, if negotiations are unsuccessful, by a determination under the terms of the Contract Documents governing adjustments, expressly including Paragraph 11.04 regarding change of Contract Price. Contractor must submit any Change Proposal seeking an adjustment of the Contract Price or the Contract Times, or both, no later than 30 days after the completion of the Work set out in the Work Change Directive. Owner must submit any Claim seeking an adjustment of the Contract Price or the Contract Times, or both, no later than 60 days after issuance of the Work Change Directive.
  - 3. *Field Orders:* Engineer may authorize minor changes in the Work if the changes do not involve an adjustment in the Contract Price or the Contract Times and are compatible with the design concept of the completed Project as a functioning whole as indicated by the Contract Documents. Such changes will be accomplished by a Field Order and will be binding on Owner and also on Contractor, which shall perform the Work involved promptly. If Contractor believes that a Field Order justifies an adjustment in the Contract Price or Contract Times, or both, then before proceeding with the Work at issue, Contractor shall submit a Change Proposal as provided herein.

#### 11.02 *Owner-Authorized Changes in the Work*

- A. Without invalidating the Contract and without notice to any surety, Owner may, at any time or from time to time, order additions, deletions, or revisions in the Work. Such changes shall be supported by Engineer's recommendation, to the extent the change involves the design (as set forth in the Drawings, Specifications, or otherwise), or other engineering or technical matters. Such changes may be accomplished by a Change Order, if Owner and Contractor have agreed as to the effect, if any, of the changes on Contract Times or Contract Price; or by a Work Change Directive. Upon receipt of any such document, Contractor shall promptly proceed with the Work involved; or, in the case of a deletion in the Work, promptly cease construction activities with respect to such deleted Work. Added or revised Work shall be performed under the applicable conditions of the Contract Documents. Nothing in this paragraph shall obligate Contractor to undertake work that Contractor reasonably concludes cannot be performed in a manner consistent with Contractor's safety obligations under the Contract Documents or Laws and Regulations.

#### 11.03 *Unauthorized Changes in the Work*

- A. Contractor shall not be entitled to an increase in the Contract Price or an extension of the Contract Times with respect to any work performed that is not required by the Contract Documents, as amended, modified, or supplemented, except in the case of an emergency as provided in Paragraph 7.15 or in the case of uncovering Work as provided in Paragraph 14.05.

#### 11.04 *Change of Contract Price*

- A. The Contract Price may only be changed by a Change Order. Any Change Proposal for an adjustment in the Contract Price shall comply with the provisions of Paragraph 11.06. Any Claim for an adjustment of Contract Price shall comply with the provisions of Article 12.
- B. An adjustment in the Contract Price will be determined as follows:
  - 1. where the Work involved is covered by unit prices contained in the Contract Documents, then by application of such unit prices to the quantities of the items involved (subject to the provisions of Paragraph 13.03); or
  - 2. where the Work involved is not covered by unit prices contained in the Contract Documents, then by a mutually agreed lump sum (which may include an allowance for overhead and profit not necessarily in accordance with Paragraph 11.04.C.2); or
  - 3. where the Work involved is not covered by unit prices contained in the Contract Documents and the parties do not reach mutual agreement to a lump sum, then on the basis of the Cost of the Work (determined as provided in Paragraph 13.01) plus a Contractor's fee for overhead and profit (determined as provided in Paragraph 11.04.C).
- C. *Contractor's Fee:* When applicable, the Contractor's fee for overhead and profit shall be determined as follows:
  - 1. a mutually acceptable fixed fee; or
  - 2. if a fixed fee is not agreed upon, then a fee based on the following percentages of the various portions of the Cost of the Work:
    - a. for costs incurred under Paragraphs 13.01.B.1 and 13.01.B.2, the Contractor's fee shall be 15 percent;
    - b. for costs incurred under Paragraph 13.01.B.3, the Contractor's fee shall be five percent;
    - c. where one or more tiers of subcontracts are on the basis of Cost of the Work plus a fee and no fixed fee is agreed upon, the intent of Paragraphs 11.04.C.2.a and 11.04.C.2.b is that the Contractor's fee shall be based on: (1) a fee of 15 percent of the costs incurred under Paragraphs 13.01.A.1 and 13.01.A.2 by the Subcontractor that actually performs the Work, at whatever tier, and (2) with

respect to Contractor itself and to any Subcontractors of a tier higher than that of the Subcontractor that actually performs the Work, a fee of five percent of the amount (fee plus underlying costs incurred) attributable to the next lower tier Subcontractor; provided, however, that for any such subcontracted work the maximum total fee to be paid by Owner shall be no greater than 27 percent of the costs incurred by the Subcontractor that actually performs the work;

- d. no fee shall be payable on the basis of costs itemized under Paragraphs 13.01.B.4, 13.01.B.5, and 13.01.C;
- e. the amount of credit to be allowed by Contractor to Owner for any change which results in a net decrease in cost will be the amount of the actual net decrease in cost plus a deduction in Contractor's fee by an amount equal to five percent of such net decrease; and
- f. when both additions and credits are involved in any one change, the adjustment in Contractor's fee shall be computed on the basis of the net change in accordance with Paragraphs 11.04.C.2.a through 11.04.C.2.e, inclusive.

#### 11.05 *Change of Contract Times*

- A. The Contract Times may only be changed by a Change Order. Any Change Proposal for an adjustment in the Contract Times shall comply with the provisions of Paragraph 11.06. Any Claim for an adjustment in the Contract Times shall comply with the provisions of Article 12.
- B. An adjustment of the Contract Times shall be subject to the limitations set forth in Paragraph 4.05, concerning delays in Contractor's progress. **[Refer to SC →]**

#### 11.06 *Change Proposals*

- A. Contractor shall submit a Change Proposal to Engineer to request an adjustment in the Contract Times or Contract Price; appeal an initial decision by Engineer concerning the requirements of the Contract Documents or relating to the acceptability of the Work under the Contract Documents; contest a set-off against payment due; or seek other relief under the Contract. The Change Proposal shall specify any proposed change in Contract Times or Contract Price, or both, or other proposed relief, and explain the reason for the proposed change, with citations to any governing or applicable provisions of the Contract Documents.
  - 1. **Procedures:** Contractor shall submit each Change Proposal to Engineer promptly (but in no event later than 30 days) after the start of the event giving rise thereto, or after such initial decision. The Contractor shall submit supporting data, including the proposed change in Contract Price or Contract Time (if any), to the Engineer and Owner within 15 days after the submittal of the Change Proposal. The supporting data shall be accompanied by a written statement that the supporting data are accurate and complete, and that any requested time or price adjustment is the entire adjustment to which Contractor believes it is entitled as a result of said event. Engineer will advise Owner regarding the Change Proposal, and consider any comments or response from Owner regarding the Change Proposal.
  - 2. **Engineer's Action:** Engineer will review each Change Proposal and, within 30 days after receipt of the Contractor's supporting data, either deny the Change Proposal in whole, approve it in whole, or deny it in part and approve it in part. Such actions shall be in writing, with a copy provided to Owner and Contractor. If Engineer does not take action on the Change Proposal within 30 days, then either Owner or Contractor may at any time thereafter submit a letter to the other party indicating that as a result of Engineer's inaction the Change Proposal is deemed denied, thereby commencing the time for appeal of the denial under Article 12.
  - 3. **Binding Decision:** Engineer's decision will be final and binding upon Owner and Contractor, unless Owner or Contractor appeals the decision by filing a Claim under Article 12.

- B. *Resolution of Certain Change Proposals:* If the Change Proposal does not involve the design (as set forth in the Drawings, Specifications, or otherwise), the acceptability of the Work, or other engineering or technical matters, then Engineer will notify the parties that the Engineer is unable to resolve the Change Proposal. For purposes of further resolution of such a Change Proposal, such notice shall be deemed a denial, and Contractor may choose to seek resolution under the terms of Article 12.

#### 11.07 *Execution of Change Orders*

- A. Owner and Contractor shall execute appropriate Change Orders covering:
1. changes in the Contract Price or Contract Times which are agreed to by the parties, including any undisputed sum or amount of time for Work actually performed in accordance with a Work Change Directive;
  2. changes in Contract Price resulting from an Owner set-off, unless Contractor has duly contested such set-off;
  3. changes in the Work which are: (a) ordered by Owner pursuant to Paragraph 11.02, (b) required because of Owner's acceptance of defective Work under Paragraph 14.04 or Owner's correction of defective Work under Paragraph 14.07, or (c) agreed to by the parties, subject to the need for Engineer's recommendation if the change in the Work involves the design (as set forth in the Drawings, Specifications, or otherwise), or other engineering or technical matters; and
  4. changes in the Contract Price or Contract Times, or other changes, which embody the substance of any final and binding results under Paragraph 11.06, or Article 12.
- B. If Owner or Contractor refuses to execute a Change Order that is required to be executed under the terms of this Paragraph 11.07, it shall be deemed to be of full force and effect, as if fully executed. **[Refer to SC→]**

#### 11.08 *Notification to Surety*

- A. If the provisions of any bond require notice to be given to a surety of any change affecting the general scope of the Work or the provisions of the Contract Documents (including, but not limited to, Contract Price or Contract Times), the giving of any such notice will be Contractor's responsibility. The amount of each applicable bond will be adjusted to reflect the effect of any such change.

### **ARTICLE 12 – CLAIMS**

#### 12.01 *Claims*

- A. *Claims Process:* The following disputes between Owner and Contractor shall be submitted to the Claims process set forth in this Article:
1. Appeals by Owner or Contractor of Engineer's decisions regarding Change Proposals;
  2. Owner demands for adjustments in the Contract Price or Contract Times, or other relief under the Contract Documents; and
  3. Disputes that Engineer has been unable to address because they do not involve the design (as set forth in the Drawings, Specifications, or otherwise), the acceptability of the Work, or other engineering or technical matters.
- B. *Submission of Claim:* The party submitting a Claim shall deliver it directly to the other party to the Contract promptly (but in no event later than 30 days) after the start of the event giving rise thereto; in the case of appeals regarding Change Proposals within 30 days of the decision under appeal. The party submitting the Claim shall also furnish a copy to the Engineer, for its information only. The responsibility to substantiate a Claim shall rest with the party making the Claim. In the case of a Claim by Contractor seeking an increase in the Contract Times or Contract Price, or both, Contractor shall certify that the Claim is made in

good faith, that the supporting data are accurate and complete, and that to the best of Contractor's knowledge and belief the amount of time or money requested accurately reflects the full amount to which Contractor is entitled.

- C. *Review and Resolution:* The party receiving a Claim shall review it thoroughly, giving full consideration to its merits. The two parties shall seek to resolve the Claim through the exchange of information and direct negotiations. The parties may extend the time for resolving the Claim by mutual agreement. All actions taken on a Claim shall be stated in writing and submitted to the other party, with a copy to Engineer.
- D. *Mediation:*
  - 1. At any time after initiation of a Claim, Owner and Contractor may mutually agree to mediation of the underlying dispute. The agreement to mediate shall stay the Claim submittal and response process.
  - 2. If Owner and Contractor agree to mediation, then after 60 days from such agreement, either Owner or Contractor may unilaterally terminate the mediation process, and the Claim submittal and decision process shall resume as of the date of the termination. If the mediation proceeds but is unsuccessful in resolving the dispute, the Claim submittal and decision process shall resume as of the date of the conclusion of the mediation, as determined by the mediator.
  - 3. Owner and Contractor shall each pay one-half of the mediator's fees and costs.
- E. *Partial Approval:* If the party receiving a Claim approves the Claim in part and denies it in part, such action shall be final and binding unless within 30 days of such action the other party invokes the procedure set forth in Article 17 for final resolution of disputes.
- F. *Denial of Claim:* If efforts to resolve a Claim are not successful, the party receiving the Claim may deny it by giving written notice of denial to the other party. If the receiving party does not take action on the Claim within 90 days, then either Owner or Contractor may at any time thereafter submit a letter to the other party indicating that as a result of the inaction, the Claim is deemed denied, thereby commencing the time for appeal of the denial. A denial of the Claim shall be final and binding unless within 30 days of the denial the other party invokes the procedure set forth in Article 17 for the final resolution of disputes.
- G. *Final and Binding Results:* If the parties reach a mutual agreement regarding a Claim, whether through approval of the Claim, direct negotiations, mediation, or otherwise; or if a Claim is approved in part and denied in part, or denied in full, and such actions become final and binding; then the results of the agreement or action on the Claim shall be incorporated in a Change Order to the extent they affect the Contract, including the Work, the Contract Times, or the Contract Price.

## **ARTICLE 13 – COST OF THE WORK; ALLOWANCES; UNIT PRICE WORK**

### **13.01 Cost of the Work**

- A. *Purposes for Determination of Cost of the Work:* The term Cost of the Work means the sum of all costs necessary for the proper performance of the Work at issue, as further defined below. The provisions of this Paragraph 13.01 are used for two distinct purposes:
  - 1. To determine Cost of the Work when Cost of the Work is a component of the Contract Price, under cost-plus-fee, time-and-materials, or other cost-based terms; or
  - 2. To determine the value of a Change Order, Change Proposal, Claim, set-off, or other adjustment in Contract Price. When the value of any such adjustment is determined on the basis of Cost of the Work, Contractor is entitled only to those additional or incremental costs required because of the change in the Work or because of the event giving rise to the adjustment.
- B. *Costs Included:* Except as otherwise may be agreed to in writing by Owner, costs included in the Cost of the Work shall be in amounts no higher than those prevailing in the locality of the

Project, shall not include any of the costs itemized in Paragraph 13.01.C, and shall include only the following items:

1. Payroll costs for employees in the direct employ of Contractor in the performance of the Work under schedules of job classifications agreed upon by Owner and Contractor. Such employees shall include, without limitation, superintendents, foremen, and other personnel employed full time on the Work. Payroll costs for employees not employed full time on the Work shall be apportioned on the basis of their time spent on the Work. Payroll costs shall include, but not be limited to, salaries and wages plus the cost of fringe benefits, which shall include social security contributions, unemployment, excise, and payroll taxes, workers' compensation, health and retirement benefits, bonuses, sick leave, and vacation and holiday pay applicable thereto. The expenses of performing Work outside of regular working hours, on Saturday, Sunday, or legal holidays, shall be included in the above to the extent authorized by Owner.
2. Cost of all materials and equipment furnished and incorporated in the Work, including costs of transportation and storage thereof, and Suppliers' field services required in connection therewith. All cash discounts shall accrue to Contractor unless Owner deposits funds with Contractor with which to make payments, in which case the cash discounts shall accrue to Owner. All trade discounts, rebates, and refunds and returns from sale of surplus materials and equipment shall accrue to Owner, and Contractor shall make provisions so that they may be obtained.
3. Payments made by Contractor to Subcontractors for Work performed by Subcontractors. If required by Owner, Contractor shall obtain competitive bids from subcontractors acceptable to Owner and Contractor and shall deliver such bids to Owner, who will then determine, with the advice of Engineer, which bids, if any, will be acceptable. If any subcontract provides that the Subcontractor is to be paid on the basis of Cost of the Work plus a fee, the Subcontractor's Cost of the Work and fee shall be determined in the same manner as Contractor's Cost of the Work and fee as provided in this Paragraph 13.01.
4. Costs of special consultants (including but not limited to engineers, architects, testing laboratories, surveyors, attorneys, and accountants) employed for services specifically related to the Work.
5. Supplemental costs including the following:
  - a. The proportion of necessary transportation, travel, and subsistence expenses of Contractor's employees incurred in discharge of duties connected with the Work.
  - b. Cost, including transportation and maintenance, of all materials, supplies, equipment, machinery, appliances, office, and temporary facilities at the Site, and hand tools not owned by the workers, which are consumed in the performance of the Work, and cost, less market value, of such items used but not consumed which remain the property of Contractor.
  - c. Rentals of all construction equipment and machinery, and the parts thereof, whether rented from Contractor or others in accordance with rental agreements approved by Owner with the advice of Engineer, and the costs of transportation, loading, unloading, assembly, dismantling, and removal thereof. All such costs shall be in accordance with the terms of said rental agreements. The rental of any such equipment, machinery, or parts shall cease when the use thereof is no longer necessary for the Work.
  - d. Sales, consumer, use, and other similar taxes related to the Work, and for which Contractor is liable, as imposed by Laws and Regulations.
  - e. Deposits lost for causes other than negligence of Contractor, any Subcontractor, or anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them or for whose acts any of them may be liable, and royalty payments and fees for permits and licenses.

- f. Losses and damages (and related expenses) caused by damage to the Work, not compensated by insurance or otherwise, sustained by Contractor in connection with the performance of the Work (except losses and damages within the deductible amounts of property insurance established in accordance with Paragraph 6.05), provided such losses and damages have resulted from causes other than the negligence of Contractor, any Subcontractor, or anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them or for whose acts any of them may be liable. Such losses shall include settlements made with the written consent and approval of Owner. No such losses, damages, and expenses shall be included in the Cost of the Work for the purpose of determining Contractor's fee.
  - g. The cost of utilities, fuel, and sanitary facilities at the Site.
  - h. Minor expenses such as communication service at the Site, express and courier services, and similar petty cash items in connection with the Work.
  - i. The costs of premiums for all bonds and insurance that Contractor is required by the Contract Documents to purchase and maintain.
- C. *Costs Excluded:* The term Cost of the Work shall not include any of the following items:
- 1. Payroll costs and other compensation of Contractor's officers, executives, principals (of partnerships and sole proprietorships), general managers, safety managers, engineers, architects, estimators, attorneys, auditors, accountants, purchasing and contracting agents, expeditors, timekeepers, clerks, and other personnel employed by Contractor, whether at the Site or in Contractor's principal or branch office for general administration of the Work and not specifically included in the agreed upon schedule of job classifications referred to in Paragraph 13.01.B.1 or specifically covered by Paragraph 13.01.B.4. The payroll costs and other compensation excluded here are to be considered administrative costs covered by the Contractor's fee.
  - 2. Expenses of Contractor's principal and branch offices other than Contractor's office at the Site.
  - 3. Any part of Contractor's capital expenses, including interest on Contractor's capital employed for the Work and charges against Contractor for delinquent payments.
  - 4. Costs due to the negligence of Contractor, any Subcontractor, or anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them or for whose acts any of them may be liable, including but not limited to, the correction of defective Work, disposal of materials or equipment wrongly supplied, and making good any damage to property.
  - 5. Other overhead or general expense costs of any kind and the costs of any item not specifically and expressly included in Paragraph 13.01.B.
- D. *Contractor's Fee:* When the Work as a whole is performed on the basis of cost-plus, Contractor's fee shall be determined as set forth in the Agreement. When the value of any Work covered by a Change Order, Change Proposal, Claim, set-off, or other adjustment in Contract Price is determined on the basis of Cost of the Work, Contractor's fee shall be determined as set forth in Paragraph 11.04.C.
- E. *Documentation:* Whenever the Cost of the Work for any purpose is to be determined pursuant to this Article 13, Contractor will establish and maintain records thereof in accordance with generally accepted accounting practices and submit in a form acceptable to Engineer an itemized cost breakdown together with supporting data.

## 13.02 Allowances

- A. It is understood that Contractor has included in the Contract Price all allowances so named in the Contract Documents and shall cause the Work so covered to be performed for such sums and by such persons or entities as may be acceptable to Owner and Engineer.



- B. *Cash Allowances*: Contractor agrees that:
  - 1. the cash allowances include the cost to Contractor (less any applicable trade discounts) of materials and equipment required by the allowances to be delivered at the Site, and all applicable taxes; and
  - 2. Contractor's costs for unloading and handling on the Site, labor, installation, overhead, profit, and other expenses contemplated for the cash allowances have been included in the Contract Price and not in the allowances, and no demand for additional payment on account of any of the foregoing will be valid.
- C. *Contingency Allowance*: Contractor agrees that a contingency allowance, if any, is for the sole use of Owner to cover unanticipated costs.
- D. Prior to final payment, an appropriate Change Order will be issued as recommended by Engineer to reflect actual amounts due Contractor on account of Work covered by allowances, and the Contract Price shall be correspondingly adjusted.

### 13.03 *Unit Price Work*

- A. Where the Contract Documents provide that all or part of the Work is to be Unit Price Work, initially the Contract Price will be deemed to include for all Unit Price Work an amount equal to the sum of the unit price for each separately identified item of Unit Price Work times the estimated quantity of each item as indicated in the Agreement.
- B. The estimated quantities of items of Unit Price Work are not guaranteed and are solely for the purpose of comparison of Bids and determining an initial Contract Price. Payments to Contractor for Unit Price Work will be based on actual quantities.
- C. Each unit price will be deemed to include an amount considered by Contractor to be adequate to cover Contractor's overhead and profit for each separately identified item.
- D. Engineer will determine the actual quantities and classifications of Unit Price Work performed by Contractor. Engineer will review with Contractor the Engineer's preliminary determinations on such matters before rendering a written decision thereon (by recommendation of an Application for Payment or otherwise). Engineer's written decision thereon will be final and binding (except as modified by Engineer to reflect changed factual conditions or more accurate data) upon Owner and Contractor, subject to the provisions of the following paragraph.
- E. Within 30 days of Engineer's written decision under the preceding paragraph, Contractor may submit a Change Proposal, or Owner may file a Claim, seeking an adjustment in the Contract Price if: **[Refer to SC →]**
  - 1. the quantity of any item of Unit Price Work performed by Contractor differs materially and significantly from the estimated quantity of such item indicated in the Agreement;
  - 2. there is no corresponding adjustment with respect to any other item of Work; and
  - 3. Contractor believes that it is entitled to an increase in Contract Price as a result of having incurred additional expense or Owner believes that Owner is entitled to a decrease in Contract Price, and the parties are unable to agree as to the amount of any such increase or decrease.

## **ARTICLE 14 – TESTS AND INSPECTIONS; CORRECTION, REMOVAL OR ACCEPTANCE OF DEFECTIVE WORK**

### 14.01 *Access to Work*

- A. Owner, Engineer, their consultants and other representatives and personnel of Owner, independent testing laboratories, and authorities having jurisdiction will have access to the Site and the Work at reasonable times for their observation, inspection, and testing. Contractor shall provide them proper and safe conditions for such access and advise them

of Contractor's safety procedures and programs so that they may comply therewith as applicable.

#### 14.02 *Tests, Inspections, and Approvals*

- A. Contractor shall give Engineer timely notice of readiness of the Work (or specific parts thereof) for all required inspections and tests, and shall cooperate with inspection and testing personnel to facilitate required inspections and tests.
- B. Owner shall retain and pay for the services of an independent inspector, testing laboratory, or other qualified individual or entity to perform all inspections and tests expressly required by the Contract Documents to be furnished and paid for by Owner, except that costs incurred in connection with tests or inspections of covered Work shall be governed by the provisions of Paragraph 14.05.
- C. If Laws or Regulations of any public body having jurisdiction require any Work (or part thereof) specifically to be inspected, tested, or approved by an employee or other representative of such public body, Contractor shall assume full responsibility for arranging and obtaining such inspections, tests, or approvals, pay all costs in connection therewith, and furnish Engineer the required certificates of inspection or approval.
- D. Contractor shall be responsible for arranging, obtaining, and paying for all inspections and tests required:
  - 1. by the Contract Documents, unless the Contract Documents expressly allocate responsibility for a specific inspection or test to Owner;
  - 2. to attain Owner's and Engineer's acceptance of materials or equipment to be incorporated in the Work;
  - 3. by manufacturers of equipment furnished under the Contract Documents;
  - 4. for testing, adjusting, and balancing of mechanical, electrical, and other equipment to be incorporated into the Work; and
  - 5. for acceptance of materials, mix designs, or equipment submitted for approval prior to Contractor's purchase thereof for incorporation in the Work.Such inspections and tests shall be performed by independent inspectors, testing laboratories, or other qualified individuals or entities acceptable to Owner and Engineer.
- E. If the Contract Documents require the Work (or part thereof) to be approved by Owner, Engineer, or another designated individual or entity, then Contractor shall assume full responsibility for arranging and obtaining such approvals.
- F. If any Work (or the work of others) that is to be inspected, tested, or approved is covered by Contractor without written concurrence of Engineer, Contractor shall, if requested by Engineer, uncover such Work for observation. Such uncovering shall be at Contractor's expense unless Contractor had given Engineer timely notice of Contractor's intention to cover the same and Engineer had not acted with reasonable promptness in response to such notice.

#### 14.03 *Defective Work*

- A. *Contractor's Obligation:* It is Contractor's obligation to assure that the Work is not defective.
- B. *Engineer's Authority:* Engineer has the authority to determine whether Work is defective, and to reject defective Work.
- C. *Notice of Defects:* Prompt notice of all defective Work of which Owner or Engineer has actual knowledge will be given to Contractor.
- D. *Correction, or Removal and Replacement:* Promptly after receipt of written notice of defective Work, Contractor shall correct all such defective Work, whether or not fabricated,

installed, or completed, or, if Engineer has rejected the defective Work, remove it from the Project and replace it with Work that is not defective.

- E. *Preservation of Warranties*: When correcting defective Work, Contractor shall take no action that would void or otherwise impair Owner's special warranty and guarantee, if any, on said Work.
- F. *Costs and Damages*: In addition to its correction, removal, and replacement obligations with respect to defective Work, Contractor shall pay all claims, costs, losses, and damages arising out of or relating to defective Work, including but not limited to the cost of the inspection, testing, correction, removal, replacement, or reconstruction of such defective Work, fines levied against Owner by governmental authorities because the Work is defective, and the costs of repair or replacement of work of others resulting from defective Work. Prior to final payment, if Owner and Contractor are unable to agree as to the measure of such claims, costs, losses, and damages resulting from defective Work, then Owner may impose a reasonable set-off against payments due under Article 15.

#### 14.04 *Acceptance of Defective Work*

- A. If, instead of requiring correction or removal and replacement of defective Work, Owner prefers to accept it, Owner may do so (subject, if such acceptance occurs prior to final payment, to Engineer's confirmation that such acceptance is in general accord with the design intent and applicable engineering principles, and will not endanger public safety). Contractor shall pay all claims, costs, losses, and damages attributable to Owner's evaluation of and determination to accept such defective Work (such costs to be approved by Engineer as to reasonableness), and for the diminished value of the Work to the extent not otherwise paid by Contractor. If any such acceptance occurs prior to final payment, the necessary revisions in the Contract Documents with respect to the Work shall be incorporated in a Change Order. If the parties are unable to agree as to the decrease in the Contract Price, reflecting the diminished value of Work so accepted, then Owner may impose a reasonable set-off against payments due under Article 15. If the acceptance of defective Work occurs after final payment, Contractor shall pay an appropriate amount to Owner.

#### 14.05 *Uncovering Work*

- A. Engineer has the authority to require additional inspection or testing of the Work, whether or not the Work is fabricated, installed, or completed.
- B. If any Work is covered contrary to the written request of Engineer, then Contractor shall, if requested by Engineer, uncover such Work for Engineer's observation, and then replace the covering, all at Contractor's expense.
- C. If Engineer considers it necessary or advisable that covered Work be observed by Engineer or inspected or tested by others, then Contractor, at Engineer's request, shall uncover, expose, or otherwise make available for observation, inspection, or testing as Engineer may require, that portion of the Work in question, and provide all necessary labor, material, and equipment.
  - 1. If it is found that the uncovered Work is defective, Contractor shall be responsible for all claims, costs, losses, and damages arising out of or relating to such uncovering, exposure, observation, inspection, and testing, and of satisfactory replacement or reconstruction (including but not limited to all costs of repair or replacement of work of others); and pending Contractor's full discharge of this responsibility the Owner shall be entitled to impose a reasonable set-off against payments due under Article 15.
  - 2. If the uncovered Work is not found to be defective, Contractor shall be allowed an increase in the Contract Price or an extension of the Contract Times, or both, directly attributable to such uncovering, exposure, observation, inspection, testing, replacement, and reconstruction. If the parties are unable to agree as to the amount or extent thereof, then Contractor may submit a Change Proposal within 30 days of the determination that the Work is not defective.

#### 14.06 *Owner May Stop the Work*

- A. If the Work is defective, or Contractor fails to supply sufficient skilled workers or suitable materials or equipment, or fails to perform the Work in such a way that the completed Work will conform to the Contract Documents, then Owner may order Contractor to stop the Work, or any portion thereof, until the cause for such order has been eliminated; however, this right of Owner to stop the Work shall not give rise to any duty on the part of Owner to exercise this right for the benefit of Contractor, any Subcontractor, any Supplier, any other individual or entity, or any surety for, or employee or agent of any of them.

#### 14.07 *Owner May Correct Defective Work*

- A. If Contractor fails within a reasonable time after written notice from Engineer to correct defective Work, or to remove and replace rejected Work as required by Engineer, or if Contractor fails to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents, or if Contractor fails to comply with any other provision of the Contract Documents, then Owner may, after seven days written notice to Contractor, correct or remedy any such deficiency.
- B. In exercising the rights and remedies under this Paragraph 14.07, Owner shall proceed expeditiously. In connection with such corrective or remedial action, Owner may exclude Contractor from all or part of the Site, take possession of all or part of the Work and suspend Contractor's services related thereto, and incorporate in the Work all materials and equipment stored at the Site or for which Owner has paid Contractor but which are stored elsewhere. Contractor shall allow Owner, Owner's representatives, agents and employees, Owner's other contractors, and Engineer and Engineer's consultants access to the Site to enable Owner to exercise the rights and remedies under this paragraph.
- C. All claims, costs, losses, and damages incurred or sustained by Owner in exercising the rights and remedies under this Paragraph 14.07 will be charged against Contractor as set-offs against payments due under Article 15. Such claims, costs, losses and damages will include but not be limited to all costs of repair, or replacement of work of others destroyed or damaged by correction, removal, or replacement of Contractor's defective Work.
- D. Contractor shall not be allowed an extension of the Contract Times because of any delay in the performance of the Work attributable to the exercise by Owner of Owner's rights and remedies under this Paragraph 14.07.

### **ARTICLE 15 – PAYMENTS TO CONTRACTOR; SET-OFFS; COMPLETION; CORRECTION PERIOD**

#### 15.01 *Progress Payments*

- A. *Basis for Progress Payments:* The Schedule of Values established as provided in Article 2 will serve as the basis for progress payments and will be incorporated into a form of Application for Payment acceptable to Engineer. Progress payments on account of Unit Price Work will be based on the number of units completed during the pay period, as determined under the provisions of Paragraph 13.03. Progress payments for cost-based Work will be based on Cost of the Work completed by Contractor during the pay period. **[refer to SC →]**
- B. *Applications for Payments:*
  - 1. At least 20 days before the date established in the Agreement for each progress payment (but not more often than once a month), Contractor shall submit to Engineer for review an Application for Payment filled out and signed by Contractor covering the Work completed as of the date of the Application and accompanied by such supporting documentation as is required by the Contract Documents. If payment is requested on the basis of materials and equipment not incorporated in the Work but delivered and suitably stored at the Site or at another location agreed to in writing, the Application for Payment shall also be accompanied by a bill of sale, invoice, or other documentation warranting that Owner has received the materials and equipment free and clear of all Liens, and evidence that the materials and equipment are covered by appropriate

property insurance, a warehouse bond, or other arrangements to protect Owner's interest therein, all of which must be satisfactory to Owner.

2. Beginning with the second Application for Payment, each Application shall include an affidavit of Contractor stating that all previous progress payments received on account of the Work have been applied on account to discharge Contractor's legitimate obligations associated with prior Applications for Payment.
3. The amount of retainage with respect to progress payments will be as stipulated in the Agreement.

C. *Review of Applications:*

1. Engineer will, within 10 days after receipt of each Application for Payment, including each resubmittal, either indicate in writing a recommendation of payment and present the Application to Owner, or return the Application to Contractor indicating in writing Engineer's reasons for refusing to recommend payment. In the latter case, Contractor may make the necessary corrections and resubmit the Application.
2. Engineer's recommendation of any payment requested in an Application for Payment will constitute a representation by Engineer to Owner, based on Engineer's observations of the executed Work as an experienced and qualified design professional, and on Engineer's review of the Application for Payment and the accompanying data and schedules, that to the best of Engineer's knowledge, information and belief: **[Refer to SC →]**
  - a. the Work has progressed to the point indicated;
  - b. the quality of the Work is generally in accordance with the Contract Documents (subject to an evaluation of the Work as a functioning whole prior to or upon Substantial Completion, the results of any subsequent tests called for in the Contract Documents, a final determination of quantities and classifications for Unit Price Work under Paragraph 13.03, and any other qualifications stated in the recommendation); and
  - c. the conditions precedent to Contractor's being entitled to such payment appear to have been fulfilled in so far as it is Engineer's responsibility to observe the Work.
3. By recommending any such payment Engineer will not thereby be deemed to have represented that:
  - a. inspections made to check the quality or the quantity of the Work as it has been performed have been exhaustive, extended to every aspect of the Work in progress, or involved detailed inspections of the Work beyond the responsibilities specifically assigned to Engineer in the Contract; or
  - b. there may not be other matters or issues between the parties that might entitle Contractor to be paid additionally by Owner or entitle Owner to withhold payment to Contractor.
4. Neither Engineer's review of Contractor's Work for the purposes of recommending payments nor Engineer's recommendation of any payment, including final payment, will impose responsibility on Engineer:
  - a. to supervise, direct, or control the Work, or
  - b. for the means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures of construction, or the safety precautions and programs incident thereto, or
  - c. for Contractor's failure to comply with Laws and Regulations applicable to Contractor's performance of the Work, or
  - d. to make any examination to ascertain how or for what purposes Contractor has used the money paid on account of the Contract Price, or

- e. to determine that title to any of the Work, materials, or equipment has passed to Owner free and clear of any Liens.
5. Engineer may refuse to recommend the whole or any part of any payment if, in Engineer's opinion, it would be incorrect to make the representations to Owner stated in Paragraph 15.01.C.2.
  6. Engineer will recommend reductions in payment (set-offs) necessary in Engineer's opinion to protect Owner from loss because:
    - a. the Work is defective, requiring correction or replacement;
    - b. the Contract Price has been reduced by Change Orders;
    - c. Owner has been required to correct defective Work in accordance with Paragraph 14.07, or has accepted defective Work pursuant to Paragraph 14.04;
    - d. Owner has been required to remove or remediate a Hazardous Environmental Condition for which Contractor is responsible; or
    - e. Engineer has actual knowledge of the occurrence of any of the events that would constitute a default by Contractor and therefore justify termination for cause under the Contract Documents. **[Refer to SC →]**
- D. *Payment Becomes Due: [Refer to SC →]*
1. Ten days after presentation of the Application for Payment to Owner with Engineer's recommendation, the amount recommended (subject to any Owner set-offs) will become due, and when due will be paid by Owner to Contractor.
- E. *Reductions in Payment by Owner:*
1. In addition to any reductions in payment (set-offs) recommended by Engineer, Owner is entitled to impose a set-off against payment based on any of the following:
    - a. claims have been made against Owner on account of Contractor's conduct in the performance or furnishing of the Work, or Owner has incurred costs, losses, or damages on account of Contractor's conduct in the performance or furnishing of the Work, including but not limited to claims, costs, losses, or damages from workplace injuries, adjacent property damage, non-compliance with Laws and Regulations, and patent infringement;
    - b. Contractor has failed to take reasonable and customary measures to avoid damage, delay, disruption, and interference with other work at or adjacent to the Site;
    - c. Contractor has failed to provide and maintain required bonds or insurance;
    - d. Owner has been required to remove or remediate a Hazardous Environmental Condition for which Contractor is responsible;
    - e. Owner has incurred extra charges or engineering costs related to submittal reviews, evaluations of proposed substitutes, tests and inspections, or return visits to manufacturing or assembly facilities;
    - f. the Work is defective, requiring correction or replacement;
    - g. Owner has been required to correct defective Work in accordance with Paragraph 14.07, or has accepted defective Work pursuant to Paragraph 14.04;
    - h. the Contract Price has been reduced by Change Orders;
    - i. an event that would constitute a default by Contractor and therefore justify a termination for cause has occurred;

- j. liquidated damages have accrued as a result of Contractor's failure to achieve Milestones, Substantial Completion, or final completion of the Work;
  - k. Liens have been filed in connection with the Work, except where Contractor has delivered a specific bond satisfactory to Owner to secure the satisfaction and discharge of such Liens;
  - l. there are other items entitling Owner to a set off against the amount recommended.
2. If Owner imposes any set-off against payment, whether based on its own knowledge or on the written recommendations of Engineer, Owner will give Contractor immediate written notice (with a copy to Engineer) stating the reasons for such action and the specific amount of the reduction, and promptly pay Contractor any amount remaining after deduction of the amount so withheld. Owner shall promptly pay Contractor the amount so withheld, or any adjustment thereto agreed to by Owner and Contractor, if Contractor remedies the reasons for such action. The reduction imposed shall be binding on Contractor unless it duly submits a Change Proposal contesting the reduction.
  3. Upon a subsequent determination that Owner's refusal of payment was not justified, the amount wrongfully withheld shall be treated as an amount due as determined by Paragraph 15.01.C.1 and subject to interest as provided in the Agreement.

#### 15.02 Contractor's Warranty of Title

- A. Contractor warrants and guarantees that title to all Work, materials, and equipment furnished under the Contract will pass to Owner free and clear of (1) all Liens and other title defects, and (2) all patent, licensing, copyright, or royalty obligations, no later than seven days after the time of payment by Owner. **[Refer to SC →]**

#### 15.03 Substantial Completion

- A. When Contractor considers the entire Work ready for its intended use Contractor shall notify Owner and Engineer in writing that the entire Work is substantially complete and request that Engineer issue a certificate of Substantial Completion. Contractor shall at the same time submit to Owner and Engineer an initial draft of punch list items to be completed or corrected before final payment.
- B. Promptly after Contractor's notification, Owner, Contractor, and Engineer shall make an inspection of the Work to determine the status of completion. If Engineer does not consider the Work substantially complete, Engineer will notify Contractor in writing giving the reasons therefor. **[Refer to SC →]**
- C. If Engineer considers the Work substantially complete, Engineer will deliver to Owner a preliminary certificate of Substantial Completion which shall fix the date of Substantial Completion. Engineer shall attach to the certificate a punch list of items to be completed or corrected before final payment. Owner shall have seven days after receipt of the preliminary certificate during which to make written objection to Engineer as to any provisions of the certificate or attached punch list. If, after considering the objections to the provisions of the preliminary certificate, Engineer concludes that the Work is not substantially complete, Engineer will, within 14 days after submission of the preliminary certificate to Owner, notify Contractor in writing that the Work is not substantially complete, stating the reasons therefor. If Owner does not object to the provisions of the certificate, or if despite consideration of Owner's objections Engineer concludes that the Work is substantially complete, then Engineer will, within said 14 days, execute and deliver to Owner and Contractor a final certificate of Substantial Completion (with a revised punch list of items to be completed or corrected) reflecting such changes from the preliminary certificate as Engineer believes justified after consideration of any objections from Owner.
- D. At the time of receipt of the preliminary certificate of Substantial Completion, Owner and Contractor will confer regarding Owner's use or occupancy of the Work following Substantial Completion, review the builder's risk insurance policy with respect to the end of the builder's

risk coverage, and confirm the transition to coverage of the Work under a permanent property insurance policy held by Owner. Unless Owner and Contractor agree otherwise in writing, Owner shall bear responsibility for security, operation, protection of the Work, property insurance, maintenance, heat, and utilities upon Owner's use or occupancy of the Work.

- E. After Substantial Completion the Contractor shall promptly begin work on the punch list of items to be completed or corrected prior to final payment. In appropriate cases Contractor may submit monthly Applications for Payment for completed punch list items, following the progress payment procedures set forth above.
- F. Owner shall have the right to exclude Contractor from the Site after the date of Substantial Completion subject to allowing Contractor reasonable access to remove its property and complete or correct items on the punch list. **[Refer to SC→]**

#### 15.04 *Partial Use or Occupancy*

- A. Prior to Substantial Completion of all the Work, Owner may use or occupy any substantially completed part of the Work which has specifically been identified in the Contract Documents, or which Owner, Engineer, and Contractor agree constitutes a separately functioning and usable part of the Work that can be used by Owner for its intended purpose without significant interference with Contractor's performance of the remainder of the Work, subject to the following conditions:
  - 1. At any time Owner may request in writing that Contractor permit Owner to use or occupy any such part of the Work that Owner believes to be substantially complete. If and when Contractor agrees that such part of the Work is substantially complete, Contractor, Owner, and Engineer will follow the procedures of Paragraph 15.03.A through E for that part of the Work.
  - 2. At any time Contractor may notify Owner and Engineer in writing that Contractor considers any such part of the Work substantially complete and request Engineer to issue a certificate of Substantial Completion for that part of the Work.
  - 3. Within a reasonable time after either such request, Owner, Contractor, and Engineer shall make an inspection of that part of the Work to determine its status of completion. If Engineer does not consider that part of the Work to be substantially complete, Engineer will notify Owner and Contractor in writing giving the reasons therefor. If Engineer considers that part of the Work to be substantially complete, the provisions of Paragraph 15.03 will apply with respect to certification of Substantial Completion of that part of the Work and the division of responsibility in respect thereof and access thereto.
  - 4. No use or occupancy or separate operation of part of the Work may occur prior to compliance with the requirements of Paragraph 6.05 regarding builder's risk or other property insurance.

#### 15.05 *Final Inspection*

- A. Upon written notice from Contractor that the entire Work or an agreed portion thereof is complete, Engineer will promptly make a final inspection with Owner and Contractor and will notify Contractor in writing of all particulars in which this inspection reveals that the Work, or agreed portion thereof, is incomplete or defective. Contractor shall immediately take such measures as are necessary to complete such Work or remedy such deficiencies.

#### 15.06 *Final Payment*

- A. *Application for Payment:*
  - 1. After Contractor has, in the opinion of Engineer, satisfactorily completed all corrections identified during the final inspection and has delivered, in accordance with the Contract Documents, all maintenance and operating instructions, schedules, guarantees, bonds, certificates or other evidence of insurance, certificates of inspection, annotated record



documents (as provided in Paragraph 7.11), and other documents, Contractor may make application for final payment.

2. The final Application for Payment shall be accompanied (except as previously delivered) by:
  - a. all documentation called for in the Contract Documents;
  - b. consent of the surety, if any, to final payment;
  - c. satisfactory evidence that all title issues have been resolved such that title to all Work, materials, and equipment has passed to Owner free and clear of any Liens or other title defects, or will so pass upon final payment.
  - d. a list of all disputes that Contractor believes are unsettled; and
  - e. ~~complete and legally effective releases or waivers (satisfactory to Owner) of all Lien rights arising out of the Work, and of Liens filed in connection with the Work.~~  
**[Refer to SC →]**
3. In lieu of the releases or waivers of Liens specified in Paragraph 15.06.A.2 and as approved by Owner, Contractor may furnish receipts or releases in full and an affidavit of Contractor that: (a) the releases and receipts include all labor, services, material, and equipment for which a Lien could be filed; and (b) all payrolls, material and equipment bills, and other indebtedness connected with the Work for which Owner might in any way be responsible, or which might in any way result in liens or other burdens on Owner's property, have been paid or otherwise satisfied. If any Subcontractor or Supplier fails to furnish such a release or receipt in full, Contractor may furnish a bond or other collateral satisfactory to Owner to indemnify Owner against any Lien, or Owner at its option may issue joint checks payable to Contractor and specified Subcontractors and Suppliers.

**B. *Engineer's Review of Application and Acceptance:***

1. If, on the basis of Engineer's observation of the Work during construction and final inspection, and Engineer's review of the final Application for Payment and accompanying documentation as required by the Contract Documents, Engineer is satisfied that the Work has been completed and Contractor's other obligations under the Contract have been fulfilled, Engineer will, within ten days after receipt of the final Application for Payment, indicate in writing Engineer's recommendation of final payment and present the Application for Payment to Owner for payment. Such recommendation shall account for any set-offs against payment that are necessary in Engineer's opinion to protect Owner from loss for the reasons stated above with respect to progress payments. At the same time Engineer will also give written notice to Owner and Contractor that the Work is acceptable, subject to the provisions of Paragraph 15.07. Otherwise, Engineer will return the Application for Payment to Contractor, indicating in writing the reasons for refusing to recommend final payment, in which case Contractor shall make the necessary corrections and resubmit the Application for Payment.
- C. *Completion of Work:* The Work is complete (subject to surviving obligations) when it is ready for final payment as established by the Engineer's written recommendation of final payment.
- D. *Payment Becomes Due:* Thirty days after the presentation to Owner of the final Application for Payment and accompanying documentation, the amount recommended by Engineer (less any further sum Owner is entitled to set off against Engineer's recommendation, including but not limited to set-offs for liquidated damages and set-offs allowed under the provisions above with respect to progress payments) will become due and shall be paid by Owner to Contractor.

**15.07 *Waiver of Claims***

- A. The making of final payment will not constitute a waiver by Owner of claims or rights against Contractor. Owner expressly reserves claims and rights arising from unsettled Liens, from

defective Work appearing after final inspection pursuant to Paragraph 15.05, from Contractor's failure to comply with the Contract Documents or the terms of any special guarantees specified therein, from outstanding Claims by Owner, or from Contractor's continuing obligations under the Contract Documents.

- B. The acceptance of final payment by Contractor will constitute a waiver by Contractor of all claims and rights against Owner other than those pending matters that have been duly submitted or appealed under the provisions of Article 17.

#### 15.08 *Correction Period*

- A. If within one year after the date of Substantial Completion (or such longer period of time as may be prescribed by the terms of any applicable special guarantee required by the Contract Documents, or by any specific provision of the Contract Documents), any Work is found to be defective, or if the repair of any damages to the Site, adjacent areas that Contractor has arranged to use through construction easements or otherwise, and other adjacent areas used by Contractor as permitted by Laws and Regulations, is found to be defective, then Contractor shall promptly, without cost to Owner and in accordance with Owner's written instructions:
  - 1. correct the defective repairs to the Site or such other adjacent areas;
  - 2. correct such defective Work;
  - 3. if the defective Work has been rejected by Owner, remove it from the Project and replace it with Work that is not defective, and
  - 4. satisfactorily correct or repair or remove and replace any damage to other Work, to the work of others, or to other land or areas resulting therefrom.
- B. If Contractor does not promptly comply with the terms of Owner's written instructions, or in an emergency where delay would cause serious risk of loss or damage, Owner may have the defective Work corrected or repaired or may have the rejected Work removed and replaced. Contractor shall pay all claims, costs, losses, and damages (including but not limited to all fees and charges of engineers, architects, attorneys, and other professionals and all court or arbitration or other dispute resolution costs) arising out of or relating to such correction or repair or such removal and replacement (including but not limited to all costs of repair or replacement of work of others).
- C. In special circumstances where a particular item of equipment is placed in continuous service before Substantial Completion of all the Work, the correction period for that item may start to run from an earlier date if so provided in the Specifications.
- D. Where defective Work (and damage to other Work resulting therefrom) has been corrected or removed and replaced under this paragraph, the correction period hereunder with respect to such Work will be extended for an additional period of one year after such correction or removal and replacement has been satisfactorily completed.
- E. Contractor's obligations under this paragraph are in addition to all other obligations and warranties. The provisions of this paragraph shall not be construed as a substitute for, or a waiver of, the provisions of any applicable statute of limitation or repose.

### **ARTICLE 16 – SUSPENSION OF WORK AND TERMINATION**

#### 16.01 *Owner May Suspend Work*

- A. At any time and without cause, Owner may suspend the Work or any portion thereof for a period of not more than 90 consecutive days by written notice to Contractor and Engineer. Such notice will fix the date on which Work will be resumed. Contractor shall resume the Work on the date so fixed. Contractor shall be entitled to an adjustment in the Contract Price or an extension of the Contract Times, or both, directly attributable to any such suspension.

Any Change Proposal seeking such adjustments shall be submitted no later than 30 days after the date fixed for resumption of Work.

#### 16.02 *Owner May Terminate for Cause*

- A. The occurrence of any one or more of the following events will constitute a default by Contractor and justify termination for cause:
  - 1. Contractor's persistent failure to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents (including, but not limited to, failure to supply sufficient skilled workers or suitable materials or equipment or failure to adhere to the Progress Schedule);
  - 2. Failure of Contractor to perform or otherwise to comply with a material term of the Contract Documents;
  - 3. Contractor's disregard of Laws or Regulations of any public body having jurisdiction; or
  - 4. Contractor's repeated disregard of the authority of Owner or Engineer.
- B. If one or more of the events identified in Paragraph 16.02.A occurs, then after giving Contractor (and any surety) ten days written notice that Owner is considering a declaration that Contractor is in default and termination of the contract, Owner may proceed to:
  - 1. declare Contractor to be in default, and give Contractor (and any surety) notice that the Contract is terminated; and
  - 2. enforce the rights available to Owner under any applicable performance bond.
- C. Subject to the terms and operation of any applicable performance bond, if Owner has terminated the Contract for cause, Owner may exclude Contractor from the Site, take possession of the Work, incorporate in the Work all materials and equipment stored at the Site or for which Owner has paid Contractor but which are stored elsewhere, and complete the Work as Owner may deem expedient.
- D. Owner may not proceed with termination of the Contract under Paragraph 16.02.B if Contractor within seven days of receipt of notice of intent to terminate begins to correct its failure to perform and proceeds diligently to cure such failure.
- E. If Owner proceeds as provided in Paragraph 16.02.B, Contractor shall not be entitled to receive any further payment until the Work is completed. If the unpaid balance of the Contract Price exceeds the cost to complete the Work, including all related claims, costs, losses, and damages (including but not limited to all fees and charges of engineers, architects, attorneys, and other professionals) sustained by Owner, such excess will be paid to Contractor. If the cost to complete the Work including such related claims, costs, losses, and damages exceeds such unpaid balance, Contractor shall pay the difference to Owner. Such claims, costs, losses, and damages incurred by Owner will be reviewed by Engineer as to their reasonableness and, when so approved by Engineer, incorporated in a Change Order. When exercising any rights or remedies under this paragraph, Owner shall not be required to obtain the lowest price for the Work performed.
- F. Where Contractor's services have been so terminated by Owner, the termination will not affect any rights or remedies of Owner against Contractor then existing or which may thereafter accrue, or any rights or remedies of Owner against Contractor or any surety under any payment bond or performance bond. Any retention or payment of money due Contractor by Owner will not release Contractor from liability.
- G. If and to the extent that Contractor has provided a performance bond under the provisions of Paragraph 6.01.A, the provisions of that bond shall govern over any inconsistent provisions of Paragraphs 16.02.B and 16.02.D.

#### 16.03 *Owner May Terminate For Convenience*

- A. Upon seven days written notice to Contractor and Engineer, Owner may, without cause and without prejudice to any other right or remedy of Owner, terminate the Contract. In such case, Contractor shall be paid for (without duplication of any items):

1. completed and acceptable Work executed in accordance with the Contract Documents prior to the effective date of termination, including fair and reasonable sums for overhead and profit on such Work;
  2. expenses sustained prior to the effective date of termination in performing services and furnishing labor, materials, or equipment as required by the Contract Documents in connection with uncompleted Work, plus fair and reasonable sums for overhead and profit on such expenses; and
  3. other reasonable expenses directly attributable to termination, including costs incurred to prepare a termination for convenience cost proposal.
- B. Contractor shall not be paid on account of loss of anticipated overhead, profits, or revenue, or other economic loss arising out of or resulting from such termination.

**16.04 Contractor May Stop Work or Terminate**

- A. If, through no act or fault of Contractor, (1) the Work is suspended for more than 90 consecutive days by Owner or under an order of court or other public authority, or (2) Engineer fails to act on any Application for Payment within 30 days after it is submitted, or (3) Owner fails for 30 days to pay Contractor any sum finally determined to be due, then Contractor may, upon seven days written notice to Owner and Engineer, and provided Owner or Engineer do not remedy such suspension or failure within that time, terminate the contract and recover from Owner payment on the same terms as provided in Paragraph 16.03.
- B. In lieu of terminating the Contract and without prejudice to any other right or remedy, if Engineer has failed to act on an Application for Payment within 30 days after it is submitted, or Owner has failed for 30 days to pay Contractor any sum finally determined to be due, Contractor may, seven days after written notice to Owner and Engineer, stop the Work until payment is made of all such amounts due Contractor, including interest thereon. The provisions of this paragraph are not intended to preclude Contractor from submitting a Change Proposal for an adjustment in Contract Price or Contract Times or otherwise for expenses or damage directly attributable to Contractor's stopping the Work as permitted by this paragraph.

**ARTICLE 17 – FINAL RESOLUTION OF DISPUTES**

**17.01 Methods and Procedures [Refer to SC →]**

- A. *Disputes Subject to Final Resolution:* The following disputed matters are subject to final resolution under the provisions of this Article:
1. A timely appeal of an approval in part and denial in part of a Claim, or of a denial in full; and
  2. Disputes between Owner and Contractor concerning the Work or obligations under the Contract Documents, and arising after final payment has been made.
- B. *Final Resolution of Disputes:* For any dispute subject to resolution under this Article, Owner or Contractor may:
1. elect in writing to invoke the dispute resolution process provided for in the Supplementary Conditions; or
  2. agree with the other party to submit the dispute to another dispute resolution process; or
  3. if no dispute resolution process is provided for in the Supplementary Conditions or mutually agreed to, give written notice to the other party of the intent to submit the dispute to a court of competent jurisdiction.

## ARTICLE 18 – MISCELLANEOUS

### 18.01 *Giving Notice*

- A. Whenever any provision of the Contract Documents requires the giving of written notice, it will be deemed to have been validly given if:
  - 1. delivered in person, by a commercial courier service or otherwise, to the individual or to a member of the firm or to an officer of the corporation for which it is intended; or
  - 2. delivered at or sent by registered or certified mail, postage prepaid, to the last business address known to the sender of the notice.

**[Refer to SC →]**

### 18.02 *Computation of Times*

- A. When any period of time is referred to in the Contract by days, it will be computed to exclude the first and include the last day of such period. If the last day of any such period falls on a Saturday or Sunday or on a day made a legal holiday by the law of the applicable jurisdiction, such day will be omitted from the computation.

### 18.03 *Cumulative Remedies*

- A. The duties and obligations imposed by these General Conditions and the rights and remedies available hereunder to the parties hereto are in addition to, and are not to be construed in any way as a limitation of, any rights and remedies available to any or all of them which are otherwise imposed or available by Laws or Regulations, by special warranty or guarantee, or by other provisions of the Contract. The provisions of this paragraph will be as effective as if repeated specifically in the Contract Documents in connection with each particular duty, obligation, right, and remedy to which they apply.

### 18.04 *Limitation of Damages*

- A. With respect to any and all Change Proposals, Claims, disputes subject to final resolution, and other matters at issue, neither Owner nor Engineer, nor any of their officers, directors, members, partners, employees, agents, consultants, or subcontractors, shall be liable to Contractor for any claims, costs, losses, or damages sustained by Contractor on or in connection with any other project or anticipated project.

### 18.05 *No Waiver*

- A. A party's non-enforcement of any provision shall not constitute a waiver of that provision, nor shall it affect the enforceability of that provision or of the remainder of this Contract.

### 18.06 *Survival of Obligations*

- A. All representations, indemnifications, warranties, and guarantees made in, required by, or given in accordance with the Contract, as well as all continuing obligations indicated in the Contract, will survive final payment, completion, and acceptance of the Work or termination or completion of the Contract or termination of the services of Contractor.

### 18.07 *Controlling Law*

- A. This Contract is to be governed by the law of the state in which the Project is located.

### 18.08 *Headings*

- A. Article and paragraph headings are inserted for convenience only and do not constitute parts of these General Conditions.

**[Refer to SC →]**

++ END OF SECTION++

## SUPPLEMENTARY CONDITIONS

These Supplementary Conditions amend or supplement the Standard General Conditions of the Construction Contract, EJCDC® C-700 (2013 Edition). All provisions that are not so amended or supplemented remain in full force and effect.

The terms used in these Supplementary Conditions have the meanings stated in the General Conditions. Additional terms used in these Supplementary Conditions have the meanings stated below, which are applicable to both the singular and plural thereof.

The address system used in these Supplementary Conditions is the same as the address system used in the General Conditions, with the prefix "SC" added thereto.

### TABLE OF CONTENTS

	Page
Article 1 – Definitions and Terminology .....	2
Article 2 – Preliminary Matters .....	3
Article 3 – Documents: Intent, Requirements, Reuse .....	3
Article 5 – Availability of Lands; Subsurface and Physical Conditions; Hazardous Environmental Conditions .....	4
Article 6 – Bonds and Insurance .....	5
Article 7 – Contractor’s Responsibilities .....	7
Article 10 – Engineer’s Status During Construction.....	11
Article 11 - Amending the Contract Documents; Changes in the Work .....	12
Article 13 – Cost of the Work; Allowances; Unit Price Work.....	12
Article 15 – Payments to Contractor; Set-offs; Completion; Correction Period.....	13
Article 17 – Final Resolution of Disputes.....	14
Article 18 – Miscellaneous .....	15

## ARTICLE 1 – DEFINITIONS AND TERMINOLOGY

### SC-1.01 *Defined Terms*

SC-1.01.A.8 Add the following language at the end of the last sentence in paragraph 1.01.A.8:

The Change Order form to be used in the Project is EJCDC C-941. Extra Work will not be considered for a Change Order or for an adjustment in the Contract Price or the Contract Times unless the document is executed by both Owner and Contractor. Furthermore, the parties agree that under no circumstances will an act or failure to act on the part of the Owner or Engineer constitute a waiver of the written Change Order requirement for extra work. A written Change Order is a strict condition precedent for payment for extra work.

SC-1.01.A.40 Add the following language at the end of the last sentence of paragraph 1.01A.40:

Work shall be considered substantially complete when the following items have been satisfactorily completed: All specified improvements and equipment have been installed, commissioned, tested, inspected, and approved for OWNER's use, including close-out of any permits issued for the Work. Balancing of the HVAC systems is included in this requirement.

SC-1.01.A.48 Add the following language at the end of the last sentence of paragraph 1.01.A.48:

A Work Change Directive cannot change Contract Price or Contract Times without a subsequent Change Order.

SC-1.01.A.49 Add the following new terms after paragraph 1.01.A.48:

49. Abnormal Weather Conditions – Conditions of extreme or unusual weather for a given region, elevation, or season as determined by Engineer. Extreme or unusual weather that is typical for a given region, elevation, or season should not be considered Abnormal Weather Conditions.
50. Additional Insureds – Schuylkill Valley School District (Owner) and Spotts, Stevens and McCoy (Engineer).
51. Will – identical and interchangeable with shall. Used to denote a requirement or obligation, as in the Contractor will complete the work.
53. Multiple Prime Contractors – persons or entities who perform construction under contracts with Owner that are administered by Engineer for the completion of the Project. The Term does not include Owner's own forces.
54. Products – New materials, machinery, components, equipment, fixtures, systems and any other item which will become or has become a physical portion of the Work. The term "Products" does not include machinery and equipment use for preparation, fabrication, conveying or erection of the Work. The term "Products" may include materials, equipment or components removed from existing facilities that may, if specifically permitted by the Contract Documents, be re-used in the Work.

## **ARTICLE 2 – PRELIMINARY MATTERS**

### *SC-2.01 Delivery of Bonds and Evidence of Insurance*

Sc-2.01A Add the following sentence at the end of Subparagraph 2.01A:

Failure of the apparently Successful Bidder to provide properly executed Performance and Payment Bonds, Insurance information, Schedule of Values, and to execute and deliver the Contract within the period of time designated in the Contract Documents or as extended by mutual agreement, shall be just cause for the Owner to reject the Bid of the apparently Successful Bidder and to declare the Bid and any Bid Security therefore forfeited.

### *SC-2.02 Copies of Documents*

SC-2.02.A. Amend the first sentence of Paragraph 2.02.A. to read as follows:

Owner shall furnish to Contractor one (1) copy of the Contract Documents (including one fully executed counterpart of the Agreement), and one copy in electronic portable document format (PDF).

### *SC-2.05 Initial Acceptance of Schedules*

SC-2.05A.1 Add the following language at the end of 2.05A 1:

The construction schedule shall be as outlined in Section 013216, and shall (1) provide a graphic representation of all activities and events that will occur during the performance of the Work; (2) identify each phase of construction and occupancy; and (3) set forth dates that are critical in ensuring the timely and orderly completion of the Work in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents (hereinafter referred to as Milestone Dates). Upon review and acceptance by the Owner and the Engineer of the Milestone Dates, the construction schedule shall be deemed part of the Contract Documents. If not accepted, the construction schedule shall be promptly revised by the Contractor in accordance with the recommendations of the Owner and the Engineer and resubmitted for acceptance.

## **ARTICLE 3 – DOCUMENTS: INTENT, REQUIREMENTS, REUSE**

### *SC-3.01 Intent*

Add the following new paragraph immediately after paragraph 3.01E:

F. Do not Scale the Drawings. Contractor shall field measure and verify dimensions of existing structures, facilities, and equipment. Contractor shall rely on manufacturer's certified equipment dimensions, which shall supercede dimensions of the contract drawings. Where required dimensions are not provided or conflicts are discovered, Contractor shall field measure where possible or request additional information from the Engineer.

### *SC-3.03 Reporting and Resolving Discrepancies*

Add the following language at the end of 3.03 A 1:

The grades, elevations, dimensions, locations, and field measurements, or any drawings or specifications issued by the Engineer, or the Work installed by other Contractors, are not guaranteed by the Engineer or the Owner. The Contractor shall verify the accuracy of all grades, elevations, dimensions, locations and field measurements. In all cases of the interconnection of its Work with existing or other Work, the Contractor shall verify



at the site all dimensions relating to such existing or other Work. Any errors due to the Contractor's failure to verify such grades, elevations, dimensions, locations or field measurements shall be promptly rectified by the Contractor without any additional costs to the Owner or extensions of Contract Time.

**ARTICLE 5 – AVAILABILITY OF LANDS; SUBSURFACE AND PHYSICAL CONDITIONS; HAZARDOUS ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS**

*SC-5.02 Use of Site and Other Areas*

Add the following subparagraph immediately after paragraph 5.02D:

1. The Contractor shall determine the legal dimensional and load limits on all roads and bridges over and under which equipment and materials will be moved. In the event that loads or dimensions exceed legal limits, the Contractor shall obtain the necessary permits, pay permit fees, and comply with all regulations for moving such loads.

*SC-5.03 Subsurface and Physical Conditions*

SC-5.03 Add the following new paragraph 5.03C immediately after Paragraph 5.03B:

- C. The following reports of explorations and tests of subsurface conditions at or adjacent to Site are known to Owner: NONE.

SC-5.03 Add the following new paragraph 5.03D immediately after 5.03C:

- D. The Contractor and each Subcontractor shall evaluate and satisfy themselves as to the site condition and limitations under which the Work is to be performed, including without limitation, (1) the location, condition, layout, and nature of the project site and surrounding areas; (2) generally prevailing climatic conditions; (3) anticipated labor, supply and costs; (4) availability and cost of materials, tools, and equipment; and (5) other similar issues. The Owner assumes no responsibility or liability for the physical condition or safety of the project site or any improvement located on the project site. Except as set forth in Article 5, the Contractor shall be solely responsible for providing a safe place for the performance of the Work. The Owner shall not be required to make adjustments in either the Contract Price or Contract Times arising from a failure by the Contractor or any Subcontractor to comply with the requirements of this Paragraph.

*SC-5.05 Underground Facilities*

Add the following new paragraph immediately after paragraph 5.05E:

F. Existing Utilities

1. Contractor shall comply and be bound by the provisions of the Pennsylvania Underground Utility Line Protection Act, Act 287 of 1974 as amended by Act 121 of 2008 73P.S. §176 et.seq.
2. If any utility company facility is damaged during the Work, Contractor shall immediately notify the affected utility company. Contractor shall be fully responsible for repairing or replacing such damaged facilities in accordance with utility company’s requirements. If Contractor fails to promptly repair or replace damaged facilities, Owner or utility company may arrange to have the required work performed by others and the cost of such work will be charged to the Contractor by deduction from a progress payment.

*5.06 Hazardous Environmental Conditions*

SC-5.06 Delete Paragraphs 5.06A and 5.06B in their entirety and insert the following:

- A. No reports or drawings related to Hazardous Environmental Conditions at the site are known to Owner.
- B. Not used.

**ARTICLE 6 – BONDS AND INSURANCE**

*SC-6.03 Contractor’s Insurance*

SC-6.03.I.3 In the first sentence of paragraph 6.03.I.3 revise “...at least 10 days prior....”, to “...at least 30 days prior....”

SC 6.03.J Add the following new paragraph immediately after Paragraph 6.03.J:

K. The limits of liability for the insurance required by Paragraph 6.03 of the General Conditions shall provide coverage for not less than the following amounts or greater where required by Laws and Regulations:

1. Workers’ Compensation, and related coverages under Paragraphs 6.03.A.1 and A.2 of the General Conditions:

State: Statutory

Federal, if applicable (e.g., Longshoreman’s): Statutory

Jones Act coverage, if applicable:

Bodily injury by accident, each accident \$ 500,000

Bodily injury by disease, aggregate \$ 1,000,000

Employer’s Liability:

Bodily injury, each accident \$ 100,000

Bodily injury by disease, each employee \$ 100,000

Bodily injury/disease aggregate \$ 500,000

For work performed in monopolistic states, stop-gap liability coverage shall be endorsed to either the worker's compensation or commercial general liability policy with a minimum limit of: \$ N/A

Foreign voluntary worker compensation Statutory

2. Contractor's Commercial General Liability under Paragraphs 6.03.B and 6.03.C of the General Conditions:

General Aggregate \$ 3,000,000

Products - Completed Operations Aggregate \$ 1,000,000

Personal and Advertising Injury \$ 1,000,000

Each Occurrence (Bodily Injury and Property Damage) \$ 2,000,000

3. Automobile Liability under Paragraph 6.03.D. of the General Conditions:

Bodily Injury:

Each person \$ 2,000,000

Each accident \$ 2,000,000

Property Damage:

Each accident \$ 1,000,000

[or]

Combined Single Limit of \$ 2,000,000

4. Excess or Umbrella Liability:

Per Occurrence \$ 2,000,000

General Aggregate \$ 5,000,000

5. Contractor's Pollution Liability:

Each Occurrence \$ 2,000,000

General Aggregate \$ 2,000,000



If box is checked, Contractor is not required to provide Contractor's Pollution Liability insurance under this Contract

6. Additional Insureds: In addition to Owner and Engineer, include as additional insureds the following: *None*
7. Contractor's Professional Liability:
 

Each Claim	\$ <u>Not Required</u>
Annual Aggregate	\$ <u>Not Required</u>
8. The insurance policies and coverage provided by Contractor shall be on a "Per Project" basis.
9. Identify the project by listing the Project Name, Contract Number and project location in the Description of Operations section on the Certificate of Insurance.

*SC-6.05 Property Insurance*

SC-6.05.A.1 Add the following new subparagraph after subparagraph 6.05.A.1:

- a. In addition to Owner (Schuylkill Valley School District), Contractor, and all Subcontractors, include as insureds the following:  
*Spotts, Stevens and McCoy*

SC-6.05.A.2 In the first sentence of paragraph 6.05.A.2 after "volcanic activity" add "sinkhole collapse".

SC-6.05 A add to the list of requirements in Paragraph 6.05.A, as a numbered item:

14. be subject to a deductible amount of no more than \$10,000 for direct physical loss in any one occurrence.

**ARTICLE 7 – CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES**

*SC-7.02 Labor; Working Hours*

Add the following new paragraphs immediately after paragraph 7.02 B:

- C. Regular working hours for the Project are defined as 7:30 a.m. to 3:30 p.m., Monday through Friday. Longer hours may be arranged by written request to the Owner. No Work shall be permitted on Saturdays, Sundays, or legal holidays, unless prior written approval is obtained from the Owner.
- D. If Owner consents to Contractor working during non-regular hours, or on Saturday, Sunday or any legal holiday, Contractor shall reimburse Owner for wages, salaries, and expensed paid to Owner's and Engineer's personnel which, in the Owner's judgement, are required to be present at the Project Site during Contractor's work. Contractor's reimbursement to Owner for these extra personnel costs will be in the form of a deduction from a progress payment.
- E. No subcontractor shall be permitted to work on the site unless the Contractor's superintendent is present.

*SC-7.04 Or Equals*

Add the following subparagraph immediately after paragraph 7.04C:

1. The determination as to whether the Product is an “or-equal” or a proposed substitute item will be made during Engineer’s review of Product Shop Drawing, as defined in Article 1 of General Conditions. If the Product proposed by the Contractor is not considered an “or-equal” Product, the Shop Drawing will be returned to the Contractor with the notation “Returned for Correction.” The Contractor will then be required to proceed as specified in paragraphs GC-7.04E and SC-7.05.A.3.a through SC-7.05.A.3.l.

SC-7.05

*Substitutes*

Add the following new paragraphs immediately after 7.05A.3.d:

- e. Submit three copies of request for substitution, plus the number required to be returned to the entity making the request, to the Engineer. Each request for substitution shall cover one Product only.
- f. Requests for substitutions will be accepted from prime Contractor on the Project, and if requests are permitted during the Bidding period, from a Bidder defined in the Instructions to Bidders.
- g. If Instructions to Bidders allow requests for substitutions during the Bidding period, time the submittal so the Engineer receives request for substitution at least 18 days prior to the Bid opening date.
- h. Submit, with request for substitution, Shop Drawings, Product Data, warranty information, case histories, lists of projects on which the Product has been successfully used, test reports, manufacturer’s company profile, name and address of manufacturer’s service organization, and other data as required to establish that proposed substitute Product is fully equivalent in quality to the Product of the named manufacturer(s) and meets all Specification requirements.
- i. Submit, with request for substitution, the dollar amount which the Owner will receive as a credit toward the Contact Price if the substitution is approved. The Owner and Engineer reserve the right to make an independent investigation of the cost savings, to negotiate with the Contractor to increase the credit, or to reject a proposed substitution if credit is considered insufficient.
- j. Attach letters, provided by other contractors whose work may be affected by the proposed substitution, stating that the substitution will either have no effect or their work or that the substitution will affect their work and that the entity making the request for substitution has agreed to pay any extra costs which may be incurred if the substitution is approved. (This requirement does not apply during the Bidding period).
- k. The entity submitting the request for substitution shall include, on its transmittal letter, the signed statement: “The signer of this letter certifies that all requirements of Paragraph SC-7.05A.3 e through j have been met or will be met”.
  - (1) The signer of the transmittal letter, by making this statement, affirms that: the proposed substitute Product has been investigated and has been found to equal or exceed in quality and durability the Product of the named manufacturer(s) and, further, that it meets all Specification requirements;
  - (2) all other prime contractors on the Project have been contacted as to the effect of the proposed substitution on their work and that letters from all other

prime contractors are being submitted with the request (this condition does not apply during the Bidding period);

(3) the same product warranty, which would have been provided by the named manufacturer(s) will be provided for the substitute product;

(4) the entity submitting the request for substitution will coordinate installation of the proposed substitute and make any required change in the Work at no additional cost to the Owner;

(5) the entity submitting the request will not make claims for additional costs for additional time required to implement the substitution;

(6) the entity making the request will reimburse the Owner for all costs associated with review of the request for substitution;

(7) all redesign costs associated with review of the request for substitution, all and all costs required to obtain re-approval from regulatory agencies;

(8) all licenses required for the use of the proposed substitute Product will be obtained and paid for by the entity submitting the request for substitution and such license(s) will be transferred to the Owner;

(9) if required by the Engineer, the entity submitting the request for substitution will provide a special performance warranty or bond (separate from the Contract Performance Bond) as a condition of Engineer's acceptance of the proposed substitute Product (such bond may be in an amount of up to 200 percent of the dollar value of the Product as determined by the Engineer).

- I. Engineer will notify the entity submitting the request, in writing, of decision to accept or reject proposed substitute Product.

Add the following subparagraph immediately after paragraph 7.05B:

1. The determination as to whether the Product is an "or-equal" or a proposed substitute item will be made during Engineer's review of Product Shop Drawing, as defined in Article 1 of General Conditions. If the Product proposed by the Contractor is not considered an "or-equal" Product, the Shop Drawing will be returned to the Contractor with the notation "Returned for Correction." The Contractor will then be required to proceed as specified in paragraphs GC-7.04E and SC-7.05.A.3.a through SC-7.05.A.3.l.

#### *SC-7.06 Concerning Subcontractors, Suppliers and Others*

SC-7.06.A Amend paragraph 7.06A by adding the following text to the end of the paragraph:

The Contractor shall not award work valued at more than fifty percent of the Contract Price to Subcontractor(s), without the prior approval of the Owner.

Add the following new Subparagraph 7.06B.1 after Subparagraph 7.06B:

- "1. Time limit for Submitting Subcontractors, Suppliers, and Other Entities or individual Identities

- “a. The apparent Successful Bidder, and any other Bidders so requested, shall within 5 days after the Bid opening, submit to the Owner a list of all Subcontractors, suppliers, individuals, or other entities required or on the Bid Form.

SC-7.06D Add the following language at the end of paragraph 7.06D:

Within five days after the Bid opening, Contractor shall provide to Engineer a list of all proposed Subcontractors, Suppliers, and Others who will be involved with the Work in an amount equal to or greater than five percent (5%) of the total contract amount.

#### SC-7.08 Permits

SC-7.08 Add new paragraphs 7.08B and 7.08C immediately after Paragraph 7.08A:

- B. The following approvals and/or permits have been obtained by the Owner:

*None.*

The Contractor shall familiarize itself with the permits and approvals obtained by the Owner and comply with all permit conditions if such documents have been obtained by the Owner.

- C. Contractor shall be responsible for the local municipality building permit(s). Contractor shall prepare and submit application form and pay all permit fees. The cost thereof shall be included in the total price or prices bid in the Bid. The Contractor shall pay all charges including inspection costs of applicable jurisdictional agencies and/or property owners and fees for the Contractor-obtained permits and/or approvals; and shall give all notices necessary and incident to the proper and lawful prosecution of the Work.

#### SC-7.09 Taxes

SC 7.09 Add a new paragraph immediately after Paragraph 7.09.A:

- B. Owner may be exempt from payment of sales and compensating use taxes of the Commonwealth of Pennsylvania on all materials to be incorporated into the Work. Contractor shall obtain legal advice to determine how and to what extent the Owner’s tax exemption may be utilized by the Contractor.
  - 1. Owner will execute a certificate(s) of tax exemption prepared by Contractor for use in the purchase of supplies and materials to be incorporated into the Work.
  - 2. Owner’s exemption does not apply to construction tools, machinery, equipment, or other property purchased by or leased by Contractor, or to supplies or materials not incorporated into the Work.

#### SC-7.10 Laws and Regulations

SC-7.10D Add the following new paragraphs immediately after paragraph 7.10 C:

- D. The Contractor shall comply with the following Laws and Regulations:

1. The Contractor shall comply with the Commonwealth of Pennsylvania Prevailing Wage Act. The applicable provisions of the Act and the wage rate determination are appended to these Supplementary Conditions in the sections immediately following this Section.
2. The Contractor is subject to the provisions of the Pennsylvania Steel Products Procurement Act of 1978, P.L. 6, as amended. The Act and amendments require that the Contractor use or furnish only steel products (as defined in the Act and amendments) which have been produced in the United States.
3. The Contractor is subject to the provisions of the Pennsylvania Act 247 of 1972, as amended, relating to the prevention of environmental pollution and the preservation of public natural resources.
4. The contractor is subject to the provisions of the Pennsylvania Underground Utility Line Protection Act, Act 287 of 1974, as amended, which requires contractors to notify public utilities and owners of underground utilities prior to starting excavation or demolition work.
5. The Contractor is subject to the provisions of the Pennsylvania Act 7 of 1994 known as the Contractor and Subcontractor Payment Act, as it relates to timely payment by Contractor to Subcontractor and suppliers.
6. The Contractor is subject to the provisions of Pennsylvania Human Relations Act No. 222 of 1955, as amended.
7. Public funds will be used in Payment of the obligations of this Contract. Contractor is therefore required to comply with all Laws and Regulations which pertain to the use of Public Funds as appended to Supplementary Conditions in one or more of the following Sections: 00820, 00821, 00822, 00822A, or 00823.
8. The Contractor is subject to the provisions, duties, obligations and penalties of the Public Works Employment Verification Act, Act 43 P.S. 167.1 to 17.11, which is incorporated herein by reference.

#### *SC-7.15 Emergencies*

Add the following paragraph immediately after paragraph 7.15A:

B. The Contractor shall provide during non-working hours a maintenance crew to correct conditions which are hazardous to the public or detrimental to proper system operation. If the Contractor fails to correct the problems within a reasonable period of time, the necessary corrections will be performed by others and the full costs of the work charged to the Contractor. Names, addresses and telephone numbers of the Contractor's emergency repair personnel shall be submitted to the Owner and Engineer at the preconstruction conference.

### **ARTICLE 10 – ENGINEER'S STATUS DURING CONSTRUCTION**

#### *SC-10.03 Project Representative*

SC-10.03 Add the following new paragraphs immediately after Paragraph 10.03.A:

- B. No Resident Project Representative will be provided for this project. Engineer however, reserves the right to designate a Project Representative who will assist Engineer in observing the Work. Such Project Representative will have responsibilities as directed by and under the supervision of Engineer, but in no case will such responsibilities exceed



the responsibilities of Engineer outlined in Article 9 of the Standard General Conditions of the Construction Contract.

## **ARTICLE 11 – AMENDING THE CONTRACT DOCUMENTS; CHANGES IN THE WORK**

### *SC-11.05 Change of Contract Time*

SC-11.05 Add the following new Subparagraph 11.05C:

- C. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary in the Contract Documents, an extension in the Contract Times, to the extent permitted by the Contract Documents, shall be the sole and exclusive remedy of the Contractor for any (1) delay in the commencement, prosecution, or completion of the Work; (2) hindrance or obstruction in the performance of the Work; (3) loss of productivity; or (4) other similar claims (collectively referred to in this paragraph as Delays) whether or not such delays are foreseeable. In no event shall the Contractor be entitled to any compensation or recovery of any damages, in connection with any Delay, including, without limitation, consequential damages, lost opportunity costs, impact damages, or other similar remuneration. The Owner's exercise of any of its rights or remedies under the Contract Documents (including, without limitation, ordering changes in the Work, directing suspension, rescheduling, or correction of the Work, or terminating this Agreement for its convenience), regardless of the extent or frequency of the Owner's exercise of such rights or remedies, shall not be construed as active interference with the Contractor's performance of the Work. If the Contractor submits a progress report indicating, or otherwise expressing an intention to achieve, completion of the Work prior to any completion date required by the Contract Documents or expiration of the Contract Times, no liability of the Owner to the Contractor for any failure of the Contractor to so complete the Work shall be created or implied.

### *SC-11.07 Execution of Change Orders*

SC-11.07 Add the following new Subparagraph 11.07C

Agreements on any change order shall constitute a final settlement of all matters relating to the change in the Work that is the subject of the change order, including, but not limited to, all direct and indirect costs associated with such change and any and all adjustments to the Contract Price and the Contract Times. In the event a change order increases the Contract Price, the Contractor shall include the Work covered by such change order in applications for payments as if such Work were originally part of the contract documents.

## **ARTICLE 13 – COST OF THE WORK; ALLOWANCES; UNIT PRICE WORK**

### *SC-13.03 Unit Price Work*

SC 13.03.E Delete Paragraph 13.03.E in its entirety and insert the following in its place:

- E. The unit price of an item of Unit Price Work shall be subject to reevaluation and adjustment under the following conditions:
1. if the extended price of a particular item of Unit Price Work amounts to **5** percent or more of the Contract Price (based on estimated quantities at the time of Contract formation) and the variation in the quantity of that particular item of Unit Price Work actually furnished or performed by

- Contractor differs by more than 25 percent from the estimated quantity of such item indicated in the Agreement; and
2. if there is no corresponding adjustment with respect to any other item of Work; and
  3. if Contractor believes that Contractor has incurred additional expense as a result thereof, Contractor may submit a Change Proposal, or if Owner believes that the quantity variation entitles Owner to an adjustment in the unit price, Owner may make a Claim, seeking an adjustment in the Contract Price.

## **ARTICLE 15 – PAYMENTS TO CONTRACTOR; SET-OFFS; COMPLETION; CORRECTION PERIOD**

### *SC-15.01 Progress Payments*

Add the following language at the end of paragraph GC 15.01A:

“Payment for materials not incorporated in the Work, but delivered and suitably stored at the site, or at another location agreed to in writing, shall be limited to project specific items completely assembled having a value equal to or greater than ten (10%) of the Total Contract Amount, or \$10,000 whichever is less.

“Items meeting the requirements for payment as stored material are pumps, grinders, sluice gates, electric actuators, generators, and controls panels associated with the equipment listed.

“Payment shall be limited to ninety percent (90%) of the invoiced amount (exclusive of retainage) until such time that the equipment is installed and the retainage is reduced. “

Add the following language at the end of paragraph GC 15.01C 2:

Contractor shall be required to submit a waiver/release of liens and claims in a form and manner acceptable to the Owner and Engineer indicating that in exchange for the progress payment, Contractor waives and releases all claims, demands, liens and requests up to and including the date through the end of the period for which payment is sought and execution and submission of the same shall be a condition precedent to Owner’s duty to make payment to Contractor.

SC-15.01C.6. Add the following new paragraph immediately after GC 15.01.C.6e:

f. If Contractor’s progress on the preparation of Record Drawings does not reflect the progress of the work at the end of the period for which payment is requested, the Engineer may recommend to Owner the withholding of up to ten percent (10%) of the Contract Amount until such time that the Record Drawings are updated by the Contractor so as to reflect the progress of the Work.

SC-15.01 D. 1 Amend the beginning of paragraph by:

Change “Ten days after presentation . . .

To “Forty five (45) days after presentation . . .

### *SC-15.02 Contractor’s Warranty of Title*

SC-15.02.A Amend Paragraph 15.02.A by inserting the following at the end of the paragraph:

“ . . . no later than the time of payment by Owner”

*SC-15.03 Substantial Completion*

SC 15.03.B Add the following new subparagraph to Paragraph 15.03.B:

1. If some or all of the Work has been determined not to be at a point of Substantial Completion and will require re-inspection or re-testing by Engineer, the cost of such re-inspection or re-testing, including the cost of time, travel and living expenses, shall be paid by Contractor to Owner. If Contractor does not pay, or the parties are unable to agree as to the amount owed, then Owner may impose a reasonable set-off against payments due under Article 15.

SC-15.03.F Add a new paragraph after paragraph 15.03.F:

- G. In order to be considered substantially complete, the Work must meet the requirements set forth in the definition of Substantial Completion as indicated in SC-1.01.A

*SC-15.06 Final Payment*

Delete existing Subparagraph 15.06A2e and replace with the following:

- e. Complete and legally effective forms (in a form and manner satisfactory to the Owner and Engineer) indicating, among other things, that in return for final payment, the Contractor waives and releases the Owner and Engineer from any all claims, demands, liens, suits, requests, and/or causes of action relating to or arising out of the Project and execution and submission of the same shall be a condition precedent to Owner’s duty to make final payment to Contractor.

**ARTICLE 17 – FINAL RESOLUTION OF DISPUTES**

Add the following new paragraph immediately after paragraph 17.01:

SC-17.02 Methods and Procedures

- A. Either Owner or Contractor may request mediation of any Claim for a decision under Paragraph 12.01 before such decision becomes final and binding. The mediation will be governed by the rules of the Berks County Bar Association Mediation Program. The request for mediation shall be submitted in writing to the Berks County Bar Association and to the other party to the contract. Timely submission of the request shall stay the effect of Paragraph 12.01.F.
- B. Owner and Contractor shall participate in the mediation process in good faith. The process shall be concluded within sixty (60) days of filing of the request. The date of termination of the mediation shall be determined by application of the Berks County Bar Association Rules of Mediation.
- C. To the extent Contractor pursues a Claim or litigation against Owner and Owner prevails, partially or completely, on any or all of its own Claims or defenses to Contractor’s Claims, leaving Contractor with less than one hundred percent (100%) recovery, Contractor will be liable for any and all legal fees, professional fees, costs or expenses of Owner, as well as the true cost of any of Owner’s

employee's time associated with analyzing any claim, pursuing litigation or defending the claim or litigation, and Contractor shall reimburse Owner for such legal fees, professional fees, costs and expenses immediately upon demand by Owner. Further, to the extent the Contractor makes an excessive number of Claims, which excessiveness shall be determined solely in the discretion of Owner, and Owner incurs any legal fees, professional fees, expenses, costs, (including, but not limited to employee cost), Contractor shall be liable for such fees, expenses, or costs and Contractor shall reimburse Owner for such legal fees, professional fees, costs and expenses shall be deducted from any amount due to Contractor under the Contract immediately upon demand by Owner. If the amount due to Contractor is not sufficient to cover such cost, Contractor shall pay the difference to Owner within seven (7) days of receipt of Owner's invoice for such legal fees, professional fees, or other cost or expenses.

- D. Pending final resolution of a dispute, except as otherwise agreed in writing, Contractor shall proceed diligently with performance of Work and the failure to continue performing the work despite the existence of a payment or other dispute shall be material breach of the Contract.
- E. In the event of a dispute between the parties that cannot be resolved by mediation as set forth herein, litigation in the Court of Common Pleas of Berks County Pennsylvania shall be the sole and exclusive method of resolving any contract disputes hereunder.
- F. The Contract shall be governed by the laws of the Commonwealth of Pennsylvania without regard to conflicts of law. All litigation actions shall be settled in a non-jury trial and shall be brought in the Court of Common Pleas of Berks County. Contractor agrees to submit to the exclusive jurisdiction and venue of the Court of Common Pleas of Berks County.

## **ARTICLE 18 – MISCELLANEOUS**

### *SC-18.01 Giving Notice*

Add the following paragraph after paragraph 18.01.A:

- B. Should Owner or Contractor suffer bodily injury or property damage because of any error, omission or act of the other party or of any of the other party's employees or agents or others for whose acts the other party is legally liable, claim will be made in writing to the other party within a reasonable time of the first observance of such injury or damage. The provisions of paragraph 18.01 shall not be construed as a substitute for a waiver of the provisions of any applicable statute of limitations or repose.

Add the following new paragraphs after paragraph 18.08:

### *SC-18.09 Professional Fees and Court Costs Included*

Whenever reference is made to "claims, costs, losses and damages", it shall include in each case, but not be limited to, all fees and charges of engineers, architects, attorneys

and other professionals and all court or arbitration or other dispute resolution costs.

*SC-18.10 Liquidated Damages*

Owner and Contractor recognize that time is of the essence of this Agreement and that Owner will suffer financial loss if the Work is not completed within the times specified in the Agreement, plus any extensions thereof allowed in accordance with Article 11 of the General Conditions. They also recognize the delays, expense and difficulties involved in proving in a legal or arbitration proceeding the actual loss suffered by Owner is the Work is not completed on time. Accordingly, instead of requiring any such proof, Owner and Contractor agree that as liquidated damages for delay (but not as a penalty) Contractor shall pay Owner the amounts specified in the Agreement.

+++ END OF SECTION +++



COMMONWEALTH OF PENNSYLVANIA

PUBLIC WORKS EMPLOYMENT VERIFICATION FORM

Date \_\_\_\_\_

Business or Organization Name (Employer) \_\_\_\_\_

Address \_\_\_\_\_

City \_\_\_\_\_ State \_\_\_\_\_ Zip Code \_\_\_\_\_

Contractor

Contracting Public Body \_\_\_\_\_

Contract/Project No \_\_\_\_\_

Project Description \_\_\_\_\_

Project Location \_\_\_\_\_

As a contractor/subcontractor for the above referenced public works contract, I hereby affirm that as of the above date, our company is in compliance with the Public Works Employment Verification Act ('the Act') through utilization of the federal E-Verify Program (EVP) operated by the United States Department of Homeland Security. To the best of my/our knowledge, all employees hired post January 1, 2013 are authorized to work in the United States.

It is also agreed to that all public works contractors/subcontractors will utilize the federal EVP to verify the employment eligibility of each new hire within five (5) business days of the employee start date throughout the duration of the public works contract. Documentation confirming the use of the federal EVP upon each new hire shall be maintained in the event of an investigation or audit.

I, \_\_\_\_\_, authorized representative of the company above, attest that the information contained in this verification form is true and correct and understand that the submission of false or misleading information in connection with the above verification shall be subject to sanctions provided by law.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Authorized Representative Signature

**BUREAU OF LABOR LAW COMPLIANCE  
PREVAILING WAGES PROJECT RATES**

Project Name:	Elementary and High School HVAC Upgrade
Awarding Agency:	Schuylkill Valley School district
Contract Award Date:	3/21/2022
Serial Number:	22-01231
Project Classification:	Building
Determination Date:	2/14/2022
Assigned Field Office:	Scranton
Field Office Phone Number:	(570)963-4577
Toll Free Phone Number:	(877)214-3962
Project County:	Berks County

**BUREAU OF LABOR LAW COMPLIANCE  
PREVAILING WAGES PROJECT RATES**

<b>Project: 22-01231 - Building</b>	<b>Effective Date</b>	<b>Expiration Date</b>	<b>Hourly Rate</b>	<b>Fringe Benefits</b>	<b>Total</b>
Asbestos & Insulation Workers	6/26/2017		\$32.00	\$26.51	\$58.51
Asbestos & Insulation Workers	7/2/2018		\$32.80	\$26.76	\$59.56
Asbestos & Insulation Workers	7/2/2019		\$33.80	\$27.26	\$61.06
Asbestos & Insulation Workers	6/29/2020		\$34.80	\$28.01	\$62.81
Asbestos & Insulation Workers	6/28/2021		\$35.80	\$28.26	\$64.06
Asbestos & Insulation Workers	7/27/2022		\$35.80	\$30.01	\$65.81
Asbestos & Insulation Workers	6/26/2023		\$35.80	\$32.01	\$67.81
Asbestos & Insulation Workers	7/1/2024		\$35.80	\$34.06	\$69.86
Boilermaker (Commercial, Institutional, and Minor Repair Work)	3/1/2017		\$28.52	\$18.22	\$46.74
Boilermaker (Commercial, Institutional, and Minor Repair Work)	3/1/2018		\$29.52	\$18.22	\$47.74
Boilermaker (Commercial, Institutional, and Minor Repair Work)	1/1/2019		\$29.26	\$18.48	\$47.74
Boilermakers	1/1/2018		\$46.26	\$33.36	\$79.62
Boilermakers	3/1/2018		\$45.89	\$33.73	\$79.62
Boilermakers	1/1/2019		\$45.51	\$34.11	\$79.62
Boilermakers	8/1/2019		\$47.21	\$34.11	\$81.32
Boilermakers	1/1/2021		\$49.32	\$34.90	\$84.22
Boilermakers	1/1/2022		\$50.17	\$35.30	\$85.47
Bricklayer (Pointer, Cleaner, Caulker, Cement Mason, Plasterer, Tile Setter)	5/1/2018		\$29.40	\$20.35	\$49.75
Bricklayers, Stone Masons, Pointers, Caulkers, Cleaners	5/1/2017		\$34.11	\$15.19	\$49.30
Bricklayers, Stone Masons, Pointers, Caulkers, Cleaners	5/1/2018		\$34.53	\$15.57	\$50.10
Bricklayers, Stone Masons, Pointers, Caulkers, Cleaners	5/1/2019		\$35.04	\$15.96	\$51.00
Bricklayers, Stone Masons, Pointers, Caulkers, Cleaners	5/3/2020		\$35.64	\$16.36	\$52.00
Bricklayers, Stone Masons, Pointers, Caulkers, Cleaners	5/1/2021		\$36.33	\$16.77	\$53.10
Bricklayers, Stone Masons, Pointers, Caulkers, Cleaners	5/1/2022		\$38.08	\$17.17	\$55.25
Carpenters, Drywall Hangers, Framers, Instrument Men, Lathers, Soft Floor Layers	6/1/2017		\$30.05	\$16.05	\$46.10
Carpenters, Drywall Hangers, Framers, Instrument Men, Lathers, Soft Floor Layers	6/1/2018		\$29.53	\$16.20	\$45.73
Carpenters, Drywall Hangers, Framers, Instrument Men, Lathers, Soft Floor Layers	6/1/2019		\$30.18	\$16.65	\$46.83
Carpenters, Drywall Hangers, Framers, Instrument Men, Lathers, Soft Floor Layers	6/1/2020		\$30.88	\$17.10	\$47.98
Carpenters, Drywall Hangers, Framers, Instrument Men, Lathers, Soft Floor Layers	6/1/2021		\$31.77	\$17.41	\$49.18
Cement Finishers & Plasterers	5/2/2021		\$27.25	\$20.25	\$47.50
Cement Finishers	5/1/2017		\$35.87	\$12.93	\$48.80
Cement Masons	5/1/2019		\$31.00	\$22.68	\$53.68
Cement Masons	5/1/2020		\$30.90	\$20.80	\$51.70
Cement Masons	5/1/2021		\$32.65	\$23.58	\$56.23
DockBuilder/ Divers (Building Heavy & Highway)	5/1/2020		\$52.44	\$37.27	\$89.71



**BUREAU OF LABOR LAW COMPLIANCE  
PREVAILING WAGES PROJECT RATES**

<b>Project: 22-01231 - Building</b>	<b>Effective Date</b>	<b>Expiration Date</b>	<b>Hourly Rate</b>	<b>Fringe Benefits</b>	<b>Total</b>
DockBuilder/Pile Drivers (Building, Heavy & Highway)	5/1/2018		\$43.45	\$34.47	\$77.92
DockBuilder/Pile Drivers (Building, Heavy & Highway)	5/1/2020		\$43.70	\$37.27	\$80.97
DockBuilder/Pile Drivers/ Diver Tender(Building Heavy & Highway)	5/1/2020		\$43.70	\$37.27	\$80.97
Dockbuilder/Piledriver (Building, Heavy, Highway)	11/1/2017		\$43.45	\$33.22	\$76.67
Dockbuilder/Piledriver (Building, Heavy, Highway)	5/1/2018		\$44.70	\$33.22	\$77.92
Drywall Finisher	5/1/2017		\$27.81	\$18.17	\$45.98
Drywall Finisher	5/1/2019		\$28.58	\$19.64	\$48.22
Drywall Finisher	5/1/2020		\$29.33	\$20.01	\$49.34
Drywall Finisher	5/1/2021		\$29.65	\$20.74	\$50.39
Electricians	9/1/2017		\$34.77	\$21.77	\$56.54
Electricians	9/1/2018		\$36.02	\$22.51	\$58.53
Electricians	9/1/2019	8/31/2020	\$36.77	\$23.53	\$60.30
Electricians	9/1/2020		\$37.77	\$24.07	\$61.84
Electricians	10/18/2021		\$39.02	\$25.08	\$64.10
Elevator Constructor	1/1/2018		\$47.48	\$33.00	\$80.48
Floor Coverer	5/1/2019		\$31.54	\$17.89	\$49.43
Floor Coverer	5/1/2020		\$32.66	\$17.89	\$50.55
Glazier	5/1/2017		\$34.69	\$18.05	\$52.74
Glazier	5/1/2018		\$35.69	\$18.35	\$54.04
Glazier	5/1/2019	4/30/2020	\$35.53	\$20.06	\$55.59
Glazier	5/1/2020	4/30/2021	\$35.53	\$21.51	\$57.04
Glazier	5/1/2021		\$35.53	\$22.86	\$58.39
Iron Workers (Bridge, Structural Steel, Ornamental, Precast, Reinforcing)	7/1/2017		\$31.33	\$28.42	\$59.75
Iron Workers (Bridge, Structural Steel, Ornamental, Precast, Reinforcing)	7/1/2018		\$32.53	\$28.42	\$60.95
Iron Workers (Bridge, Structural Steel, Ornamental, Precast, Reinforcing)	7/1/2019		\$32.76	\$29.88	\$62.64
Iron Workers (Bridge, Structural Steel, Ornamental, Precast, Reinforcing)	7/1/2020		\$33.76	\$30.13	\$63.89
Iron Workers (Bridge, Structural Steel, Ornamental, Precast, Reinforcing)	7/1/2021		\$34.01	\$31.13	\$65.14
Laborers (Class 01 - See notes)	5/1/2017		\$21.57	\$15.04	\$36.61
Laborers (Class 01 - See notes)	5/1/2018	4/30/2019	\$22.07	\$15.59	\$37.66
Laborers (Class 01 - See notes)	5/1/2019	4/30/2020	\$23.02	\$15.92	\$38.94
Laborers (Class 01 - See notes)	5/1/2020		\$23.77	\$16.22	\$39.99
Laborers (Class 01 - See notes)	5/1/2021		\$25.77	\$16.25	\$42.02
Laborers (Class 02 - See notes)	5/1/2017		\$23.57	\$15.04	\$38.61
Laborers (Class 02 - See notes)	5/1/2018		\$24.07	\$15.59	\$39.66
Laborers (Class 02 - See notes)	5/1/2019	4/30/2020	\$25.02	\$15.92	\$40.94
Laborers (Class 02 - See notes)	5/1/2020		\$25.77	\$16.22	\$41.99
Laborers (Class 02 - See notes)	5/1/2020		\$24.07	\$17.92	\$41.99
Laborers (Class 02 - see notes)	5/1/2021		\$27.77	\$16.27	\$44.04
Laborers (Class 03 - See notes)	5/1/2017		\$25.57	\$15.58	\$41.15
Laborers (Class 03 - See notes)	5/1/2018	4/30/2019	\$25.82	\$15.84	\$41.66

**BUREAU OF LABOR LAW COMPLIANCE  
PREVAILING WAGES PROJECT RATES**

<b>Project: 22-01231 - Building</b>	<b>Effective Date</b>	<b>Expiration Date</b>	<b>Hourly Rate</b>	<b>Fringe Benefits</b>	<b>Total</b>
Laborers (Class 03 - See notes)	5/1/2019		\$26.87	\$15.94	\$42.81
Laborers (Class 03 - See notes)	5/3/2020		\$27.77	\$16.24	\$44.01
Laborers (Class 03 - See notes)	5/2/2021		\$28.67	\$16.53	\$45.20
Laborers (Class 03 - See notes)	5/1/2022		\$29.62	\$16.24	\$45.86
Laborers (Class 03 - See notes)	4/30/2023		\$30.22	\$16.84	\$47.06
Laborers (Class 04 - See notes)	5/1/2017		\$26.77	\$15.58	\$42.35
Laborers (Class 04 - See notes)	5/1/2018	4/30/2019	\$27.32	\$15.84	\$43.16
Laborers (Class 04 - See notes)	5/1/2019		\$28.37	\$15.94	\$44.31
Laborers (Class 04 - See notes)	5/3/2020		\$29.27	\$16.24	\$45.51
Laborers (Class 04 - See notes)	5/2/2021		\$30.17	\$16.53	\$46.70
Laborers (Class 04 - See notes)	5/1/2022		\$31.12	\$16.24	\$47.36
Laborers (Class 04 - See notes)	4/30/2023		\$31.72	\$16.84	\$48.56
Laborers (Class 05 - See notes)	5/1/2017		\$27.27	\$15.58	\$42.85
Laborers (Class 05 - See notes)	5/1/2018	4/30/2019	\$27.82	\$15.84	\$43.66
Laborers (Class 05 - See notes)	5/1/2019		\$28.87	\$15.94	\$44.81
Laborers (Class 05 - See notes)	5/3/2020		\$29.77	\$16.24	\$46.01
Laborers (Class 05 - See notes)	5/2/2021		\$30.67	\$16.53	\$47.20
Laborers (Class 05 - See notes)	5/1/2022		\$31.62	\$16.24	\$47.86
Laborers (Class 05 - See notes)	4/30/2023		\$32.22	\$16.84	\$49.06
Laborers (Class 06 - See notes)	5/1/2017		\$22.92	\$15.04	\$37.96
Laborers (Class 06 - See notes)	5/1/2018	4/30/2019	\$23.42	\$15.59	\$39.01
Laborers (Class 06 - See notes)	5/1/2019		\$24.37	\$15.92	\$40.29
Laborers (Class 06 - See notes)	5/1/2020		\$24.37	\$16.97	\$41.34
Laborers (Class 06 - See notes)	5/1/2021		\$27.77	\$16.27	\$44.04
Marble Mason	5/1/2017		\$30.14	\$14.75	\$44.89
Marble Mason	5/1/2018		\$30.76	\$15.13	\$45.89
Marble Mason	5/1/2019		\$31.37	\$15.52	\$46.89
Marble Mason	5/1/2020		\$31.97	\$15.92	\$47.89
Marble Mason	5/1/2021		\$32.56	\$16.33	\$48.89
Millwright	7/1/2017		\$36.49	\$18.93	\$55.42
Millwright	5/1/2018		\$37.84	\$19.64	\$57.48
Millwright	5/1/2019		\$39.14	\$20.08	\$59.22
Operators (Building, Class 01 - See Notes)	5/1/2017		\$35.24	\$24.58	\$59.82
Operators (Building, Class 01 - See Notes)	5/1/2018		\$36.78	\$25.03	\$61.81
Operators (Building, Class 01 - See Notes)	5/1/2019		\$36.78	\$27.03	\$63.81
Operators (Building, Class 01 - See Notes)	5/1/2020		\$38.32	\$27.49	\$65.81
Operators (Building, Class 01 - See Notes)	5/1/2021		\$39.87	\$27.94	\$67.81
Operators (Building, Class 01A - See Notes)	5/1/2017		\$37.49	\$25.23	\$62.72
Operators (Building, Class 01A - See Notes)	5/1/2018		\$39.03	\$25.69	\$64.72
Operators (Building, Class 01A - See Notes)	5/1/2019		\$39.03	\$27.69	\$66.72
Operators (Building, Class 01A - See Notes)	5/1/2020		\$40.57	\$28.15	\$68.72
Operators (Building, Class 01A - See Notes)	5/1/2021		\$42.12	\$28.60	\$70.72
Operators (Building, Class 02 - See Notes)	5/1/2017		\$34.96	\$24.49	\$59.45
Operators (Building, Class 02 - See Notes)	5/1/2018		\$36.50	\$24.95	\$61.45

**BUREAU OF LABOR LAW COMPLIANCE  
PREVAILING WAGES PROJECT RATES**

<b>Project: 22-01231 - Building</b>	<b>Effective Date</b>	<b>Expiration Date</b>	<b>Hourly Rate</b>	<b>Fringe Benefits</b>	<b>Total</b>
Operators (Building, Class 02 - See Notes)	5/1/2019		\$36.50	\$26.94	\$63.44
Operators (Building, Class 02 - See Notes)	5/1/2020		\$38.05	\$27.39	\$65.44
Operators (Building, Class 02 - See Notes)	5/1/2021		\$39.59	\$27.85	\$67.44
Operators (Building, Class 02A - See Notes)	5/1/2017		\$37.21	\$25.16	\$62.37
Operators (Building, Class 02A - See Notes)	5/1/2018		\$38.75	\$25.61	\$64.36
Operators (Building, Class 02A - See Notes)	5/1/2019		\$38.75	\$27.61	\$66.36
Operators (Building, Class 02A - See Notes)	5/1/2020		\$40.30	\$28.06	\$68.36
Operators (Building, Class 02A - See Notes)	5/1/2021		\$41.84	\$28.52	\$70.36
Operators (Building, Class 03 - See Notes)	5/1/2017		\$32.23	\$23.68	\$55.91
Operators (Building, Class 03 - See Notes)	5/1/2018		\$33.78	\$24.12	\$57.90
Operators (Building, Class 03 - See Notes)	5/1/2019		\$33.78	\$26.13	\$59.91
Operators (Building, Class 03 - See Notes)	5/1/2020		\$35.32	\$26.59	\$61.91
Operators (Building, Class 03 - See Notes)	5/1/2021		\$36.87	\$27.04	\$63.91
Operators (Building, Class 04 - See Notes)	5/1/2017		\$30.33	\$22.12	\$52.45
Operators (Building, Class 04 - See Notes)	5/1/2018		\$32.63	\$23.80	\$56.43
Operators (Building, Class 04 - See Notes)	5/1/2019		\$32.63	\$25.81	\$58.44
Operators (Building, Class 04 - See Notes)	5/1/2020		\$34.18	\$26.26	\$60.44
Operators (Building, Class 04 - See Notes)	5/1/2021		\$35.72	\$26.72	\$62.44
Operators (Building, Class 05 - See Notes)	5/1/2017		\$29.87	\$21.99	\$51.86
Operators (Building, Class 05 - See Notes)	5/1/2018		\$32.18	\$23.69	\$55.87
Operators (Building, Class 05 - See Notes)	5/1/2019		\$32.19	\$25.67	\$57.86
Operators (Building, Class 05 - See Notes)	5/1/2020		\$33.73	\$26.13	\$59.86
Operators (Building, Class 05 - See Notes)	5/1/2021		\$35.27	\$26.59	\$61.86
Operators (Building, Class 06 - See Notes)	5/1/2017		\$29.00	\$21.72	\$50.72
Operators (Building, Class 06 - See Notes)	5/1/2018		\$31.31	\$23.41	\$54.72
Operators (Building, Class 06 - See Notes)	5/1/2019		\$31.31	\$25.41	\$56.72
Operators (Building, Class 06 - See Notes)	5/1/2020		\$32.86	\$25.86	\$58.72
Operators (Building, Class 06 - See Notes)	5/1/2021		\$34.40	\$26.32	\$60.72
Operators (Building, Class 07A- See Notes)	5/1/2017		\$42.44	\$28.13	\$70.57
Operators (Building, Class 07A- See Notes)	5/1/2018		\$44.29	\$28.68	\$72.97
Operators (Building, Class 07A- See Notes)	5/1/2019		\$44.60	\$30.77	\$75.37
Operators (Building, Class 07A- See Notes)	5/1/2020		\$46.46	\$31.31	\$77.77
Operators (Building, Class 07A- See Notes)	5/1/2021		\$48.31	\$31.86	\$80.17
Operators (Building, Class 07B- See Notes)	5/1/2017		\$42.09	\$28.03	\$70.12
Operators (Building, Class 07B- See Notes)	5/1/2018		\$43.95	\$28.58	\$72.53
Operators (Building, Class 07B- See Notes)	5/1/2019		\$44.26	\$30.66	\$74.92
Operators (Building, Class 07B- See Notes)	5/1/2020		\$46.11	\$31.21	\$77.32
Operators (Building, Class 07B- See Notes)	5/1/2021		\$47.96	\$31.77	\$79.73
Painters Class 1 (see notes)	5/1/2017		\$27.25	\$18.17	\$45.42
Painters Class 1 (see notes)	5/1/2019		\$28.31	\$19.77	\$48.08
Painters Class 1 (see notes)	5/1/2020		\$28.91	\$20.42	\$49.33
Painters Class 1 (see notes)	5/1/2021		\$29.51	\$21.07	\$50.58
Painters Class 2 (see notes)	5/1/2017		\$30.15	\$18.17	\$48.32
Painters Class 2 (see notes)	5/1/2019		\$31.21	\$19.78	\$50.99

**BUREAU OF LABOR LAW COMPLIANCE  
PREVAILING WAGES PROJECT RATES**

<b>Project: 22-01231 - Building</b>	<b>Effective Date</b>	<b>Expiration Date</b>	<b>Hourly Rate</b>	<b>Fringe Benefits</b>	<b>Total</b>
Painters Class 2 (see notes)	5/1/2020		\$31.81	\$20.43	\$52.24
Painters Class 3 (see notes)	5/1/2017		\$36.25	\$18.17	\$54.42
Piledrivers	5/1/2021		\$43.73	\$37.99	\$81.72
Plasterers (Use Cement Masons)	5/1/2018		\$29.00	\$21.30	\$50.30
Plasterers	5/1/2017		\$24.23	\$21.38	\$45.61
Plasterers	5/1/2019		\$32.08	\$21.86	\$53.94
Plasterers	5/1/2020		\$32.88	\$22.31	\$55.19
Plasterers	5/1/2020		\$27.48	\$20.83	\$48.31
Plasterers	5/1/2021		\$28.33	\$20.98	\$49.31
plumber	5/1/2019		\$45.92	\$31.72	\$77.64
plumber	8/1/2020		\$47.43	\$32.86	\$80.29
plumber	5/1/2021		\$49.58	\$33.36	\$82.94
Roofers (Composition)	5/1/2017		\$36.15	\$30.22	\$66.37
Roofers (Composition)	5/1/2018		\$37.15	\$31.27	\$68.42
Roofers (Composition)	5/1/2019		\$38.35	\$31.80	\$70.15
Roofers (Composition)	5/1/2020		\$39.50	\$32.30	\$71.80
Roofers (Composition)	5/1/2021		\$40.33	\$33.12	\$73.45
Roofers (Shingle)	5/1/2016		\$25.70	\$19.17	\$44.87
Roofers (Shingle)	5/1/2019		\$28.50	\$20.87	\$49.37
Roofers (Shingle)	5/1/2020		\$29.50	\$21.25	\$50.75
Roofers (Slate & Tile)	5/1/2016		\$28.70	\$19.17	\$47.87
Roofers (Slate & Tile)	5/1/2018		\$30.50	\$20.37	\$50.87
Roofers (Slate & Tile)	5/1/2019		\$31.50	\$20.87	\$52.37
Roofers (Slate & Tile)	5/1/2020		\$32.50	\$21.25	\$53.75
Sheet Metal Workers	6/1/2016		\$33.60	\$33.43	\$67.03
Sheet Metal Workers	6/1/2017		\$33.98	\$35.40	\$69.38
Sheet Metal Workers	6/1/2018		\$34.78	\$36.45	\$71.23
Sheet Metal Workers	6/1/2019		\$36.08	\$37.65	\$73.73
Sheet Metal Workers	6/1/2020		\$37.26	\$38.97	\$76.23
Sheet Metal Workers	6/1/2021		\$36.08	\$42.65	\$78.73
Sign Makers and Hangars	7/17/2021		\$29.49	\$23.90	\$53.39
Sprinklerfitters	4/1/2017		\$37.40	\$21.74	\$59.14
Sprinklerfitters	4/1/2018		\$38.80	\$22.74	\$61.54
Sprinklerfitters	4/1/2020		\$38.90	\$26.42	\$65.32
Sprinklerfitters	4/1/2021		\$40.33	\$26.94	\$67.27
Steamfitters	5/1/2017		\$46.99	\$32.67	\$79.66
Steamfitters	5/1/2019		\$49.93	\$35.82	\$85.75
Steamfitters	5/1/2020		\$51.73	\$37.07	\$88.80
Steamfitters	5/1/2021		\$53.08	\$38.87	\$91.95
Terrazzo Finisher	5/1/2017		\$31.64	\$15.62	\$47.26
Terrazzo Finisher	5/1/2018		\$32.35	\$15.91	\$48.26
Terrazzo Finisher	5/1/2019		\$33.04	\$16.22	\$49.26
Terrazzo Finisher	5/1/2020		\$32.26	\$18.48	\$50.74
Terrazzo Finisher	5/1/2021		\$33.23	\$19.03	\$52.26

**BUREAU OF LABOR LAW COMPLIANCE  
PREVAILING WAGES PROJECT RATES**

<b>Project: 22-01231 - Building</b>	<b>Effective Date</b>	<b>Expiration Date</b>	<b>Hourly Rate</b>	<b>Fringe Benefits</b>	<b>Total</b>
Terrazzo Grinder	5/1/2020		\$32.95	\$18.48	\$51.43
Terrazzo Grinder	5/1/2021		\$33.94	\$19.03	\$52.97
Terrazzo Mechanics	5/1/2020		\$32.91	\$20.11	\$53.02
Terrazzo Mechanics	5/1/2021		\$33.83	\$20.78	\$54.61
Terrazzo Setter	5/1/2017		\$30.63	\$18.85	\$49.48
Terrazzo Setter	5/1/2018		\$31.23	\$19.25	\$50.48
Terrazzo Setter	5/1/2019		\$31.81	\$19.67	\$51.48
Tile & Marble Finisher	5/1/2017		\$26.89	\$13.86	\$40.75
Tile & Marble Finisher	5/1/2018		\$27.60	\$14.15	\$41.75
Tile & Marble Finisher	5/1/2019		\$28.29	\$14.46	\$42.75
Tile & Marble Finisher	5/1/2020		\$28.96	\$14.79	\$43.75
Tile & Marble Finisher	5/1/2021		\$29.61	\$15.14	\$44.75
Tile Setter	5/1/2017		\$30.14	\$14.75	\$44.89
Tile Setter	5/1/2018		\$30.76	\$15.13	\$45.89
Tile Setter	5/1/2019		\$31.37	\$15.52	\$46.89
Tile Setter	5/1/2020		\$31.97	\$15.92	\$47.89
Tile Setter	5/1/2020		\$31.97	\$15.92	\$47.89
Tile Setter	5/1/2021		\$32.36	\$16.53	\$48.89
Truckdriver class 1(see notes)	5/1/2017		\$34.47	\$0.00	\$34.47
Truckdriver class 1(see notes)	5/1/2018		\$35.32	\$0.00	\$35.32
Truckdriver class 1(see notes)	5/1/2019		\$36.12	\$0.00	\$36.12
Truckdriver class 1(see notes)	5/1/2020		\$36.92	\$0.00	\$36.92
Truckdriver class 1(see notes)	5/1/2021		\$37.72	\$0.00	\$37.72
Truckdriver class 2 (see notes)	5/1/2017		\$34.54	\$0.00	\$34.54
Truckdriver class 2 (see notes)	5/1/2018		\$35.39	\$0.00	\$35.39
Truckdriver class 2 (see notes)	5/1/2019		\$36.19	\$0.00	\$36.19
Truckdriver class 2 (see notes)	5/1/2020		\$36.99	\$0.00	\$36.99
Truckdriver class 2 (see notes)	5/1/2021		\$37.79	\$0.00	\$37.79
Truckdriver class 3 (see notes)	5/1/2017		\$35.03	\$0.00	\$35.03
Truckdriver class 3 (see notes)	5/1/2018		\$35.88	\$0.00	\$35.88
Truckdriver class 3 (see notes)	5/1/2019		\$36.68	\$0.00	\$36.68
Truckdriver class 3 (see notes)	5/1/2020		\$37.48	\$0.00	\$37.48
Truckdriver class 3 (see notes)	5/1/2021		\$38.28	\$0.00	\$38.28
Window Film / Tint Installer	6/1/2019		\$24.52	\$12.08	\$36.60

**BUREAU OF LABOR LAW COMPLIANCE  
PREVAILING WAGES PROJECT RATES**

<b>Project: 22-01231 - Heavy/Highway</b>	<b>Effective Date</b>	<b>Expiration Date</b>	<b>Hourly Rate</b>	<b>Fringe Benefits</b>	<b>Total</b>
Carpenter - Chief of Party (Surveying & Layout)	5/1/2019	4/30/2020	\$36.88	\$15.49	\$52.37
Carpenter - Chief of Party (Surveying & Layout)	5/1/2020	4/30/2021	\$39.12	\$15.49	\$54.61
Carpenter - Chief of Party (Surveying & Layout)	5/1/2021		\$41.42	\$15.49	\$56.91
Carpenter - Instrument Person (Surveying & Layout)	5/1/2016		\$27.12	\$13.83	\$40.95
Carpenter - Instrument Person (Surveying & Layout)	5/1/2019	4/30/2020	\$32.07	\$15.49	\$47.56
Carpenter - Instrument Person (Surveying & Layout)	5/1/2020	4/30/2021	\$34.02	\$15.49	\$49.51
Carpenter - Instrument Person (Surveying & Layout)	5/1/2021		\$36.02	\$15.49	\$51.51
Carpenter - Rodman I (Survey & Layout)	5/1/2016		\$21.09	\$13.83	\$34.92
Carpenter - Rodman I (Survey & Layout)	5/1/2019	4/30/2020	\$25.66	\$12.39	\$38.05
Carpenter - Rodman I (Survey & Layout)	5/1/2020	4/30/2021	\$27.22	\$12.39	\$39.61
Carpenter - Rodman I (Survey & Layout)	5/1/2021		\$28.82	\$12.39	\$41.21
Carpenter - Rodman II (Survey & Layout)	5/1/2016		\$18.69	\$13.83	\$32.52
Carpenter	5/1/2019	4/30/2020	\$32.07	\$15.49	\$47.56
Carpenter	5/1/2020	4/30/2021	\$34.02	\$15.49	\$49.51
Carpenter	5/1/2021		\$36.02	\$15.49	\$51.51
Carpenters	6/1/2017		\$30.92	\$14.14	\$45.06
Cement Finishers	1/1/2017		\$27.70	\$20.20	\$47.90
DockBuilder/ Divers (Building Heavy & Highway)	5/1/2020		\$52.44	\$37.27	\$89.71
DockBuilder/Pile Drivers/ Diver Tender(Building Heavy & Highway)	5/1/2020		\$43.70	\$37.27	\$80.97
Electric Lineman	5/29/2017		\$44.22	\$23.94	\$68.16
Electric Lineman	5/28/2018		\$45.25	\$24.94	\$70.19
Electric Lineman	5/27/2019		\$46.32	\$25.97	\$72.29
Electric Lineman	6/1/2020		\$47.42	\$27.04	\$74.46
Electric Lineman	5/31/2021		\$49.22	\$27.36	\$76.58
Electric Lineman	5/30/2022		\$50.28	\$28.47	\$78.75
Electric Lineman	5/29/2023		\$51.40	\$29.62	\$81.02
Electric Lineman	6/3/2024		\$52.80	\$30.61	\$83.41
Electricians	6/1/2022		\$44.46	\$23.06	\$67.52
Electricians	6/1/2023		\$46.49	\$23.06	\$69.55
Iron Workers (Bridge, Structural Steel, Ornamental, Precast, Reinforcing)	7/1/2017		\$31.33	\$28.42	\$59.75
Iron Workers (Bridge, Structural Steel, Ornamental, Precast, Reinforcing)	7/1/2018		\$32.53	\$28.42	\$60.95
Iron Workers (Bridge, Structural Steel, Ornamental, Precast, Reinforcing)	7/1/2019		\$32.76	\$29.88	\$62.64
Iron Workers (Bridge, Structural Steel, Ornamental, Precast, Reinforcing)	7/1/2020		\$33.76	\$30.13	\$63.89
Iron Workers (Bridge, Structural Steel, Ornamental, Precast, Reinforcing)	7/1/2021		\$34.01	\$31.13	\$65.14
Iron Workers	7/1/2106		\$31.95	\$27.65	\$59.60
Laborers (Class 01 - See notes)	5/1/2016		\$19.81	\$15.79	\$35.60
Laborers (Class 01 - See notes)	5/1/2017		\$20.36	\$16.29	\$36.65
Laborers (Class 01 - See notes)	5/1/2018		\$20.96	\$16.79	\$37.75
Laborers (Class 01 - See notes)	5/1/2019		\$21.61	\$17.29	\$38.90
Laborers (Class 01 - See notes)	5/1/2020		\$22.41	\$17.69	\$40.10

**BUREAU OF LABOR LAW COMPLIANCE  
PREVAILING WAGES PROJECT RATES**

<b>Project: 22-01231 - Heavy/Highway</b>	<b>Effective Date</b>	<b>Expiration Date</b>	<b>Hourly Rate</b>	<b>Fringe Benefits</b>	<b>Total</b>
Laborers (Class 01 - See notes)	5/1/2021		\$23.21	\$18.09	\$41.30
Laborers (Class 01 - See notes)	5/1/2022		\$24.01	\$18.54	\$42.55
Laborers (Class 01 - See notes)	5/1/2023		\$24.81	\$18.99	\$43.80
Laborers (Class 01 - See notes)	5/1/2024		\$25.61	\$19.49	\$45.10
Laborers (Class 02 - See notes)	5/1/2016		\$26.43	\$15.79	\$42.22
Laborers (Class 02 - See notes)	5/1/2017		\$26.98	\$16.29	\$43.27
Laborers (Class 02 - See notes)	5/1/2018		\$27.58	\$16.79	\$44.37
Laborers (Class 02 - See notes)	5/1/2019		\$28.23	\$17.29	\$45.52
Laborers (Class 02 - See notes)	5/1/2020		\$29.03	\$17.69	\$46.72
Laborers (Class 02 - See notes)	5/1/2021		\$29.83	\$18.09	\$47.92
Laborers (Class 02 - See notes)	5/1/2022		\$30.63	\$18.54	\$49.17
Laborers (Class 02 - See notes)	5/1/2023		\$31.43	\$18.99	\$50.42
Laborers (Class 02 - See notes)	5/1/2024		\$32.23	\$19.49	\$51.72
Laborers (Class 03 - See notes)	5/1/2016		\$23.42	\$15.79	\$39.21
Laborers (Class 03 - See notes)	5/1/2017		\$23.97	\$16.29	\$40.26
Laborers (Class 03 - See notes)	5/1/2018		\$24.57	\$16.79	\$41.36
Laborers (Class 03 - See notes)	5/1/2019		\$25.22	\$17.29	\$42.51
Laborers (Class 03 - See notes)	5/1/2020		\$26.02	\$17.69	\$43.71
Laborers (Class 03 - See notes)	5/1/2021		\$26.82	\$18.09	\$44.91
Laborers (Class 03 - See notes)	5/1/2022		\$27.62	\$18.54	\$46.16
Laborers (Class 03 - See notes)	5/1/2023		\$28.42	\$18.99	\$47.41
Laborers (Class 03 - See notes)	5/1/2024		\$29.22	\$19.49	\$48.71
Laborers (Class 04 - See notes)	5/1/2016		\$23.77	\$15.79	\$39.56
Laborers (Class 04 - See notes)	5/1/2017		\$24.32	\$16.29	\$40.61
Laborers (Class 04 - See notes)	5/1/2018		\$24.92	\$16.79	\$41.71
Laborers (Class 04 - See notes)	5/1/2019		\$25.57	\$17.29	\$42.86
Laborers (Class 04 - See notes)	5/1/2020		\$26.37	\$17.69	\$44.06
Laborers (Class 04 - See notes)	5/1/2021		\$27.17	\$18.09	\$45.26
Laborers (Class 04 - See notes)	5/1/2022		\$27.97	\$18.54	\$46.51
Laborers (Class 04 - See notes)	5/1/2023		\$28.77	\$18.99	\$47.76
Laborers (Class 04 - See notes)	5/1/2024		\$29.57	\$19.49	\$49.06
Laborers (Class 05 - See notes)	5/1/2016		\$24.44	\$15.79	\$40.23
Laborers (Class 05 - See notes)	5/1/2017		\$24.99	\$16.29	\$41.28
Laborers (Class 05 - See notes)	5/1/2018		\$25.59	\$16.79	\$42.38
Laborers (Class 05 - See notes)	5/1/2019		\$26.24	\$17.29	\$43.53
Laborers (Class 05 - See notes)	5/1/2020		\$27.04	\$17.69	\$44.73
Laborers (Class 05 - See notes)	5/1/2021		\$27.84	\$18.09	\$45.93
Laborers (Class 05 - See notes)	5/1/2022		\$28.64	\$18.54	\$47.18
Laborers (Class 05 - See notes)	5/1/2023		\$29.44	\$18.99	\$48.43
Laborers (Class 05 - See notes)	5/1/2024		\$30.24	\$19.49	\$49.73
Laborers (Class 06 - See notes)	5/1/2016		\$23.86	\$15.79	\$39.65
Laborers (Class 06 - See notes)	5/1/2017		\$24.41	\$16.29	\$40.70
Laborers (Class 06 - See notes)	5/1/2018		\$25.01	\$16.79	\$41.80
Laborers (Class 06 - See notes)	5/1/2019		\$25.66	\$17.29	\$42.95

**BUREAU OF LABOR LAW COMPLIANCE  
PREVAILING WAGES PROJECT RATES**

<b>Project: 22-01231 - Heavy/Highway</b>	<b>Effective Date</b>	<b>Expiration Date</b>	<b>Hourly Rate</b>	<b>Fringe Benefits</b>	<b>Total</b>
Laborers (Class 06 - See notes)	5/1/2020		\$26.46	\$17.69	\$44.15
Laborers (Class 06 - See notes)	5/1/2021		\$27.26	\$18.09	\$45.35
Laborers (Class 06 - See notes)	5/1/2022		\$28.06	\$18.54	\$46.60
Laborers (Class 06 - See notes)	5/1/2023		\$28.86	\$18.99	\$47.85
Laborers (Class 06 - See notes)	5/1/2024		\$29.66	\$19.49	\$49.15
Laborers (Class 07 - See notes)	5/1/2016		\$24.15	\$15.79	\$39.94
Laborers (Class 07 - See notes)	5/1/2017		\$24.70	\$16.29	\$40.99
Laborers (Class 07 - See notes)	5/1/2018		\$25.30	\$16.79	\$42.09
Laborers (Class 07 - See notes)	5/1/2019		\$25.95	\$17.29	\$43.24
Laborers (Class 07 - See notes)	5/1/2020		\$26.75	\$17.69	\$44.44
Laborers (Class 07 - See notes)	5/1/2021		\$27.55	\$18.09	\$45.64
Laborers (Class 07 - See notes)	5/1/2022		\$28.35	\$18.54	\$46.89
Laborers (Class 07 - See notes)	5/1/2023		\$29.15	\$18.99	\$48.14
Laborers (Class 07 - See notes)	5/1/2024		\$29.95	\$19.49	\$49.44
Laborers (Class 08 - See notes)	5/1/2016		\$24.63	\$15.79	\$40.42
Laborers (Class 08 - See notes)	5/1/2017		\$25.18	\$16.29	\$41.47
Laborers (Class 08 - See notes)	5/1/2018		\$25.78	\$16.79	\$42.57
Laborers (Class 08 - See notes)	5/1/2019		\$26.43	\$17.29	\$43.72
Laborers (Class 08 - See notes)	5/1/2020		\$27.23	\$17.69	\$44.92
Laborers (Class 08 - See notes)	5/1/2021		\$28.03	\$18.09	\$46.12
Laborers (Class 08 - See notes)	5/1/2022		\$28.83	\$18.54	\$47.37
Laborers (Class 08 - See notes)	5/1/2023		\$29.63	\$18.99	\$48.62
Laborers (Class 08 - See notes)	5/1/2024		\$30.43	\$19.49	\$49.92
Operators (Class 02 - All Types of Cranes, Backhoes, Shovels)	5/1/2019		\$33.29	\$25.99	\$59.28
Operators (Heavy, Class 01 - See Notes)	5/1/2016		\$32.16	\$22.64	\$54.80
Operators (Heavy, Class 01 - See Notes)	5/1/2017		\$33.80	\$24.16	\$57.96
Operators (Heavy, Class 01 - See Notes)	5/1/2018		\$35.35	\$24.61	\$59.96
Operators (Heavy, Class 01 - See Notes)	5/1/2019		\$35.35	\$26.61	\$61.96
Operators (Heavy, Class 01 - See Notes)	5/1/2020		\$36.90	\$27.06	\$63.96
Operators (Heavy, Class 01 - See Notes)	5/1/2021		\$38.44	\$27.52	\$65.96
Operators (Heavy, Class 01A - See Notes)	5/1/2017		\$36.05	\$24.82	\$60.87
Operators (Heavy, Class 01A - See Notes)	5/1/2018		\$37.60	\$25.27	\$62.87
Operators (Heavy, Class 01A - See Notes)	5/1/2019		\$37.60	\$27.27	\$64.87
Operators (Heavy, Class 01A - See Notes)	5/1/2020		\$39.14	\$27.73	\$66.87
Operators (Heavy, Class 01A - See Notes)	5/1/2021		\$40.69	\$28.18	\$68.87
Operators (Heavy, Class 02 - See Notes)	5/1/2017		\$33.52	\$24.07	\$57.59
Operators (Heavy, Class 02 - See Notes)	5/1/2018		\$35.07	\$24.52	\$59.59
Operators (Heavy, Class 02 - See Notes)	5/1/2019		\$35.07	\$26.52	\$61.59
Operators (Heavy, Class 02 - See Notes)	5/1/2020		\$36.61	\$26.98	\$63.59
Operators (Heavy, Class 02 - See Notes)	5/1/2021		\$38.16	\$27.43	\$65.59
Operators (Heavy, Class 02A - See Notes)	5/1/2017		\$35.78	\$24.72	\$60.50
Operators (Heavy, Class 02A - See Notes)	5/1/2018		\$37.32	\$25.19	\$62.51
Operators (Heavy, Class 02A - See Notes)	5/1/2019		\$37.32	\$27.19	\$64.51
Operators (Heavy, Class 02A - See Notes)	5/1/2020		\$38.87	\$27.64	\$66.51



**BUREAU OF LABOR LAW COMPLIANCE  
PREVAILING WAGES PROJECT RATES**

<b>Project: 22-01231 - Heavy/Highway</b>	<b>Effective Date</b>	<b>Expiration Date</b>	<b>Hourly Rate</b>	<b>Fringe Benefits</b>	<b>Total</b>
Operators (Heavy, Class 02A - See Notes)	5/1/2021		\$40.41	\$28.10	\$68.51
Operators (Heavy, Class 03 - See Notes)	5/1/2017		\$30.60	\$23.21	\$53.81
Operators (Heavy, Class 03 - See Notes)	5/1/2018		\$32.15	\$23.66	\$55.81
Operators (Heavy, Class 03 - See Notes)	5/1/2019		\$32.15	\$25.66	\$57.81
Operators (Heavy, Class 03 - See Notes)	5/1/2020		\$33.69	\$26.12	\$59.81
Operators (Heavy, Class 03 - See Notes)	5/1/2021		\$35.24	\$26.57	\$61.81
Operators (Heavy, Class 04 - See Notes)	5/1/2017		\$29.47	\$22.88	\$52.35
Operators (Heavy, Class 04 - See Notes)	5/1/2018		\$31.01	\$23.32	\$54.33
Operators (Heavy, Class 04 - See Notes)	5/1/2019		\$31.01	\$25.33	\$56.34
Operators (Heavy, Class 04 - See Notes)	5/1/2020		\$32.55	\$25.79	\$58.34
Operators (Heavy, Class 04 - See Notes)	5/1/2021		\$34.10	\$26.24	\$60.34
Operators (Heavy, Class 05 - See Notes)	5/1/2017		\$29.02	\$22.74	\$51.76
Operators (Heavy, Class 05 - See Notes)	5/1/2018		\$30.56	\$23.20	\$53.76
Operators (Heavy, Class 05 - See Notes)	5/1/2019		\$30.56	\$25.20	\$55.76
Operators (Heavy, Class 05 - See Notes)	5/1/2020		\$32.11	\$25.65	\$57.76
Operators (Heavy, Class 05 - See Notes)	5/1/2021		\$33.65	\$26.11	\$59.76
Operators (Heavy, Class 06 - See Notes)	5/1/2017		\$28.14	\$22.49	\$50.63
Operators (Heavy, Class 06 - See Notes)	5/1/2018		\$29.68	\$22.93	\$52.61
Operators (Heavy, Class 06 - See Notes)	5/1/2019		\$29.68	\$24.94	\$54.62
Operators (Heavy, Class 06 - See Notes)	5/1/2020		\$31.23	\$25.39	\$56.62
Operators (Heavy, Class 06 - See Notes)	5/1/2021		\$32.77	\$25.84	\$58.61
Operators (Heavy, Class 07A - See Notes)	5/1/2017		\$40.73	\$27.63	\$68.36
Operators (Heavy, Class 07A - See Notes)	5/1/2018		\$42.58	\$28.18	\$70.76
Operators (Heavy, Class 07A - See Notes)	5/1/2019		\$42.89	\$30.27	\$73.16
Operators (Heavy, Class 07A - See Notes)	5/1/2020		\$44.74	\$30.82	\$75.56
Operators (Heavy, Class 07A - See Notes)	5/1/2021		\$46.59	\$31.37	\$77.96
Operators (Heavy, Class 07B - See Notes)	5/1/2017		\$40.38	\$27.53	\$67.91
Operators (Heavy, Class 07B - See Notes)	5/1/2018		\$42.23	\$28.09	\$70.32
Operators (Heavy, Class 07B - See Notes)	5/1/2019		\$42.54	\$30.17	\$72.71
Operators (Heavy, Class 07B - See Notes)	5/1/2020		\$44.39	\$30.72	\$75.11
Operators (Heavy, Class 07B - See Notes)	5/1/2021		\$46.25	\$31.26	\$77.51
Operators (Highway, Class 01 - See Notes)	5/1/2016		\$32.16	\$22.64	\$54.80
Operators (Highway, Class 01 - See Notes)	5/1/2017		\$32.93	\$23.87	\$56.80
Operators (Highway, Class 01 - See Notes)	5/1/2018		\$34.47	\$24.33	\$58.80
Operators (Highway, Class 01 - See Notes)	5/1/2019		\$34.47	\$26.33	\$60.80
Operators (Highway, Class 01 - See Notes)	5/1/2020		\$37.56	\$25.24	\$62.80
Operators (Highway, Class 01 - See Notes)	5/1/2021		\$39.10	\$25.70	\$64.80
Operators (Highway, Class 01a - See Notes)	5/1/2017		\$35.18	\$24.56	\$59.74
Operators (Highway, Class 01a - See Notes)	5/1/2018		\$36.72	\$25.01	\$61.73
Operators (Highway, Class 01a - See Notes)	5/1/2019		\$36.72	\$27.01	\$63.73
Operators (Highway, Class 01a - See Notes)	5/1/2020		\$39.81	\$25.92	\$65.73
Operators (Highway, Class 01a - See Notes)	5/1/2021		\$41.35	\$26.38	\$67.73
Operators (Highway, Class 02 - See Notes)	5/1/2016		\$30.98	\$22.31	\$53.29
Operators (Highway, Class 02 - See Notes)	5/1/2017		\$31.75	\$23.53	\$55.28

**BUREAU OF LABOR LAW COMPLIANCE  
PREVAILING WAGES PROJECT RATES**

<b>Project: 22-01231 - Heavy/Highway</b>	<b>Effective Date</b>	<b>Expiration Date</b>	<b>Hourly Rate</b>	<b>Fringe Benefits</b>	<b>Total</b>
Operators (Highway, Class 02 - See Notes)	5/1/2018		\$33.30	\$23.98	\$57.28
Operators (Highway, Class 02 - See Notes)	5/1/2019		\$33.29	\$25.99	\$59.28
Operators (Highway, Class 02 - See Notes)	5/1/2020		\$36.38	\$24.90	\$61.28
Operators (Highway, Class 02 - See Notes)	5/1/2021		\$37.93	\$25.35	\$63.28
Operators (Highway, Class 03 - See Notes)	5/1/2016		\$30.28	\$22.10	\$52.38
Operators (Highway, Class 03 - See Notes)	5/1/2017		\$31.06	\$23.32	\$54.38
Operators (Highway, Class 03 - See Notes)	5/1/2018		\$32.59	\$23.80	\$56.39
Operators (Highway, Class 03 - See Notes)	5/1/2019		\$32.59	\$25.79	\$58.38
Operators (Highway, Class 03 - See Notes)	5/1/2020		\$35.69	\$24.69	\$60.38
Operators (Highway, Class 03 - See Notes)	5/1/2021		\$37.23	\$25.16	\$62.39
Operators (Highway, Class 04 - See Notes)	5/1/2016		\$29.82	\$21.98	\$51.80
Operators (Highway, Class 04 - See Notes)	5/1/2017		\$30.60	\$23.20	\$53.80
Operators (Highway, Class 04 - See Notes)	5/1/2018		\$32.14	\$23.66	\$55.80
Operators (Highway, Class 04 - See Notes)	5/1/2019		\$32.14	\$25.66	\$57.80
Operators (Highway, Class 04 - See Notes)	5/1/2020		\$35.23	\$24.57	\$59.80
Operators (Highway, Class 04 - See Notes)	5/1/2021		\$36.77	\$25.03	\$61.80
Operators (Highway, Class 05 - See Notes)	5/1/2016		\$29.31	\$21.83	\$51.14
Operators (Highway, Class 05 - See Notes)	5/1/2017		\$30.08	\$23.06	\$53.14
Operators (Highway, Class 05 - See Notes)	5/1/2018		\$31.63	\$23.51	\$55.14
Operators (Highway, Class 05 - See Notes)	5/1/2019		\$31.63	\$25.51	\$57.14
Operators (Highway, Class 05 - See Notes)	5/1/2020		\$34.72	\$24.42	\$59.14
Operators (Highway, Class 05 - See Notes)	5/1/2021		\$36.26	\$24.87	\$61.13
Operators (Highway, Class 06 - See Notes)	5/1/2016		\$32.40	\$22.70	\$55.10
Operators (Highway, Class 06 - See Notes)	5/1/2017		\$33.17	\$23.94	\$57.11
Operators (Highway, Class 06 - See Notes)	5/1/2018		\$34.71	\$24.39	\$59.10
Operators (Highway, Class 06 - See Notes)	5/1/2019		\$34.71	\$26.39	\$61.10
Operators (Highway, Class 06 - See Notes)	5/1/2020		\$36.25	\$26.85	\$63.10
Operators (Highway, Class 06 - See Notes)	5/1/2021		\$39.33	\$25.78	\$65.11
Operators (Highway, Class 06/A - See Notes)	5/1/2016		\$34.65	\$23.36	\$58.01
Operators (Highway, Class 06/A - See Notes)	5/1/2017		\$35.42	\$24.59	\$60.01
Operators (Highway, Class 06/A - See Notes)	5/1/2018		\$36.96	\$25.05	\$62.01
Operators (Highway, Class 06/A - See Notes)	5/1/2019		\$36.96	\$27.05	\$64.01
Operators (Highway, Class 06/A - See Notes)	5/1/2020		\$40.04	\$25.97	\$66.01
Operators (Highway, Class 06/A - See Notes)	5/1/2021		\$41.58	\$26.43	\$68.01
Operators (Highway, Class 07/A - See Notes)	5/1/2016		\$38.56	\$25.99	\$64.55
Operators (Highway, Class 07/A - See Notes)	5/1/2017		\$39.66	\$27.31	\$66.97
Operators (Highway, Class 07/A - See Notes)	5/1/2018		\$41.52	\$27.84	\$69.36
Operators (Highway, Class 07/A - See Notes)	5/1/2019		\$41.82	\$29.95	\$71.77
Operators (Highway, Class 07/A - See Notes)	5/1/2020		\$45.23	\$28.94	\$74.17
Operators (Highway, Class 07/A - See Notes)	5/1/2021		\$47.08	\$29.49	\$76.57
Operators (Highway, Class 07/B - See Notes)	5/1/2016		\$37.17	\$25.57	\$62.74
Operators (Highway, Class 07/B - See Notes)	5/1/2017		\$38.25	\$26.89	\$65.14
Operators (Highway, Class 07/B - See Notes)	5/1/2018		\$40.10	\$27.44	\$67.54
Operators (Highway, Class 07/B - See Notes)	5/1/2019		\$40.41	\$29.53	\$69.94

**BUREAU OF LABOR LAW COMPLIANCE  
PREVAILING WAGES PROJECT RATES**

<b>Project: 22-01231 - Heavy/Highway</b>	<b>Effective Date</b>	<b>Expiration Date</b>	<b>Hourly Rate</b>	<b>Fringe Benefits</b>	<b>Total</b>
Operators (Highway, Class 07/B - See Notes)	5/1/2020		\$43.81	\$28.53	\$72.34
Operators (Highway, Class 07/B - See Notes)	5/1/2021		\$45.66	\$29.08	\$74.74
Painters Class 2 (see notes)	5/1/2020		\$31.81	\$20.43	\$52.24
Painters Class 2 (see notes)	5/1/2021		\$32.41	\$21.08	\$53.49
Painters Class 3 (see notes)	5/1/2019		\$37.31	\$19.78	\$57.09
Painters Class 3 (see notes)	5/1/2020		\$37.91	\$20.43	\$58.34
Painters Class 3 (see notes)	5/1/2021		\$38.51	\$21.08	\$59.59
Piledrivers	5/1/2021		\$43.73	\$37.99	\$81.72
Steamfitters (Heavy and Highway - Gas Distribution)	5/1/2017		\$40.98	\$32.53	\$73.51
Steamfitters (Heavy and Highway - Gas Distribution)	5/1/2020		\$57.45	\$36.93	\$94.38
Truckdriver class 1(see notes)	5/1/2016		\$33.57	\$0.00	\$33.57
Truckdriver class 1(see notes)	5/1/2017		\$34.47	\$0.00	\$34.47
Truckdriver class 1(see notes)	5/1/2018		\$35.32	\$0.00	\$35.32
Truckdriver class 1(see notes)	5/1/2019		\$36.12	\$0.00	\$36.12
Truckdriver class 1(see notes)	5/1/2020		\$36.92	\$0.00	\$36.92
Truckdriver class 1(see notes)	5/1/2021		\$37.72	\$0.00	\$37.72
Truckdriver class 2 (see notes)	5/1/2016		\$33.64	\$0.00	\$33.64
Truckdriver class 2 (see notes)	5/1/2017		\$34.54	\$0.00	\$34.54
Truckdriver class 2 (see notes)	5/1/2018		\$35.39	\$0.00	\$35.39
Truckdriver class 2 (see notes)	5/1/2019		\$36.19	\$0.00	\$36.19
Truckdriver class 2 (see notes)	5/1/2020		\$36.99	\$0.00	\$36.99
Truckdriver class 2 (see notes)	5/1/2021		\$37.79	\$0.00	\$37.79
Truckdriver class 3 (see notes)	5/1/2016		\$34.13	\$0.00	\$34.13
Truckdriver class 3 (see notes)	5/1/2017		\$35.03	\$0.00	\$35.03
Truckdriver class 3 (see notes)	5/1/2018		\$35.88	\$0.00	\$35.88
Truckdriver class 3 (see notes)	5/1/2019		\$36.68	\$0.00	\$36.68
Truckdriver class 3 (see notes)	5/1/2020		\$37.48	\$0.00	\$37.48
Truckdriver class 3 (see notes)	5/1/2021		\$38.28	\$0.00	\$38.28

**Work Change Directive No.**

Date of Issuance: \_\_\_\_\_ Effective Date: \_\_\_\_\_  
Owner: Schuylkill Valley School District Owner's Contract No.: \_\_\_\_\_  
Contractor: \_\_\_\_\_ Contractor's Project No.: \_\_\_\_\_  
Engineer: Spotts, Stevens and McCoy Engineer's Project No.: 103916.0008  
Project: Elementary School HVAC Upgrade and High School Rooftop Unit Project Contract Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Contractor is directed to proceed promptly with the following change(s):

Description:

Attachments: *[List documents supporting change]*

**Purpose for Work Change Directive:**

Directive to proceed promptly with the Work described herein, prior to agreeing to changes on Contract Price and Contract Time, is issued due to: *[check one or both of the following]*

- Non-agreement on pricing of proposed change.
- Necessity to proceed for schedule or other Project reasons.

**Estimated Change in Contract Price and Contract Times (non-binding, preliminary):**

Contract Price \$ \_\_\_\_\_ [increase] [decrease].  
Contract Time \_\_\_\_\_ days [increase] [decrease].

**Basis of estimated change in Contract Price:**

- Lump Sum  Unit Price
- Cost of the Work  Other

RECOMMENDED:	AUTHORIZED BY:	RECEIVED:
By: _____ Engineer (Authorized Signature)	By: _____ Owner (Authorized Signature)	By: _____ Contractor (Authorized Signature)
Title: _____	Title: _____	Title: _____
Date: _____	Date: _____	Date: _____

Approved by Funding Agency (if applicable)

By: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_  
Title: \_\_\_\_\_

**Change Order No.** \_\_\_\_\_

Date of Issuance:	Effective Date:
Owner: Schuylkill Valley School District	Owner's Contract No.:
Contractor:	Contractor's Project No.:
Engineer: Spotts, Stevens and McCoy	Engineer's Project No.: 103916.0008
Project: Elementary School HVAC Upgrade and High School Rooftop Unit Project	Contract Name:

The Contract is modified as follows upon execution of this Change Order:

Description:

Attachments: *[List documents supporting change]*

<b>CHANGE IN CONTRACT PRICE</b>	<b>CHANGE IN CONTRACT TIMES</b> <i>[note changes in Milestones if applicable]</i>
Original Contract Price: \$ _____	Original Contract Times: Substantial Completion: _____ Ready for Final Payment: _____ days or dates
[Increase] [Decrease] from previously approved Change Orders No. ___ to No. ___: \$ _____	[Increase] [Decrease] from previously approved Change Orders No. ___ to No. ___: Substantial Completion: _____ Ready for Final Payment: _____ days
Contract Price prior to this Change Order: \$ _____	Contract Times prior to this Change Order: Substantial Completion: _____ Ready for Final Payment: _____ days or dates
[Increase] [Decrease] of this Change Order: \$ _____	[Increase] [Decrease] of this Change Order: Substantial Completion: _____ Ready for Final Payment: _____ days or dates
Contract Price incorporating this Change Order: \$ _____	Contract Times with all approved Change Orders: Substantial Completion: _____ Ready for Final Payment: _____ days or dates

<b>RECOMMENDED:</b>	<b>ACCEPTED:</b>	<b>ACCEPTED:</b>
By: _____ Engineer (if required)	By: _____ Owner (Authorized Signature)	By: _____ Contractor (Authorized Signature)
Title: _____	Title: _____	Title: _____
Date: _____	Date: _____	Date: _____

Approved by Funding Agency (if applicable)

By: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_  
Title: \_\_\_\_\_

**Field Order No.** \_\_\_\_\_

Date of Issuance:

Effective Date:

Owner: Schuylkill Valley School District

Owner's Contract No.:

Contractor:

Contractor's Project No.:

Engineer: Spotts, Stevens and McCoy

Engineer's Project No.: 103916.0008

Project: Elementary School HVAC Upgrade and  
 High School Rooftop Unit Project

Contract Name:

Contractor is hereby directed to promptly execute this Field Order, issued in accordance with General Conditions Paragraph 11.01, for minor changes in the Work without changes in Contract Price or Contract Times. If Contractor considers that a change in Contract Price or Contract Times is required, submit a Change Proposal before proceeding with this Work.

Reference:

\_\_\_\_\_ Specification(s)

\_\_\_\_\_ Drawing(s) / Detail(s)

Description:

Attachments:

**ISSUED:**

**RECEIVED:**

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Engineer (Authorized Signature)

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Contractor (Authorized Signature)

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Copy to: Owner

## SECTION 01 10 00 – SUMMARY

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1. SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
1. Project information.
  2. Work covered by Contract Documents.
  3. Phased construction
  4. Work under separate contracts.
  5. Future work.
  6. Access to site.
  7. Hazardous Environmental Conditions
  8. Work restrictions.
  9. Intent of contract documents

#### 1.2. PROJECT INFORMATION

- A. Project Identification: Office Building and Maintenance Garage

Project Location:  
929 Lakeshore Drive

Owner:  
Schuylkill Valley School District  
929 Lakeshore Drive  
Leesport PA 19533

Owner's Contact:  
Casey Blankenbiller  
Director of Buildings and Grounds  
(610) 929-5439 - phone  
[cblankenbiller@schuylkillvalley.org](mailto:cblankenbiller@schuylkillvalley.org)

- B. Engineers:
- a. Spotts, Stevens and McCoy (1047 North Park Road, Reading, PA 19610-6307).
  - b. Wolf Consulting Engineers
  - c. Shamenek Engineering

### 1.3. WORK COVERED BY CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

- A. The intent of this Contract is the demolition, removal, and replacement of existing HVAC units at the elementary and high schools on the school district campus. As well as demolition, removal, and replacement of the existing boilers and pumps at the elementary school. Ancillary work includes the replacement of ceilings, installation of framework and support fixtures, and ancillary general construction, including electrical.
- B. The intent and meaning of the Contract Documents requires that each CONTRACTOR, under the terms of his Contract, shall take such action as necessary or required to provide labor, materials, equipment, transportation, facilities, and appurtenances thereto, which are indicated, or reasonably implied by the Drawings and Specifications, all of which are collectively necessary and required for the execution of the Work.
- C. A general description of the construction scope is provided in Division 1, Section 011200, Multiple Contract Summary, but is not necessarily inclusive of all required work. Refer to the Drawings and Specifications for all requirements. Each respective Contractor shall furnish all items called for to be installed under each contract, except as noted in Paragraph D. of this Section.
- D. The OWNER has pre-purchased HVAC equipment for installation that is identified on the Drawings produced by Shamenek Engineering. The pre-purchased equipment includes the following equipment to be installed at the high school: rooftop units, and a make-up air unit. The pre-purchased equipment includes the following equipment to be installed at the elementary school: rooftop units, make-up air unit, VRF outdoor unit, VRF indoor units, a branch controller, and an energy recovery ventilator. Contract 3 shall be responsible for inspecting the equipment and providing all required transportation and rigging for installation of same.
- E. Type of Contract:
  - 1. Project will be constructed under coordinated, concurrent multiple contracts. See Section 01 12 00 "Multiple Contract Summary" for a description of work included under each of the multiple contracts. Contracts for this Project include the following:
    - a. General: Contract No. 1
    - b. Electrical: Contract No. 2
    - c. HVAC: Contract No. 3

### 1.4. PHASED CONSTRUCTION

- A. The Work will be conducted in one phase.
- B. Phase 1: Refer to Section 01 31 13 "Project Coordination." The Owner intends to utilize work completed in this Phase.

Before commencing Work of any phase, submit an updated copy of Contractor's construction schedule showing the sequence, commencement and completion dates.



## 1.5. WORK UNDER SEPARATE CONTRACTS

- A. General: Cooperate fully with separate contractors so work on those contracts may be carried out smoothly, without interfering with or delaying work. Coordinate the Work of Contract with work performed under separate contracts. All Contractors shall be required to fully cooperate to provide integrated scheduling of services for the construction of the building. Each Contractor shall provide and maintain a schedule for all services. The General Contractor shall prepare and maintain a master schedule that incorporates the work of each of the 3` contracts.

## 1.6. FUTURE WORK

- A. The Contract Documents include requirements that will allow Owner to carry out future work following completion of this Project.

## 1.7. ACCESS TO SITE

- A. Use of Site: Do not disturb portions of Project site beyond areas in which the Work is indicated. **The work site shall be available to all Contracts beginning on June 10, 2022. Contractor work hours shall be 7:00 AM to 7:00 PM through August 24, 2022, and may be extended with permission from the Owner. Beginning August 25, 2022 work hours shall be 4:00 PM through 3:00 AM; there will be no access to the work site during regular school hours, except to the mechanical room.**
  - 1. Limits: Confine construction operations areas where work is being completed.
  - 2. Driveways, Walkways and Entrances: Keep driveways, loading areas, and entrances serving premises clear and available to Owner, Owner's employees, and emergency vehicles at all times. Do not use these areas for parking or storage of materials.
    - a. Schedule deliveries to minimize use of driveways and entrances by construction operations.
    - b. Schedule deliveries to minimize space and time requirements for storage of materials and equipment on-site.
- B. Cleaning: **It is clarified that Contract 1 shall have the responsibility for the installation of drop cloths, etc. and protection of floors, furniture, and equipment in the work areas. Each Contractor is responsible to maintain a clean work area, protect existing furniture and equipment, and to remove all trash and debris generated by their respective work.**
  - 1. Continuously keep rights-of-way, storage areas, streets, roads, highways and adjacent properties free from accumulations of waste materials, excess excavation, rubbish and windblown debris resulting from construction operations.
  - 2. Broom or water clean paved surfaces and remove surplus materials, tools, construction equipment and machinery as each work area is completed.

### C. Protection

1. Contractor shall make every effort to protect and avoid damage within the work area. Prior to the commencement of construction, the Contractor, Owner, and Engineer's representatives will meet to identify special needs and desires.
2. Contractor shall make every effort to protect and avoid damage to trees or shrubbery within the work area that are not designated for removal. Prior to the commencement of construction, the Contractor, Owner, and Engineer's representatives will meet to identify special needs and desires. The Contractor can anticipate that certain trees will be tagged for preservation.
3. The Contractor shall adequately close and/or protect all excavations, equipment, and materials stored within the site of the project.
4. It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor not to interfere with or create any hazards to traffic. No equipment or material will be stored or permitted to stand where traffic must be maintained. It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to control dust on all roads, drives, walkways, and parking areas on which traffic is being maintained.
5. The Contractor shall take special care and attention and be responsible for the protection of all existing equipment located throughout the Project area. The Contractor shall immediately notify both the Owner, Engineer, and any authority having jurisdiction should a spill or other incident occur that may cause damage to adjacent structure, infrastructure, natural resource, etc.

### D. Public Relations

1. Contractor's attention is directed to the fact that, in the eyes of the general public, his conduct and attitude will be closely associated with that of the Owner. Accordingly, where operations of the Contractor require personal contact with the public, the Contractor and all his employees shall conduct themselves in a courteous and respectful manner. Any violation of this section shall be considered sufficient cause for the Owner to order discharge of the employee involved, and he shall not be employed again on the work without written permission from the Owner.
2. Contractor shall use all means necessary to control dust on and near the work, including off-site borrow and stockpile areas if such dust is caused by the Contractor's operations. Thoroughly moisten all surfaces as required to prevent dust from being a nuisance to the public, neighbors, and concurrent performance of other work on the site.
3. In carrying out the work, the Contractor shall interfere as little as possible with traffic. The Contractor shall provide and maintain ingress and egress for all residents along the construction route.
4. Contractor shall be responsible for notifying all local emergency services, school

districts, and other public agencies with regard to control and maintenance of traffic in the work area.

5. The Contractor shall obey and follow all posted speed limits.

#### 1.8. HAZARDOUS ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITION

- A. The Contractor shall complete any mitigation in accordance with all local, state and federal laws and regulations.

#### 1.9. WORK RESTRICTIONS

- A. Work Restrictions, General: Comply with restrictions on construction operations.
  1. Comply with limitations on use of public streets and with other requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Obey all building regulations while working on the site, including access and security measures required by the OWNER.
- B. Existing Utility Interruptions: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after providing temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:
  1. Notify Engineer and Owner not less than 2 days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
  2. Obtain Owner's written permission before proceeding with utility interruptions.
- C. Noise, Vibration, and Odors: Coordinate operations that may result in high levels of noise and vibration, odors, or other disruption to Owner occupancy with Owner.
- D. Nonsmoking Building: Smoking is not permitted within the building or within 25 feet of entrances, operable windows, or outdoor-air intakes.

#### 1.10. INTENT OF CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

- A. The intent and meaning of the Contract Documents is that the Contractor, under the terms of the Contract, will take such action as necessary and/or required to provide labor, supervision, plant, materials, supplies, equipment, power, transportation, facilities, etc., whether temporary or permanent, which are indicated or may be reasonably inferred from each Drawing and each section of these Specifications, all of which are collectively necessary and/or required for the execution of the Work.
- B. The information shown on the Contract Drawings or referenced herein relative to the depiction of existing facilities is shown for information purposes only. No representations or warranties are given or implied relative to the accuracy thereof. The data is presented or described only to indicate the general and approximate extent of existing facilities. The Contractor shall consider these facilities in the preparation of his bid and include any contingent costs in those items for which payment will be made. No

separate payment will be made for adjustments or modifications in the work due to inaccuracies in the nature or assumption of existing facilities, except as may be determined or warranted by the Owner/Engineer. Payment for changes in the work, if found necessary or prudent, shall be reimbursed only through procedure outlined in the General Conditions.

C. The Contractor will note that the Contract Drawings are general in detail and scope with respect to the extent of demolition, cutting, patching, removal of existing facilities, etc. and that all such Work will be provided by the Contractor, whether specifically indicated on the Contract Drawings or not, which is necessary for the completion of the Work or for the proper operation and appearance of the finished installation, in accordance with the intent of the Contract Documents for this Project.

F. PRODUCTS Not Used

G. EXECUTION Not Used

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 01 12 00 – MULTIPLE CONTRACT SUMMARY

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Scope of work.
2. Coordination activities.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 01 10 00 – Project Summary: Work covered by the Contract Documents, restrictions on use of Project site, coordination with occupants, and work restrictions.
2. Section 01 31 13 – Project Coordination: General coordination requirements.

#### 1.2 SCOPE OF WORK

A. Extent of Contract:

1. Unless otherwise indicated, the work described in this Section for each contract shall be complete systems and assemblies, including products, components, accessories, and installation required by the Contract Documents.
2. Trenches and other excavation for the work of each contract shall be the work of each contract for its own work.
3. Each contract includes blocking, backing panels, sleeves, and metal fabrication supports for its own work.
4. Furnishing of access panels for the work of each contract shall be the work of each contract for its own work. Installation of access panels shall be the work of each contract for its own work.
5. Equipment pads for the work of each contract shall be the work of each contract for its own work. Refer to the “S” series drawings for the equipment pad specifications.
6. Painting for the work of each contract shall be the work of the General Construction Contractor except where noted otherwise.
7. **Cutting and Patching:** Provided under each contract for its own work. General Contractor shall coordinate with HVAC Contractor for all roof openings to ensure maintenance of roof warranty. Use only materials approved from the roof supplier for curbing, flashing and repairs. **NOTE** – Concurrent work at the Elementary School will include the installation of a new membrane roof. Roof openings at this

location shall be coordinated with the contractor performing the work.

B. Scope of Work for each of the separate prime contracts is given below.

1. General construction: The General Contractor shall perform all Work not specifically designated as the Work of the Electrical Contractor or the HVAC Contractor. The Work of the General Contractor shall include, but not be limited to, the items listed below under 1.2.B.1 and shown on the “A” and “S” series Construction Drawings.
  - a. Coordinating the Work of all prime contractors
  - b. Obtaining all building permits, approvals, inspections, and certifications as specified in the Contract Documents or required by the local municipality. Contractor shall prepare the permit application and Owner will pay the permit application fees.
  - c. Furnishing and installing all construction facilities and temporary controls as specified in Section 01500.
  - d. Complete selected demolition as shown on the Drawings
  - e. Furnishing and installing all materials/equipment specified in Division Nos. 3, 4, 5, 6, 7 8, 9, 31 and 32.
  - f. Furnishing and installing all building components, including, but not limited to, foundations, masonry walls, roof components, doors, windows, gutters, fencing and downspouts where required.
  - g. Furnishing and installing all new interior partition walls, doors, windows and associated hardware.
  - h. Furnishing and installing all building insulation.
  - i. Waterproofing and painting of the building with the following exceptions:
    1. Electrical equipment backboard painting, which will be performed by the Electrical Contractor.
    2. Touch-up of shop-painted equipment installed by other prime contractors.
  - j. Furnishing and installing equipment identification, traffic and safety signs, safety equipment, and fire-extinguishers.
  - k. Furnish and install all specified architectural finishes including office flooring, ceilings, wall surfaces, trim, hardware, and specified equipment for the building.
  - l. Coordinate start-up services for all contracts and provide support to each as necessary.

2. Electrical: The Electrical Contractor shall perform all Work covered in Division 26 of the Specifications, all Work shown on the "E" series Drawings (unless specifically designated as the Work of another prime contractor), and all other Work required for complete operational electrical, instrumentation, and control systems regardless of where described in the Contract Documents. The Work of the Electrical Contractor shall include, but not be limited to, the items listed below under 1.2.B.2, regardless of where described in the Contract Documents.
  - a. Coordinating Work under the Electrical Contract with the Work of all other prime contractors on the Project.
  - b. Obtaining all electrical system permits, approvals, inspections, and certifications as specified in the Contract Documents or required by the local municipality. Contractor shall prepare the permit application and Owner will pay the permit application fees.
  - c. Furnishing and installing temporary power and lighting where indicated or needed.
  - d. Furnishing and installing all required service entrance equipment and circuit breakers.
  - e. Furnishing and installing excavation, concrete and backfill for electrical duct banks, and switchgear pads.
  - f. Furnishing and installing switchgear, service panels, and related equipment, including transformers and distribution panelboards.
  - g. Furnishing and installing all electrical power wiring, control wiring, conduit, connectors, and electrical boxes from distribution panelboards to:
    1. All equipment and fixtures installed by General Contractor
    2. Equipment installed by HVAC Contractor. Note that HVAC Contractor is responsible for the installation of all low voltage wiring between equipment and control centers.
    3. Wiring devices, including receptacles and switches, installed by Electrical Contractor.
    4. Lighting fixtures installed by Electrical Contractor.
  - h. Furnishing and installing all control equipment wiring, conduit, connectors, and electrical boxes to provide complete equipment and control circuits.
  - i. Furnishing and installing complete bonding and grounding system for the entire electrical system.
  - j. Furnishing and installing interior and exterior lighting equipment.

- k. Furnishing and installing electrical heat tracing on piping installed by the General or HVAC Contractor (Pipe insulation will be installed by the contractor who installed the pipe).
  - l. Painting as follows:
    - 1. Painting of electrical backboards
    - 2. Touch-up painting of all electrical equipment on which the shop finish has been damaged during installation.
  - m. Perform electrical system tests and start-up. Provide support during start-up of all wired equipment for the project for the other contracts.
  - n. Provide temporary power and building lighting (excluding task lights) during the course of the project for all other contracts but not provide portable generators or fuel.
  - o. Perform all electrical demolition.
  - p. Provide conduit for all buried electrical wiring in accordance with the Drawings. Note that concrete encasement is required beneath paved surfaces. Wiring shall be sized in accordance with the NEC if not indicated on the Drawings.
3. HVAC: The HVAC Contractor shall perform all Work covered in Division 23 of the Specifications and all Work shown on the "M" and "P" series Drawings (unless specifically designated as the Work of another prime contractor), and all other Work required for complete operational HVAC and Plumbing systems, regardless of where described in the Contract Documents. The Work of the HVAC Contractor shall include, but not be limited to, the items listed below under 1.2.B.3, regardless of where described in the Contract Documents.
- a. Coordinating Work under the HVAC contract with the Work of all other prime contractors on the Project. Install new gas service lines and coordinate installation with the General Contractor if needed.
  - b. Obtaining all HVAC system permits, approvals, inspections, and certifications as specified in the Contract Documents or required by the local municipality. Contractor shall prepare the permit application and Owner will pay the permit application fees.
  - c. Furnishing and installing HVAC equipment specified in Division 23 and all equipment pre-purchased and supplied by the OWNER, including, but not limited to, natural gas piping, exhaust and supply fans, ductwork, ductwork insulation, ventilating accessories, air cooled condensing units, air handling units, rooftop units, VRF indoor and outdoor units, and unit ventilators. Also includes louvers, dampers, boilers, pumps, and hot water piping with insulated valve boxes. (Electrical Contractor will furnish and install wiring for the electrically-powered HVAC equipment.) OWNER purchased



equipment is stored at the site and Contractor is responsible to transport it from the storage location for installation. Perform all required demolition for removal of existing HVAC equipment and appurtenances.

- d. Furnishing and installing instrumentation and control devices for HVAC systems, including thermostats. Furnishing and installing all low voltage wiring, conduit, connectors, and electrical boxes required to provide control circuits for the HVAC equipment. Coordinate with Electrical Contractor for installation as needed.
- e. Touch-up painting of all HVAC equipment on which the shop finish has been damaged during installation.
- f. Testing, adjusting, and balancing of all HVAC systems. Perform all required start-up services and coordinate and provide support to the other contracts during start-up
- g. Provide and install all gas lines within or on the building as identified on the "M" and "P" series Drawings. HVAC contract will construct all interior and exterior gas pipelines and coordinate the location of service stub-outs/shut-off valves with the General Contractor.
- h. Construct equipment pads for ground mounted HVAC equipment.

### 1.3 COORDINATION ACTIVITIES

- A. Coordination activities of General Construction Contractor include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Provide overall coordination of the Work.
  - 2. Coordinate shared access to workspaces.
  - 3. Coordinate product selections for compatibility.
  - 4. Provide overall coordination of temporary facilities and controls.
  - 5. Coordinate, schedule, and approve interruptions of permanent and temporary utilities, including those necessary to make connections for temporary services.
  - 6. Coordinate construction and operations of the Work with work performed by each Contract.
  - 7. Prepare coordination drawings in collaboration with each contractor to coordinate work by more than one contract.
  - 8. Coordinate sequencing and scheduling of the Work. Include the following:
    - a. Initial Coordination Meeting: At earliest possible date, arrange and conduct a meeting with contractors for sequencing and coordinating the Work; negotiate reasonable adjustments to schedules.

- b. Prepare a combined contractors' construction schedule for entire Project. Base schedule on preliminary construction schedule. Secure time commitments for performing critical construction activities from contractors. Show activities of each contract on a separate sheet. Prepare a simplified summary sheet indicating combined construction activities of contracts.
    - 1) Submit schedules to Engineer for review and approval.
    - 2) Distribute copies of approved schedules to contractors.
9. Provide photographic documentation.
10. Provide quality-assurance and quality-control services specified in Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements."
11. Coordinate sequence of activities to accommodate tests and inspections, and coordinate schedule of tests and inspections.
12. Provide information necessary to adjust, move, or relocate existing utility structures affected by construction.
13. Locate existing permanent benchmarks, control points, and similar reference points, and establish permanent benchmarks on Project site.
14. Provide field surveys of in-progress construction and site work.
15. Provide progress cleaning of common areas and coordinate progress cleaning of areas or pieces of equipment where more than one contractor has worked.
16. Coordinate cutting and patching. Coordinate all rooftop, ceiling and wall openings with Electrical and HVAC Contractors.
17. Coordinate protection of the Work.
18. Coordinate completion of interrelated punch list items.
19. Coordinate preparation of Project record documents if information from more than one contractor is to be integrated with information from other contractors to form one combined record.
20. Print and submit record documents if installations by more than one contractor are indicated on the same Contract Drawing or shop drawing.
21. Collect record Specification Sections from contractors, collate Sections into numeric order, and submit complete set.
22. Coordinate preparation of operation and maintenance manuals if information from more than one contractor is to be integrated with information from other

contractors to form one combined record.

23. Coordinate start-up and testing of equipment.

24. Schedule and sequence HVAC and Electrical work associated activities.

B. General, Electrical, and HVAC Construction Contractors: Coordination activities include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Schedule and sequence electrical activities.
2. Coordinate sharing access to workspaces.
3. Coordinate integration of work into limited spaces.
4. Coordinate protection of the work.
5. Coordinate cutting and patching for the work.
6. Prepare coordination drawings.
7. Coordinate tests and inspections for the work.
8. Coordinate temporary services and facilities.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS      Not Used

PART 3 - EXECUTION      Not Used

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 01 20 00 – PRICE AND PAYMENT PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Cash allowances.

#### 1.2 ALLOWANCES

- A. See Section 012100 – Allowances

#### 1.3 TESTING AND INSPECTION ALLOWANCES

- A. Costs Included in Testing and Inspecting Allowances:

1. Cost of engaging testing and inspecting agency.
2. Execution of tests and inspecting.
3. Reporting results.

- B. Costs Not Included in Testing and Inspecting Allowance but Included in Contract Sum/Price:

1. Costs of incidental labor and facilities required to assist testing or inspecting agency.
2. Costs of testing services used by Contractor separate from Contract Document requirements.
3. Costs of retesting upon failure of previous tests as determined by Engineer.

- C. Payment Procedures:

1. Submit one copy of inspecting or testing firm's invoice with next Application for Payment.
2. Pay invoice upon approval by Engineer.

- D. Differences in cost will be adjusted by Change Order.

#### 1.4 SCHEDULE OF VALUES

- A. Submit printed schedule on Progress Estimate schedule on EJCDC C-620. Contractor's standard form or electronic media printout will be considered for this use.
- B. Submit Schedule of Values in duplicate within 10 days after date of Owner-Contractor Agreement.
- C. Format: Use Table of Contents of this Project Manual. Identify each line item with number and title of major Specification Section. Also identify site mobilization, bonds and insurance, and insurance separately.

- D. Include in each line item amount of Allowances as specified in this Section. For unit cost allowances, identify quantities taken from Contract Documents multiplied by unit cost to achieve total for each item.
- E. Include within each line item, direct proportional amount of Contractor's overhead and profit.
- F. Revise schedule to list approved Change Orders with each Application for Payment.

#### 1.5 APPLICATION FOR PAYMENT

- A. Review quantities of completed work with Resident Project Representative prior to submission of application to Engineer.
- B. Submit electronic file of each Application for Payment on EJCDC C-620 - Contractor's Application for Payment.
- C. Content and Format: Use Schedule of Values for listing items in Application for Payment.
- D. Payment Period: Monthly.
- E. Include wage rate certification form required by Owner.

#### 1.6 CHANGE PROCEDURES

- A. Submittals: Submit name of individual who is authorized to receive change documents and is responsible for informing others in Contractor's employ or Subcontractors of changes to the Work.
- B. Carefully study and compare Contract Documents before proceeding with fabrication and installation of Work. Promptly advise Engineer of any error, inconsistency, omission, or apparent discrepancy.
- C. Requests for Interpretation (RFI) and Clarifications: Allot time in construction scheduling for liaison with Engineer; establish procedures for handling queries and clarifications.
- D. Engineer will advise of minor changes in the Work not involving adjustment to Contract Sum/Price or Contract Time by issuing supplemental instructions.
- E. Engineer may issue Notice of Change including a detailed description of proposed change with supplementary or revised Drawings and Specifications, a change in Contract Time for executing the change. Contractor will prepare and submit estimate within five (5) days.
- F. Contractor may propose changes by submitting a request for change to Engineer, describing proposed change and its full effect on the Work. Include a statement describing reason for the change and the effect on Contract Sum/Price and Contract Time with full documentation and a statement describing effect on the Work by separate or other Contractors.
- G. Stipulated Sum/Price Change Order: Based on Notice of Change and Contractor's price quotation or Contractor's request for Change Order as approved by Engineer.

- H. Unit Price Change Order: For Contract unit prices and quantities, the Change Order will be executed on a fixed unit price basis. For unit costs or quantities of units which are not predetermined, execute Work under Work Change Directive. Changes in Contract Sum/Price or Contract Time will be computed as specified in the Change Order.
- I. Work Directive Change: Engineer may issue directive, [EJCDC C-940 - Work Change Directive] signed by Owner, instructing Contractor to proceed with change in the Work, for subsequent inclusion in a Change Order. Document will describe changes in the Work and designate method of determining any change in Contract Sum/Price or Contract Time. Promptly execute change.
- J. Time and Material Change Order: Submit itemized account and supporting data after completion of change, within time limits indicated in Conditions of the Contract. Engineer will determine change allowable in Contract Sum/Price and Contract Time as provided in Contract Documents.
- K. Maintain detailed records of Work done on time and material basis. Provide full information required for evaluation of proposed changes and to substantiate costs for changes in the Work.
- L. Document each quotation for change in Project Cost or Time with sufficient data to allow evaluation of quotation. All quotes for proposed changes shall include a complete itemization of costs including, without limitation, labor, materials, equipment and Subcontracts. Where major items are subcontracts, subcontracts shall be itemized. In no case will Owner approve a change involving an amount greater than **Seven Hundred Fifty Dollars (\$750)** without such itemization.
- M. Change Order Forms: EJCDC C-941 - Change Order.
- N. Execution of Change Orders: Engineer will issue Change Orders for signatures of parties as provided in Conditions of the Contract.
- O. Correlation of Contractor Submittals:
  - 1. Promptly revise Schedule of Values and Application for Payment forms to record each authorized Change Order as separate line item and adjust Contract Sum/Price.
  - 2. Promptly revise Progress Schedules to reflect change in Contract Time, revise sub-schedules to adjust times for other items of Work affected by the change, and resubmit.
  - 3. Promptly enter changes in Record Documents.

#### 1.7 DEFECT ASSESSMENT

- A. Replace the Work, or portions of the Work, not conforming to specified requirements.
- B. If, in the opinion of Engineer, it is not practical to remove and replace the Work, Engineer will direct appropriate remedy or adjust payment.
- C. If decision is made to let the defective Work remain, unit sum/price will be adjusted to new sum/price at discretion of Engineer and Owner.

- D. Defective Work may be partially repaired according to instructions of Engineer, and unit sum/price will be adjusted to new sum/price at discretion of Engineer and Owner.
- E. Individual Specification Sections may modify these options or may identify specific formula or percentage sum/price reduction.
- F. Authority of Engineer to assess defects and identify payment adjustments is final.
- G. Nonpayment for Rejected Products: Payment will not be made for rejected products for any of the following reasons:
  - 1. Products wasted or disposed of in a manner that is not acceptable.
  - 2. Products determined as unacceptable before or after placement.
  - 3. Products not completely unloaded from transporting vehicle.
  - 4. Products placed beyond lines and levels of the required Work.
  - 5. Products remaining on hand after completion of the Work.
  - 6. Loading, hauling, and disposing of rejected products.

## 1.8 UNIT PRICES

- A. Authority: Measurement methods are delineated in individual Specification Sections.
- B. Measurement methods delineated in individual Specification Sections complement criteria of this Section. In event of conflict, requirements of individual Specification Section govern.
- C. Engineer will take measurements and compute quantities. Provide access to work and assist in the taking of measurements.
- D. Unit Quantities: Quantities and measurements indicated on Bid Form are for Contract purposes only. Quantities and measurements supplied or placed in the Work shall determine payment.
  - 1. When actual Work requires more or fewer quantities than those quantities indicated, provide required quantities at contracted unit sum/prices.
  - 2. When actual Work requires **25 percent** or greater change in quantity than those quantities indicated, Owner or Contractor may claim a Contract Price adjustment.
- E. Payment Includes: Full compensation for required labor, products, tools, equipment, plant and facilities, transportation, services and incidentals; erection, application, or installation of item of the Work; overhead and profit.
- F. Final payment for Work governed by unit prices will be made on basis of actual measurements and quantities accepted by Engineer multiplied by unit sum/price for Work incorporated in or made necessary by the Work.
- G. Measurement of Quantities:
  - 1. Measurement by Weight: Concrete reinforcing steel, rolled or formed steel, or other metal shapes will be measured by handbook weights. Welded assemblies will be measured by handbook or scale weight.
  - 2. Measurement by Volume: Measured by cubic dimension using mean length, width, and height or thickness.

3. Measurement by Area: Measured by square dimension using mean length and width or radius.
4. Linear Measurement: Measured by linear dimension, at item centerline or mean chord.
5. Stipulated Sum/Price Measurement: Items measured by weight, volume, area, or linear means or combination, as appropriate, as completed item or unit of the Work.

1.9 LUMP SUM

- A. Items designate don the bid form as Lump Sum will generally be paid in full when the specified item is complete in all respects.
  1. Partial payments on Lump Sum items may be approved on monthly Applications for Payment.
  2. The amount of the partial payment, as a percentage of the total Lump Sum item amount shall be determined solely by the Engineer.
- B. The bid items designated as “Mobilization” will be paid in accordance with the following schedule:
  1. After the required temporary facilities have been provided, a payment for mobilization not to exceed 3% of the total contract price will be allowed.
  2. Additional payments for mobilization shall not exceed 2% of the total contract price on any application for payment until the total Lump Sum amount has been paid in full.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS      Not Used

PART 3 - EXECUTION      Not Used

END OF SECTION



## SECTION 012100 - ALLOWANCES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements governing allowances.
- B. Types of allowances include the following:
  - 1. Lump-sum allowances.
  - 2. Unit-cost allowances.
  - 3. Quantity allowances.
  - 4. Testing and inspecting allowances.
- C. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 012200 "Unit Prices" for procedures for using unit prices, including adjustment of quantity allowances when applicable.
  - 2. Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for procedures governing the use of allowances for field testing by an independent testing agency.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Allowance is a quantity of work or dollar amount established in lieu of additional requirements, used to defer selection of actual materials and equipment to a later date when direction will be provided to Contractor. If necessary, additional requirements will be issued by Change Order.

#### 1.4 SELECTION AND PURCHASE

- A. At the earliest practical date after award of the Contract, advise Engineer of the date when final selection, or purchase and delivery, of each product or system described by an allowance must be completed by the Owner to avoid delaying the Work.
- B. At Engineer's request, obtain proposals for each allowance for use in making final selections. Include recommendations that are relevant to performing the Work.
- C. Purchase products and systems selected by Engineer from the designated supplier.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit proposals for purchase of products or systems included in allowances in the form specified for Change Orders.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit invoices or delivery slips to show actual quantities of materials delivered to the site for use in fulfillment of each allowance.
- B. Submit time sheets and other documentation to show labor time and cost for installation of allowance items that include installation as part of the allowance.
- C. Coordinate and process submittals for allowance items in same manner as for other portions of the Work.

1.7 LUMP-SUM ALLOWANCES

- A. Allowance shall include cost to Contractor of specific products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Engineer under allowance and shall include taxes, freight and delivery to Project site.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, Contractor's costs for receiving and handling at Project site, labor, installation, overhead and profit, and similar costs related to products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Engineer under allowance shall be included as part of the Contract Sum and not part of the allowance.
- C. Unused Materials: Return unused materials purchased under an allowance to manufacturer or supplier for credit to Owner, after installation has been completed and accepted.
  - 1. If requested by Engineer, retain and prepare unused material for storage by Owner. Deliver unused material to Owner's storage space as directed.

1.8 UNIT-COST ALLOWANCES

- A. Allowance shall include cost to Contractor of specific products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Engineer under allowance and shall include taxes, freight and delivery to Project site.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, Contractor's costs for receiving and handling at Project site, labor, installation, overhead and profit, and similar costs related to products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Engineer under allowance shall be included as part of the Contract Sum and not part of the allowance.
- C. Unused Materials: Return unused materials purchased under an allowance to manufacturer or supplier for credit to Owner, after installation has been completed and accepted.
  - 1. If requested by Engineer, retain and prepare unused material for storage by Owner. Deliver unused material to Owner's storage space as directed.

## 1.9 QUANTITY ALLOWANCES

- A. Allowance shall include cost to Contractor of specific products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Engineer under allowance and shall include taxes, freight and delivery to Project site.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, Contractor's costs for receiving and handling at Project site, labor, installation, overhead and profit, and similar costs related to products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Engineer under allowance shall be included as part of the Contract Sum and not part of the allowance.
- C. Unused Materials: Return unused materials purchased under an allowance to manufacturer or supplier for credit to Owner, after installation has been completed and accepted.
  - 1. If requested by Engineer, retain and prepare unused material for storage by Owner. Deliver unused material to Owner's storage space as directed.

## 1.10 TESTING AND INSPECTING ALLOWANCES

- A. Testing and inspecting allowances include the cost of engaging testing agencies, actual tests and inspections, and reporting results.
- B. The allowance does not include incidental labor required to assist the testing agency or costs for retesting if previous tests and inspections result in failure. The cost for incidental labor to assist the testing agency shall be included in the Contract Sum.
- C. Costs of testing and inspection services not required by the Contract Documents are not included in the allowance.
- D. At Project closeout, credit unused amounts remaining in the testing and inspecting allowance to Owner by Change Order.

## 1.11 ADJUSTMENT OF ALLOWANCES

- A. Allowance Adjustment: To adjust allowance amounts, prepare a Change Order proposal based on the difference between purchase amount and the allowance, multiplied by final measurement of work-in-place where applicable. If applicable, include reasonable allowances for cutting losses, tolerances, mixing wastes, normal product imperfections, and similar margins.
  - 1. Include installation costs in purchase amount only where indicated as part of the allowance.
  - 2. If requested, prepare explanation and documentation to substantiate distribution of overhead costs and other markups.
  - 3. Submit substantiation of a change in scope of Work, if any, claimed in Change Orders related to unit-cost allowances.
  - 4. Owner reserves the right to establish the quantity of work-in-place by independent quantity survey, measure, or count.

- B. Submit claims for increased costs because of a change in scope or nature of the allowance described in the Contract Documents, whether for the purchase order amount or Contractor's handling, labor, installation, overhead, and profit.
  - 1. Do not include Contractor's or subcontractor's indirect expense in the Change Order cost amount unless it is clearly shown that the nature or extent of Work has changed from what could have been foreseen from information in the Contract Documents.
  - 2. No change to Contractor's indirect expense is permitted for selection of higher- or lower-priced materials or systems of the same scope and nature as originally indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS      Not Used

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1      EXAMINATION

- A. Examine products covered by an allowance promptly on delivery for damage or defects. Return damaged or defective products to manufacturer for replacement.

3.2      PREPARATION

- A. Coordinate materials and their installation for each allowance with related materials and installations to ensure that each allowance item is completely integrated and interfaced with related work.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 012500 - SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Quality assurance.
- B. Product options.
- C. Product substitution procedures.

#### 1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Contracts are based on products and standards established in Contract Documents without consideration of proposed substitutions.
- B. Products specified define standard of quality, type, function, dimension, appearance, and performance required.
- C. Substitution Proposals: Permitted for specified products except where specified otherwise. Do not substitute products unless substitution has been accepted and approved in writing by Owner.

#### 1.3 PRODUCT OPTIONS

- A. See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

#### 1.4 PRODUCT SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES

- A. Engineer will consider requests for substitutions only within 15 days after date of Owner-Contractor Agreement.
- B. Substitutions may be considered when a product becomes unavailable through no fault of Contractor.
- C. Document each request with complete data, substantiating compliance of proposed substitution with Contract Documents, including:
  - 1. Manufacturer's name and address, product, trade name, model, or catalog number, performance and test data, and reference standards.
  - 2. Itemized point-by-point comparison of proposed substitution with specified product, listing variations in quality, performance, and other pertinent characteristics.
  - 3. Reference to Article and Paragraph numbers in Specification Section.
  - 4. Cost data comparing proposed substitution with specified product and amount of net change to Contract Sum.

5. Changes required in other Work.
6. Availability of maintenance service and source of replacement parts as applicable.
7. Certified test data to show compliance with performance characteristics specified.
8. Samples when applicable or requested.
9. Other information as necessary to assist Architect/Engineer's evaluation.

D. A request constitutes a representation that Contractor:

1. Has investigated proposed product and determined that it meets or exceeds quality level of specified product.
2. Will provide same warranty for substitution as for specified product.
3. Will coordinate installation and make changes to other Work that may be required for the Work to be complete with no additional cost to Owner.
4. Waives claims for additional costs or time extension that may subsequently become apparent.
5. Will coordinate installation of the accepted substitute, making such changes as may be required for the Work to be complete in all respects.
6. Will reimburse Owner and Engineer for review or redesign services associated with re-approval by authorities having jurisdiction.

E. Substitutions will not be considered when they are indicated or implied on Shop Drawing or Product Data submittals without separate written request or when acceptance will require revision to Contract Documents.

F. Substitution Submittal Procedure:

1. Submit three (3) of Request for Substitution for consideration. Limit each request to one proposed substitution.
2. Submit Shop Drawings, Product Data, and certified test results attesting to proposed product equivalence. Burden of proof is on proposer.
3. Indicate advantage to Owner if substitution is allowed, including cost and/or time savings.
4. Engineer will notify Contractor in writing of decision to accept or reject request.
5. Refer to Supplementary Conditions Section 7.05 for additional requirements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS      Not Used

PART 3 - EXECUTION      Not Used

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 013000 - ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Coordination and Project conditions.
- B. Preconstruction meeting.
- C. Progress meetings.
- D. Pre-installation meetings.
- E. Alteration procedures.

#### 1.2 COORDINATION AND PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Coordinate scheduling, submittals, and Work of various Sections of Project Manual to ensure efficient and orderly sequence of installation of interdependent construction elements, with provisions for accommodating items installed later.
- B. Verify that utility requirements and characteristics of operating equipment are compatible with building utilities. Coordinate Work of various Sections having interdependent responsibilities for installing, connecting to, and placing operating equipment in service.
- C. Coordinate space requirements, supports, and installation of mechanical and electrical Work indicated diagrammatically on Drawings. Follow routing shown for pipes, ducts, and conduit as closely as practical; place runs parallel with lines of building. Use spaces efficiently to maximize accessibility for other installations, for maintenance, and for repairs.
  - 1. Coordination Drawings: Prepare as required to coordinate all portions of Work. Show relationship and integration of different construction elements that require coordination during fabrication or installation to fit in space provided or to function as intended. Indicate locations where space is limited for installation and access and where sequencing and coordination of installations are important.
- D. Coordination Meetings: In addition to other meetings specified in this Section, hold coordination meetings with personnel and Subcontractors to ensure coordination of Work.
- E. In finished areas except as otherwise indicated, conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring within construction. Coordinate locations of fixtures and outlets with finish elements.
- F. Coordinate completion and clean-up of Work of separate Sections in preparation for Substantial Completion and for portions of Work designated for Owner's partial occupancy.

- G. After Owner's occupancy of premises, coordinate access to Site for correction of defective Work and Work not complying with Contract Documents, to minimize disruption of Owner's activities.

### 1.3 PRECONSTRUCTION MEETING

- A. Engineer will schedule and preside over meeting after Notice of Award.
- B. Attendance Required: Engineer, Owner, and Contractor.
- C. Minimum Agenda:
  - 1. Distribution of Contract Documents.
  - 2. Submission of list of Subcontractors, list of products, schedule of values, and Progress Schedule.
  - 3. Designation of personnel representing parties in Contract, and Engineer.
  - 4. Communication procedures.
  - 5. Procedures and processing of requests for interpretations, field decisions, submittals, substitutions, Applications for Payments, proposal request, Change Orders, and Contract closeout procedures.
  - 6. Scheduling.
  - 7. Critical Work sequencing.
  - 8. Scheduling activities.
  - 9. Use of premises by Owner and Contractor
  - 10. Owner requirements and partial occupancy.
  - 11. Construction facilities and controls provided by Owner
  - 12. Temporary utilities provided by Owner
  - 13. Survey and building layout.
  - 14. Security and housekeeping procedures
  - 15. Application for payment procedures
  - 16. Procedures for testing
  - 17. Procedures for maintaining record documents
  - 18. Requirements for start-up of equipment.
  - 19. Inspection and acceptance of equipment put into service during construction period.
- D. Engineer will prepare minutes and distribute to participants within ten (10) days after meeting, with copies to Owner, and those affected by decisions made.

### 1.4 PROGRESS MEETINGS

- A. Schedule and administer meetings throughout progress of the Work at maximum monthly intervals.
- B. Engineer will make arrangements for meetings, prepare agenda with copies for participants, and preside over meetings.
- C. Attendance Required: Job superintendent, major Subcontractors, Contractors and suppliers, and Engineer, Owner, as appropriate to agenda topics for each meeting.



D. Minimum Agenda:

1. Review minutes of previous meetings.
2. Review of Work progress.
3. Field observations, problems, and decisions.
4. Identification of problems impeding planned progress.
5. Review of submittal schedule and status of submittals.
6. Review of off-Site fabrication and delivery schedules.
7. Maintenance of Progress Schedule.
8. Corrective measures to regain projected schedules.
9. Planned progress during succeeding work period.
10. Coordination of projected progress.
11. Maintenance of quality and work standards.
12. Effect of proposed changes on Progress Schedule and coordination.
13. Review of Record Drawings.
14. Other business relating to Work.

E. Engineer will prepare minutes and distribute copies to participants within ten (10) days after meeting to participants, Owner, and those affected by decisions made.

1.5 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. When required in individual Specification Sections, convene pre-installation meetings at Site before starting Work of specific Section.
- B. Require attendance of parties directly affecting, or affected by, Work of specific Section.
- C. Notify Engineer four (4) days in advance of meeting date.
- D. Prepare agenda and preside over meeting:
  1. Review conditions of installation, preparation, and installation procedures.
  2. Review coordination with related Work.
- E. Record minutes and distribute copies to participants within ten (10) days after meeting, with copies to Engineer, Owner and those affected by decisions made.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS                      Not Used

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 ALTERATION PROCEDURES

- A. Designated areas of the site will be occupied for normal operations during progress of construction. Cooperate with Owner in scheduling operations to minimize conflict and to permit continuous usage.
  1. Perform Work not to interfere with operations of occupied areas.

2. Keep utility and service outages to a minimum and perform only after written approval of Owner.
  3. Clean Owner-occupied areas daily. Clean spillage, overspray, and heavy collection of dust in Owner-occupied areas immediately.
- B. Materials: As specified in product Sections; match existing products with new and salvaged products for patching and extending Work.
  - C. Employ skilled and experienced installer to perform alteration and renovation Work.
  - D. Cut, move, or remove items as necessary for access to alterations and renovation Work. Replace and restore at completion. Comply with Section 017000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements
  - E. Remove unsuitable material not marked for salvage, including rotted wood, corroded metals, and deteriorated masonry and concrete. Replace materials as specified for finished Work.
  - F. Remove debris and abandoned items from area and from concealed spaces.
  - G. Prepare surface and remove surface finishes to permit installation of new Work and finishes.
  - H. Close openings in exterior surfaces to protect existing Work from weather and extremes of temperature and humidity.
  - I. Remove, cut, and patch Work to minimize damage and to permit restoring products and finishes to original condition.
  - J. Refinish existing visible surfaces to remain in renovated rooms and spaces, to specified renewed condition for each material, with neat transition to adjacent finishes.
  - K. Where new Work abuts or aligns with existing Work, provide smooth and even transition. Patch Work to match existing adjacent Work in texture and appearance.
  - L. When finished surfaces are cut so that smooth transition with new Work is not possible, terminate existing surface along straight line at natural line of division and submit recommendation to Engineer for review.
  - M. Where change of plane of  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch or more occurs, submit recommendation for providing smooth transition to Engineer for review.
  - N. Trim existing doors to clear new floor finish. Refinish trim to original condition.
  - O. Patch or replace portions of existing surfaces that are damaged, lifted, discolored, or showing other imperfections.
  - P. Finish surfaces as specified in individual product Sections.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 01 31 13 – PROJECT COORDINATION

### PART 1 – GENERAL

#### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Coordination and maintenance of service during Construction.
- B. Coordination and interferences.
- C. Suggested sequence of Construction.
- D. Related Sections
  - 1. Section 01 32 16 "Construction Progress Schedule" for preparing and submitting Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 2. Section 01 70 00 "Execution and Closeout Procedures" for procedures for coordinating general installation and field-engineering services, including establishment of benchmarks and control points and closeout of the Contract.

#### 1.02 COORDINATION AND MAINTENANCE OF SERVICE DURING CONSTRUCTION

- A. The Contractor(s) will, at all times throughout the Work, cooperate fully with the Owner in maintaining all necessary operations at the project site.
- B. The Contractor will note that the Work involves replacement, upgrades and abandonment of existing utilities, which, due to the nature of the various items of the Work, must be completed, in sequence.
  - 1. The Contractor(s) is responsible to coordinate temporary piping and utility services and other controls with the Owner, RPR, and Engineer to satisfactorily maintain operations of the Owner's other facilities at the project site.
- C. Should the Contractor's operations damage any existing facilities and render them unavailable for continued use prior to the scheduled time for their removal, the Contractor will take immediate action to furnish, install, and place into operation alternate equivalent facilities at that time. Should only minor repairs be required to the existing facilities in this instance, the Contractor will promptly make such necessary repairs and restore the existing facilities to full service. In either case, the costs for these repairs or additional costs for operation of alternate facilities for a period of time longer than planned will be paid for by the Contractor.
- D. The nature, location, capacity, and type of facilities proposed for maintaining continuity of the Owner operations will at all times be subject to the approval of the Engineer.

### 1.03 COORDINATION AND INTERFERENCES

- A. The Contract Drawings are generally diagrammatic and indicative of the work and as such cannot show actual construction conditions. Modifications in the work to compensate for minor interferences and structural obstructions shall be accomplished as part of the Work at no increase in Contract Price. Change order requests for unknown conditions shall be made in accordance with the General Conditions.
- B. The Contractor is responsible for preparing completely dimensioned installation or setting drawings of the various equipment and work requiring openings or other provisions to be made in the Contract. Such drawings shall have the Engineer's approval prior to their use.
- C. The Contractor shall not unload or store material where it will interfere with the progress of the Project or retard the work of other Contractors from proceeding with their work.

### 1.04 CONSTRUCTION SEQUENCE

- A. To assist in the preparation of a Construction Schedule, the Engineer has outlined a suggested general sequence of construction. This sequence is for reference only and the requirements for staging, means and methods of construction, demolition, flow control, and all coordination with specific trades of disciplines is the sole responsibility of the Contractor.
- B. General Sequence of Construction

#### PHASE 1:

- 1. Construct building improvements along with utility services. Complete installation to allow occupancy by Owner for the substantial completion deadline.

#### PHASE 2:

- 1. Complete all required commissioning and testing of installed systems.

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

### 2.01 MATERIALS

Not Used

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 PERFORMANCE

- A. The means and methods of performing the operations described previously is the sole responsibility of the individual Contractor(s).

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 013216 - CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS SCHEDULE

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Submittals.
- B. Bar chart schedules.
- C. Updating schedules.

#### 1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Within 20 days after date of Notice to Proceed, submit proposed schedule in electronic format.
- B. Submit schedule as specified in Section 013300 Submittal Procedures.
- C. Schedule Updates:
  - 1. Overall percent complete, projected and actual.
  - 2. Completion progress by listed activity and subactivity, to within five working days prior to submittal.
  - 3. Changes in Work scope and activities modified since submittal.
  - 4. Delays in submittals or resubmittals, deliveries, or Work.
  - 5. Adjusted or modified sequences of Work.
  - 6. Other identifiable changes.
  - 7. Revised projections of progress and completion.
- D. Narrative Progress Report:
  - 1. Submit with each monthly submission of Progress Schedule.
  - 2. Summary of Work completed during the past period between reports.
  - 3. Work planned during the next period.
  - 4. Explanation of differences between summary of Work completed and Work planned in previously submitted report.
  - 5. Current and anticipated delaying factors and estimated impact on other activities and completion milestones.
  - 6. Corrective action taken or proposed.

#### 1.3 BAR CHART SCHEDULES

- A. Format: Bar chart Schedule, to include at least:
  - 1. Identification and listing in chronological order of those activities reasonably required to complete the Work, including:

- a. Subcontract Work.
  - b. Major equipment design, fabrication, factory testing, and delivery dates including required lead times.
  - c. Move-in and other preliminary activities.
  - d. Equipment and equipment system test and startup activities.
  - e. Project closeout and cleanup.
  - f. Work sequences, constraints, and milestones.
- 2. Listings identified by Specification Section number.
  - 3. Identification of the following:
    - a. Horizontal time frame by year, month, and week.
    - b. Duration, early start, and completion for each activity and subactivity.
    - c. Critical activities and Project float.
    - d. Subschedules to further define critical portions of Work.

#### 1.4 UPDATING SCHEDULES

- A. Maintain schedules to record actual start and finish dates of completed activities.
- B. Indicate progress of each activity to date of revision, with projected completion date of each activity. Update schedules to depict current status of Work.
- C. Identify activities modified since previous submittal, major changes in Work, and other identifiable changes.
- D. Upon approval of a Change Order, include the change in the next schedule submittal.
- E. Indicate changes required to maintain Date of Substantial and Total Completion.
- F. Submit sorts as required to support recommended changes.
- G. Prepare narrative report to define problem areas, anticipated delays, and impact on schedule. Report corrective action taken or proposed and its effect including effects of changes on schedules of separate Contractors.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS      Not Used

PART 3 - EXECUTION      Not Used

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 013233 – PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for the following:
  - 1. Preconstruction photographs.
  - 2. Periodic construction photographs.
  - 3. Final completion construction photographs.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
- B. Section 013300 – Submittal Procedures for submitting photographic documentation.
- C. Section 017700 – Closeout Procedures.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Key Plan: Submit key plan of Project Site with notation of vantage points marked for location and direction of each photograph and video recording.
- B. Digital Photographs: Submit image files within three days of taking photographs.
  - 1. Digital Camera: Minimum sensor resolution of 8 megapixels.
  - 2. Format: JPG with minimum 3200 by 2400 pixels, in unaltered original files, with same aspect ratio as the sensor, uncropped, date and time stamped, in folder named by date of photograph, accompanied by key plan file.
  - 3. Identification: Provide the following information with each image description in file metadata tag:
    - a. Name of Project.
    - b. Name and Contact information for photographer.
    - c. Name of Engineer.
    - d. Name of Contractor.
    - e. Date photograph was taken.
    - f. Description of vantage point, indicating location, direction (by compass point), and elevation or story of construction.
    - g. Unique sequential identifier keyed to accompanying key plan.

#### 1.4 USAGE RIGHTS

- A. Transfer copyright usage rights to Owner for unlimited use and reproduction of photographic documentation.



PART 2 - PRODUCTS – Not Used

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL

- A. Take photographs using the maximum range of depth of field, and that are in focus, to clearly show the Work. Photographs with blurry or out-of-focus areas will not be accepted.
  - 1. Maintain key plan with each set of construction photographs that identifies each photographic location.

3.2 PRECONSTRUCTION PHOTOGRAPHS

- A. Photographic documentation is required prior to the start of any construction. Coverage shall include everything within the construction limits as identified on the Contract Drawings.
- B. Include coverage driveways, sidewalks, curbs, ditches (to show drainage patterns), street (as full width as possible), landscaping, trees, shrubs, culverts, catch basins, retaining walls, headwalls, fences, visible utilities, and building exteriors within the zones of influence. Buildings should be identified visibly when possible.
- C. Properly identify all photographs by number, date, locations and project name.

3.3 PERIODIC CONSTRUCTION PHOTOGRAPHS

- A. Take photographs bi-weekly, with timing each month adjusted to coincide with the cutoff date associated with each Application for Payment. Select vantage points to show status of construction and progress since last photographs were taken.

3.4 FINAL COMPLETION CONSTRUCTION PHOTOGRAPHS

- A. Take color photographs after date of Substantial Completion for submission as project record documents. Select vantage points to show status of construction and progress since last photographs were taken.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 013300 - SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Definitions.
- B. Submittal procedures.
- C. Construction progress schedules.
- D. Proposed product list.
- E. Product data.
- F. Shop Drawings.
- G. Samples.
- H. Other submittals.
- I. Test reports.
- J. Certificates.
- K. Manufacturer's instructions.
- L. Manufacturer's field reports.
- M. Erection Drawings.
- N. Contractor review.
- O. Engineer review.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Action Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that require Engineer's responsive action.
- B. Informational Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical Samples that do not require Engineer's responsive action. Submittals may be rejected for not complying with requirements.

### 1.3 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

- A. Transmit each submittal with Engineer accepted form.
- B. Sequentially number transmittal forms. Mark revised submittals with original number and sequential alphabetic suffix.
- C. Identify: Project, Contractor, Subcontractor and supplier, pertinent Drawing and detail number, and Specification Section number appropriate to submittal.
- D. Apply Contractor's stamp, signed or initialed, certifying that review, approval, verification of products required, field dimensions, adjacent construction Work, and coordination of information is according to requirements of the Work and Contract Documents.
- E. Schedule submittals to expedite Project, and deliver to Engineer at business address. Coordinate submission of related items.
- F. For each submittal for review, allow fifteen (15) days excluding delivery time to and from Contractor.
- G. Identify variations in Contract Documents and product or system limitations that may be detrimental to successful performance of completed Work.
- H. Allow space on submittals for Contractor and Engineer review stamps.
- I. When revised for resubmission, identify changes made since previous submission.
- J. The Engineer's approval of the Contractor's submittal is for general conformance with the design concept only. Although the Engineer may review submittals in more or less detail, such reviewing is an effort to discover errors and omission in the Contractor's submittals and to safeguard the Owner from unnecessary costs and delays resulting from errors or omissions in the Contractor's submittals. The Engineer's review shall in no way relieve the Contractor of his obligation and responsibility to coordinate the Work and plan the details of the Work or to relieve him of his responsibility in fulfilling the purpose and intent of the Contract. Review by the Engineer shall not be construed as placing on him or on the Owner any responsibility for the accuracy, proper fit, functioning or performance of any phase of the Work included in the Contract.
- K. For all re-submittals except for the first, Engineer and Engineer's consultants will record manhours required for review of the re-submittal. At the discretion of the Owner, Contractor may be charged for review of such repeat re-submittals at Engineer's (and Engineer's consultant's) current hourly rates. Charges for repeat re-submittals will be subtracted from Contractor's next progress payment.
- L. Distribute copies of reviewed submittals as appropriate. Instruct parties to promptly report inability to comply with requirements.
- M. Submittals not requested will not be recognized nor processed.
- N. Incomplete Submittals: Engineer will not review. Complete submittals for each item are required. Delays resulting from incomplete submittals are not the responsibility of /Engineer.

#### 1.4 CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS SCHEDULES

- A. Submit initial schedule in duplicate within twenty (20) days after the Notice to Proceed as per Section 013216 Construction Progress Schedule.
- B. Review and resubmit as required.
- C. Submit revised schedules with each Application for Payment, identifying changes since previous version.
- D. Submit a CPM construction schedule with separate task for each major portion of Work or operation identifying first work day of each week.
- E. Show complete sequence of construction by activity, identifying Work of separate stage and other logically grouped activities. Indicate the early and late start, early and late finish, float dates and duration.
- F. Indicate estimated percentage of completion for each item of Work at each submittal.
- G. Indicate submittal dates required for shop drawings, product data, samples and product delivery dates, including those furnished by Owner and required by Allowances.

#### 1.5 PROPOSED PRODUCT LIST

- A. Within ten (10) days after date of Owner-Contractor Agreement, submit list of major products proposed for use, with name of manufacturer, trade name, and model number of each product.
- B. For products specified only by reference standards, indicate manufacturer, trade name, model or catalog designation, and reference standards.

#### 1.6 PRODUCT DATA

- A. Action Submittal: Submit to Engineer for review for limited purpose of assessing conformance with information given and design concept expressed in Contract Documents.
- B. Submit electronic submittals via email as PDF electronic files.
- C. Mark each copy to identify applicable products, models, options, and other data. Supplement manufacturers' standard data to provide information specific to this Project.
- D. Indicate product utility and electrical characteristics, utility connection requirements, and location of utility outlets for service for functional equipment and appliances.
- E. After review, produce copies and distribute according to "Submittal Procedures" Article and for record documents described in Section 017000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements.

## 1.7 SHOP DRAWINGS

- A. Shop Drawings: Action Submittal: Submit to Engineer for limited purpose of assessing conformance with information given and design concept expressed in Contract Documents.
- B. Indicate special utility and electrical characteristics, utility connection requirements, and location of utility outlets for service for functional equipment and appliances.
- C. When required by individual Specification Sections, provide Shop Drawings signed and sealed by a professional Engineer responsible for designing components shown on Shop Drawings.
  - 1. Include signed and sealed calculations to support design.
  - 2. Submit Shop Drawings and calculations in form suitable for submission to and approval by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 3. Make revisions and provide additional information when required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Submit electronic submittal via email as PDF.
- E. After review, produce copies and distribute according to "Submittal Procedures" Article and for record documents described in Section 017000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements.

## 1.8 SAMPLES

- A. Samples: Action Submittal: Submit to Engineer for limited purpose of assessing conformance with information given and design concept expressed in Contract Documents.
- B. Samples for Selection as Specified in Product Sections:
  - 1. Submit to Engineer for aesthetic, color, and finish selection.
  - 2. Submit Samples of finishes, textures, and patterns for Engineer selection.
- C. Submit Samples to illustrate functional and aesthetic characteristics of products, with integral parts and attachment devices. Coordinate Sample submittals for interfacing work.
- D. Include identification on each Sample, with full Project information.
- E. Submit number of Samples specified in individual Specification Sections; Engineer will retain one Sample.
- F. Reviewed Samples that may be used in the Work are indicated in individual Specification Sections.
- G. Samples will not be used for testing purposes unless specifically stated in Specification Section.
- H. After review, produce copies and distribute according to "Submittal Procedures" Article and for record documents described in Section 017000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements.

## 1.9 OTHER SUBMITTALS

- A. Closeout Submittals: Comply with Section 017000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements.
- B. Informational Submittal: Submit data for Architect/Engineer's knowledge as Contract administrator or for Owner.
- C. Submit information for assessing conformance with information given and design concept expressed in Contract Documents.

## 1.10 TEST REPORTS

- A. Informational Submittal: Submit reports for Engineer's knowledge as Contract administrator or for Owner.
- B. Submit test reports for information for assessing conformance with information given and design concept expressed in Contract Documents.

## 1.11 CERTIFICATES

- A. Informational Submittal: Submit certification by manufacturer, installation/application Subcontractor, or Contractor to Engineer, in quantities specified for Product Data.
- B. Indicate material or product conforms to or exceeds specified requirements. Submit supporting reference data, affidavits, and certifications as appropriate.
- C. Certificates may be recent or previous test results on material or product but must be acceptable to Engineer.

## 1.12 MANUFACTURER'S INSTRUCTIONS

- A. Informational Submittal: Submit manufacturer's installation instructions for Engineer's knowledge as Contract administrator or for Owner.
- B. Submit printed instructions for delivery, storage, assembly, installation, startup, adjusting, and finishing, to Engineer in quantities specified for Product Data.
- C. Indicate special procedures, perimeter conditions requiring special attention, and special environmental criteria required for application or installation.

## 1.13 MANUFACTURER'S FIELD REPORTS

- A. Informational Submittal: Submit reports for Engineer's knowledge as Contract administrator or for Owner.
- B. Submit report within 30 days of observation to Engineer for information. Illegible or incomplete reports will be rejected.

- C. Submit reports for information for assessing conformance with information given and design concept expressed in Contract Documents.
- D. Manufacturer's Field Reports shall include, as a minimum, the following information:
  - 1. Name of Field Service Representative.
  - 2. Date(s) of site visit.
  - 3. Duration of site visit (actual man-hours on the site).
  - 4. Name of equipment manufacturer.
  - 5. Complete list of equipment inspected and/or started up.
  - 6. Description of any problems, unfinished work, required changes, etc. remaining at the conclusion of the site visit.
  - 7. Statement that the installation is or is not acceptable to the equipment manufacturer.
  - 8. If installation is not acceptable, provide narrative, sketches, itemized list, etc. of what is required to make installation acceptable.
  - 9. Statement that equipment is or is not operating properly according to the equipment manufacturer.
  - 10. If equipment is not operating properly, provide narrative on what is required to make equipment operate properly.

#### 1.14 ERECTION DRAWINGS

- A. Informational Submittal: Submit Drawings for Engineer's knowledge as Contract administrator or for Owner.
- B. Submit Drawings for limited purpose of assessing conformance with information given and design concept expressed in Contract Documents.
- C. Data indicating inappropriate or unacceptable Work may be subject to action by Engineer or Owner.

#### 1.15 CONTRACTOR REVIEW

- A. Review for compliance with Contract Documents and approve submittals before transmitting to Engineer.
- B. Contractor: Responsible for:
  - 1. Determination and verification of materials including manufacturer's catalog numbers.
  - 2. Determination and verification of field measurements and field construction criteria.
  - 3. Checking and coordinating information in submittal with requirements of Work and of Contract Documents.
  - 4. Determination of accuracy and completeness of dimensions and quantities.
  - 5. Confirmation and coordination of dimensions and field conditions at Site.
  - 6. Construction means, techniques, sequences, and procedures.
  - 7. Safety precautions.
  - 8. Coordination and performance of Work of all trades.

- C. Stamp, sign or initial, and date each submittal to certify compliance with requirements of Contract Documents.
- D. Do not fabricate products or begin Work for which submittals are required until approved submittals have been received from Architect/Engineer.

1.16 ENGINEER REVIEW

- A. Do not make "mass submittals" to Engineer. "Mass submittals" are defined as six or more submittals or items in one day or 20 or more submittals or items in one week. If "mass submittals" are received, Engineer's review time stated above will be extended as necessary to perform proper review. Engineer will review "mass submittals" based on priority determined by Engineer after consultation with Owner and Contractor.
- B. Informational submittals and other similar data are for Engineer's information, do not require Engineer's responsive action, and will not be reviewed or returned with comment.
- C. Submittals made by Contractor that are not required by Contract Documents may be returned without action.
- D. Submittal approval does not authorize changes to Contract requirements unless accompanied by Change Order.
- E. Owner may withhold monies due to Contractor to cover additional costs beyond the second submittal review.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS      Not Used

PART 3 - EXECUTION      Not Used

END OF SECTION



## SECTION 014000 - QUALITY REQUIREMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Quality control.
- B. Tolerances.
- C. References.
- D. Mockup requirements.
- E. Testing and inspection services.
- F. Manufacturers' field services.

#### 1.2 QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Monitor quality control over suppliers, manufacturers, products, services, Site conditions, and workmanship, to produce Work of specified quality.
- B. Comply with specified standards as the minimum quality for the Work except where more stringent tolerances, codes, or specified requirements indicate higher standards or more precise workmanship.
- C. Comply with manufacturer's installation instructions, including each step in sequence.
- D. Should manufacturer's instructions conflict with Contract Documents, request clarification from Engineer before proceeding.
- E. Perform Work using persons qualified to produce required and specified quality.
- F. Products, materials, and equipment may be subject to inspection by Engineer at place of manufacture or fabrication. Such inspections shall not relieve Contractor of complying with requirements of Contract Documents.
- G. Supervise performance of Work in such manner and by such means to ensure that Work, whether completed or in progress, will not be subjected to harmful, dangerous, damaging, or otherwise deleterious exposure during construction period.
- H. Secure products in place with positive anchorage devices designed and sized to withstand stresses, vibration, physical distortion and disfigurement.

### 1.3 TOLERANCES

- A. Monitor fabrication and installation tolerance control of products to produce acceptable Work. Do not permit tolerances to accumulate.
- B. Comply with manufacturers' recommended tolerances and tolerance requirements in reference standards. When such tolerances conflict with Contract Documents, request clarification from Architect/Engineer before proceeding.
- C. Adjust products to appropriate dimensions; position before securing products in place.

### 1.4 REFERENCES

- A. For products or workmanship specified by association, trade, or other consensus standards, comply with requirements of standard except when more rigid requirements are specified or are required by applicable codes.
- B. Conform to reference standard by date of issue current as of date of Contract Documents except where specific date is established by code.
- C. Obtain copies of standards and maintain on Site when required by product Specification Sections.
- D. When requirements of indicated reference standards conflict with Contract Documents, request clarification from Engineer before proceeding.
- E. Neither contractual relationships, duties, or responsibilities of parties in Contract nor those of Engineer shall be altered from Contract Documents by mention or inference in reference documents.

### 1.5 MOCK-UP REQUIREMENTS

- A. Tests will be performed under provisions identified in this Section and identified in individual product Specification Sections.
- B. Assemble and erect specified or indicated items with specified or indicated attachment and anchorage devices, flashings, seals, and finishes.
- C. Accepted mockups shall be comparison standard for remaining Work.
- D. Where mockup has been accepted by Engineer and is specified in product Specification Sections to be removed, remove mockup and clear area when directed to do so by Engineer.

### 1.6 TESTING AND INSPECTION SERVICES

- A. Independent firm will perform tests, inspections, and other services specified in individual Specification Sections and as required by Engineer.

- B. Testing, inspections, and source quality control may occur on or off Project Site. Perform off-Site testing as required by Engineer or Owner.
- C. Reports shall be submitted by independent firm to Engineer, Contractor, and authorities having jurisdiction, in duplicate, indicating observations and results of tests and compliance or noncompliance with Contract Documents.
  - 1. Submit final report indicating correction of Work previously reported as noncompliant.
- D. Cooperate with independent firm; furnish samples of materials, design mix, equipment, tools, storage, safe access, and assistance by incidental labor as requested.
  - 1. Notify Engineer and independent firm twenty-four (24) hours before expected time for operations requiring services.
  - 2. Make arrangements with independent firm and pay for additional Samples and tests required for Contractor's use.
- E. Employment of testing agency or laboratory shall not relieve Contractor of obligation to perform Work according to requirements of Contract Documents.
- F. Retesting or re-inspection required because of nonconformance with specified or indicated requirements shall be performed by same independent firm on instructions from Engineer. Payment for retesting or re-inspection will be charged to Contractor by deducting testing charges from Contract Sum/Price.
- G. Agency Responsibilities:
  - 1. Test Samples of mixes submitted by Contractor.
  - 2. Provide qualified personnel at Site. Cooperate with Engineer and Contractor in performance of services.
  - 3. Perform indicated sampling and testing of products according to specified standards.
  - 4. Ascertain compliance of materials and mixes with requirements of Contract Documents.
  - 5. Promptly notify Engineer and Contractor of observed irregularities or nonconformance of Work or products.
  - 6. Perform additional tests required by Engineer.
  - 7. Attend preconstruction meetings and progress meetings when requested.
- H. Agency Reports: After each test, promptly submit two (2) copies of report to Engineer, Contractor, and authorities having jurisdiction. When requested by Engineer, provide interpretation of test results. Include the following:
  - 1. Date issued.
  - 2. Project title and number.
  - 3. Name of inspector.
  - 4. Date and time of sampling or inspection.
  - 5. Identification of product and Specification Section.
  - 6. Location in Project.
  - 7. Type of inspection or test.
  - 8. Date of test.
  - 9. Results of tests.
  - 10. Conformance with Contract Documents.

I. Limits on Testing Authority:

1. Agency or laboratory may not release, revoke, alter, or enlarge on requirements of Contract Documents.
2. Agency or laboratory may not approve or accept any portion of the Work.
3. Agency or laboratory may not assume duties of Contractor.
4. Agency or laboratory has no authority to stop the Work.

1.7 MANUFACTURER'S FIELD SERVICES

- A. When specified in individual Specification Sections, require material or product suppliers or manufacturers to provide qualified staff personnel to observe Site conditions, conditions of surfaces and installation, quality of workmanship, startup of equipment, testing, adjusting, and balancing of equipment as applicable, and to initiate instructions when necessary.
- B. Submit qualifications of field service representative to Engineer thirty (30) days in advance of required observations. Field service representative subject to approval of Engineer.
- C. Report observations and Site decisions or instructions given to applicators or installers that are supplemental or contrary to manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Refer to Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures, "Manufacturer's Field Reports" Article.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS      Not Used

PART 3 - EXECUTION      Not Used

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 014535 – SPECIAL INSPECTIONS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 REFERENCES

- A. AMERICAN SOCIETY OF CIVIL ENGINEERS (ASCE)
  - 1. ASCE 7 (2010) Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures
- B. INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL (ICC)
  - 1. ICC IBC (2015) International Building Code

#### 1.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Perform Special Inspections in accordance with the Statement of Special Inspections, Schedule of Special Inspections and Chapter 17 of ICC IBC. The Statement of Special Inspections and Schedule of Special Inspections are included as an attachment to this specification. Special Inspections are to be performed by an independent third party and are intended to ensure that the work of the prime contractor is in accordance with the Contract Documents and applicable building codes. Special inspections do not take the place of any testing and inspections required by other sections of the specifications.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Continuous Special Inspections – The constant monitoring of specific tasks by a special inspector. These inspections must be carried out continuously over the duration of the particular tasks.
- B. Periodic Special Inspections – Special Inspections by the special inspector who is intermittently present where the work to be inspected has been or is being performed. Specific time interval on a specific Special Inspection should be indicated on the Schedule of Special Inspections.
- C. Perform - Special Inspections tasks are to take place for each instance during construction.
- D. Observe – Special Inspections tasks are to be observed on a random daily basis. Operations need not be delayed pending these inspections.
- E. Document – Document, with a report, that the work has been performed in accordance with the contract documents. This is in addition to any other reports required in the Special Inspections guide specification
- F. Special Inspector (SI) - A qualified person retained by the contractor and approved by the Contracting Officer as having the competence necessary to inspect a particular type of construction requiring Special Inspections. The SI must be an independent third party hired directly by the Prime Contractor.

- G. Associate Special Inspector (ASI) - A qualified person who assists the SI in performing Special Inspections but must perform inspection under the direct supervision of the SI and cannot perform inspections without the SI on site.
- H. Third Party - A third party inspector must not be company employee of the Contractor or any Sub-Contractor performing the work to be inspected.
- I. Contractor's Quality Control (QC) Manager – An individual retained by the prime contractor having the overall responsibility for the contractor's QC organization.
- J. Designer of Record (DOR) - The registered design professional responsible for the overall design and review of submittal documents prepared by others. The DOR is also referred to as the Engineer of Record (EOR) in design code documents.
- K. Statement of Special Inspections (SSI) - A document developed by the DOR identifying the material, systems, components and work required to have Special Inspections.
- L. Schedule of Special Inspections - A schedule which lists each of the required Special Inspections, the extent to which each Special Inspections is to be performed, and the required frequency for each in accordance with IBC Chapter 17.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:
- B. Preconstruction Submittals
  - 1. Special Inspections Project Manual;
  - 2. Special Inspections Agency's Written Practices
- C. Test Reports
  - 1. Special Inspections Biweekly Reports
- D. Certificates
  - 1. Steel Fabrication Plant
  - 2. Steel Joist Institute Membership
  - 3. Special Inspector Qualifications
- E. Closeout Submittals
  - 1. Interim Final Report of Special Inspections
  - 2. Comprehensive Final Report of Special Inspections

1.5 SPECIAL INSPECTOR QUALIFICATIONS

- A. Submit qualifications for each special inspector.

Certifying Associations	
AABC	Associated Air Balance Council
ACI	American Concrete Institute

AWCI	Association of the Wall and Ceiling Industry
AWS	American Welding Society
FM	Factory Mutual
ICC	International Code Council
NDT	Nondestructive Testing
NICET	National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies
PCI	Precast/Prestressed Concrete Institute
PTI	Post-Tensioning Institute
UL	Underwriters Laboratories

- B. Steel Construction and High Strength Bolting
  - 1. Special Inspector
    - a. ICC Structural Steel and Bolting Special Inspector certificate with one year of related experience, or
    - b. Registered Professional Engineer with related experience
  - 2. Associate Special Inspector
    - a. Engineer-In-Training with one year of related experience.
- C. Welding Structural Steel
  - 1. Special Inspector
    - a. ICC Structural Welding Special Inspector certificate with one year of related experience, or AWS Certified Welding Inspector
  - 2. Associate Special Inspector
    - a. AWS Certified Associate Welding Inspector
- D. Concrete Construction
  - 1. Special Inspector
    - a. ICC Reinforced Concrete Special Inspector Certificate with one year of related experience, or
    - b. ACI Concrete Construction Special Inspector, or
    - c. NICET Concrete Technician Level III Certificate in Construction Materials Testing, or
    - d. Registered Professional Engineer with related experience
  - 2. Associate Special Inspector
    - a. ACI Concrete Construction Special Inspector in Training, or
    - b. Engineer-In-Training with one year of related experience
- E. Masonry Construction
  - 1. Special Inspector
    - a. ICC Structural Masonry Special Inspector Certificate with one year of related experience, or
    - b. Registered Professional Engineer with related experience
  - 2. Associate Special Inspector
    - a. Engineer-In-Training with one year of related experience.

- F. Verification of Site Soil Condition, Fill Placement and Load-Bearing Requirements
  - 1. Special Inspector
    - a. ICC Soils Special Inspector Certificate with one year of related experience, or
    - b. NICET Soils Technician Level II Certificate in Construction Material Testing, or
    - c. NICET Geotechnical Engineering Technician Level II Construction or Generalist Certificate, or
    - d. Geologist-In-Training with one year of related experience, or
    - e. Registered Professional Engineer with related experience
  - 2. Associate Special Inspector
    - a. NICET Soils Technician Level I Certificate in Construction Material Testing with one year of related experience, or
    - b. NICET Geotechnical Engineering Technician Level I Construction or Generalist Certificate with one year of related experience, or
    - c. Engineer-In-Training with one year of related experience

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 FABRICATOR SPECIAL INSPECTIONS

- A. Special Inspections of fabricator's work performed in the fabricator's shop is required to be inspected in accordance with the Statement of Special Inspections and the Schedule of Special Inspections unless the fabricator is certified by the approved agency to perform such work without Special Inspections. Submit the following certification(s) to the DOR for information to allow work performed in the fabricator's shop to not be subjected to Special Inspections.
- B. The following certifications meet the requirements for fabricator approval in accordance with paragraph 1704.2.5.1 of IBC:
  - 1. American Institute of Steel Construction (AISC) Certified Fabrication Plant, Category STD.
  - 2. Steel Joist Institute Membership
  - 3. Shop that participates in a recognized quality-assurance program that involves inspection by SPIB, Timber Products Inspection, TPI, or other independent testing and inspecting agency acceptable to Design Professional and authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. At the completion of fabrication, submit a certificate of compliance, to be included with the comprehensive final report of Special Inspections, stating that the materials supplied and work performed by the fabricator are in accordance the construction documents.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. Quality Control Manager
  - 1. Supervise all Special Inspectors required by the contract documents and the IBC.
  - 2. Verify the qualifications of all of the Special Inspectors.
  - 3. Verify the qualifications of fabricators.



4. Maintain a 3- ring binder for the Special Inspector's daily and biweekly reports. This file must be located in a conspicuous place in the project trailer/office to allow review by the Contracting Officer and the DOR.
5. Maintain a rework items list that includes discrepancies noted on the Special Inspectors daily report.

B. Special Inspectors

1. Inspect all elements of the project for which the special inspector is qualified to inspect and are identified in the Schedule of Special Inspections.
2. Attend preparatory phase meetings related to the Definable Feature of Work (DFOW) for which the special inspector is qualified to inspect.
3. Submit a copy of the daily reports to the QC Manager.
4. Discrepancies that are observed during Special Inspections must be reported to the QC Manager for correction. If discrepancies are not corrected before the special inspector leaves the site the observed discrepancies must be documented in the daily report.
5. Submit a biweekly Special Inspection Report until all inspections are complete. A report is required for each biweekly period in which Special Inspections activity occurs, and must include the following:
  - a. A brief summary of the work performed during the reporting time frame.

3.2 DEFECTIVE WORK

1. Check work as it progresses, but failure to detect any defective work or materials must in no way prevent later rejection if defective work or materials are discovered, nor obligate the owner to accept such work.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 015000 - TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. References
- B. Responsibility for Temporary Facilities and Controls
- C. Temporary Utilities:
  - 1. Temporary electricity.
  - 2. Temporary lighting for construction purposes.
  - 3. Temporary ventilation.
  - 4. Temporary sanitary facilities.
- D. Construction Facilities:
  - 1. Progress cleaning and waste removal.
  - 2. Traffic regulation.
  - 3. Fire-prevention facilities.
- E. Temporary Controls:
  - 1. Barriers.
  - 2. Enclosures and fencing.
  - 3. Security.
  - 4. Water control.
  - 5. Dust control.
  - 6. Erosion and sediment control.
  - 7. Pollution control.
- F. Removal of utilities, facilities, and controls.

#### 1.2 REFERENCES

- A. ASTM International:
  - 1. ASTM E 84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
  - 2. ASTM E 90 - Standard Test Method for Laboratory Measurement of Airborne Sound Transmission Loss of Building Partitions and Elements.
  - 3. ASTM E 119 - Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials.

1.3 RESPONSIBILITY FOR CONSTRUCTION FACILITIES AND TEMPORARY CONTROLS:

- A. Unless noted otherwise in this section, the General/Mechanical Contractor shall be responsible for providing and maintaining all construction facilities and temporary controls. Items to be provided:
  - 1. Temporary barriers, barricades, covered walkways, fencing, exterior closures, and interior closures.
  - 2. Cleaning during construction.
  - 3. Temporary sanitary facilities.
  - 4. Temporary lighting
  - 5. Temporary protection for designated trees and plants

1.4 TEMPORARY ELECTRICITY

- A. Provide and pay for power service required.
- B. Provide main service disconnect and overcurrent protection at convenient location.
- C. Provide temporary poles and temporary distribution wiring to bring temporary power to within 50 feet of each building or structure.
- D. Any Contractor requiring electrical power in excess of that provided by the temporary power supply, shall furnish such excess power at his own cost. Use of power by any Contractor shall not interfere with Owner's ability to operate existing facility.
- E. The General/Mechanical shall pay for the cost of the temporary electric service

1.5 TEMPORARY VENTILATION

- A. Each Contractor shall ventilate enclosed areas to achieve curing of materials, to dissipate humidity, and to prevent accumulation of dust, fumes, vapors, or gases.

1.6 TEMPORARY SANITARY FACILITIES

- A. Provide and maintain required facilities and enclosures. Existing facility use is not permitted. Provide facilities at time of Project mobilization.

1.7 PROGRESS CLEANING AND WASTE REMOVAL

- A. Maintain areas free of waste materials, debris, and rubbish. Maintain Site in clean and orderly condition.
- B. Remove debris and rubbish from pipe chases, plenums, attics, crawl spaces, and other closed or remote spaces, before enclosing spaces.
- C. Broom and vacuum clean interior areas before starting surface finishing, and continue cleaning to eliminate dust.

- D. Collect and remove waste materials, debris, and rubbish from Site periodically and dispose of off-Site.
- E. Open free-fall chutes are not permitted. Terminate closed chutes into appropriate containers with lids.
- F. Burning of waste material of any kind on-site is prohibited.

## 1.8 TRAFFIC REGULATION

- A. Signs, Signals, and Devices:
  - 1. Post-Mounted and Wall-Mounted Traffic Control and Informational Signs: As approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Traffic Cones, Drums, Flares, and Lights: As approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 3. Flag Person Equipment: As required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Flag Persons: Provide trained and equipped flag persons to regulate traffic when construction operations or traffic encroach on public traffic lanes.
- C. Flares and Lights: Use flares and lights during hours of low visibility to delineate traffic lanes and to guide traffic.
- D. Haul Routes:
  - 1. Consult with authorities having jurisdiction and establish public thoroughfares to be used for haul routes and Site access.
  - 2. Provide traffic control at critical areas of haul routes to regulate traffic and to minimize interference with public traffic.
- E. Traffic Signs:
  - 1. Provide signs at approaches to Site and on Site, at crossroads, detours, parking areas, and elsewhere as needed to direct construction and affected public traffic.
  - 2. Relocate signs and signals as Work progresses, to maintain effective traffic control.
- F. Removal:
  - 1. Remove equipment and devices when no longer required.
  - 2. Repair damage caused by installation.
  - 3. Remove post settings to depth of 2 feet.

## 1.9 FIRE-PREVENTION FACILITIES

- A. Prohibit smoking within buildings under construction. Designate area on Site where smoking is permitted. Provide approved ashtrays in designated smoking areas.
- B. Establish fire watch for cutting, welding, and other hazardous operations capable of starting fires. Maintain fire watch before, during, and after hazardous operations until threat of fire does not exist.

- C. Portable Fire Extinguishers: NFPA 10; 10-pound capacity, 4A-60B: C UL rating.
  - 1. Provide one fire extinguisher at each stairway on each floor of buildings under construction and demolition.
  - 2. Provide minimum of one fire extinguisher in every construction trailer and storage shed.
  - 3. Provide minimum of one fire extinguisher on roof during roofing operations using heat-producing equipment.

#### 1.10 BARRIERS

- A. Provide barriers to prevent unauthorized entry to construction areas, to allow for Owner's use of Site, and to protect existing facilities and adjacent properties from damage from construction operations and demolition.
- B. Provide barricades and covered walkways required by authorities having jurisdiction for public rights-of-way and for public access to existing building.
- C. Tree and Plant Protection: Preserve and protect existing trees and plants designated to remain.
  - 1. Protect areas within drip lines from traffic, parking, storage, dumping, chemically injurious materials and liquids, ponding, and continuous running water.
  - 2. Provide 6-foot-high barriers around drip line, with access for maintenance.
  - 3. Replace trees and plants in kind where damaged by construction operations.
- D. Protect non-owned vehicular traffic, stored materials, Site, and structures from damage.

#### 1.11 ENCLOSURES AND FENCING

- A. Construction: Commercial-grade chain-link fence
- B. Provide 6-foot high fence around construction Site; equip with vehicular and pedestrian gates with locks.

#### 1.12 SECURITY

- A. Security Program:
  - 1. Protect Work on existing premises and Owner's operations from theft, vandalism, and unauthorized entry.
  - 2. Initiate program in coordination with Owner's existing security system at Project mobilization.
  - 3. Maintain program throughout construction period until Owner's acceptance precludes need for Contractor's security.
- B. Entry Control:
  - 1. Restrict entrance of persons and vehicles to Project Site and existing facilities.
  - 2. Allow entrance only to authorized persons with proper identification.
  - 3. Maintain log of workers and visitors and make available to Owner on request.

4. Owner will control entrance of persons and vehicles related to Owner's operations.

1.13 WATER CONTROL

- A. Grade Site to drain. Maintain excavations free of water. Provide, operate, and maintain necessary pumping equipment.
- B. Protect Site from puddles or running water. Provide water barriers as required to protect Site from soil erosion.

1.14 DUST CONTROL

- A. Execute Work by methods that minimize raising dust from construction operations.
- B. Provide positive means to prevent airborne dust from dispersing into atmosphere and into Owner-occupied areas.

1.15 EROSION AND SEDIMENT CONTROL

- A. Plan and execute construction by methods to control surface drainage from cuts and fills from borrow and waste disposal areas. Prevent erosion and sedimentation.
- B. Minimize surface area of bare soil exposed at one time.
- C. Provide temporary measures including berms, dikes, drains, and other devices to prevent water flow.
- D. Construct fill and waste areas by selective placement to avoid erosive surface silts and clays.
- E. Periodically inspect earthwork to detect evidence of erosion and sedimentation. Promptly apply corrective measures.
- F. Comply with sediment and erosion control plan indicated on Drawings.

1.16 POLLUTION CONTROL

- A. Provide methods, means, and facilities to prevent contamination of soil, water, and atmosphere from discharge of noxious, toxic substances and pollutants produced by construction operations.
- B. Comply with pollution and environmental control requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

1.17 REMOVAL OF UTILITIES, FACILITIES, AND CONTROLS

- A. Remove temporary utilities, equipment, facilities, and materials before Substantial Completion inspection.

- B. Remove underground installations to minimum depth of 3 feet. Grade Site as indicated on Drawings.
- C. Clean and repair damage caused by installation or use of temporary Work.
- D. Restore existing and permanent facilities used during construction to original condition. Restore permanent facilities used during construction to specified condition.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS      Not Used

PART 3 - EXECUTION      Not Used

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 016000 - PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Products.
- B. Product delivery requirements.
- C. Product storage and handling requirements.
- D. Product options.
- E. Equipment electrical characteristics and components.

#### 1.2 PRODUCTS

- A. Products means new material, machinery, components, equipment, fixtures, and systems forming the Work. Does not include machinery and equipment used for preparation, fabrication, conveying, and erection of the Work. Products may also include existing materials or components required for reuse.
- B. At minimum, comply with specified requirements and reference standards.
- C. Specified products define standard of quality, type, function, dimension, appearance, and performance required.
- D. Furnish products of qualified manufacturers that are suitable for intended use. Furnish products of each type by single manufacturer unless specified otherwise. Confirm that manufacturer's production capacity can provide sufficient product, on time, to meet Project requirements.
- E. Domestic Products: Except where specified otherwise, domestic products are required and interpreted to mean products mined, manufactured, fabricated, or produced in United States or its territories.
- F. Do not use materials and equipment removed from existing premises except as specifically permitted by Contract Documents.
- G. Provide interchangeable components from same manufacturer for components being replaced.

#### 1.3 PRODUCT DELIVERY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Transport and handle products according to manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Promptly inspect shipments to ensure products comply with requirements, quantities are correct, and products are undamaged.



- C. Provide equipment and personnel to handle products; use methods to prevent soiling, disfigurement, or damage.

#### 1.4 PRODUCT STORAGE AND HANDLING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Deliver products to the site in an undamaged condition. Exercise care when off-loading equipment to prevent damage.
- B. Inspect products on delivery. Submit claims for transportation damage and replace damaged, defective, or deficient items.
- C. Store and protect products according to manufacturer's instructions.
- D. Store products with seals and labels intact and legible.
- E. Store sensitive products in weathertight, climate-controlled enclosures in an environment suitable to product.
- F. For exterior storage of fabricated products, place products on sloped supports aboveground.
- G. Provide bonded off-Site storage and protection when Site does not permit on-Site storage or protection.
- H. Cover products subject to deterioration with impervious sheet covering. Provide ventilation to prevent condensation and degradation of products.
- I. Store loose granular materials on solid flat surfaces in well-drained area. Prevent mixing with foreign matter.
- J. Provide equipment and personnel to store products; use methods to prevent soiling, disfigurement, or damage.
- K. Arrange storage of products to permit access for inspection. Periodically inspect to verify products are undamaged and are maintained in acceptable condition.

#### 1.5 PRODUCT OPTIONS

- A. Products Specified by Reference Standards or by Description Only: Products complying with specified reference standards or description.
- B. Products Specified by Naming One or More Manufacturers: Products of one of manufacturers named and complying with Specifications; no options or substitutions allowed.
- C. Products Specified by Naming One or More Manufacturers with Provision for Substitutions: Submit Request for Substitution for any manufacturer not named, according to Section 012500 - Substitution Procedures.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS AND COMPONENTS

- A. Wiring Terminations: Furnish terminal lugs to match branch circuit conductor quantities, sizes, and materials indicated. Include lugs for terminal box.
- B. Cord and Plug: Furnish minimum 6-foot long cord and plug including grounding connector for connection to electric wiring system. Cord of longer length may be specified in individual Specification Sections.

PART 3 - EXECUTION Not Used

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 017000 – EXECUTION AND CLOSEOUT REQUIREMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Field engineering.
- B. Closeout procedures.
- C. Starting of systems.
- D. Demonstration and instructions.
- E. Testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- F. Project record documents.
- G. Operation and maintenance data.
- H. Manual for materials and finishes.
- I. Manual for equipment and systems.
- J. Spare parts and maintenance products.
- K. Product warranties and product bonds.
- L. Maintenance service.
- M. Examination.
- N. Preparation.
- O. Execution.
- P. Cutting and patching.
- Q. Protecting installed construction.
- R. Final cleaning.

#### 1.2 FIELD ENGINEERING

- A. Employ land surveyor registered in State of Pennsylvania and acceptable to Engineer.
- B. Contractor shall locate and protect survey control and reference points. Promptly notify Engineer of discrepancies discovered.

- C. Control datum for survey is shown on drawings.
- D. Prior to beginning Work, verify and establish floor elevations of existing facilities to ensure that new Work will meet existing elevations in smooth and level alignment except where specifically detailed or indicated otherwise.
- E. Verify setbacks and easements; confirm Drawing dimensions and elevations.
- F. Provide field engineering services. Establish elevations, lines, and levels using recognized engineering survey practices.
- G. Submit copy of Site drawing signed by land surveyor certifying elevations and locations of the Work are in conformance with Contract Documents.
- H. Maintain complete and accurate log of control and survey Work as Work progresses.
- I. Protect survey control points prior to starting Site Work; preserve permanent reference points during construction.
- J. Promptly report to Engineer loss or destruction of reference point or relocation required because of changes in grades or other reasons.
- K. Replace dislocated survey control points based on original survey control. Make no changes without prior written notice to Engineer.

### 1.3 CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

- A. Prerequisites to Substantial Completion: Complete following items before requesting Certification of Substantial Completion, either for entire Work or for portions of Work:
  1. Submit maintenance manuals, Project record documents and other similar final record data in compliance with this Section.
  2. Complete facility startup, testing, adjusting, balancing of systems and equipment, demonstrations, and instructions to Owner's operating and maintenance personnel as specified in compliance with this Section.
  3. Conduct inspection to establish basis for request that Work is substantially complete. Create comprehensive list (initial punch list) indicating items to be completed or corrected, value of incomplete or nonconforming Work, reason for being incomplete, and date of anticipated completion for each item. Include copy of list with request for Certificate of Substantial Completion.
  4. Obtain and submit releases enabling Owner's full, unrestricted use of Project and access to services and utilities. Include certificate of occupancy, operating certificates, and similar releases from authorities having jurisdiction and utility companies.
  5. Deliver tools, spare parts, extra stocks of material, and similar physical items to Owner.
  6. Make final change-over of locks eliminating construction master-key system and transmit keys directly to Owner. Advise Owner's personnel of change-over in security provisions.
  7. Discontinue or change over and remove temporary facilities and services from Project Site, along with construction tools, mockups, and similar elements.
  8. Perform final cleaning according to this Section.

B. Substantial Completion Inspection:

1. When Contractor considers Work to be substantially complete, submit to Engineer:
  - a. Written certificate that Work, or designated portion, is substantially complete.
  - b. List of items to be completed or corrected (initial punch list).
2. Within seven (7) days after receipt of request for Substantial Completion, Engineer will make inspection to determine whether Work or designated portion is substantially complete.
3. Should Engineer determine that Work is not substantially complete:
  - a. Engineer will promptly notify Contractor in writing, stating reasons for its opinion.
  - b. Contractor shall remedy deficiencies in Work and send second written request for Substantial Completion to Engineer.
  - c. Engineer will re-inspect Work.
  - d. Redo and Inspection of Deficient Work: Repeated until Work passes Engineer's inspection.
4. When Engineer finds that Work is substantially complete, Engineer will:
  - a. Prepare Certificate of Substantial Completion on EJCDC C-625 - Certificate of Substantial Completion, accompanied by Contractor's list of items to be completed or corrected as verified and amended by Engineer and Owner (final punch list).
  - b. Submit Certificate to Owner and Contractor for their written acceptance of responsibilities assigned to them in Certificate.
5. After Work is substantially complete, Contractor shall:
  - a. Allow Owner occupancy of Project under provisions stated in Certificate of Substantial Completion.
  - b. Complete Work listed for completion or correction within time period stipulated.
6. Owner will occupy all of the building as specified in Section 011000 - Summary.

C. Prerequisites for Final Completion: Complete following items before requesting final acceptance and final payment.

1. When Contractor considers Work to be complete, submit written certification that:
  - a. Contract Documents have been reviewed.
  - b. Work has been examined for compliance with Contract Documents.
  - c. Work has been completed according to Contract Documents.
  - d. Work is completed and ready for final inspection.
2. Submittals: Submit following:
  - a. Final punch list indicating all items have been completed or corrected.

- b. Final payment request with final releases and supporting documentation not previously submitted and accepted. Include certificates of insurance for products and completed operations where required.
  - c. Specified warranties, workmanship/maintenance bonds, maintenance agreements, and other similar documents.
  - d. Accounting statement for final changes to Contract Sum.
  - e. Contractor's affidavit of payment of debts and claims on AIA G706 - Contractor's Affidavit of Payment of Debts and Claims.
  - f. Contractor affidavit of Release and Lien Waiver.
  - g. Consent of surety to final payment.
3. Perform final cleaning for Contractor-soiled areas according to this Section.
- D. Final Completion Inspection:
- 1. Within seven (7) days after receipt of request for final inspection, Engineer will make inspection to determine whether Work or designated portion is complete.
  - 2. Should Engineer consider Work to be incomplete or defective:
    - a. Engineer will promptly notify Contractor in writing, listing incomplete or defective Work.
    - b. Contractor shall remedy stated deficiencies and send second written request to Engineer that Work is complete.
    - c. Engineer will re-inspect Work.
    - d. Redo and Inspection of Deficient Work: Repeated until Work passes Engineer's inspection.

#### 1.4 STARTING OF SYSTEMS

- A. Coordinate schedule for startup of various equipment and systems.
- B. Notify Engineer seven (7) days prior to startup of each item.
- C. Verify that each piece of equipment or system has been checked for proper lubrication, drive rotation, belt tension, control sequence, and for conditions which may cause damage.
- D. Verify that tests, meter readings, and electrical characteristics agree with those required by equipment or system manufacturer.
- E. Verify that wiring and support components for equipment are complete and tested.
- F. Execute startup under supervision of manufacturer's representative or Contractors' personnel according to manufacturer's instructions.
- G. When specified in individual Specification Sections, require manufacturer to provide authorized representative who will be present at Site to inspect, check, and approve equipment or system installation prior to startup and will supervise placing equipment or system in operation.
- H. Submit a written report according to Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures that equipment or system has been properly installed and is functioning correctly.

- I. Make all repairs/adjustments to equipment determined to be necessary based on observation of plant operation and/or directive of Engineer. All repairs/adjustments shall be in accordance with the applicable manufacturer's instructions. The Contractor's responsibility under this item shall continue until the plant has operated satisfactorily, without any significant interruption or failure for a minimum period of 30 consecutive days.

## 1.5 DEMONSTRATION AND INSTRUCTIONS

- A. Notify Engineer seven (7) calendar days prior to providing operation and maintenance instructions.
- B. The "Demonstration Period" shall be scheduled as a continuous block of time, up to two (2) weeks in length, during which representatives of Owner, the Engineer, and the Contractor, along with the manufacturer's field service representative (if manufacturer's field services are required) will inspect and test each piece of equipment or mechanical system provided under the project. The purpose of the inspection shall be to determine compliance with the specifications. The purpose of testing shall be to demonstrate proper operation in accordance with the Field Testing requirements of the individual specification sections.
  - 1. The Demonstration Period shall be scheduled concurrent with or following initial start-up of the equipment or mechanical system and concurrent with or preceding the instruction of Owner's personnel.
  - 2. The Demonstration Period shall be completed prior to the date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Demonstrate operation and maintenance of products to Owner's personnel including a representative of Engineer.
- D. Demonstrate Project equipment by a qualified manufacturer's representative who is knowledgeable about the Project.
- E. For equipment or systems requiring seasonal operation, perform demonstration for other season within six months.
- F. Video Recordings: Provide high-quality color video recordings of demonstration and instructional sessions. Engage commercial videographer to record sessions. Include classroom instructions, demonstrations, board diagrams, and other visual aids. Include menu navigation.
- G. Use operation and maintenance manuals as basis for instruction. Review contents of manual with Owner's personnel in detail to explain all aspects of operation and maintenance.
- H. Demonstrate startup, operation, control, adjustment, troubleshooting, servicing, maintenance, and shutdown of each item of equipment at scheduled time at equipment location.
- I. Prepare and insert additional data in operations and maintenance manuals when need for additional data becomes apparent during instruction.
- J. Required instruction time for each item of equipment and system is specified in individual Specification Sections.

1.6 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING

- A. Owner will appoint and employ services of independent firm to perform testing, adjusting, and balancing. Contractor shall pay for services from cash allowance specified in Section 012000 - Price and Payment Procedures.
- B. Reports will be submitted by independent firm to Architect/Engineer indicating observations and results of tests and indicating compliance or noncompliance with requirements of Contract Documents.

1.7 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

- A. Maintain on Site one set of the following record documents; record actual revisions to the Work:
  - 1. Drawings.
  - 2. Specifications.
  - 3. Addenda.
  - 4. Change Orders and other modifications to the Contract.
  - 5. Reviewed Shop Drawings, product data, and Samples.
  - 6. Manufacturer's instruction for assembly, installation, and adjusting.
- B. Ensure entries are complete and accurate, enabling future reference by Owner.
- C. Store record documents separate from documents used for construction.
- D. Record information concurrent with construction progress, not less than weekly.
- E. Specifications: Legibly mark and record, at each product Section, description of actual products installed, including the following:
  - 1. Manufacturer's name and product model and number.
  - 2. Product substitutions or alternates used.
  - 3. Changes made by Addenda and modifications.
- F. Record Drawings and Shop Drawings: Legibly mark each item to record actual construction as follows:
  - 1. Include Contract modifications such as Addenda, supplementary instructions, change directives, field orders, minor changes in the Work, and change orders.
  - 2. Include locations of concealed elements of the Work.
  - 3. Identify depth of buried utility lines and provide dimensions showing distances from permanent facility components that are parallel to utilities.
  - 4. Dimension ends, corners, and junctions of buried utilities to permanent facility components using triangulation.
  - 5. Identify and locate existing buried or concealed items encountered during Project.
  - 6. Measured depths of foundations in relation to finish first floor datum.
  - 7. Measured horizontal and vertical locations of underground utilities and appurtenances, referenced to permanent surface improvements.



8. Measured locations of internal utilities and appurtenances concealed in construction, referenced to visible and accessible features of the Work.
  9. Field changes of dimension and detail.
  10. Details not on original Drawings.
  11. Owner may request verification of record information. If the record information is correct as recorded, the cost of such verification shall be the responsibility of the Owner. If the record information is incorrect or missing, the cost of such verification shall be the responsibility of the Contractor.
- G. Submit marked-up paper copy documents to Engineer with claim for final Application for Payment.
- H. Submit PDF electronic files of marked-up documents to Engineer with claim for final Application for Payment.

#### 1.8 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

- A. Submit in PDF composite electronic indexed file.
- B. Submit data bound in 8-1/2 x 11-inch text pages, three D side ring binders with durable plastic covers.
- C. Prepare binder cover with printed title "OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE INSTRUCTIONS," title of Project, and subject matter of binder when multiple binders are required.
- D. Internally subdivide binder contents with permanent page dividers, logically organized as described below; with tab titling clearly printed under reinforced laminated plastic tabs.
- E. Drawings: Provide with reinforced punched binder tab. Bind in with text; fold larger drawings to size of text pages.
- F. Contents: Prepare table of contents for each volume, with each product or system description identified, typed on white paper, in three parts as follows:
  1. Part 1: Directory, listing names, addresses, and telephone numbers of Engineer, Contractor, Subcontractors, and major equipment suppliers.
  2. Part 2: Summary of important product data, including project number, order number, order date, complete list of equipment furnished, including quantity, model number, serial number optional items
  3. Part 3: Operation and maintenance instructions, arranged by system and subdivided by Specification Section. For each category, identify names, addresses, and telephone numbers of Subcontractors and suppliers. Include the following:
    - a. Significant design criteria.
    - b. List of equipment.
    - c. Parts list for each component.
    - d. Operating instructions.

- e. Maintenance instructions for equipment and systems.
  - f. Maintenance instructions for special finishes, including recommended cleaning methods and materials, and special precautions identifying detrimental agents.
  - g. Safety precautions to be taken when operating and maintaining or working near equipment.
4. Part 4: Project documents and certificates, including the following:
- a. Shop Drawings and product data.
  - b. Air and water balance reports.
  - c. Certificates.
  - d. Originals of warranties and bonds

G. Submit one (1) draft copy of completed volumes at least two (2) weeks prior to start-up of equipment. This copy will be reviewed and returned after the Demonstration Period, with Engineer comments. Revise content of all document sets as required prior to final submission.

H. Submit three (3) sets of revised final volumes within ten (10) days after final inspection.

#### 1.9 MANUAL FOR MATERIALS AND FINISHES

A. Submit two copies of preliminary draft or proposed formats and outlines of contents before start of Work. Engineer will review draft and return one copy with comments.

B. For equipment or component parts of equipment put into service during construction and operated by Owner, submit documents within ten days after acceptance.

C. Submit one copy of completed volumes 15 days prior to final inspection. Draft copy be reviewed and returned after final inspection, with Engineer comments. Revise content of document sets as required prior to final submission.

D. Submit three (3) sets of revised final volumes within ten days after final inspection.

E. Submit in PDF composite electronic indexed file of final manual within ten days after final inspection.

F. Building Products, Applied Materials, and Finishes: Include product data, with catalog number, size, composition, and color and texture designations. Include information for re-ordering custom-manufactured products.

G. Instructions for Care and Maintenance: Include manufacturer's recommendations for cleaning agents and methods, precautions against detrimental agents and methods, and recommended schedule for cleaning and maintenance.

H. Moisture Protection and Weather Exposed Products: Include product data listing applicable reference standards, chemical composition, and details of installation. Include recommendations for inspections, maintenance, and repair.

I. Additional Requirements: As specified in individual product Specification Sections.

- J. Include listing in table of contents for design data, with tabbed fly sheet and space for insertion of data.

#### 1.10 MANUAL FOR EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS

- A. For equipment, or component parts of equipment put into service during construction and operated by Owner, submit documents within ten days after acceptance.
- B. Submit one copy of completed volumes two (2) weeks prior to start-up of equipment and systems. Draft copy will be reviewed and returned after demonstration period with Engineer comments. Revise content of document sets as required prior to final submission.
- C. Submit three (3) sets of revised final volumes within ten (10) days after final inspection.
- D. Submit in PDF composite electronic indexed file of final manual within ten (10) days after final inspection.
- E. Each Item of Equipment and Each System: Include description of unit or system and component parts. Identify function, normal operating characteristics, and limiting conditions. Include performance curves, with engineering data and tests, and complete nomenclature and model number of replaceable parts.
- F. Panelboard Circuit Directories: Provide electrical service characteristics, controls, and communications, typed.
- G. Include color-coded wiring diagrams as installed.
- H. Operating Procedures: Include startup, break-in, and routine normal operating instructions and sequences. Include regulation, control, stopping, shutdown, and emergency instructions. Include summer, winter, and special operating instructions.
- I. Maintenance Requirements: Include routine procedures and guide for preventative maintenance and troubleshooting; disassembly, repair, and reassembly instructions; and alignment, adjusting, balancing, and checking instructions.
- J. Include servicing and lubrication schedule and list of lubricants required.
- K. Include manufacturer's printed operation and maintenance instructions.
- L. Include sequence of operation by controls manufacturer.
- M. Include original manufacturer's parts list, illustrations, assembly drawings, and diagrams required for maintenance.
- N. Include control diagrams by controls manufacturer as installed.
- O. Include Contractor's coordination drawings with color-coded piping diagrams as installed.
- P. Include charts of valve tag numbers, with location and function of each valve, keyed to flow and control diagrams.

- Q. Include list of original manufacturer's spare parts, current prices, and recommended quantities to be maintained in storage.
- R. Include test and balancing reports as specified in Section 014000 - Quality Requirements.
- S. Additional Requirements: As specified in individual product Specification Sections.
- T. Include listing in table of contents for design data with tabbed dividers and space for insertion of data.

#### 1.11 SPARE PARTS AND MAINTENANCE PRODUCTS

- A. Furnish spare parts, maintenance, and extra products in quantities specified in individual Specification Sections.
- B. Provide in unopened, durable, protective packaging suitable for long-term storage with clear, complete labeling on the outside of the package, identifying contents.
- C. Deliver to Project Site, obtain receipt prior to final payment.

#### 1.12 PRODUCT WARRANTIES AND PRODUCT BONDS

- A. Obtain warranties and bonds executed in duplicate by responsible Subcontractors, suppliers, and manufacturers within ten (10) days after completion of applicable item of Work.
- B. Execute and assemble transferable warranty documents and bonds from Subcontractors, suppliers, and manufacturers.
- C. Provide Table of Contents and assemble in three D side ring binder with durable plastic cover.
- D. Verify documents are in proper form, contain full information, and are notarized.
- E. Co-execute submittals when required.
- F. Submit prior to final Application for Payment.
- G. Time of Submittals:
  1. For equipment or component parts of equipment put into service during construction with Owner's permission, submit documents within ten (10) days after acceptance.
  2. Make other submittals within ten (10) days after date of Substantial Completion, prior to final Application for Payment.
  3. For items of Work for which acceptance is delayed beyond Substantial Completion, submit within ten (10) days after acceptance, listing date of acceptance as beginning of warranty or bond period.

### 1.13 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Furnish service and maintenance of components indicated in Specification Sections for one (1) year from the date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Examine system components at frequency consistent with reliable operation. Clean, adjust, and lubricate as required.
- C. Include systematic examination, adjustment, and lubrication of components. Repair or replace parts whenever required. Use parts produced by manufacturer of original component.
- D. Do not assign or transfer maintenance service to agent or Subcontractor without prior written consent of Owner.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS Not Used

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that existing Site conditions and substrate surfaces are acceptable for subsequent Work. Beginning new Work means acceptance of existing conditions.
- B. Verify that existing substrate is capable of structural support or attachment of new Work being applied or attached.
- C. Examine and verify specific conditions described in individual Specification Sections.
- D. Verify that utility services are available with correct characteristics and in correct locations.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrate surfaces prior to applying next material or substance according to manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Seal cracks or openings of substrate prior to applying next material or substance.
- C. Apply manufacturer-required or -recommended substrate primer, sealer, or conditioner prior to applying new material or substance in contact or bond.

#### 3.3 EXECUTION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's installation instructions, performing each step in sequence. Maintain one set of manufacturer's installation instructions at Project Site during installation and until completion of construction.

- B. When manufacturer's installation instructions conflict with Contract Documents, request clarification from Engineer before proceeding.
- C. Verify that field measurements are as indicated on approved Shop Drawings or as instructed by manufacturer.
- D. Secure products in place with positive anchorage devices designed and sized to withstand stresses, vibration, physical distortion, or disfigurement.
  - 1. Secure Work true to line and level and within specified tolerances, or if not specified, industry-recognized tolerances.
  - 2. Physically separate products in place, provide electrical insulation, or provide protective coatings to prevent galvanic action or corrosion between dissimilar metals.
  - 3. Exposed Joints: Provide uniform joint width and arrange to obtain best visual effect. Refer questionable visual-effect choices to Architect/Engineer for final decision.
- E. Allow for expansion of materials and building movement.
- F. Climatic Conditions and Project Status: Install each unit of Work under conditions to ensure best possible results in coordination with entire Project.
  - 1. Isolate each unit of Work from incompatible Work as necessary to prevent deterioration.
  - 2. Coordinate enclosure of Work with required inspections and tests to minimize necessity of uncovering Work for those purposes.
- G. Mounting Heights: Where not indicated, mount individual units of Work at industry recognized standard mounting heights for particular application indicated.
  - 1. Refer questionable mounting heights choices to Engineer for final decision.
  - 2. Elements Identified as Accessible to Handicapped: Comply with applicable codes and regulations.
- H. Adjust operating products and equipment to ensure smooth and unhindered operation.
- I. Clean and perform maintenance on installed Work as frequently as necessary through remainder of construction period. Lubricate operable components as recommended by manufacturer.

### 3.4 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. Employ skilled and experienced installers to perform cutting and patching.
- B. Submit written request in advance of cutting or altering elements affecting:
  - 1. Structural integrity of element.
  - 2. Integrity of weather-exposed or moisture-resistant elements.
  - 3. Efficiency, maintenance, or safety of element.
  - 4. Visual qualities of sight-exposed elements.
  - 5. Work of Owner or separate contractor.

- C. Execute cutting, fitting, and patching including excavation and fill to complete Work and to:
  - 1. Fit the several parts together, to integrate with other Work.
  - 2. Uncover Work to install or correct ill-timed Work.
  - 3. Remove and replace defective and nonconforming Work.
  - 4. Remove samples of installed Work for testing.
  - 5. Provide openings in elements of Work for penetrations of mechanical and electrical Work.
- D. Execute Work by methods to avoid damage to other Work and to provide proper surfaces to receive patching and finishing.
- E. Cut masonry and concrete materials using masonry saw or core drill.
- F. Restore Work with new products according to requirements of Contract Documents.
- G. Fit Work tight to pipes, sleeves, ducts, conduits, and other penetrations through surfaces.
- H. Maintain integrity of wall, ceiling, or floor construction; completely seal voids.
- I. At penetrations of fire-rated walls, partitions, ceiling, or floor construction, completely seal voids with fire-rated material to full thickness of penetrated element.
- J. Refinish surfaces to match adjacent finishes. For continuous surfaces, refinish to nearest intersection; for assembly, refinish entire unit.
- K. Identify hazardous substances or conditions exposed during the Work to Engineer for decision or remedy.

### 3.5 PROTECTING INSTALLED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Protect installed Work and provide special protection where specified in individual Specification Sections.
- B. Provide temporary and removable protection for installed products. Control activity in immediate Work area to prevent damage.
- C. Provide protective coverings at walls, projections, jambs, sills, and soffits of openings.
- D. Use durable sheet materials to protect finished floors, stairs, and other surfaces from traffic, dirt, wear, damage, or movement of heavy objects.
- E. Prohibit traffic or storage upon waterproofed or roofed surfaces. When traffic or activity is necessary, obtain recommendations for protection from waterproofing or roofing material manufacturer.
- F. Prohibit traffic from landscaped areas.

### 3.6 FINAL CLEANING

- A. Execute final cleaning prior to final Project assessment.
  - 1. Employ experienced personnel or professional cleaning firm.
- B. Clean interior and exterior glass and surfaces exposed to view; remove temporary labels, stains, and foreign substances; polish transparent and glossy surfaces; and vacuum carpeted and soft surfaces.
- C. Clean equipment and fixtures to sanitary condition with appropriate cleaning materials.
- D. Replace filters of operating equipment.
- E. Clean debris from roofs, gutters, downspouts, and drainage systems.
- F. Clean Site; sweep paved areas, rake clean landscaped surfaces.
- G. Remove waste and surplus materials, rubbish, and construction facilities from Site.

END OF SECTION



## SECTION 033000 - CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes cast-in-place concrete, including formwork, reinforcement, concrete materials, mixture design, placement procedures, and finishes. This includes, but is not limited to, the following items:
  - 1. Foundation walls.
  - 2. Slabs on grade.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 079000 "Joint Sealants" for requirements for sealants and primers.
  - 2. Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for drainage fill under slabs-on-grade.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of the following: blended hydraulic cement, fly ash, slag cement, other pozzolans, and silica fume; materials subject to compliance with requirements.
- B. W/C Ratio: The ratio by weight of water to cementitious materials.

#### 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Before submitting design mixtures, review concrete design mixture and examine procedures for ensuring quality of concrete materials. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with cast-in-place concrete to attend, including the following:
    - a. Contractor's superintendent.
    - b. Independent testing agency responsible for concrete design mixtures.
    - c. Ready-mix concrete manufacturer.
    - d. Concrete Subcontractor.
  - 2. Review special inspection and testing and inspecting agency procedures for field quality control, concrete repair procedures, and concrete protection.

## 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product, including but not limited to joint devices, attachment accessories, admixtures, and waterstops.
  - 1. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that products meet or exceed specified requirements.
  - 2. Manufacturer Instructions: Submit installation procedures and interfacing required with adjacent Work.
- B. Design Mixtures: For each concrete mixture. Submit concrete mix design for each concrete class or strength along with sufficient data to document the proportioning of the proposed concrete mix in accordance with ACI 301. Submit alternate design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.
  - 1. Identify mix ingredients and proportions, including admixtures.
  - 2. Identify chloride content of admixtures per ASTM C1218 and whether or not chlorides were added during manufacture.
  - 3. Indicate amounts of mixing water to be withheld for later addition at Project site.
  - 4. Submit proposed curing methods, including methods for hot and cold weather curing as applicable.
- C. Steel Reinforcement Shop Drawings: Placing Drawings that detail fabrication, bending, and placement.
  - 1. Include bar sizes, lengths, bar arrangement, spacings, splice locations, and quantities of reinforcing steel and welded wire fabric.
  - 2. Include bending and cutting schedules and diagrams.
  - 3. Indicate bar material, grade, and finish.
  - 4. Indicate minimum splices and laps, and any mechanical connections.
  - 5. Include spacing and support devices.
  - 6. Bar lists will not be reviewed. Only fully drawn and detailed placement drawings are acceptable. Prepare Shop Drawings according to ACI Detailing Manual (SP-66).
- D. Construction Joint Layout: Indicate proposed construction joints required to construct the structure.
  - 1. Location of construction joints is subject to approval of the Architect.

## 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- B. Material Certificates: For each of the following, signed by manufacturers:
  - 1. Cementitious materials.
  - 2. Admixtures.
  - 3. Form materials and form-release agents.
  - 4. Steel reinforcement and accessories.
  - 5. Bonding agents.

6. Vapor retarders.
  7. Repair materials.
- C. Material Test Reports: For the following, from a qualified testing agency:
1. Aggregates.
- D. Formwork Shop Drawings: Prepared by or under the supervision of a qualified professional engineer, detailing fabrication, assembly, and support of formwork.
1. Shoring and Reshoring: Indicate proposed schedule and sequence of stripping formwork, shoring removal, and reshoring installation and removal.
  2. Design, engineer and construct formwork, shoring and bracing for structural applications to conform to applicable code requirements.
- E. Field quality-control reports.
- F. Minutes of preinstallation conference.

#### 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of embedded utilities and components concealed from view in finished construction.

#### 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C 94 requirements for production facilities and equipment.
1. Manufacturer certified according to NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities."
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.
1. Personnel conducting field tests shall be qualified as ACI Concrete Field Testing Technician, Grade 1, according to ACI CP-1 or an equivalent certification program.
  2. Personnel performing laboratory tests shall be ACI-certified Concrete Strength Testing Technician and Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician, Grade I. Testing agency laboratory supervisor shall be an ACI-certified Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician, Grade II.

#### 1.9 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Testing Service: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform preconstruction testing on concrete mixtures.

## 1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Steel Reinforcement: Deliver, store, and handle steel reinforcement to prevent bending and damage.

## 1.11 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 306.1 and as follows. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.
  - 1. When average high and low temperature is expected to fall below 40 deg F for three successive days, maintain delivered concrete mixture temperature within the temperature range required by ACI 301.
  - 2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow. Do not place concrete on frozen subgrade or on subgrade containing frozen materials.
  - 3. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in mixture designs.
- B. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and as follows:
  - 1. Maintain concrete temperature below 90 deg F at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated to total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
  - 2. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade uniformly moist without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 CONCRETE, GENERAL

- A. ACI Publications: Comply with the following unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents:
  - 1. ACI 301.
  - 2. ACI 117.

### 2.2 FORM-FACING MATERIALS

- A. Rough-Formed Finished Concrete: Plywood, lumber, metal, or another approved material. Provide lumber dressed on at least two edges and one side for tight fit.
- B. Forms for Cylindrical Columns, Pedestals, and Supports: Metal, glass-fiber-reinforced plastic, paper, or fiber tubes that produce surfaces with gradual or abrupt irregularities not exceeding specified formwork surface class. Provide units with sufficient wall thickness to resist plastic concrete loads without detrimental deformation.

- C. Chamfer Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, 3/4 by 3/4 inch, minimum.
- D. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that does not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and does not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.
  - 1. Formulate form-release agent with rust inhibitor for steel form-facing materials.
- E. Form Ties: Factory-fabricated, removable or snap-off glass-fiber-reinforced plastic or metal form ties designed to resist lateral pressure of fresh concrete on forms and to prevent spalling of concrete on removal.
  - 1. Furnish units that leave no corrodible metal closer than 1 inch to the plane of exposed concrete surface.
  - 2. Furnish ties that, when removed, leave holes no larger than 1 inch in diameter in concrete surface.
  - 3. Furnish ties with integral water-barrier plates to walls indicated to receive dampproofing or waterproofing.

### 2.3 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615, Grade 60, deformed.
- B. Plain-Steel Welded-Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 1064, plain, fabricated from as-drawn steel wire into flat sheets.

### 2.4 REINFORCEMENT ACCESSORIES

- A. Expansion Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 615, Grade 60, plain-steel bars, cut true to length with ends square and free of burrs.
- B. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded-wire reinforcement in place. Manufacture bar supports from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete of greater compressive strength than concrete according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice," and as follows:
  - 1. For concrete surfaces exposed to view, where legs of wire bar supports contact forms, use CRSI Class 1 plastic-protected steel wire or CRSI Class 2 stainless-steel bar supports.

### 2.5 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type or class of cementitious material of the same brand from the same manufacturer's plant, obtain aggregate from single source, and obtain admixtures from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Cementitious Materials:
  - 1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I/II, gray.

2. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class F.
  3. Slag Cement: ASTM C 989, Grade 100 or 120.
  4. Silica Fume: ASTM C 1240, amorphous silica.
- C. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33, graded. Provide aggregates from a single source.
1. Class 4S coarse aggregate or better: for pavements, garage floors, exposed floors and porches.
  2. Class 3S coarse aggregate or better: for all other concrete.
  3. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size:
    - a. 4" Concrete Slabs – 1 inch nominal
    - b. Other Slab Thicknesses – 1-1/2" inches nominal
    - c. 6" Concrete Walls – 1 inch nominal
    - d. Other Wall Thicknesses, Foundations - 1-1/2" inches nominal
  4. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.
- D. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.
- E. Chemical Admixtures: Certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and that do not contribute water-soluble chloride ions exceeding those permitted in hardened concrete. Do not use calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride.
1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type A.
  2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type B.
  3. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type D.
  4. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type F.
  5. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type G.
  6. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017, Type II. For use in producing flowing concrete.
  7. Use of any additional admixtures must be compliant with ASTM C494 and approved in writing by the Engineer.
- F. Water: ASTM C 94, potable and not detrimental to concrete.

## 2.6 VAPOR RETARDERS

- A. Sheet Vapor Retarder: ASTM E 1745, Class A. Include manufacturer's recommended adhesive or pressure-sensitive tape for sealing joints and penetrations in vapor retarder.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Barrier-Bac; Intoplast Group; VB-250.
    - b. Henry; Moistop Ultra 10.
    - c. ISI Building Products; Viper VaporCheck II 10-mil.
    - d. Poly-America, L.P.; 10 Mil Husky Yellow Guard.
    - e. Raven Industries, Inc; VaporBlock VB10.
    - f. Reef Industries, Inc; Griffolyn 10 Mil.
    - g. Stego Industries, LLC; Stego Wrap Class A Vapor Retarder.
    - h. Tex-Trude; Xtreme 10 Mil, Class A.
    - i. W.R. Meadows, Inc; Perminator 10 mil.

## 2.7 CURING MATERIALS

- A. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. ChemMasters, Inc; Spray-Film.
    - b. Euclid Chemical Company (The); an RPM company; Eucobar.
    - c. Master Builders Solutions; MasterKure ER 50.
    - d. SpecChem, LLC; Spec Film.
    - e. W.R. Meadows, Inc; EVAPRE.
- B. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. when dry.
- C. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
- D. Water: Potable.

## 2.8 RELATED MATERIALS

- A. Expansion- and Isolation-Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber.
- B. Epoxy Bonding Primer: ASTM C 881, two-component epoxy resin, capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces, of class suitable for application temperature and of grade to suit requirements, and as follows:
  - 1. Type V, for bonding freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete in load-bearing applications.
  - 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Sika Corporation; Sikadur 32 Hi-mod.

## 2.9 CONCRETE MIXTURES, GENERAL

- A. Prepare design mixtures for each type and strength of concrete, proportioned on the basis of laboratory trial mixture or field test data, or both, according to ACI 301.
  - 1. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed mixture designs based on laboratory trial mixtures.
- B. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement in concrete as follows:
  - 1. Fly Ash: 15 to 25 percent.
  - 2. Combined Fly Ash and Pozzolan: 25 percent maximum.
  - 3. Slag Cement: 40 percent maximum.

4. Combined Fly Ash or Pozzolan and Slag Cement: 50 percent portland cement minimum, with neither fly ash nor pozzolan exceeding 25 percent.
  5. Silica Fume: 10 percent maximum.
  6. Combined Fly Ash, Pozzolans, and Silica Fume: 35 percent maximum with fly ash or pozzolans not exceeding 25 percent and silica fume not exceeding 10 percent.
  7. Combined Fly Ash or Pozzolans, Slag Cement, and Silica Fume: 50 percent with fly ash or pozzolans not exceeding 25 percent and silica fume not exceeding 10 percent.
- C. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to the following percent by weight of cement. Test per ASTM C1218.
1. Concrete Pavement, Sidewalks or Garage Slabs: 0.15%.
  2. All Other Exterior Concrete: 0.30%.
- D. Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Use water-reducing high-range water-reducing or plasticizing admixture in concrete, as required, for placement and workability.
  2. Use water-reducing and -retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.
  3. Use water-reducing admixture in pumped concrete, concrete for heavy-use industrial slabs and parking structure slabs, concrete required to be watertight, and concrete with a w/c ratio below 0.50.

## 2.10 CONCRETE MIXTURES FOR BUILDING ELEMENTS

- A. Footings and Foundation Walls: Normal-weight concrete.
1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 3000 psi at 28 days.
  2. Maximum W/C Ratio: 0.50.
  3. Slump Limit: 10 inches for concrete with verified slump of 2 to 4 inches before adding high-range water-reducing admixture or plasticizing admixture, plus or minus 1 inch.
  4. Air Content:
    - a. 5.5 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-1/2-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.
    - b. 6 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-inch or 3/4-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.
- B. Slabs-on-Grade: Normal-weight concrete.
1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 4000 psi at 28 days.
  2. Maximum W/C Ratio: 0.44.
  1. Minimum Cementitious Materials Content:
    - a. 520 lb/cu. yd. for 1-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.
    - b. 540 lb/cu. yd. for 3/4-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.
  2. Slump Limit: 8 inches for concrete with verified slump of 2 to 4 inches before adding high-range water-reducing admixture or plasticizing admixture, plus or minus 1 inch.
  3. Air Content:
    - a. 5.5 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-1/2-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.



- b. 6 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-inch or 3/4-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.

## 2.11 FABRICATING REINFORCEMENT

- A. Fabricate steel reinforcement according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."

## 2.12 CONCRETE MIXING

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete according to ASTM C 94 and ASTM C 1116, and furnish batch ticket information.
  - 1. When air temperature is between 85 and 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 FORMWORK INSTALLATION

- A. Construct all formwork to achieve concrete shape, line and dimension as indicated on Drawings.
- B. Design, erect, shore, brace, and maintain formwork, according to ACI 301, to support vertical, lateral, static, and dynamic loads, and construction loads that might be applied, until structure can support such loads.
- C. Construct formwork so concrete members and structures are of size, shape, alignment, elevation, and position indicated, within tolerance limits of ACI 117.
- D. Limit concrete surface irregularities, designated by ACI 347 as abrupt or gradual, as follows:
  - 1. Class A, 1/8 inch for smooth-formed finished surfaces.
  - 2. Class C, 1/2 inch for rough-formed finished surfaces.
- E. Construct forms tight enough to prevent loss of concrete mortar.
- F. Construct forms for easy removal without hammering or prying against concrete surfaces. Provide crush or wrecking plates where stripping may damage cast-concrete surfaces. Provide top forms for inclined surfaces steeper than 1.5 horizontal to 1 vertical.
  - 1. Install keyways, reglets, recesses, and the like, for easy removal.
  - 2. Do not use rust-stained steel form-facing material.
- G. Set edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed strips for slabs to achieve required elevations and slopes in finished concrete surfaces. Provide and secure units to support screed strips; use strike-off templates or compacting-type screeds.

- H. Provide temporary openings for cleanouts and inspection ports where interior area of formwork is inaccessible. Close openings with panels tightly fitted to forms and securely braced to prevent loss of concrete mortar. Locate temporary openings in forms at inconspicuous locations.
- I. Chamfer exterior corners and edges of permanently exposed concrete.
- J. Form openings, chases, offsets, sinkages, keyways, reglets, blocking, screeds, and bulkheads required in the Work. Determine sizes and locations from trades providing such items.
- K. Clean forms and adjacent surfaces to receive concrete. Remove chips, wood, sawdust, dirt, and other debris just before placing concrete.
- L. Retighten forms and bracing before placing concrete, as required, to prevent mortar leaks and maintain proper alignment.
- M. Coat contact surfaces of forms with form-release agent, according to manufacturer's written instructions, before placing reinforcement.

### 3.2 EMBEDDED ITEM INSTALLATION

- A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - 1. Install anchor rods, accurately located, to elevations required and complying with tolerances in Section 7.5 of AISC 303.

### 3.3 REMOVING AND REUSING FORMS

- A. General: Formwork for sides of beams, walls, columns, and similar parts of the Work that does not support weight of concrete may be removed after cumulatively curing at not less than 50 deg F for 24 hours after placing concrete. Concrete has to be hard enough to not be damaged by form-removal operations, and curing and protection operations need to be maintained.
  - 1. Leave formwork for beam soffits, joists, slabs, and other structural elements that support weight of concrete in place until concrete has achieved at least 70 percent of its 28-day design compressive strength.
  - 2. Remove forms only if shores have been arranged to permit removal of forms without loosening or disturbing shores.
- B. Clean and repair surfaces of forms to be reused in the Work. Split, frayed, delaminated, or otherwise damaged form-facing material are not acceptable for exposed surfaces. Apply new form-release agent.
- C. When forms are reused, clean surfaces, remove fins and laitance, and tighten to close joints. Align and secure joints to avoid offsets. Do not use patched forms for exposed concrete surfaces unless approved by Architect.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF VAPOR RETARDERS ON GRADE

- A. General: Place, protect, and repair sheet vapor retarder according to ASTM E 1643 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Install vapor retarders over prepared grade. Lap joints a minimum of 12 inches and seal with manufacturer's recommended tape. Install second layer over pathways to equipment.
- C. Extend vapor retarder over footings and seal to foundation wall or grade beam with manufacturer's recommended tape.
- D. Seal around penetrations such as utilities and columns in order to create a monolithic, airtight membrane at grade surface, perimeter, and all vertical penetrations.
- E. Protect vapor retarders from damage until concealed by permanent construction.

### 3.5 STEEL REINFORCEMENT INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.
  - 1. Do not cut or puncture vapor retarder. Repair damage and reseal vapor retarder before placing concrete.
- B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, and other foreign materials that reduce bond to concrete.
- C. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement. Locate and support reinforcement with bar supports to maintain minimum concrete cover. Do not tack weld crossing reinforcing bars.
- D. Set wire ties with ends directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.
- E. Install welded-wire reinforcement in longest practicable lengths on bar supports spaced to minimize sagging. Lap edges and ends of adjoining sheets at least one mesh spacing. Offset laps of adjoining sheet widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction. Lace overlaps with wire.

### 3.6 JOINTS

- A. General: Construct joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.
- B. Contraction Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of concrete thickness as follows:
  - 1. Grooved Joints: Form contraction joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint to a radius of 1/8 inch. Repeat grooving of contraction joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate groover tool marks on concrete surfaces.

2. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch-wide joints into concrete when cutting action does not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before concrete develops random contraction cracks.
- C. Isolation Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: After removing formwork, install joint-filler strips at slab junctions with vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and other locations, as indicated.
1. Extend joint-filler strips full width and depth of joint, terminating flush with finished concrete surface unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Terminate full-width joint-filler strips not less than 1/2 inch or more than 1 inch below finished concrete surface where joint sealants, specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants," are indicated.
  3. Install joint-filler strips in lengths as long as practicable. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip sections together.

### 3.7 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of formwork, reinforcement, and embedded items is complete and that required inspections are completed.
- B. Do not add water to concrete during delivery, at Project site, or during placement unless approved by Engineer. Water added must be accounted for in mix design or additional cementitious material must be added to maintain the w/c ratio specified.
1. Do not add water to concrete after adding high-range water-reducing admixtures to mixture.
- C. Deposit concrete continuously in one layer or in horizontal layers of such thickness that no new concrete is placed on concrete that has hardened enough to cause seams or planes of weakness. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as indicated. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.
1. Deposit concrete in horizontal layers of depth not to exceed formwork design pressures and in a manner to avoid inclined construction joints.
  2. Consolidate placed concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment according to ACI 301.
  3. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete inside forms. Insert and withdraw vibrators vertically at uniformly spaced locations to rapidly penetrate placed layer and at least 6 inches into preceding layer. Do not insert vibrators into lower layers of concrete that have begun to lose plasticity. At each insertion, limit duration of vibration to time necessary to consolidate concrete and complete embedment of reinforcement and other embedded items without causing mixture constituents to segregate.
- D. Deposit and consolidate concrete for floors and slabs in a continuous operation, within limits of construction joints, until placement of a panel or section is complete.
1. Consolidate concrete during placement operations, so concrete is thoroughly worked around reinforcement and other embedded items and into corners.
  2. Maintain reinforcement in position on chairs during concrete placement.

3. Screed slab surfaces with a straightedge and strike off to correct elevations.
4. Slope surfaces uniformly to drains where required.
5. Begin initial floating using bull floats or darbies to form a uniform and open-textured surface plane, before excess bleedwater appears on the surface. Do not further disturb slab surfaces before starting finishing operations.

### 3.8 FINISHING FORMED SURFACES

- A. Rough-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material with tie holes and defects repaired and patched. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.
  1. Apply to concrete surfaces not exposed to public view.
- B. Smooth-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material, arranged in an orderly and symmetrical manner with a minimum of seams. Repair and patch tie holes and defects. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.
  1. Apply to concrete surfaces exposed to public view.
- C. Related Unformed Surfaces: At tops of walls, horizontal offsets, and similar unformed surfaces adjacent to formed surfaces, strike off smooth and finish with a texture matching adjacent formed surfaces. Continue final surface treatment of formed surfaces uniformly across adjacent unformed surfaces unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.9 FINISHING FLOORS AND SLABS

- A. General: Comply with ACI 302.1R recommendations for screeding, restraighening, and finishing operations for concrete surfaces. Do not wet concrete surfaces.
- B. Float Finish: Consolidate surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power-driven floats. Restraighten, cut down high spots, and fill low spots. Repeat float passes and restraighening until surface is left with a uniform, smooth, granular texture.
  1. Apply float finish to surfaces indicated to receive trowel finish or broom finish.
- C. Broom Finish: Apply a broom finish to exterior concrete platforms, steps, ramps, and elsewhere as indicated.
  1. Immediately after float finishing, slightly roughen trafficked surface by brooming with fiber-bristle broom perpendicular to main traffic route. Coordinate required final finish with Architect before application.

### 3.10 MISCELLANEOUS CONCRETE ITEM INSTALLATION

- A. Filling In: Fill in holes and openings left in concrete structures after work of other trades is in place unless otherwise indicated. Mix, place, and cure concrete, as specified, to blend with in-place construction. Provide other miscellaneous concrete filling indicated or required to complete the Work.

### 3.11 CONCRETE PROTECTING AND CURING

- A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection and ACI 301 and ACI 305 for hot-weather protection during curing.
- B. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to unformed concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete, but before float finishing.
- C. Formed Surfaces: Cure formed concrete surfaces, including underside of beams, supported slabs, and other similar surfaces. If forms remain during curing period, moist cure after loosening forms. If removing forms before end of curing period, continue curing for remainder of curing period.
- D. Unformed Surfaces: Begin curing immediately after finishing concrete. Cure unformed surfaces, including floors and slabs, concrete floor toppings, and other surfaces.
- E. Cure concrete according to ACI 308.1, by one or a combination of the following methods:
  - 1. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days with the following materials:
    - a. Water.
    - b. Continuous water-fog spray.
    - c. Absorptive cover, water saturated, and kept continuously wet. Cover concrete surfaces and edges with 12-inch lap over adjacent absorptive covers.
  - 2. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Cure for not less than seven days. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period, using cover material and waterproof tape.
    - a. Cure concrete surfaces to receive floor coverings with either a moisture-retaining cover or a curing compound that the manufacturer certifies does not interfere with bonding of floor covering used on Project.
  - 3. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

- a. Removal: After curing period has elapsed, remove curing compound without damaging concrete surfaces by method recommended by curing compound manufacturer unless manufacturer certifies curing compound does not interfere with bonding of floor covering used on Project.

### 3.12 JOINT FILLING

- A. Prepare, clean, and install joint filler according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Defer joint filling until concrete has aged at least one month(s). Do not fill joints until construction traffic has permanently ceased.
- B. Remove dirt, debris, saw cuttings, curing compounds, and sealers from joints; leave contact faces of joints clean and dry.
- C. Install semirigid joint filler full depth in saw-cut joints and at least 2 inches deep in formed joints. Overfill joint and trim joint filler flush with top of joint after hardening.

### 3.13 CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS

- A. Defective Concrete: Repair and patch defective areas when approved by Architect. Remove and replace concrete that cannot be repaired and patched to Architect's approval.
- B. Patching Mortar: Mix dry-pack patching mortar, consisting of 1 part portland cement to 2-1/2 parts fine aggregate passing a No. 16 sieve, using only enough water for handling and placing.
- C. Repairing Formed Surfaces: Surface defects include color and texture irregularities, cracks, spalls, air bubbles, honeycombs, rock pockets, fins and other projections on the surface, and stains and other discolorations that cannot be removed by cleaning.
  - 1. Immediately after form removal, cut out honeycombs, rock pockets, and voids more than 1/2 inch in any dimension to solid concrete. Limit cut depth to 3/4 inch. Make edges of cuts perpendicular to concrete surface. Clean, dampen with water, and brush-coat holes and voids with bonding agent. Fill and compact with patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Fill form-tie voids with patching mortar or cone plugs secured in place with bonding agent.
  - 2. Repair defects on surfaces exposed to view by blending white portland cement and standard portland cement so that, when dry, patching mortar matches surrounding color. Patch a test area at inconspicuous locations to verify mixture and color match before proceeding with patching. Compact mortar in place and strike off slightly higher than surrounding surface.
  - 3. Repair defects on concealed formed surfaces that affect concrete's durability and structural performance as determined by Architect.
- D. Repairing Unformed Surfaces: Test unformed surfaces, such as floors and slabs, for finish and verify surface tolerances specified for each surface. Correct low and high areas. Test surfaces sloped to drain for trueness of slope and smoothness; use a sloped template.

1. Repair finished surfaces containing defects. Surface defects include spalls, popouts, honeycombs, rock pockets, crazing and cracks in excess of 0.01 inch wide or that penetrate to reinforcement or completely through unreinforced sections regardless of width, and other objectionable conditions.
  2. After concrete has cured at least 14 days, correct high areas by grinding.
  3. Correct localized low areas during or immediately after completing surface finishing operations by cutting out low areas and replacing with patching mortar. Finish repaired areas to blend into adjacent concrete.
  4. Correct other low areas scheduled to receive floor coverings with a repair underlayment. Prepare, mix, and apply repair underlayment and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface. Feather edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
  5. Correct other low areas scheduled to remain exposed with a repair topping. Cut out low areas to ensure a minimum repair topping depth of 1/4 inch to match adjacent floor elevations. Prepare, mix, and apply repair topping and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface.
  6. Repair defective areas, except random cracks and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter, by cutting out and replacing with fresh concrete. Remove defective areas with clean, square cuts and expose steel reinforcement with at least a 3/4-inch clearance all around. Dampen concrete surfaces in contact with patching concrete and apply bonding agent. Mix patching concrete of same materials and mixture as original concrete, except without coarse aggregate. Place, compact, and finish to blend with adjacent finished concrete. Cure in same manner as adjacent concrete.
  7. Repair random cracks and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter with patching mortar. Groove top of cracks and cut out holes to sound concrete and clean off dust, dirt, and loose particles. Dampen cleaned concrete surfaces and apply bonding agent. Place patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Compact patching mortar and finish to match adjacent concrete. Keep patched area continuously moist for at least 72 hours.
- E. Perform structural repairs of concrete, subject to Architect's approval, using epoxy adhesive and patching mortar.
- F. Repair materials and installation not specified above may be used, subject to Architect's approval.

### 3.14 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Engage a special inspector and qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform tests and inspections and to submit reports.
- C. Inspections:
  1. Steel reinforcement placement.
  2. Steel reinforcement welding.
  3. Headed bolts and studs.
  4. Verification of use of required design mixture.
  5. Concrete placement, including conveying and depositing.



6. Curing procedures and maintenance of curing temperature.
  7. Verification of concrete strength before removal of shores and forms from beams and slabs.
- D. Concrete Tests: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C 172 shall be performed according to the following requirements:
1. Testing Frequency: Obtain one composite sample for each day's pour of each concrete mixture exceeding 5 cu. yd., but less than 25 cu. yd., plus one set for each additional 50 cu. yd. or fraction thereof.
  2. Testing Frequency: Obtain at least one composite sample for each 100 cu. yd. or fraction thereof of each concrete mixture placed each day.
    - a. When frequency of testing provides fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
  3. Slump: ASTM C 143; one test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
  4. Air Content: ASTM C 231, pressure method, for normal-weight concrete; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
  5. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F and below or 80 deg F and above, and one test for each composite sample.
  6. Unit Weight: ASTM C 567, fresh unit weight of structural lightweight concrete; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
  7. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31.
    - a. Cast and laboratory cure two sets of two standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
    - b. Cast and field cure two sets of two standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
  8. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39; test one set of two laboratory-cured specimens at 7 days and one set of two specimens at 28 days.
    - a. Test one set of two field-cured specimens at 7 days and one set of two specimens at 28 days.
    - b. A compressive-strength test shall be the average compressive strength from a set of two specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at age indicated.
  9. When strength of field-cured cylinders is less than 85 percent of companion laboratory-cured cylinders, Contractor shall evaluate operations and provide corrective procedures for protecting and curing in-place concrete.
  10. Strength of each concrete mixture will be satisfactory if every average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi.

11. Test results shall be reported in writing to Architect, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 48 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mixture proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.
12. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Architect but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.
13. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect. Testing and inspecting agency may conduct tests to determine adequacy of concrete by cored cylinders complying with ASTM C 42 or by other methods as directed by Architect.
14. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
15. Correct deficiencies in the Work that test reports and inspections indicate do not comply with the Contract Documents.

END OF SECTION 033000

## SECTION 042000 - UNIT MASONRY

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Concrete masonry units.
  - 2. Mortar and grout.
- B. Products Installed but not Furnished under This Section:
  - 1. Cavity wall insulation.
- C. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 072100 "Thermal Insulation" for cavity wall insulation.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CMU(s): Concrete masonry unit(s).
- B. Reinforced Masonry: Masonry containing reinforcing steel in grouted cells.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Certificates: For each type and size of the following:
  - 1. Masonry units.
    - a. Include data on material properties.
    - b. For brick, include size-variation data verifying that actual range of sizes falls within specified tolerances.
    - c. For exposed brick, include test report for efflorescence according to ASTM C 67.
    - d. For masonry units, include data and calculations establishing average net-area compressive strength of units.
  - 2. Cementitious materials. Include name of manufacturer, brand name, and type.

3. Mortar admixtures.
4. Preblended, dry mortar mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
5. Grout mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
6. Reinforcing bars.
7. Joint reinforcement.
8. Anchors, ties, and metal accessories.

- B. Statement of Compressive Strength of Masonry: For each combination of masonry unit type and mortar type, provide statement of average net-area compressive strength of masonry units, mortar type, and resulting net-area compressive strength of masonry determined according to TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store masonry units on elevated platforms in a dry location. If units are not stored in an enclosed location, cover tops and sides of stacks with waterproof sheeting, securely tied. If units become wet, do not install until they are dry.
- B. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
- C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.
- D. Deliver preblended, dry mortar mix in moisture-resistant containers. Store preblended, dry mortar mix in delivery containers on elevated platforms in a dry location or in covered weatherproof dispensing silos.
- E. Store masonry accessories, including metal items, to prevent corrosion and accumulation of dirt and oil.

## 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. No calcium chloride or other chloride containing admixture shall be added to the mortar.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide unit masonry that develops indicated net-area compressive strengths at 28 days.
  1. Determine net-area compressive strength of masonry from average net-area compressive strengths of masonry units and mortar types (unit-strength method) according to TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.
  2. Determine net-area compressive strength of masonry by testing masonry prisms according to ASTM C 1314.

## 2.2 UNIT MASONRY, GENERAL

- A. Masonry Standard: Comply with TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6, except as modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.

## 2.3 CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS

- A. Shapes: Provide shapes indicated and as follows, with exposed surfaces matching exposed faces of adjacent units unless otherwise indicated.
- B. CMUs: ASTM C 90.
  - 1. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 2000 psi and a minimum of 1800 psi for any single unit, unless noted otherwise.
  - 1. Density Classification: Normal weight.
  - 2. Exposed Faces: Provide color and texture matching the adjacent existing masonry..

## 2.4 MORTAR AND GROUT MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce mortar color indicated.
  - 1. Alkali content shall not be more than 0.1 percent when tested according to ASTM C 114.
- B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.
- C. Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of portland cement and hydrated lime containing no other ingredients.
- D. Masonry Cement: ASTM C 91.
- E. Mortar Cement: ASTM C 1329.
- F. Mortar Pigments: Natural and synthetic iron oxides and chromium oxides, compounded for use in mortar mixes and complying with ASTM C 979. Use only pigments with a record of satisfactory performance in masonry mortar.
- G. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C 144.
  - 1. For mortar that is exposed to view, use washed aggregate consisting of natural sand or crushed stone.
  - 2. For joints less than 1/4 inch thick, use aggregate graded with 100 percent passing the No. 16 sieve.
  - 3. White-Mortar Aggregates: Natural white sand or crushed white stone.
  - 4. Colored-Mortar Aggregates: Natural sand or crushed stone of color necessary to produce required mortar color.
- H. Aggregate for Grout: ASTM C 404.

- A. Admixtures:
  - 1. If admixtures are necessary, consult manufacturer and evaluate available products. Calcium chloride is not permitted.
- B. Cold-Weather Admixture: Nonchloride, noncorrosive, accelerating admixture complying with ASTM C 494, Type C, and recommended by manufacturer for use in masonry mortar of composition indicated.
- C. Water: Potable.

## 2.5 MORTAR AND GROUT MIXES

- A. General: Do not use admixtures, including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.
- B. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 270. Provide the following types of mortar for applications stated unless another type is indicated or needed to provide required compressive strength of masonry.
  - 1. For masonry below grade or in contact with earth, use Type S.
  - 2. For reinforced masonry, use Type M.
- C. Grout for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 476.
  - 1. Use grout of type indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, of type (fine or coarse) that will comply with TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6 for dimensions of grout spaces and pour height.
  - 2. Proportion grout in accordance with ASTM C 476, Table 1 or paragraph 4.2.2 for specified 28-day compressive strength indicated, but not less than 3000 psi.
  - 3. Provide grout with a slump of 8 to 11 inches as measured according to ASTM C 143.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Thickness: Build cavity and composite walls and other masonry construction to full thickness shown.

- B. Use full-size units without cutting if possible. If cutting is required to provide a continuous pattern or to fit adjoining construction, cut units with motor-driven saws; provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Allow units to dry before laying unless wetting of units is specified. Install cut units with cut surfaces and, where possible, cut edges concealed.
- C. Matching Existing Masonry: Match coursing, bonding, color, and texture of existing masonry.

### 3.3 MASONRY WASTE DISPOSAL

- A. Salvageable Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, excess masonry materials are Contractor's property. At completion of unit masonry work, remove from Project site.
- B. Waste Disposal as Fill Material: Dispose of clean masonry waste, including excess or soil-contaminated sand, waste mortar, and broken masonry units, by crushing and mixing with fill material as fill is placed.
  - 1. Crush masonry waste to less than 4 inches in each dimension.
  - 2. Mix masonry waste with at least two parts of specified fill material for each part of masonry waste. Fill material is specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
  - 3. Do not dispose of masonry waste as fill within 18 inches of finished grade.
- C. Masonry Waste Recycling: Return broken CMUs not used as fill to manufacturer for recycling.
- D. Excess Masonry Waste: Remove excess clean masonry waste that cannot be used as fill, as described above or recycled, and other masonry waste, and legally dispose of off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 042000

## SECTION 051200 - STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Structural steel.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Structural Steel: Elements of the structural frame indicated on Drawings and as described in AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication of structural-steel components.
  1. Include details of cuts, connections, splices, camber, holes, and other pertinent data.
  2. Include embedment Drawings.
  3. Indicate welds by standard AWS symbols, distinguishing between shop and field welds, and show size, length, and type of each weld. Show backing bars that are to be removed and supplemental fillet welds where backing bars are to remain.
  4. Indicate type, size, and length of bolts, distinguishing between shop and field bolts. Identify pretensioned and slip-critical, high-strength bolted connections.
- C. Welding Procedure Specifications (WPSs) and Procedure Qualification Records (PQRs): Provide according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for each welded joint, including the following:
- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For structural-steel connections indicated to comply with design loads, include analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.



- B. Mill test reports for structural steel, including chemical and physical properties.
- C. Product Test Reports: For the following:
  - 1. Bolts, nuts, and washers including mechanical properties and chemical analysis.
  - 2. Direct-tension indicators.
  - 3. Tension-control, high-strength, bolt-nut-washer assemblies.
  - 4. Shear stud connectors.
  - 5. Shop primers.
  - 6. Nonshrink grout.
- D. Survey of existing conditions.
- E. Source quality-control reports.
- F. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Comply with applicable provisions of the following specifications and documents:
  - 1. AISC 303.
  - 2. AISC 341 and AISC 341s1.
  - 3. AISC 360.
  - 4. RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials to permit easy access for inspection and identification. Keep steel members off ground and spaced by using pallets, dunnage, or other supports and spacers. Protect steel members and packaged materials from corrosion and deterioration.
  - 1. Do not store materials on structure in a manner that might cause distortion, damage, or overload to members or supporting structures. Repair or replace damaged materials or structures as directed.
- B. Store fasteners in a protected place in sealed containers with manufacturer's labels intact.
  - 1. Fasteners may be repackaged provided Owner's testing and inspecting agency observes repackaging and seals containers.
  - 2. Clean and relubricate bolts and nuts that become dry or rusty before use.
  - 3. Comply with manufacturers' written recommendations for cleaning and lubricating ASTM F 1852 fasteners and for retesting fasteners after lubrication.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Connections: Provide details of simple shear connections required by the Contract Documents to be selected or completed by structural-steel fabricator to withstand loads indicated and comply with other information and restrictions indicated.
  - 1. Select and complete connections using schematic details indicated and AISC 360.
  - 2. Use Allowable Stress Design; data are given at service-load level.

### 2.2 STRUCTURAL-STEEL MATERIALS

- A. W-Shapes: ASTM A 992/A 992M.
- B. Channels, Angles, S-Shapes: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- C. Plate and Bar: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- D. Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections: ASTM A 500/A 500M, Grade C, structural tubing.
- E. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E or Type S, Grade B.
  - 1. Weight Class: Standard.
  - 2. Finish: Black except where indicated to be galvanized.
- F. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS requirements.

### 2.3 BOLTS, CONNECTORS, AND ANCHORS

- A. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 325, Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A 563, Grade C, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436, Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers; all with plain finish.
  - 1. Direct-Tension Indicators: ASTM F 959, Type 325, compressible-washer type with plain finish.
- B. Shear Connectors: ASTM A 108, Grades 1015 through 1020, headed-stud type, cold-finished carbon steel; AWS D1.1/D1.1M, Type B.
- C. Unheaded Anchor Rods: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36.
  - 1. Configuration: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Nuts: ASTM A 563 heavy-hex carbon steel.
  - 3. Washers: ASTM F 436, Type 1, hardened carbon steel.
  - 4. Finish: Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C.
- D. Threaded Rods: ASTM A 36/A 36M.

1. Nuts: ASTM A 563 heavy-hex carbon steel.
2. Washers: ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon steel.
3. Finish: Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C.

#### 2.4 PRIMER

- A. Primer: Fabricator's standard lead- and chromate-free, nonasphaltic, rust-inhibiting primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with any topcoat.
- B. Galvanizing Repair Paint: ASTM A 780/A 780M.

#### 2.5 GROUT

- A. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive and nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

#### 2.6 FABRICATION

- A. Structural Steel: Fabricate and assemble in shop to greatest extent possible. Fabricate according to AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges," and to AISC 360.
  1. Camber structural-steel members where indicated.
  2. Fabricate beams with rolling camber up.
  3. Identify high-strength structural steel according to ASTM A 6/A 6M and maintain markings until structural steel has been erected.
  4. Mark and match-mark materials for field assembly.
  5. Complete structural-steel assemblies, including welding of units, before starting shop-priming operations.
- B. Thermal Cutting: Perform thermal cutting by machine to greatest extent possible.
  1. Plane thermally cut edges to be welded to comply with requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Bolt Holes: Cut, drill, or punch standard bolt holes perpendicular to metal surfaces.
- D. Finishing: Accurately finish ends of columns and other members transmitting bearing loads.
- E. Cleaning: Clean and prepare steel surfaces that are to remain unpainted according to SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning."
- F. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Use automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Holes: Provide holes required for securing other work to structural steel and for other work to pass through steel members.

1. Cut, drill, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces. Do not thermally cut bolt holes or enlarge holes by burning.
2. Baseplate Holes: Cut, drill, mechanically thermal cut, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces.
3. Weld threaded nuts to framing and other specialty items indicated to receive other work.

## 2.7 SHOP CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Shop install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
  1. Joint Type: Pretensioned.
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.
  1. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances in AISC 303 for mill material.

## 2.8 SHOP PRIMING

- A. Shop prime steel surfaces except the following:
  1. Surfaces embedded in concrete or mortar. Extend priming of partially embedded members to a depth of 2 inches.
  2. Surfaces to be field welded.
  3. Surfaces of high-strength bolted, slip-critical connections.
  4. Surfaces to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials (applied fireproofing).
  5. Galvanized surfaces.
  6. Surfaces enclosed in interior construction.
- B. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to be painted. Remove loose rust and mill scale and spatter, slag, or flux deposits. Prepare surfaces according to the following specifications and standards:
  1. SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning."
- C. Priming: Immediately after surface preparation, apply primer according to manufacturer's written instructions and at rate recommended by SSPC to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils. Use priming methods that result in full coverage of joints, corners, edges, and exposed surfaces.
  1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.
  2. Apply two coats of shop paint to surfaces that are inaccessible after assembly or erection. Change color of second coat to distinguish it from first.

## 2.9 GALVANIZING

- A. Hot-Dip Galvanized Finish: Apply zinc coating by the hot-dip process to structural steel according to ASTM A 123/A 123M.
  - 1. Fill vent and drain holes that are exposed in the finished Work unless they function as weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.
  - 2. Galvanize lintels attached to structural-steel frame and located in exterior walls.

## 2.10 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform shop tests and inspections.
  - 1. Provide testing agency with access to places where structural-steel work is being fabricated or produced to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Bolted Connections: Inspect shop-bolted connections according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."
- C. Welded Connections: Visually inspect shop-welded connections according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- D. In addition to visual inspection, test and inspect shop-welded shear connectors according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M for stud welding and as follows:
  - 1. Perform bend tests if visual inspections reveal either a less-than-continuous 360-degree flash or welding repairs to any shear connector.
  - 2. Conduct tests according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M on additional shear connectors if weld fracture occurs on shear connectors already tested.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify, with certified steel erector present, elevations of concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments for compliance with requirements.
  - 1. Prepare a certified survey of existing conditions. Include bearing surfaces, anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments showing dimensions, locations, angles, and elevations.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Provide temporary shores, guys, braces, and other supports during erection to keep structural steel secure, plumb, and in alignment against temporary construction loads and loads equal in intensity to design loads. Remove temporary supports when permanent structural steel, connections, and bracing are in place unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Do not remove temporary shoring supporting composite deck construction until cast-in-place concrete has attained its design compressive strength.

### 3.3 ERECTION

- A. Set structural steel accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and according to AISC 303 and AISC 360.
- B. Maintain erection tolerances of structural steel within AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
- C. Align and adjust various members that form part of complete frame or structure before permanently fastening. Before assembly, clean bearing surfaces and other surfaces that are in permanent contact with members. Perform necessary adjustments to compensate for discrepancies in elevations and alignment.
  - 1. Level and plumb individual members of structure.
  - 2. Make allowances for difference between temperature at time of erection and mean temperature when structure is completed and in service.
- D. Splice members only where indicated.
- E. Do not use thermal cutting during erection.
- F. Do not enlarge unfair holes in members by burning or using drift pins. Ream holes that must be enlarged to admit bolts.
- G. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Use automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.4 FIELD CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
  - 1. Joint Type: Pretensioned.
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.

1. Comply with AISC 303 and AISC 360 for bearing, alignment, adequacy of temporary connections, and removal of paint on surfaces adjacent to field welds.
2. Remove backing bars or runoff tabs, back gouge, and grind steel smooth.
3. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances in AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges," for mill material.

### 3.5 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean areas where galvanizing is damaged or missing and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780/A 780M.
- B. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean exposed areas where primer is damaged or missing and paint with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
  1. Clean and prepare surfaces by SSPC-SP 2 hand-tool cleaning or SSPC-SP 3 power-tool cleaning.
- C. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting are specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
- D. Touchup Priming: Cleaning and touchup priming are specified in Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."

END OF SECTION 051200

## SECTION 061053 - MISCELLANEOUS ROUGH CARPENTRY

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Non-loadbearing framing with dimension lumber.
  - 2. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
  - 3. Wood blocking, cants, and nailers.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Boards or Strips: Lumber of less than 2 inches nominal size in least dimension.
- B. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of 2 inches nominal or greater size but less than 5 inches nominal size in least dimension.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
  - 1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
  - 2. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Evaluation Reports: For the following, from ICC-ES:
  - 1. Preservative-treated wood.
  - 2. Power-driven fasteners.
  - 3. Post-installed anchors.
  - 4. Metal framing anchors.



## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack lumber flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect lumber from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 WOOD PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, provide lumber that complies with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review. Provide lumber graded by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.
  - 1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
  - 2. Dress lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Lumber: 15 percent unless otherwise indicated.

### 2.2 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED MATERIALS

- A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWPA U1; Use Category UC2 for interior construction not in contact with ground, Use Category UC3b for exterior construction not in contact with ground, and Use Category UC4a for items in contact with ground.
  - 1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium. Do not use inorganic boron (SBX) for sill plates.
- B. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Do not use material that is warped or does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
- C. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
- D. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings, and the following:
  - 1. Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
  - 2. Wood sills, sleepers, blocking, furring, stripping, and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete.
  - 3. Wood framing and furring attached directly to the interior of below-grade exterior masonry or concrete walls.
  - 4. Wood framing members that are less than 18 inches above the ground in crawlspaces or unexcavated areas.
  - 5. Wood floor plates that are installed over concrete slabs-on-grade.

## 2.3 DIMENSION LUMBER FRAMING

- A. Non-Load-Bearing Interior Partitions: Construction or No. 2 grade of any of the following species:
1. Spruce-pine-fir; NLGA.
  2. Hem-fir; WCLIB or WWPA.
  3. Northern species; NLGA.

## 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER

- A. General: Provide miscellaneous lumber indicated and lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:
1. Blocking.
  2. Nailers.
  3. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
  4. Cants.
- B. Dimension Lumber Items: Construction or No. 2 grade lumber of any of the following species:
1. Mixed southern pine or southern pine; SPIB.
  2. Spruce-pine-fir; NLGA.
  3. Hem-fir; WCLIB or WWPA.
  1. Northern species; NLGA.
- A. Concealed Boards: 15 percent maximum moisture content of any of the following species and grades:
1. Mixed southern pine or southern pine, No. 2 grade; SPIB.
  2. Hem-fir or hem-fir (north), Standard or No. 3 Common grade; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
  3. Spruce-pine-fir (south) or spruce-pine-fir, Construction or No. 2 Common grade; NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
  4. Northern species, No. 2 Common grade; NLGA.
- B. For blocking not used for attachment of other construction, Utility, Stud, or No. 3 grade lumber of any species may be used provided that it is cut and selected to eliminate defects that will interfere with its attachment and purpose.
- C. For blocking and nailers used for attachment of other construction, select and cut lumber to eliminate knots and other defects that will interfere with attachment of other work.
- D. For furring strips for installing plywood or hardboard paneling, select boards with no knots capable of producing bent-over nails and damage to paneling.

## 2.5 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.

1. Where rough carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, pressure-preservative treated, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153.
- B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.
- C. Power-Driven Fasteners: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC70.
- D. Post-Installed Anchors: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC01 or ICC-ES AC58 for masonry attachment. For concrete, based on ICC-ES AC193 or ICC-ES AC308.
1. Material: Carbon-steel components, zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5.
  2. Material: Stainless steel with bolts and nuts complying with ASTM F 593 and ASTM F 594, Alloy Group 1 or 2.

## 2.6 METAL FRAMING ANCHORS

- A. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: Hot-dip, zinc-coated steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653, G60 coating designation.
1. Use for interior locations unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Hot-Dip, Heavy-Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653; Structural Steel (SS), high-strength low-alloy steel Type A (HSLAS Type A), or high-strength low-alloy steel Type B (HSLAS Type B); G185 coating designation; and not less than 0.036 inch thick.
1. Use for wood-preservative-treated lumber and where indicated.
- C. Manufacturers:
1. Alpine Engineered Products, Inc.
  2. Cleveland Steel Specialty Co.
  3. Harlen Metal Products, Inc.
  4. KC Metals Products, Inc.
  5. Silver Metal Products, Inc.
  6. Simpson Strong-Tie Company, Inc.
  7. Southeastern Metals Manufacturing Co., Inc.
  8. United Steel Products Company, Inc.
- D. Research/Evaluation Reports: Provide products acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and for which model code research/evaluation reports exist that show compliance of metal framing anchors, for application indicated, with building code in effect for Project.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Framing Standard: Comply with AF&PA's WCD 1, "Details for Conventional Wood Frame Construction," unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Set rough carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit rough carpentry accurately to other construction. Locate nailers, blocking, grounds, and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.
- C. Install metal framing anchors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Install fasteners through each fastener hole.
- D. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.
  - 1. Provide metal clips for fastening gypsum board or lath at corners and intersections where framing or blocking does not provide a surface for fastening edges of panels. Space clips not more than 16 inches o.c.
- E. Sort and select lumber so that natural characteristics do not interfere with installation or with fastening other materials to lumber. Do not use materials with defects that interfere with function of member or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.
- F. Comply with AWWPA M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.
  - 1. Use inorganic boron for items that are continuously protected from liquid water.
  - 2. Use copper naphthenate for items not continuously protected from liquid water.
- G. Securely attach carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
  - 1. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's International Building Code.
  - 2. ICC-ES evaluation report for fastener.
- H. Use steel common nails unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood. Drive nails snug but do not countersink nail heads unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.2 WOOD BLOCKING AND NAILER INSTALLATION

- A. Install where indicated and where required for screeding or attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.

- B. Attach items to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Provide permanent grounds of dressed, pressure-preservative-treated, key-beveled lumber not less than 1-1/2 inches wide and of thickness required to bring face of ground to exact thickness of finish material. Remove temporary grounds when no longer required.

### 3.3 PROTECTION

- A. Protect wood that has been treated with inorganic boron (SBX) from weather. If, despite protection, inorganic boron-treated wood becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.
- B. Protect miscellaneous rough carpentry from weather. If, despite protection, miscellaneous rough carpentry becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

END OF SECTION 061053

## SECTION 072100 - THERMAL INSULATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  1. Polyisocyanurate foam-plastic board.
  2. Spray-applied cellulosic insulation.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- B. Evaluation Reports: For foam-plastic insulation, from ICC-ES.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration due to moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store inside and in a dry location. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
- B. Protect foam-plastic board insulation as follows:
  1. Do not expose to sunlight except to necessary extent for period of installation and concealment.
  2. Protect against ignition at all times. Do not deliver foam-plastic board materials to Project site until just before installation time.
  3. Quickly complete installation and concealment of foam-plastic board insulation in each area of construction.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 POLYISOCYANURATE FOAM-PLASTIC BOARD

- A. Polyisocyanurate Board, Foil Faced: ASTM C 1289, foil faced, Type I, Class 1 or 2.
  - 1. Fire Propagation Characteristics: Passes NFPA 285 testing as part of an approved assembly.

### 2.2 SPRAY-APPLIED CELLULOSIC INSULATION

- A. Self-Supported, Spray-Applied Cellulosic Insulation: ASTM C 1149, Type II (materials containing a dry adhesive activated by water during installation; intended only for enclosed or covered applications), chemically treated for flame-resistance, processing, and handling characteristics.

### 2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Insulation for Miscellaneous Voids:
  - 1. Glass-Fiber Insulation: ASTM C 764, Type II, loose fill; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 5, per ASTM E 84.
  - 2. Spray Polyurethane Foam Insulation: ASTM C 1029, Type II, closed cell, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E 84.
- B. Adhesive for Bonding Insulation: Product compatible with insulation and air and water barrier materials, and with demonstrated capability to bond insulation securely to substrates without damaging insulation and substrates.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates of substances that are harmful to insulation, including removing projections capable of puncturing insulation or vapor retarders, or that interfere with insulation attachment.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and applications.
- B. Install insulation that is undamaged, dry, and unsoiled and that has not been left exposed to ice, rain, or snow at any time.
- C. Extend insulation to envelop entire area to be insulated. Fit tightly around obstructions and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections that interfere with placement.

- D. Provide sizes to fit applications and selected from manufacturer's standard thicknesses, widths, and lengths. Apply single layer of insulation units unless multiple layers are otherwise shown or required to make up total thickness or to achieve R-value.

### 3.3 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed insulation from damage due to harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings or enclosures where insulation is subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.

END OF SECTION 072100



## SECTION 079200 - JOINT SEALANTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Joint sealants.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product.

#### 1.4 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:
  - 1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.
  - 2. When joint substrates are wet.
  - 3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
  - 4. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 JOINT SEALANTS, GENERAL

- A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backings, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.

#### 2.2 URETHANE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Urethane, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, nonsag, nontraffic-use, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. ER Systems; an ITW Company; Pacific Polymers Elasto-Thane 230 MP.
  - b. Everkem Diversified Products, Inc.; AcuraSeal 50 Year Acrylic Urethane Caulk.
  - c. Pecora Corporation; Dynatrol I-XL.
  - d. Permathane®/Acryl-R®; ITW Polymers Sealants North America; Permathane SM7108.
  - e. Polymeric Systems, Inc; Flexiprene 1000.
  - f. Sherwin-Williams Company (The); Stampede-1.
  - g. Tremco Incorporated; Dymonic.

### 2.3 JOINT-SEALANT BACKING

- A. Sealant Backing Material, General: Nonstaining; compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and approved for applications indicated by sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Adfast.
    - b. Alcot Plastics Ltd.
    - c. Construction Foam Products; a division of Nomaco, Inc.
    - d. Master Builders Solutions.
- B. Cylindrical Sealant Backings: ASTM C 1330, Type C (closed-cell material with a surface skin), as approved in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer for joint application indicated, and of size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance.
- C. Bond-Breaker Tape: Polyethylene tape or other plastic tape recommended by sealant manufacturer for preventing sealant from adhering to rigid, inflexible joint-filler materials or joint surfaces at back of joint. Provide self-adhesive tape where applicable.

### 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Primer: Material recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.
- B. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant backing materials, free of oily residues or other substances capable of staining or harming joint substrates and adjacent nonporous surfaces in any way, and formulated to promote optimum adhesion of sealants to joint substrates.
- C. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material compatible with joint sealants and surfaces adjacent to joints.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:
  - 1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant, including dust, paints (except for permanent, protective coatings tested and approved for sealant adhesion and compatibility by sealant manufacturer), old joint sealants, oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents, water, surface dirt, and frost.
  - 2. Clean porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimum bond with joint sealants. Remove loose particles remaining after cleaning operations above by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air. Porous joint substrates include the following:
    - a. Concrete.
    - b. Masonry.
    - c. Unglazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
  - 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
  - 4. Clean nonporous joint substrate surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants. Nonporous joint substrates include the following:
    - a. Metal.
    - b. Glass.
    - c. Glazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer or as indicated by preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant or primer with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

- A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
- C. Install sealant backings of kind indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
  - 1. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
  - 2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
  - 3. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application, and replace them with dry materials.
- D. Install bond-breaker tape behind sealants where sealant backings are not used between sealants and backs of joints.
- E. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
  - 1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
  - 2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
  - 3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
- F. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified in subparagraphs below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.
  - 1. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
  - 2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
  - 3. Provide concave joint profile per Figure 8A in ASTM C 1193 unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

### 3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage

or deterioration occurs, cut out, remove, and repair damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

### 3.6 JOINT-SEALANT SCHEDULE

- A. JS-A Application: Interior and exterior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces subject to movement.
  - 1. Joint Locations:
    - a. Construction joints in cast-in-place concrete.
    - b. Control, expansion, and soft joints in masonry.
    - c. Joints between concrete and other materials.
    - d. Joints between door, window or louver frames and other materials.
    - e. Other non-traffic bearing joints for which no other sealant is indicated.
  - 2. Joint Sealant: Urethane, S, NS, 25, NT.

END OF SECTION 079200

## SECTION 095123 - ACOUSTICAL TILE CEILINGS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, 6 inches in size.

#### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For finishes to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Acoustical Ceiling Units: Full-size tiles equal to 2 percent of quantity installed.
  - 2. Suspension-System Components: Quantity of each concealed grid and exposed component equal to 2 percent of quantity installed.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver acoustical tiles, suspension-system components, and accessories to Project site and store them in a fully enclosed, conditioned space where they will be protected against damage from moisture, humidity, temperature extremes, direct sunlight, surface contamination, and other causes.
- B. Before installing acoustical tiles, permit them to reach room temperature and a stabilized moisture content.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations:

1. Suspended Acoustical Tile Ceilings: Obtain each type of acoustical ceiling tile and its suspension system from single source from single manufacturer.
2. Directly Attached Acoustical Tile Ceilings: Obtain each type of acoustical ceiling tile from single source from single manufacturer.

## 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  1. Flame-Spread Index: Class A according to ASTM E1264.
  2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.
- B. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with ASTM E119; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  1. Indicate design designations from UL or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.

## 2.3 ACOUSTICAL TILES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
  2. Certainteed; SAINT-GOBAIN.
  3. USG Corporation.
- B. Acoustical Tile Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard tiles of configuration indicated that comply with ASTM E1264 classifications as designated by type, form, pattern, acoustical rating, and light reflectance unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Color: To match existing ceiling tiles.
- D. Ceiling Attenuation Class (CAC): Not less than 35.
- E. Noise Reduction Coefficient (NRC): Not less than 0.70.
- F. Articulation Class (AC): Not less than 190.

## 2.4 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEM

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  1. Armstrong Ceiling & Wall Solutions.

- B. Metal Suspension-System Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard, direct-hung, fully concealed, metal suspension system and accessories of type, structural classification, and finish indicated that complies with applicable requirements in ASTM C635/C635M.

## 2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Attachment Devices: Size for five times the design load indicated in ASTM C635/C635M, Table 1, "Direct Hung," unless otherwise indicated. Comply with seismic design requirements.
  - 1. Anchors in Concrete: Anchors of type and material indicated below, with holes or loops for attaching hangers of type indicated and with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to five times that imposed by ceiling construction, as determined by testing according to ASTM E488/E488M or ASTM E1512 as applicable, conducted by a qualified testing and inspecting agency.
    - a. Corrosion Protection: Carbon-steel components zinc plated according to ASTM B633, Class SC 1 (mild) service condition.
    - b. Corrosion Protection: Stainless-steel components complying with ASTM F593 and ASTM F594, Group 1 Alloy 304 or 316.
  - 2. Power-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or other accessory devices for attaching hangers of type indicated, and with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 10 times that imposed by ceiling construction, as determined by testing according to ASTM E1190, conducted by a qualified testing and inspecting agency.
- B. Wire Hangers, Braces, and Ties: Provide wires as follows:
  - 1. Zinc-Coated, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A641/A641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper.
  - 2. Stainless-Steel Wire: ASTM A580/A580M, Type 304, nonmagnetic.
  - 3. Size: Wire diameter sufficient for its stress at three times hanger design load (ASTM C635/C635M, Table 1, "Direct Hung") will be less than yield stress of wire, but not less than 0.106-inch-diameter wire.
- C. Hanger Rods: Mild steel, zinc coated or protected with rust-inhibitive paint.
- D. Flat Hangers: Mild steel, zinc coated or protected with rust-inhibitive paint.
- E. Angle Hangers: Angles with legs not less than 7/8 inch wide; formed with 0.04-inch-thick, galvanized-steel sheet complying with ASTM A653/A653M, G90 coating designation; with bolted connections and 5/16-inch-diameter bolts.

## 2.6 METAL EDGE MOLDINGS AND TRIM

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
  - 2. Certainteed; SAINT-GOBAIN.



3. Fry Reglet Corporation.

- B. Roll-Formed, Sheet-Metal Edge Moldings and Trim: Type and profile indicated or, if not indicated, manufacturer's standard moldings for edges and penetrations complying with seismic design requirements; formed from sheet metal of same material, finish, and color as that used for of suspension-system runners.
  - 1. For circular penetrations of ceiling, provide edge moldings fabricated to diameter required to fit penetration exactly.
  - 2. Finish: To match existing.
- C. Extruded-Aluminum Edge Moldings and Trim: Where indicated, provide manufacturer's extruded-aluminum edge moldings and trim of profile indicated or referenced by manufacturer's designations, including splice plates, corner pieces, and attachment and other clips, complying with seismic design requirements.
  - 1. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: Minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils. Comply with ASTM C635/C635M and coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.

2.7 ACOUSTICAL SEALANT

- A. Acoustical Sealant: As specified in Section 079219 "Acoustical Joint Sealants."

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Acoustical Tile Adhesive: Type recommended in writing by acoustical tile manufacturer, bearing UL label for Class 0-25 flame spread.
- B. Staples: 5/16-inch-long, divergent-point staples.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, including structural framing and substrates to which acoustical tile ceilings attach or abut, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements specified in this and other Sections that affect ceiling installation and anchorage and for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine acoustical tiles before installation. Reject acoustical tiles that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Testing Substrates: Before adhesively bonding tiles to wet-placed substrates such as cast-in-place concrete or plaster, test and verify that moisture level is below tile manufacturer's recommended limits.
- B. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of acoustical tiles to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid using less-than-half-width tiles at borders unless otherwise indicated, and comply with layout shown on reflected ceiling plans.
- C. Layout openings for penetrations centered on the penetrating items.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF SUSPENDED ACOUSTICAL TILE CEILINGS

- A. Install suspended acoustical tile ceilings according to ASTM C636/C636M and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Suspend ceiling hangers from building's structural members and as follows:
  - 1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structure or of ceiling suspension system.
  - 2. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions; offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
  - 3. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with location of hangers at spacings required to support standard suspension-system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
  - 4. Secure wire hangers to ceiling suspension members and to supports above with a minimum of three tight turns. Connect hangers directly to structure or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for substrate and that will not deteriorate or otherwise fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
  - 5. Secure flat, angle, channel, and rod hangers to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for both the structure to which hangers are attached and the type of hanger involved. Install hangers in a manner that will not cause them to deteriorate or fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
  - 6. Do not support ceilings directly from permanent metal forms or floor deck. Fasten hangers to cast-in-place hanger inserts, postinstalled mechanical or adhesive anchors, or power-actuated fasteners that extend through forms into concrete.
  - 7. When steel framing does not permit installation of hanger wires at spacing required, install carrying channels or other supplemental support for attachment of hanger wires.
  - 8. Do not attach hangers to steel deck tabs.
  - 9. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck. Attach hangers to structural members.
  - 10. Space hangers not more than 48 inches o.c. along each member supported directly from hangers unless otherwise indicated; provide hangers not more than 8 inches from ends of each member.
  - 11. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced standards.

- C. Secure bracing wires to ceiling suspension members and to supports with a minimum of four tight turns. Suspend bracing from building's structural members as required for hangers without attaching to permanent metal forms, steel deck, or steel deck tabs. Fasten bracing wires into concrete with cast-in-place or postinstalled anchors.
- D. Install edge moldings and trim of type indicated at perimeter of acoustical ceiling area and where necessary to conceal edges of acoustical tiles.
  - 1. Apply acoustical sealant in a continuous ribbon concealed on back of vertical legs of moldings before they are installed.
  - 2. Screw attach moldings to substrate at intervals not more than 16 inches o.c. and not more than 3 inches from ends. Miter corners accurately and connect securely.
  - 3. Do not use exposed fasteners, including pop rivets, on moldings and trim.
- E. Install suspension-system runners so they are square and securely interlocked with one another. Remove and replace dented, bent, or kinked members.
- F. Arrange directionally patterned acoustical tiles as follows:
  - 1. To match existing reflected ceiling.
- G. Install acoustical tiles in coordination with suspension system and exposed moldings and trim. Place splines or suspension-system flanges into kerfed edges of tiles so tile-to-tile joints are interlocked.
  - 1. Fit adjoining tiles to form flush, tight joints. Scribe and cut tiles for accurate fit at borders and around penetrations through ceiling.
  - 2. Hold tile field in compression by inserting leaf-type, spring-steel spacers between tiles and moldings, spaced 12 inches o.c.
  - 3. Protect lighting fixtures and air ducts according to requirements indicated for fire-resistance-rated assembly.

### 3.4 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Suspended Ceilings: Install main and cross runners level to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12 feet, non-cumulative.
- B. Moldings and Trim: Install moldings and trim to substrate and level with ceiling suspension system to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12 feet, non-cumulative.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections of completed installations of acoustical tile ceiling hangers and anchors and fasteners in successive stages and when installation of ceiling suspension systems on each floor has reached 20 percent completion, but no tiles have been installed. Do not proceed with installations of acoustical tile ceiling hangers for the next area until test results for previously completed installations of acoustical tile ceiling hangers show compliance with requirements.

1. Within each test area, testing agency will select one of every 10 power-actuated fasteners and postinstalled anchors used to attach hangers to concrete and will test them for 200 lbf of tension; it will also select one of every two postinstalled anchors used to attach bracing wires to concrete and will test them for 440 lbf of tension.
  2. When testing discovers fasteners and anchors that do not comply with requirements, testing agency will test those anchors not previously tested until 20 pass consecutively and then will resume initial testing frequency.
- B. Acoustical tile ceiling hangers, anchors, and fasteners will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Clean exposed surfaces of acoustical tile ceilings, including trim and edge moldings. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and touchup of minor finish damage.
- B. Remove and replace tiles and other ceiling components that cannot be successfully cleaned and repaired to permanently eliminate evidence of damage.

END OF SECTION 095123

## SECTION 230517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR HVAC PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop collar.
- B. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A53/A53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, anticorrosion coated [or] with plain ends.

#### 2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Description:
  1. Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
  2. Designed to form a hydrostatic seal of 20 psig minimum.
  3. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
  4. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
  5. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, ASTM B633 of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

## 2.3 GROUT

- A. Description: Nonshrink, for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.
- B. Standard: ASTM C1107/C1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## 2.4 SILICONE SEALANTS

- A. Silicone, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant, ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
  - 1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
  - 1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
  - 2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
    - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
  - 3. Using grout or silicone sealant, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
  - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
  - 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.

- E. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping and fill materials as specified in other sections.

### 3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

### 3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Use grout or silicone sealant to seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Leak Test: After allowing for a full cure, test sleeves and sleeve seals for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
- B. Sleeves and sleeve seals will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
  - 1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade:
    - a. Cast-iron pipe sleeves and Sleeve-seal fittings.
  - 2. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:

- a. Cast-iron pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
  - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
- 3. Interior Partitions:
  - a. Steel pipe sleeves

END OF SECTION



## SECTION 230518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR HVAC PIPING

### 1.1 GENERAL

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. One-Piece, Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.

### 2.2 FLOOR PLATES

- A. Floor Plates: One-piece, Cast brass.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
- C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.
- D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
  - 1. New Piping: One-piece, floor plate.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Using new materials, replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 230519 - METERS AND GAGES FOR HVAC PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of meter and gage.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For meters and gages to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 LIQUID-IN-GLASS THERMOMETERS

- A. Metal-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Flo Fab Inc.
    - b. Palmer Wahl Instrumentation Group.
    - c. Terice, H. O. Co.
    - d. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
  - 2. Standard: ASME B40.200.
  - 3. Case: Cast aluminum.
  - 4. Case Form: Adjustable angle.
  - 5. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.

6. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F.
7. Stem: Aluminum and of length to suit installation.
  - a. Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
  - b. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
8. Connector: 1-1/4 inches, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
9. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

## 2.2 DUCT-THERMOMETER MOUNTING BRACKETS

- A. Description: Flanged bracket with screw holes, for attachment to air duct and made to hold thermometer stem.

## 2.3 THERMOWELLS

- A. Thermowells:
  1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
  2. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type fitting made for insertion in piping tee fitting.
  3. Material for Use with Copper Tubing: CNR or CUNI.
  4. Material for Use with Steel Piping: CSA.
  5. Type: Stepped shank unless straight or tapered shank is indicated.
  6. External Threads: NPS 1/2, NPS 3/4, or NPS 1, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
  7. Internal Threads: 1/2, 3/4, and 1 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
  8. Bore: Diameter required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
  9. Insertion Length: Length required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
  10. Lagging Extension: Include on thermowells for insulated piping and tubing.
  11. Bushings: For converting size of thermowell's internal screw thread to size of thermometer connection.
- B. Heat-Transfer Medium: Mixture of graphite and glycerin.

## 2.4 DIAL-TYPE PRESSURE GAGES

- A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Flo Fab Inc.
    - b. Palmer Wahl Instrumentation Group.
    - c. Treice, H. O. Co.
    - d. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
  2. Standard: ASME B40.100.
  3. Case: Liquid-filled; cast aluminum or drawn steel.

4. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
5. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
6. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
7. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi.
8. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
9. Window: Glass.
10. Ring: Metal.
11. Accuracy: Grade B, plus or minus 2 percent of middle half of scale range.

## 2.5 GAGE ATTACHMENTS

- A. Snubbers: ASME B40.100, brass; with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and surge-dampening device. Include extension for use on insulated piping.
- B. Siphons: Loop-shaped section of brass pipe with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 pipe threads.
- C. Valves: Brass or stainless-steel needle, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.

## 2.6 TEST PLUGS

- A. Description: Test-station fitting made for insertion in piping tee fitting.
- B. Body: Brass or stainless steel with core inserts and gasketed and threaded cap. Include extended stem on units to be installed in insulated piping.
- C. Thread Size: NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
- D. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Rating: 500 psig at 200 deg F.
- E. Core Inserts: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic and EPDM self-sealing rubber.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install thermowells with socket extending one-third of pipe diameter and in vertical position in piping tees.
- B. Install thermowells of sizes required to match thermometer connectors. Include bushings if required to match sizes.
- C. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping.
- D. Fill thermowells with heat-transfer medium.
- E. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions.
- F. Install duct-thermometer mounting brackets in walls of ducts. Attach to duct with screws.

- G. Install direct-mounted pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at the most readable position.
- H. Install valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gage for fluids (except steam).
- I. Install test plugs in piping tees.
- J. Install thermometers in the following locations:
  - 1. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic zone.
  - 2. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic boiler.
  - 3. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic coil.
  - 4. Outside-, return-, supply-, and mixed-air ducts.
- K. Install pressure gages in the following locations:
  - 1. Discharge of each pressure-reducing valve.
  - 2. Suction and discharge of each pump.

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow space for service and maintenance of meters, gages, machines, and equipment.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, calibrate meters according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

### 3.4 THERMOMETER SCHEDULE

### 3.5 THERMOMETER SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- A. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 20 to 240 deg F.
- B. Scale Range for Air Ducts: Minus 40 to plus 110 deg F.

### 3.6 PRESSURE-GAGE SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- A. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 100 psi.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 230523.12 - BALL VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve.

#### 1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
  - 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
  - 2. Protect threads, flange faces, and weld ends.
  - 3. Set ball valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
  - 1. Maintain valve end protection.
  - 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher-than-ambient-dew-point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use operating handles or stems as lifting or rigging points.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance:
  - 1. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded-end valves.
  - 2. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
  - 3. ASME B16.5 for flanges on steel valves.
  - 4. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
  - 5. ASME B16.18 for solder-joint connections.
  - 6. ASME B31.1 for power piping valves.
  - 7. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.

- C. Bronze valves shall be made with dezincification-resistant materials. Bronze valves made with copper alloy (brass) containing more than 15 percent zinc are not permitted.
- D. Refer to HVAC valve schedule articles for applications of valves.
- E. Valve Pressure-Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- F. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Valve Actuator Types:
  - 1. Gear Actuator: For quarter-turn valves NPS 4 and larger.
  - 2. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves smaller than NPS 4.
- H. Valves in Insulated Piping:
  - 1. Include 2-inch stem extensions.
  - 2. Extended operating handle of nonthermal-conductive material, and protective sleeves that allow operation of valves without breaking the vapor seals or disturbing insulation.
  - 3. Memory stops that are fully adjustable after insulation is applied.
- I. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

## 2.2 BRONZE BALL VALVES

- A. Bronze Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Full Port and Bronze or Brass Trim, Threaded Ends:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    - b. Crane; a Crane brand.
    - c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - d. NIBCO INC.
    - e. WATTS.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
    - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
    - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
    - d. Body Design: Two piece.
    - e. Body Material: Bronze.
    - f. Ends: Threaded.
    - g. Seats: PTFE.
    - h. Stem: Bronze.
    - i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
    - j. Port: Full.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

### 3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

### 3.3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are unavailable, the same types of valves with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.
- B. Select valves with the following end connections:
  - 1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option or press-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
  - 2. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends.
  - 3. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.

END OF SECTION



## SECTION 230523.13 - BUTTERFLY VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve.

#### 1.2 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
  - 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
  - 2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
  - 3. Set butterfly valves closed or slightly open.
- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
  - 1. Maintain valve end protection.
  - 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher-than-ambient-dew-point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.

#### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. ASME Compliance:
  - 1. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
  - 2. ASME B16.5 for flanges on steel valves.
  - 3. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
  - 4. ASME B31.1 for power piping valves.
  - 5. ASME B31.9 for building services valves.
- B. AWWA Compliance: Comply with AWWA C606 for grooved-end connections.
- C. Valve Pressure-Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.

- D. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Valve Actuator Types:
  - 1. Gear Actuator: For valves NPS 8 and larger.
  - 2. Hand Lever: For valves NPS 6 and smaller.
  - 3. Chainwheel: Device for attachment to gear, stem, or other actuator of size and with chain for mounting height, according to "Installation of Valves" Article.
- F. Valves in Insulated Piping: Provide with 2-inch extended neck stems.

## 2.3 IRON, SINGLE-FLANGE (LUG-TYPE) BUTTERFLY VALVES

### A. Iron, Single-Flange (Lug-Type) Butterfly Valves with Aluminum-Bronze Disc:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Apollo Valves; a part of Aalberts Integrated Piping Systems.
  - b. Bray International, Inc.
  - c. Hammond Valve.
  - d. Jamesbury; Metso.
  - e. Jenkins Valves; a Crane Co. brand.
- 2. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
- 3. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
- 4. Body Design: Single flange (lug type), suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
- 5. Body Material: ASTM A126, cast iron or ASTM A536, ductile iron.
- 6. Seat: EPDM or NBR.
- 7. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
- 8. Disc: Aluminum bronze.

### B. Iron, Single-Flange (Lug-Type) Butterfly Valves with Ductile-Iron Disc:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Apollo Valves; a part of Aalberts Integrated Piping Systems.
  - b. Bray International, Inc.
  - c. Hammond Valve.
  - d. Jamesbury; Metso.
  - e. Jenkins Valves; a Crane Co. brand.
- 2. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
- 3. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
- 4. Body Design: Single flange (lug type), suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.

5. Body Material: ASTM A126, cast iron or ASTM A536, ductile iron.
6. Seat: EPDM or NBR.
7. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
8. Disc: Nickel-plated or -coated ductile iron.

C. Iron, Single-Flange (Lug-Type) Butterfly Valves with Stainless Steel Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Apollo Valves; a part of Aalberts Integrated Piping Systems.
  - b. Hammond Valve.
  - c. Jamesbury; Metso.
  - d. Jenkins Valves; a Crane Co. brand.
2. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
3. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
4. Body Design: Single flange (lug type), suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
5. Body Material: ASTM A126, cast iron or ASTM A536, ductile iron.
6. Seat: EPDM or NBR.
7. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
8. Disc: Stainless steel.

## 2.4 CHAINWHEELS

- A. Description: Valve actuation assembly with sprocket rim, chain guides, chain, and attachment brackets for mounting chainwheels directly to hand wheels.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine mating flange faces for damage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- D. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves. Remove defective valves from site.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF VALVES

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow space for service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Provide support of piping adjacent to valves such that no force is imposed upon valves.
- C. Locate valves for easy access.
- D. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- E. Install valves in position to allow full valve actuation movement.
- F. Install chainwheels on manual actuators for butterfly valves NPS 496 inches above floor. Extend chains to 84inches above finished floor.
- G. Valve Tags: Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service, but before final adjusting and balancing. If leakage cannot be repaired, replace valve.

END OF SECTION 230523.13

## SECTION 230523.14 - CHECK VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve.

#### 1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
  - 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
  - 2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
  - 3. Block check valves in either closed or open position.
- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
  - 1. Maintain valve end protection.
  - 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance:
  - 1. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded-end valves.
  - 2. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
  - 3. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
  - 4. ASME B16.18 for solder joint.
  - 5. ASME B31.1 for power piping valves.
  - 6. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.

- C. AWWA Compliance: Comply with AWWA C606 for grooved-end connections.
- D. Bronze valves shall be made with dezincification-resistant materials. Bronze valves made with copper alloy (brass) containing more than 15 percent zinc are not permitted.
- E. Valve Pressure-Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- F. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

## 2.2 BRONZE LIFT CHECK VALVES

### A. Bronze Lift Check Valves with Bronze Disc, Class 125:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Crane; a Crane brand.
  - b. Jenkins Valves; a Crane brand.
  - c. Stockham; a Crane brand.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Design: Vertical flow.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM B61 or ASTM B62, bronze.
  - e. Ends: Threaded.
  - f. Disc: Bronze.

## 2.3 BRONZE SWING CHECK VALVES

### A. Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc, Class 125:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - b. Crane; a Crane brand.
  - c. NIBCO INC.
  - d. WATTS.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.

- d. Body Material: ASTM B62, bronze.
- e. Ends: Threaded.
- f. Disc: Bronze.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

### 3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Install check valves for proper direction of flow and as follows:
  - 1. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.
  - 2. Lift Check Valves: With stem upright and plumb.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

### 3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:

1. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:
  - a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with bronze disc.
- B. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are unavailable, the same types of valves with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.
- C. Select valves, except wafer types, with the following end connections:
  1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules.
  2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules.
  3. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends.
  4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules.
  5. For Grooved-End Copper Tubing and Steel Piping except Steam and Steam Condensate Piping: Valve ends may be grooved.

END OF SECTION



## SECTION 230529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural-Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section IX.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

##### A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized, hot-dip galvanized, or electro-galvanized.
3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coated, or epoxy powder-coated.
4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel stainless steel.

##### B. Copper Pipe and Tube Hangers:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-plated steel, factory-fabricated components.
2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel.

## 2.2 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

### A. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Eaton (B-line).
  - b. Flex-Strut Inc.
  - c. G-Strut.
2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated, pipe-support assembly made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
3. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
4. Channels: Continuous slotted carbon-steel channel with inturned lips.
5. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria.
6. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
7. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel
8. Metallic Coating: Electroplated zinc or Hot-dip galvanized.
9. Paint Coating: epoxy, acrylic, or urethane.

### B. Non-MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Anvil International.
  - b. Carpenter & Paterson, Inc.
2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated, pipe-support assembly made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
3. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
4. Channels: Continuous slotted carbon-steel channel with inturned lips.
5. Channel Width: Select for applicable load criteria.
6. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
7. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
8. Metallic Coating: Hot-dip galvanized.
9. Paint Coating: epoxy, acrylic, or urethane.

## 2.3 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

### A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

1. Carpenter & Paterson, Inc.
2. Pipe Shields Inc.
3. Piping Technology & Products, Inc.

- B. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psi or ASTM C591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psi minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.
- C. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: ASTM C552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psi or ASTM C591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psi] minimum compressive strength.
- D. For Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- E. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- F. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

## 2.4 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type anchors for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
  - 1. Indoor Applications: Zinc-coated or stainless-steel.
  - 2. Outdoor Applications: Stainless steel.

## 2.5 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

## 2.6 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum: ASTM B221.
- B. Carbon Steel: ASTM A1011/A1011M.
- C. Structural Steel: ASTM A36/A36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; galvanized.
- D. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M.
- E. Threaded Rods: Continuously threaded. Zinc-plated or galvanized steel for indoor applications and stainless steel for outdoor applications. Mating nuts and washers of similar materials as rods.
- F. Grout: ASTM C1107/C1107M, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
  - 1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
  - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- B. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb.

### 3.2 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
  - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
  - 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A36/A36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled strut systems.
- D. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- E. Fastener System Installation:
  - 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
  - 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- G. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- H. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- I. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.

- J. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- K. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- L. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- M. Insulated Piping:
  - 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
    - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
    - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
    - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
  - 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
    - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
  - 3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
    - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
  - 4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
    - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
    - b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
  - 5. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

### 3.3 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

### 3.4 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for pipe hangers and equipment supports.

- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

### 3.6 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
  - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A780/A780M.

### 3.7 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-58 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports and metal framing systems and attachments for general service applications.
- E. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper or stainless-steel attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- F. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.

- G. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
  2. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 if little or no insulation is required.
  3. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 4, to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
  4. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 8.
  5. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
  6. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
  7. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
  8. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 8.
  9. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 3.
  10. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
- H. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
  2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- I. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
  2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
  3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
  4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
  5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
- J. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
  2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
  3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
  4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
  5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.

6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
  7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
  8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
  9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
  10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
  11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
  12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
    - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
    - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
    - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
  13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
  14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
  15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.
- K. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
  2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
  3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- L. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- M. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

END OF SECTION



## SECTION 230548.13 - VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR HVAC

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.
  - 2. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of vibration isolation device type required.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Detail fabrication and assembly of equipment bases. Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
  - 2. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Show coordination of vibration isolation device installation for HVAC piping and equipment with other systems and equipment in the vicinity, including other supports and restraints, if any.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- C. Welding certificates.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION PADS

#### A. Elastomeric Isolation Pads:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
  - b. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - c. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
  - d. Vibration Isolation.
2. Fabrication: Single or multiple layers of sufficient durometer stiffness for uniform loading over pad area.
3. Size: Factory or field cut to match requirements of supported equipment.
4. Pad Material: Oil and water resistant with elastomeric properties.
5. Infused nonwoven cotton or synthetic fibers.
6. Load-bearing metal plates adhered to pads.
7. Sandwich-Core Material: Resilient and elastomeric.

### 2.2 RESTRAINED ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION MOUNTS

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
  - b. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
  - c. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - d. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
  - e. Vibration Isolation.
  - f. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
2. Description: All-directional isolator with restraints containing two separate and opposing elastomeric elements that prevent central threaded element and attachment hardware from contacting the housing during normal operation.
  - a. Housing: Cast-ductile iron or welded steel.
  - b. Elastomeric Material: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material.

### 2.3 HOUSED-SPRING ISOLATORS

#### A. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators in Two-Part Telescoping Housing:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
  - b. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
  - c. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - d. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
  - e. Vibration Isolation.
  - f. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
6. Two-Part Telescoping Housing: A steel top and bottom frame separated by an elastomeric material and enclosing the spring isolators.

#### 2.4 RESTRAINED-SPRING ISOLATORS

##### A. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators with Vertical-Limit Stop Restraint:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
  - b. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
  - c. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - d. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
  - e. Vibration Isolation.
  - f. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
2. Housing: Steel housing with vertical-limit stops to prevent spring extension due to weight being removed.
  - a. Base with holes for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
  - b. Top plate.
  - c. Internal leveling bolt that acts as blocking during installation.
3. Restraint: Limit stop as required for equipment and authorities having jurisdiction.
4. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
5. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
6. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
7. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

## 2.5 HOUSED-RESTRAINED-SPRING ISOLATORS

### A. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators with Vertical-Limit Stop Restraint:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
  - b. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
  - c. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - d. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
  - e. Vibration Isolation.
  - f. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
2. Two-Part Telescoping Housing: A steel top and bottom frame separated by an elastomeric material and enclosing the spring isolators. Housings are equipped with snubbers to limit vertical movement.
  - a. Drilled base housing for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
  - b. Threaded top housing with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment.
3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

## 2.6 ELASTOMERIC HANGERS

### A. Elastomeric Mount in a Steel Frame with Upper and Lower Steel Hanger Rods:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
  - b. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
  - c. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - d. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
  - e. Vibration Isolation.
  - f. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
2. Frame: Steel, fabricated with a connection for an upper threaded hanger rod and an opening on the underside to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular lower hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
3. Dampening Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material with a projecting bushing for the underside opening preventing steel to steel contact.

## 2.7 PIPE-RISER RESILIENT SUPPORT

- A. Description: All-directional, acoustical pipe anchor consisting of two steel tubes separated by a minimum 1/2-inch-thick neoprene.
1. Vertical-Limit Stops: Steel and neoprene vertical-limit stops arranged to prevent vertical travel in both directions.
  2. Maximum Load Per Support: 500 psig on isolation material providing equal isolation in all directions.

## 2.8 RESILIENT PIPE GUIDES

- A. Description: Telescopic arrangement of two steel tubes or post and sleeve arrangement separated by a minimum 1/2-inch-thick neoprene.
1. Factory-Set Height Guide with Shear Pin: Shear pin shall be removable and reinsertable to allow for selection of pipe movement. Guides shall be capable of motion to meet location requirements.

## 2.9 SPRING HANGERS

- A. Combination Coil-Spring and Elastomeric-Insert Hanger with Spring and Insert in Compression:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
    - b. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
    - c. Mason Industries, Inc.
    - d. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
    - e. Vibration Isolation.
    - f. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
  2. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
  3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
  4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
  5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
  6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
  7. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene. Steel-washer-reinforced cup to support spring and bushing projecting through bottom of frame.
  8. Adjustable Vertical Stop: Steel washer with neoprene washer "up-stop" on lower threaded rod.
  9. Self-centering hanger rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.

## 2.10 VIBRATION ISOLATION EQUIPMENT BASES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
  2. Mason Industries, Inc.
  3. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
  4. Vibration Isolation.
  5. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
- B. Steel Rails: Factory-fabricated, welded, structural-steel rails.
1. Design Requirements: Lowest possible mounting height with not less than 1-inch clearance above the floor. Include equipment anchor bolts and auxiliary motor slide rails.
    - a. Include supports for suction and discharge elbows for pumps.
  2. Structural Steel: Steel shapes, plates, and bars complying with ASTM A36/A36M. Rails shall have shape to accommodate supported equipment.
  3. Support Brackets: Factory-welded steel brackets on frame for outrigger isolation mountings and to provide for anchor bolts and equipment support.
- C. Steel Bases: Factory-fabricated, welded, structural-steel bases and rails.
1. Design Requirements: Lowest possible mounting height with not less than 1-inch clearance above the floor. Include equipment anchor bolts and auxiliary motor slide bases or rails.
    - a. Include supports for suction and discharge elbows for pumps.
  2. Structural Steel: Steel shapes, plates, and bars complying with ASTM A36/A36M. Bases shall have shape to accommodate supported equipment.
  3. Support Brackets: Factory-welded steel brackets on frame for outrigger isolation mountings and to provide for anchor bolts and equipment support.

## 2.11 RESTRAINED ISOLATION ROOF-CURB RAILS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
  2. Mason Industries, Inc.
  3. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
  4. Vibration Isolation.
  5. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
- B. Description: Factory-assembled, fully enclosed, insulated, air- and watertight curb rail designed to resiliently support equipment.
- C. Upper Frame: Upper frame shall provide continuous and captive support for equipment.

- D. Lower Support Assembly: The lower support assembly shall be formed sheet metal section containing adjustable and removable steel springs that support upper frame. The lower support assembly shall have a means for attaching to building structure and a wood nailer for attaching roof materials and shall be insulated with a minimum of 2 inches of rigid glass-fiber insulation on inside of assembly. Adjustable, restrained-spring isolators shall be mounted on elastomeric vibration isolation pads and shall have access ports, for level adjustment, with removable waterproof covers at all isolator locations. Isolators shall be located so they are accessible for adjustment at any time during the life of the installation without interfering with the integrity of the roof.
- E. Snubber Bushings: All-directional, elastomeric snubber bushings at least 1/4 inch thick.
- F. Water Seal: Galvanized sheet metal with EPDM seals at corners, attached to upper support frame, extending down past wood nailer of lower support assembly, and counterflashed over roof materials.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 VIBRATION CONTROL DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. Installation of vibration isolators must not cause any change of position of equipment, piping, or ductwork resulting in stresses or misalignment.

#### 3.3 VIBRATION ISOLATION EQUIPMENT BASES INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate the location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 230553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

##### A. Metal Labels for Equipment:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Brady Corporation.
  - b. Carlton Industries, LP.
  - c. Craftmark Pipe Markers.
  - d. LEM Products Inc.
  - e. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company.
2. Material and Thickness: stainless steel, 0.025-inch or anodized aluminum, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
3. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
4. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
5. Fasteners: Stainless-steel self-tapping screws.
6. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

##### B. Plastic Labels for Equipment:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:



- a. Brady Corporation.
  - b. Carlton Industries, LP.
  - c. Craftmark Pipe Markers.
  - d. LEM Products Inc.
  - e. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company.
2. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
  3. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
  4. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
  5. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
  6. Fasteners: Stainless-steel self-tapping screws.
  7. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- C. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.
- D. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number, and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules) and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

## 2.2 PIPE LABELS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. Brady Corporation.
  2. Carlton Industries, LP.
  3. Craftmark Pipe Markers.
  4. LEM Products Inc.
  5. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company.
- B. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.
- C. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to partially cover circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- D. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- E. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings; also include pipe size and an arrow indicating flow direction.

1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping-system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
2. Lettering Size: At least 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances.

## 2.3 STENCILS

### A. Stencils for Piping:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Carlton Industries, LP.
  - b. Craftmark Pipe Markers.
2. Lettering Size: At least 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances.
3. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, in colors complying with recommendations in ASME A13.1 unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
4. Identification Paint: Exterior, in colors according to ASME A13.1 unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

### 3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

### 3.3 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

### 3.4 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Pipe Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
  - 1. Near each valve and control device.
  - 2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
  - 3. Near penetrations and on both sides of through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
  - 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
  - 5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
  - 6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
  - 7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.
  
- B. Directional Flow Arrows: Arrows shall be used to indicate direction of flow in pipes, including pipes where flow is allowed in both directions.
  
- C. Pipe Label Color Schedule:
  - 1. Heating Water Piping: White letters on a safety-green background.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 230593 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Air Systems:
  - a. Constant-volume air systems.
  - b. Variable-air-volume systems.
- 2. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Hydronic Piping Systems:
  - a. Constant-flow hydronic systems.
  - b. Variable-flow hydronic systems.
  - c. Primary-secondary hydronic systems.
- 3. Testing, adjusting, and balancing of equipment.
- 4. Testing, adjusting, and balancing of existing HVAC systems and equipment.
- 5. HVAC-control system verification.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.
- B. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.
- C. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- D. TABB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau.
- E. TAB Specialist: An independent entity meeting qualifications to perform TAB work.
- F. TDH: Total dynamic head.
- G. UFAD: Underfloor air distribution.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: Within 60 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit documentation that the TAB specialist and this Project's TAB team members meet the qualifications specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Contract Documents Examination Report: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit the Contract Documents review report, as specified in Part 3.
- C. Certified TAB reports.
- D. Instrument calibration reports, to include the following:
  - 1. Instrument type and make.
  - 2. Serial number.
  - 3. Application.
  - 4. Dates of use.
  - 5. Dates of calibration.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. TAB Specialists Qualifications, Certified by NEBB or TABB:
- B. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6.7.2.3 - "System Balancing."
- C. Code and AHJ Compliance: TAB is required to comply with governing codes and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

#### 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Partial Owner Occupancy: Owner may occupy completed areas of building before Substantial Completion. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.
- B. Examine installed systems for balancing devices, such as test ports, gauge cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are applicable for intended purpose and are accessible.

- C. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.
- D. Examine design data, including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.
- E. Examine ceiling plenums and underfloor air plenums used for HVAC to verify that they are properly separated from adjacent areas and sealed.
- F. Examine equipment performance data, including fan and pump curves.
  - 1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
  - 2. Calculate system-effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from the conditions used to rate equipment performance. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Duct Design." Compare results with the design data and installed conditions.
- G. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.
- H. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.
- I. Examine HVAC equipment and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, filters are clean, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.
- J. Examine terminal units, such as variable-air-volume boxes, and verify that they are accessible and their controls are connected and functioning.
- K. Examine temporary and permanent strainers. Verify that temporary strainer screens used during system cleaning and flushing have been removed and permanent strainer baskets are installed and clean.
- L. Examine control valves for proper installation for their intended function of isolating, throttling, diverting, or mixing fluid flows.
- M. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.
- N. Examine system pumps to ensure absence of entrained air in the suction piping.
- O. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.
- P. Examine control dampers for proper installation for their intended function of isolating, throttling, diverting, or mixing air flows.
- Q. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes the following:
  - 1. Equipment and systems to be tested.
  - 2. Instrumentation to be used.
- B. Perform system-readiness checks of HVAC systems and equipment to verify system readiness for TAB work. Include, at a minimum, the following:
  - 1. Airside:
    - a. Verify that leakage and pressure tests on air distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.
    - b. Duct systems are complete with terminals installed.
    - c. Volume, smoke, and fire dampers are open and functional.
    - d. Clean filters are installed.
    - e. Fans are operating, free of vibration, and rotating in correct direction.
    - f. Variable-frequency controllers' startup is complete and safeties are verified.
    - g. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
    - h. Ceilings are installed.
    - i. Windows and doors are installed.
    - j. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.
  - 2. Hydronics:
    - a. Verify leakage and pressure tests on water distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.
    - b. Piping is complete with terminals installed.
    - c. Water treatment is complete.
    - d. Systems are flushed, filled, and air purged.
    - e. Strainers are pulled and cleaned.
    - f. Control valves are functioning in accordance with the sequence of operation.
    - g. Shutoff and balance valves have been verified to be 100 percent open.
    - h. Pumps are started and proper rotation is verified.
    - i. Pump gauge connections are installed directly at pump inlet and outlet flanges or in discharge and suction pipe prior to valves or strainers.
    - j. Variable-frequency controllers' startup is complete and safeties are verified.
    - k. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.

### 3.3 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

- A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system in accordance with the procedures contained in ASHRAE 111 and in this Section.
- B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment casings for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.
  - 1. After testing and balancing, patch probe holes in ducts with same material and thickness as used to construct ducts.

2. After testing and balancing, install test ports and duct access doors that comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
  3. Where holes for probes are required in piping or hydronic equipment, install pressure and temperature test plugs to seal systems.
  4. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish in accordance with Section 230713 "Duct Insulation," Section 230716 "HVAC Equipment Insulation," and Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."
- C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.
- D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in [inch-pound (IP)] [and] [metric (SI)] units.

### 3.4 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING OF HVAC EQUIPMENT

- A. Test, adjust, and balance HVAC equipment indicated on Drawings, including, but not limited to, the following:
1. Motors.
  2. Pumps.
  3. Fans and ventilators.
  4. Terminal units.
  5. Boilers.
  6. Furnaces.
  7. Unit heaters.
  8. Condensing units.
  9. Condensers.
  10. Air-handling units.
  11. Heating and ventilating units.
  12. Rooftop air-conditioning units.
  13. Heating-only makeup air units.
  14. Dedicated outdoor-air units.
  15. Packaged air conditioners.
  16. Self-contained air conditioners.
  17. Split-system air conditioners.
  18. Variable-refrigerant-flow systems.
  19. Heat pumps.
  20. Coils.
  21. Fan coil units.
  22. Unit ventilators.
  23. Radiators.
  24. Convectors.
  25. Finned-tube radiation heaters.



### 3.5 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' Record drawings duct layouts.
- C. For variable-air-volume systems, develop a plan to simulate diversity.
- D. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.
- E. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.
- F. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
- G. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
- H. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.
- I. Check for airflow blockages.
- J. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.
- K. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.

### 3.6 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
  - 1. Measure total airflow.
    - a. Set outside-air, return-air, and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates minimum outdoor-air conditions.
    - b. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by main Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses close to the fan and prior to any outlets, to obtain total airflow.
    - c. Where duct conditions are unsuitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.
  - 2. Measure fan static pressures as follows:
    - a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
    - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.
    - c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.
    - d. Report artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.

- B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows.
  - 1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.
  - 2. Adjust submain and branch duct volume dampers for specified airflow.
  - 3. Re-measure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted.
- C. Adjust air inlets and outlets for each space to indicated airflows.
  - 1. Set airflow patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.
  - 2. Measure inlets and outlets airflow.
  - 3. Adjust each inlet and outlet for specified airflow.
  - 4. Re-measure each inlet and outlet after they have been adjusted.
- D. Verify final system conditions.
  - 1. Re-measure and confirm that minimum outdoor, return, and relief airflows are within design. Readjust to design if necessary.
  - 2. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.
  - 3. Re-measure all final fan operating data, speed, volts, amps, and static profile.
  - 4. Mark all final settings.
  - 5. Test system in economizer mode. Verify proper operation and adjust if necessary.
  - 6. Measure and record all operating data.
  - 7. Record final fan-performance data.

### 3.7 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-AIR-VOLUME SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:
  - 1. Verify that the system static pressure sensor is located two-thirds of the distance down the duct from the fan discharge.
  - 2. Verify that the system is under static pressure control.
  - 3. Select the terminal unit that is most critical to the supply-fan airflow. Measure inlet static pressure, and adjust system static pressure control set point so the entering static pressure for the critical terminal unit is not less than the sum of the terminal-unit manufacturer's recommended minimum inlet static pressure plus the static pressure needed to overcome terminal-unit discharge system losses.
  - 4. Calibrate and balance each terminal unit for maximum and minimum design airflow as follows:
    - a. Adjust controls so that terminal is calling for maximum airflow. Some controllers require starting with minimum airflow. Verify calibration procedure for specific project.
    - b. Measure airflow and adjust calibration factor as required for design maximum airflow. Record calibration factor.
    - c. When maximum airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units.
    - d. Adjust controls so that terminal is calling for minimum airflow.

- e. Measure airflow and adjust calibration factor as required for design minimum airflow. Record calibration factor. If no minimum calibration is available, note any deviation from design airflow.
  - f. On constant volume terminals, in critical areas where room pressure is to be maintained, verify that the airflow remains constant over the full range of full cooling to full heating. Note any deviation from design airflow or room pressure.
5. After terminals have been calibrated and balanced, test and adjust system for total airflow. Adjust fans to deliver total design airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
- a. Set outside-air, return-air, and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates minimum outdoor-air conditions.
  - b. Set terminals for maximum airflow. If system design includes diversity, adjust terminals for maximum and minimum airflow, so that connected total matches fan selection and simulates actual load in the building.
  - c. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by main Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses close to the fan and prior to any outlets, to obtain total airflow.
  - d. Where duct conditions are unsuitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.
6. Measure fan static pressures as follows:
- a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
  - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.
  - c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.
  - d. Report any artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.
7. Set final return and outside airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outdoor airflow.
- a. Balance the return-air ducts and inlets.
  - b. Verify that terminal units are meeting design airflow under system maximum flow.
8. Re-measure the inlet static pressure at the most critical terminal unit, and adjust the system static pressure set point to the most energy-efficient set point to maintain the optimum system static pressure. Record set point and give to controls Contractor.
9. Verify final system conditions as follows:
- a. Re-measure and confirm that minimum outdoor, return, and relief airflows are within design. Readjust to match design if necessary.
  - b. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.
  - c. Re-measure final fan operating data, speed, volts, amps, and static profile.
  - d. Mark final settings.
  - e. Test system in economizer mode. Verify proper operation and adjust if necessary. Measure and record all operating data.
  - f. Verify tracking between supply and return fans.

### 3.8 PROCEDURES FOR MULTIZONE SYSTEMS

- A. Position the unit's automatic zone dampers for maximum flow through the cooling coil.
- B. The procedures for multizone systems will utilize the zone balancing dampers to achieve the indicated airflow within the zone.
- C. After balancing, place the unit's automatic zone dampers for maximum heating flow. Retest zone airflows and record any variances.
- D. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
  - 1. Measure total airflow.
    - a. Set outside-air, return-air and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates minimum outdoor air conditions.
    - b. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by main Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses close to the fan and prior to any outlets, to obtain total airflow.
    - c. Where duct conditions are unsuitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.
  - 2. Measure fan static pressures as follows:
    - a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
    - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.
    - c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.
    - d. Report artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.
  - 3. Review Record drawings to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.
  - 4. Obtain approval from [Architect] [Owner] [Construction Manager] [Commissioning Authority] for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Comply with requirements in HVAC Sections for air-handling units for adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance.
  - 5. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload occurs. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.
- E. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows.
  - 1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.
  - 2. Adjust submain and branch duct volume dampers for specified airflow.
  - 3. Re-measure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted.

- F. Adjust air inlets and outlets for each space to indicated airflows.
  - 1. Set airflow patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.
  - 2. Measure inlet and outlet airflow.
  - 3. Adjust each inlet and outlet for specified airflow.
  - 4. Re-measure each inlet and outlet after they have been adjusted.
  
- G. Verify final system conditions.
  - 1. Re-measure and confirm that minimum outdoor, return, and relief airflows are within design. Readjust to match design if necessary.
  - 2. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.
  - 3. Re-measure all final fan operating data, speed, volts, amps, and static profile.
  - 4. Mark all final settings.
  - 5. Test system in economizer mode. Verify proper operation and adjust if necessary.
  - 6. Measure and record all operating data.
  - 7. Record final fan-performance data.

### 3.9 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports for pumps, coils, and other equipment. Obtain approved submittals and manufacturer-recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required coil and equipment flow rates with pump design flow rate.
  
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' Record drawings piping layouts.
  
- C. In addition to requirements in "Preparation" Article, prepare hydronic systems for testing and balancing as follows:
  - 1. Check expansion tank for proper setting.
  - 2. Check highest vent for adequate pressure.
  - 3. Check flow-control valves for proper position.
  - 4. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor controllers.
  - 5. Verify that motor controllers are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
  - 6. Check that air has been purged from the system.
  
- D. Measure and record upstream and downstream pressure of each piece of equipment.
  
- E. Measure and record upstream and downstream pressure of pressure-reducing valves.
  
- F. Check settings and operation of automatic temperature-control valves, self-contained control valves, and pressure-reducing valves. Record final settings.
  - 1. Check settings and operation of each safety valve. Record settings.

### 3.10 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-FLOW HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust pumps to deliver total design flow.
  - 1. Measure total water flow.

- a. Position valves for full flow through coils.
  - b. Measure flow by main flow meter, if installed.
  - c. If main flow meter is not installed, determine flow by pump TDH or known equipment pressure drop.
2. Measure pump TDH as follows:
    - a. Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in discharge pipe prior to any valves.
    - b. Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe prior to any valves or strainers.
    - c. Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gauge heights.
    - d. Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve closed. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow, and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
    - e. With valves open, read pump TDH. Adjust pump discharge valve until design water flow is achieved. If excessive throttling is required to achieve desired flow, recommend pump impellers be trimmed to reduce excess throttling.
  3. Monitor motor performance during procedures, and do not operate motor in an overloaded condition.
- B. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed in mains and branches to design water flows.
1. Measure flow in main and branch pipes.
  2. Adjust main and branch balance valves for design flow.
  3. Re-measure each main and branch after all have been adjusted.
- C. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed at terminals for each space to design water flows.
1. Measure flow at terminals.
  2. Adjust each terminal to design flow.
  3. Re-measure each terminal after it is adjusted.
  4. Position control valves to bypass the coil, and adjust the bypass valve to maintain design flow.
  5. Perform temperature tests after flows have been balanced.
- D. For systems with pressure-independent valves at terminals:
1. Measure differential pressure and verify that it is within manufacturer's specified range.
  2. Perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
- E. For systems without pressure-independent valves or flow-measuring devices at terminals:
1. Measure and balance coils by either coil pressure drop or temperature method.
  2. If balanced by coil pressure drop, perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
- F. Verify final system conditions as follows:
1. Re-measure and confirm that total water flow is within design.

2. Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, and static profile.
3. Mark final settings.

G. Verify that memory stops have been set.

### 3.11 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-FLOW HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

A. Balance systems with automatic two- and three-way control valves by setting systems at maximum flow through heat-exchange terminals, and proceed as specified above for hydronic systems.

B. Adjust the variable-flow hydronic system as follows:

1. Verify that the pressure-differential sensor(s) is located as indicated.
2. Determine whether there is diversity in the system.

C. For systems with no flow diversity:

1. Adjust pumps to deliver total design flow.

a. Measure total water flow.

- 1) Position valves for full flow through coils.
- 2) Measure flow by main flow meter, if installed.
- 3) If main flow meter is not installed, determine flow by pump TDH or known equipment pressure drop.

b. Measure pump TDH as follows:

- 1) Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in discharge pipe prior to any valves.
- 2) Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe prior to any valves or strainers.
- 3) Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gauge heights.
- 4) Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve closed. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow, and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
- 5) With valves open, read pump TDH. Adjust pump discharge valve or speed until design water flow is achieved. If excessive throttling is required to achieve desired flow, recommend pump impellers be trimmed to reduce excess throttling.

c. Monitor motor performance during procedures, and do not operate motor in an overloaded condition.

2. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed in mains and branches to design water flows.

- a. Measure flow in main and branch pipes.
- b. Adjust main and branch balance valves for design flow.
- c. Re-measure each main and branch after all have been adjusted.

3. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed at terminals for each space to design water flows.
    - a. Measure flow at terminals.
    - b. Adjust each terminal to design flow.
    - c. Re-measure each terminal after it is adjusted.
    - d. Position control valves to bypass the coil, and adjust the bypass valve to maintain design flow.
    - e. Perform temperature tests after flows have been balanced.
  4. For systems with pressure-independent valves at terminals:
    - a. Measure differential pressure and verify that it is within manufacturer's specified range.
    - b. Perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
  5. For systems without pressure-independent valves or flow-measuring devices at terminals:
    - a. Measure and balance coils by either coil pressure drop or temperature method.
    - b. If balanced by coil pressure drop, perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
  6. Prior to verifying final system conditions, determine the system pressure-differential set point(s).
  7. If the pump discharge valve was used to set total system flow with variable-frequency controller at 60 Hz, at completion, open discharge valve 100 percent, and allow variable-frequency controller to control system differential-pressure set point. Record pump data under both conditions.
  8. Mark final settings and verify that all memory stops have been set.
  9. Verify final system conditions as follows:
    - a. Re-measure and confirm that total flow is within design.
    - b. Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, speed, and static profile.
    - c. Mark final settings.
- D. For systems with flow diversity:
1. Determine diversity factor.
  2. Simulate system diversity by closing required number of control valves, as approved by Architect.
  3. Adjust pumps to deliver total design flow.
    - a. Measure total water flow.
      - 1) Position valves for full flow through coils.
      - 2) Measure flow by main flow meter, if installed.
      - 3) If main flow meter is not installed, determine flow by pump TDH or known equipment pressure drop.
    - b. Measure pump TDH as follows:



- 1) Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in discharge pipe prior to any valves.
  - 2) Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe prior to any valves or strainers.
  - 3) Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gauge heights.
  - 4) Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve closed. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow, and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
  - 5) With valves open, read pump TDH. Adjust pump discharge valve or speed until design water flow is achieved. If excessive throttling is required to achieve desired flow, recommend pump impellers be trimmed to reduce excess throttling.
- c. Monitor motor performance during procedures, and do not operate motor in an overloaded condition.
4. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed in mains and branches to design water flows.
    - a. Measure flow in main and branch pipes.
    - b. Adjust main and branch balance valves for design flow.
    - c. Re-measure each main and branch after all have been adjusted.
  5. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed at terminals for each space to design water flows.
    - a. Measure flow at terminals.
    - b. Adjust each terminal to design flow.
    - c. Re-measure each terminal after it is adjusted.
    - d. Position control valves to bypass the coil, and adjust the bypass valve to maintain design flow.
    - e. Perform temperature tests after flows have been balanced.
  6. For systems with pressure-independent valves at terminals:
    - a. Measure differential pressure, and verify that it is within manufacturer's specified range.
    - b. Perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
  7. For systems without pressure-independent valves or flow-measuring devices at terminals:
    - a. Measure and balance coils by either coil pressure drop or temperature method.
    - b. If balanced by coil pressure drop, perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
  8. Open control valves that were shut. Close a sufficient number of control valves that were previously open to maintain diversity, and balance terminals that were just opened.
  9. Prior to verifying final system conditions, determine system pressure-differential set point(s).
  10. If the pump discharge valve was used to set total system flow with variable-frequency controller at 60 Hz, at completion, open discharge valve 100 percent, and allow variable-

frequency controller to control system differential-pressure set point. Record pump data under both conditions.

11. Mark final settings and verify that memory stops have been set.
12. Verify final system conditions as follows:
  - a. Re-measure and confirm that total water flow is within design.
  - b. Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, speed, and static profile.
  - c. Mark final settings.

### 3.12 PROCEDURES FOR PRIMARY-SECONDARY HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Balance the primary circuit flow first.
- B. Balance the secondary circuits after the primary circuits are complete.
- C. Adjust pumps to deliver total design flow.
  1. Measure total water flow.
    - a. Position valves for full flow through coils.
    - b. Measure flow by main flow meter, if installed.
    - c. If main flow meter is not installed, determine flow by pump TDH or known equipment pressure drop.
  2. Measure pump TDH as follows:
    - a. Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in discharge pipe prior to any valves.
    - b. Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe prior to any valves or strainers.
    - c. Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gauge heights.
    - d. Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve closed. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow, and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
    - e. With valves open, read pump TDH. Adjust pump discharge valve or speed until design water flow is achieved. If excessive throttling is required to achieve desired flow, recommend pump impellers be trimmed to reduce excess throttling.
  3. Monitor motor performance during procedures, and do not operate motor in an overloaded condition.
- D. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed in mains and branches to design water flows.
  1. Measure flow in main and branch pipes.
  2. Adjust main and branch balance valves for design flow.
  3. Re-measure each main and branch after all have been adjusted.
- E. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed at terminals for each space to design water flows.

1. Measure flow at terminals.
  2. Adjust each terminal to design flow.
  3. Re-measure each terminal after it is adjusted.
  4. Position control valves to bypass the coil, and adjust the bypass valve to maintain design flow.
  5. Perform temperature tests after flows have been balanced.
- F. For systems with pressure-independent valves at terminals:
1. Measure differential pressure and verify that it is within manufacturer's specified range.
  2. Perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
- G. For systems without pressure-independent valves or flow-measuring devices at terminals:
1. Measure and balance coils by either coil pressure drop or temperature method.
  2. If balanced by coil pressure drop, perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
- H. Verify final system conditions as follows:
1. Re-measure and confirm that total water flow is within design.
  2. Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, speed, and static profile.
  3. Mark final settings.
- I. Verify that memory stops have been set.

### 3.13 PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS

- A. Motors 1/2 HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:
1. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
  2. Motor horsepower rating.
  3. Motor rpm.
  4. Phase and hertz.
  5. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
  6. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
  7. Starter size and thermal-protection-element rating.
  8. Service factor and frame size.
- B. Motors Driven by Variable-Frequency Controllers: Test manual bypass of controller to prove proper operation.

### 3.14 PROCEDURES FOR AIR-COOLED CONDENSING UNITS

- A. Verify proper rotation of fan(s).
- B. Measure and record entering- and leaving-air temperatures.
- C. Measure and record entering and leaving refrigerant pressures.

- D. Measure and record operating data of compressor(s), fan(s), and motors.

### 3.15 PROCEDURES FOR AIR-COOLED CONDENSERS

- A. Verify proper rotation of fan(s).
- B. Measure and record entering- and leaving-air temperatures.
- C. Measure and record entering and leaving refrigerant pressures.
- D. Measure and record operating data of fan(s) and motor(s).

### 3.16 PROCEDURES FOR BOILERS

- A. Hydronic Boilers:
  - 1. Measure and record entering- and leaving-water temperatures.
  - 2. Measure and record water flow.
  - 3. Measure and record pressure drop.
  - 4. [Measure and ]Record relief valve(s) pressure setting.
  - 5. Capacity: Calculate in Btu/h of heating output.
  - 6. Fuel Consumption: If boiler fuel supply is equipped with flow meter, measure and record consumption.
  - 7. Efficiency: Calculate operating efficiency for comparison to submitted equipment.
  - 8. Fan, motor, and motor controller operating data.

### 3.17 PROCEDURES FOR HEAT-TRANSFER COILS

- A. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each hydronic coil:
  - 1. Entering- and leaving-water temperature.
  - 2. Water flow rate.
  - 3. Water pressure drop.
  - 4. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
  - 5. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air for cooling coils.
  - 6. Airflow.
  - 7. Air pressure drop.
- B. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each electric heating coil:
  - 1. Nameplate data.
  - 2. Airflow.
  - 3. Entering- and leaving-air temperature at full load.
  - 4. Air pressure drop.
  - 5. Voltage and amperage input of each phase at full load.
  - 6. Calculated kilowatt at full load.
  - 7. Fuse or circuit-breaker rating for overload protection.

- C. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each steam coil:

1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
2. Airflow.
3. Inlet steam pressure.

D. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each refrigerant coil:

1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
2. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
3. Airflow.
4. Air pressure drop.
5. Entering and leaving refrigerant pressure and temperatures.

### 3.18 HVAC CONTROLS VERIFICATION

A. In conjunction with system balancing, perform the following:

1. Verify HVAC control system is operating within the design limitations.
2. Confirm that the sequences of operation are in compliance with Contract Documents.
3. Verify that controllers are calibrated and function as intended.
4. Verify that controller set points are as indicated.
5. Verify the operation of lockout or interlock systems.
6. Verify the operation of valve and damper actuators.
7. Verify that controlled devices are properly installed and connected to correct controller.
8. Verify that controlled devices travel freely and are in position indicated by controller: open, closed, or modulating.
9. Verify location and installation of sensors to ensure that they sense only intended temperature, humidity, or pressure.

B. Reporting: Include a summary of verifications performed, remaining deficiencies, and variations from indicated conditions.

### 3.19 PROCEDURES FOR TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING EXISTING SYSTEMS

A. Perform a preconstruction inspection of existing equipment that is to remain and be reused.

1. Measure and record the operating speed, airflow, and static pressure of each fan and equipment with fan(s).
2. Measure and record flows, temperatures, and pressures of each piece of equipment in each hydronic system. Compare the values to design or nameplate information, where information is available.
3. Measure motor voltage and amperage. Compare the values to motor nameplate information.
4. Check the refrigerant charge.
5. Check the condition of filters.
6. Check the condition of coils.
7. Check the operation of the drain pan and condensate-drain trap.
8. Check bearings and other lubricated parts for proper lubrication.
9. Report on the operating condition of the equipment and the results of the measurements taken. Report deficiencies.

- B. TAB After Construction: Before performing testing and balancing of renovated existing systems, inspect existing equipment that is to remain and be reused to verify that existing equipment has been cleaned and refurbished in accordance with renovation scope indicated by Contract Documents. Verify the following:
  - 1. New filters are installed.
  - 2. Coils are clean and fins combed.
  - 3. Drain pans are clean.
  - 4. Fans are clean.
  - 5. Bearings and other parts are properly lubricated.
  - 6. Deficiencies noted in the preconstruction report are corrected.
- C. Perform testing and balancing of existing systems to the extent that existing systems are affected by the renovation work.
  - 1. Compare the indicated airflow of the renovated work to the measured fan airflows, and determine the new fan speed and the face velocity of filters and coils.
  - 2. Verify that the indicated airflows of the renovated work result in filter and coil face velocities and fan speeds that are within the acceptable limits defined by equipment manufacturer.
  - 3. If calculations increase or decrease the airflow rates and water flow rates by more than 5 percent, make equipment adjustments to achieve the calculated rates. If increase or decrease is 5 percent or less, equipment adjustments are not required.
  - 4. Balance each air outlet.

### 3.20 TOLERANCES

- A. Set HVAC system's airflow rates and water flow rates within the following tolerances:
  - 1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Plus 10 percent or minus 5 percent. If design value is less than 100 cfm, within 10 cfm.
  - 2. Air Outlets and Inlets: Plus 10 percent or minus 5 percent. If design value is less than 100 cfm, within 10 cfm.
  - 3. Heating-Water Flow Rate: Plus or minus 5 percent. If design value is less than 10 gpm, within 10 percent.
- B. Maintaining pressure relationships as designed shall have priority over the tolerances specified above.

### 3.21 FINAL REPORT

- A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.
  - 1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
  - 2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.
  - 3. Certify validity and accuracy of field data.

- B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:
1. Pump curves.
  2. Fan curves.
  3. Manufacturers' test data.
  4. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
  5. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and Product Data.
- C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:
1. Title page.
  2. Name and address of the TAB specialist.
  3. Project name.
  4. Project location.
  5. Architect's name and address.
  6. Engineer's name and address.
  7. Contractor's name and address.
  8. Report date.
  9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
  10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
  11. Summary of contents, including the following:
    - a. Indicated versus final performance.
    - b. Notable characteristics of systems.
    - c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
  12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
  13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer's name, type, size, and fittings.
  14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
  15. Test conditions for fans performance forms, including the following:
    - a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
    - b. Conditions of filters.
    - c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
    - d. Heating coil, dry-bulb conditions.
    - e. Face and bypass damper settings at coils.
    - f. Fan drive settings, including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
    - g. Variable-frequency controller settings for variable-air-volume systems.
    - h. Settings for pressure controller(s).
    - i. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.
  16. Test conditions for pump performance forms, including the following:
    - a. Variable-frequency controller settings for variable-flow hydronic systems.
    - b. Settings for pressure controller(s).
    - c. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.

- D. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:
1. Quantities of outdoor, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
  2. Water and steam flow rates.
  3. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
  4. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
  5. Terminal units.
  6. Balancing stations.
  7. Position of balancing devices.
- E. Air-Handling-Unit Test Reports: For air-handling units, include the following:
1. Unit Data:
    - a. Unit identification.
    - b. Location.
    - c. Make and type.
    - d. Model number and unit size.
    - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
    - f. Unit arrangement and class.
    - g. Discharge arrangement.
    - h. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
    - i. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
    - j. Number, make, and size of belts.
    - k. Number, type, and size of filters.
  2. Motor Data:
    - a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
    - b. Horsepower and speed.
    - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
    - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
    - e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
    - f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
  3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
    - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
    - c. Fan speed.
    - d. Inlet and discharge static pressure in inches wg.
    - e. For each filter bank, filter static-pressure differential in inches wg.
    - f. Preheat-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
    - g. Cooling-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
    - h. Heating-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
    - i. List for each internal component with pressure-drop, static-pressure differential in inches wg.
    - j. Outdoor airflow in cfm.
    - k. Return airflow in cfm.
    - l. Outdoor-air damper position.



- m. Return-air damper position.
- n. [Vortex damper position].

F. Apparatus-Coil Test Reports:

1. Coil Data:

- a. System identification.
- b. Location.
- c. Coil type.
- d. Number of rows.
- e. Fin spacing in fins per inch o.c.
- f. Make and model number.
- g. Face area in sq. ft..
- h. Tube size in NPS.
- i. Tube and fin materials.
- j. Circuiting arrangement.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Airflow rate in cfm.
- b. Average face velocity in fpm.
- c. Air pressure drop in inches wg.
- d. Outdoor-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- e. Return-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- f. Entering-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- g. Leaving-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- h. Water flow rate in gpm.
- i. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.
- j. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
- k. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
- l. Refrigerant expansion valve and refrigerant types.
- m. Refrigerant suction pressure in psig.
- n. Refrigerant suction temperature in deg F.

G. Gas- and Oil-Fired Heat Apparatus Test Reports: In addition to manufacturer's factory startup equipment reports, include the following:

1. Unit Data:

- a. System identification.
- b. Location.
- c. Make and type.
- d. Model number and unit size.
- e. Manufacturer's serial number.
- f. Fuel type in input data.
- g. Output capacity in Btu/h.
- h. Ignition type.
- i. Burner-control types.
- j. Motor horsepower and speed.
- k. Motor volts, phase, and hertz.

- l. Motor full-load amperage and service factor.
  - m. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
  - n. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
    - b. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
    - c. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.
    - d. Air temperature differential in deg F.
    - e. Entering-air static pressure in inches wg.
    - f. Leaving-air static pressure in inches wg.
    - g. Air static-pressure differential in inches wg.
    - h. Low-fire fuel input in Btu/h.
    - i. High-fire fuel input in Btu/h.
    - j. Manifold pressure in psig.
    - k. High-temperature-limit setting in deg F.
    - l. Operating set point in Btu/h.
    - m. Motor voltage at each connection.
    - n. Motor amperage for each phase.
    - o. Heating value of fuel in Btu/h.
- H. Electric-Coil Test Reports: For electric furnaces, duct coils, and electric coils installed in central-station air-handling units, include the following:
1. Unit Data:
    - a. System identification.
    - b. Location.
    - c. Coil identification.
    - d. Capacity in Btu/h.
    - e. Number of stages.
    - f. Connected volts, phase, and hertz.
    - g. Rated amperage.
    - h. Airflow rate in cfm.
    - i. Face area in sq. ft..
    - j. Minimum face velocity in fpm.
  2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Heat output in Btu/h.
    - b. Airflow rate in cfm.
    - c. Air velocity in fpm.
    - d. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
    - e. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.
    - f. Voltage at each connection.
    - g. Amperage for each phase.
- I. Fan Test Reports: For supply, return, and exhaust fans, include the following:
1. Fan Data:

- a. System identification.
  - b. Location.
  - c. Make and type.
  - d. Model number and size.
  - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
  - f. Arrangement and class.
  - g. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
  - h. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
2. Motor Data:
- a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
  - b. Horsepower and speed.
  - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
  - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
  - e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
  - f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
  - g. Number, make, and size of belts.
3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
- a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
  - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
  - c. Fan speed.
  - d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
  - e. Suction static pressure in inches wg.
- J. Round, Flat-Oval, and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:
1. Report Data:
- a. System fan and air-handling-unit number.
  - b. Location and zone.
  - c. Traverse air temperature in deg F.
  - d. Duct static pressure in inches wg.
  - e. Duct size in inches.
  - f. Duct area in sq. ft..
  - g. Indicated airflow rate in cfm.
  - h. Indicated velocity in fpm.
  - i. Actual airflow rate in cfm.
  - j. Actual average velocity in fpm.
  - k. Barometric pressure in psig.
- K. Air-Terminal-Device Reports:
1. Unit Data:
- a. System and air-handling unit identification.
  - b. Location and zone.
  - c. Apparatus used for test.

- d. Area served.
  - e. Make.
  - f. Number from system diagram.
  - g. Type and model number.
  - h. Size.
  - i. Effective area in sq. ft..
2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
- a. Airflow rate in cfm.
  - b. Air velocity in fpm.
  - c. Preliminary airflow rate as needed in cfm.
  - d. Preliminary velocity as needed in fpm.
  - e. Final airflow rate in cfm.
  - f. Final velocity in fpm.
  - g. Space temperature in deg F.
- L. System-Coil Reports: For reheat coils and water coils of terminal units, include the following:
1. Unit Data:
- a. System and air-handling-unit identification.
  - b. Location and zone.
  - c. Room or riser served.
  - d. Coil make and size.
  - e. Flowmeter type.
2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
- a. Airflow rate in cfm.
  - b. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
  - c. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
  - d. Water pressure drop in feet of head or psig.
  - e. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
  - f. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.
- M. Pump Test Reports: Calculate impeller size by plotting the shutoff head on pump curves, and include the following:
1. Unit Data:
- a. Unit identification.
  - b. Location.
  - c. Service.
  - d. Make and size.
  - e. Model number and serial number.
  - f. Water flow rate in gpm.
  - g. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.
  - h. Required net positive suction head in feet of head or psig.
  - i. Pump speed.
  - j. Impeller diameter in inches.

- k. Motor make and frame size.
  - l. Motor horsepower and rpm.
  - m. Voltage at each connection.
  - n. Amperage for each phase.
  - o. Full-load amperage and service factor.
  - p. Seal type.
2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
- a. Static head in feet of head or psig.
  - b. Pump shutoff pressure in feet of head or psig.
  - c. Actual impeller size in inches.
  - d. Full-open flow rate in gpm.
  - e. Full-open pressure in feet of head or psig.
  - f. Final discharge pressure in feet of head or psig.
  - g. Final suction pressure in feet of head or psig.
  - h. Final total pressure in feet of head or psig.
  - i. Final water flow rate in gpm.
  - j. Voltage at each connection.
  - k. Amperage for each phase.

N. Instrument Calibration Reports:

1. Report Data:
- a. Instrument type and make.
  - b. Serial number.
  - c. Application.
  - d. Dates of use.
  - e. Dates of calibration.

END OF SECTION 230593

## SECTION 230713 - DUCT INSULATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied if any).

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
  - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

## 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with duct Installer for duct insulation application. Before preparing ductwork Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

## 1.7 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Duct Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule," and "Aboveground, Outdoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C553, Type II and ASTM C1290, Type III with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corporation.
    - b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    - c. Knauf Insulation.
    - d. Manson Insulation Inc.
    - e. Owens Corning.

## 2.2 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
- C. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.

## 2.3 MASTICS AND COATINGS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
- B. Vapor-Retarder Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.
  - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM C755, Section 7.2.2, Table 2, for insulation type and service conditions.
  - 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
- C. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above ambient services.
  - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E96, greater than 1.0 perm at manufacturer's recommended dry film thickness.
  - 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.

## 2.4 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
  - 1. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over duct insulation.
  - 2. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.

## 2.5 SEALANTS

- A. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
  - 1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
  - 2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
  - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
- B. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
  - 1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
  - 2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
  - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.

## 2.6 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:



1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.
2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.
3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type II.
4. FSP Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with polyethylene backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type II.

## 2.7 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.

## 2.8 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C1136.
  1. Width: 3 inches.
  2. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
  3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
  4. Elongation: 2 percent.
  5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
  6. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C1136.
  1. Width: 3 inches.
  2. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
  3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
  4. Elongation: 2 percent.
  5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
  6. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.
- C. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
  1. Width: 2 inches.
  2. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
  3. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
  4. Elongation: 5 percent.
  5. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

## 2.9 SECUREMENTS

- A. Bands:
  1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A167 or ASTM A240/A240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.

B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:

1. Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.135-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
2. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
3. Self-Sticking-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
  - a. Baseplate: Galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
  - b. Spindle: Aluminum or Stainless steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
  - c. Adhesive-backed base with a peel-off protective cover.
4. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick aluminum or stainless-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
  - a. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.
  - b.

C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch-wide, stainless steel or Monel.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
  1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
  2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

### 3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of ducts and fittings.
- B. Install insulation materials, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of duct system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
  - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
  - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
  - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
  - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 4 inches o.c.
    - a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
  - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.

5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct flanges and fittings.
- L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

### 3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
  1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
  4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
  1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
  4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- D. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches.
  1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."
- E. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:

1. Duct: For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least 2 inches.
2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

- A. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 50 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
  2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
  3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
    - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
    - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, place pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
    - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
    - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
    - e. Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.
    - f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
  4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
    - a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
    - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.
  5. Overlap unfaced blankets a minimum of 2 inches on longitudinal seams and end joints. At end joints, secure with steel bands spaced a maximum of 18 inches o.c.

6. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
7. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch-wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

### 3.6 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.
  1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch overlap at seams and joints.
  2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch-thick coats of lagging adhesive.
  3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.
- B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:
  1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
  2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
  3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
  4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch-wide joint strips at end joints.
  5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

### 3.8 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Plenums and Ducts Requiring Insulation:
  1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
  2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
  3. Indoor, concealed return located in unconditioned space.
  4. Indoor, exposed return located in unconditioned space.
  5. Indoor, concealed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
  6. Indoor, exposed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
  7. Outdoor, concealed supply and return.
  8. Outdoor, exposed supply and return.
- B. Items Not Insulated:

1. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
2. Vibration-control devices.
3. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.

### 3.9 INDOOR DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Round air duct insulation shall be the following:
  1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- B. Rectangular air duct insulation shall be the following:
  1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 230719 - HVAC PIPING INSULATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied if any).

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products in accordance with ASTM E84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
  - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

#### 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

#### 1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.



- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

## 1.6 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Underground Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come into contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested in accordance with ASTM C871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable in accordance with ASTM C795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Flexible Elastomeric: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C534/C534M, Type I for tubular materials, Type II for sheet materials.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Aeroflex USA.
    - b. Armacell LLC.
    - c. K-Flex USA.
- G. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C547.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.

- b. Knauf Insulation.
  - c. Manson Insulation Inc.
  - d. Owens Corning.
2. Preformed Pipe Insulation: Type I, Grade A with factory-applied ASJ.
  3. 850 deg F.
  4. Factory fabricate shapes in accordance with ASTM C450 and ASTM C585.
  5. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

## 2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS

- A. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C195.
- B. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C449.

## 2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Solvent-based adhesive.
  1. Flame-spread index shall be 25 or less and smoke-developed index shall be 50 or less as tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
  2. Wet Flash Point: Below 0 deg F.
  3. Service Temperature Range: 40 to 200 deg F.
- C. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
- D. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.

## 2.4 MASTICS AND COATINGS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
- B. Vapor-Retarder Mastic, Water Based: Suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
  1. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM E96/E96M or ASTM F1249.
  2. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
- C. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above-ambient services.
  1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E96/E96M, greater than 1.0 perm at manufacturer's recommended dry film thickness.
  2. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.

## 2.5 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Adhesives shall comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A, and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

1. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over pipe insulation.
2. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.

## 2.6 SEALANTS

- A. Materials shall be as recommended by the insulation manufacturer and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
- B. Joint Sealants:
  1. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
    - a. Service Temperature Range: Minus 150 to plus 250 deg F.
- C. ASJ Flashing Sealants and PVDC and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
  1. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
  2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.

## 2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
  1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.

## 2.8 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C1136, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
  1. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
  2. Color: White.
  3. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
    - a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.

## 2.9 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C1136.
- B. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.

## 2.10 SECUREMENTS

### A. Bands:

1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch thick, with wing seal or closed seal.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
  1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
  2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

### 3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping, including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and of thicknesses required for each item of pipe system, as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during storage, application, and finishing. Replace insulation materials that get wet.

- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
  - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends attached to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 3. Install insert materials and insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
  - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
  - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
  - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward-clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
  - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward-clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.
    - a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
  - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, in accordance with insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
  - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 25 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches in similar fashion to butt joints.
- P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
  - 1. Vibration-control devices.

2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
3. Nameplates and data plates.

### 3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
  1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
  4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
  1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
  4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- D. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
  1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- E. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
  1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
  2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials, except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.

- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, Mechanical Couplings, and Unions:
1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, mechanical couplings, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as that of adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
  3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as that used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
  4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as that used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than 2 times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
  5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as that used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than 2 times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers, so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
  6. Insulate flanges, mechanical couplings, and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation to fit. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than 2 times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union" matching size and color of pipe labels.
  7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
  8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket, except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing, using PVC tape.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
  - 1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
  - 2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
  - 3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as that of pipe insulation.
  - 4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
  - 1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
  - 2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
  - 1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as that of pipe insulation when available.
  - 2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
  - 3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
  - 4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties, and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

### 3.7 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

- A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
  - 1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands, and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
  - 2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
  - 3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
  - 4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive, as recommended by insulation material manufacturer, and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:



1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as that of straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

### 3.8 INSTALLATION OF FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Where PVC jackets are indicated and for horizontal applications, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
  1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

### 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform inspections.
- B. All insulation applications will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare inspection reports.

### 3.10 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Insulation conductivity and thickness per pipe size shall comply with schedules in this Section or with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent.

- B. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
  - 1. Underground piping.
  - 2. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

### 3.11 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Condensate and Equipment Drain Water below 60 Deg F:
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
    - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 3/4 inch thick.
    - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1/2 inch thick.
- B. Heating-Hot-Water Supply and Return, 200 Deg F and Below:
  - 1. Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I: 2 inches.
- C. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Piping:
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
- D. Refrigerant Liquid Piping:
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
    - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
    - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.

### 3.12 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Piping:
  - 1. PVC jacket on Fittings, Valves, Strainers and elbows

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 230923 – DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL (DDC) SYTEM FOR HVAC

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

##### A. Section Includes:

1. Direct digital control (DDC) system equipment and components for monitoring and controlling of HVAC, exclusive of instrumentation and control devices.
2. The Work under this Section shall consist of the labor, materials and equipment required for installation of a fully functioning, web-enabled, direct digital control system to control networked equipment. Building Automation System shall comply with BACnet Testing Lab Certified Products with open protocol communication and fully programmable controllers.
3. The system controller shall communicate via BACnet/MSTP or BACnet/Zigbee open protocol between the HVAC units and sensors facilitated by unit controllers to monitor and control operation of the processes for this facility.
4. The system shall control all BACnet devices in school and integrate all existing to remain BACnet devices.

##### B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 230993.11 "Sequence of Operations for HVAC DDC" for control sequences in DDC systems.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Algorithm: A logical procedure for solving a recurrent mathematical problem. A prescribed set of well-defined rules or processes for solving a problem in a finite number of steps.
- B. Analog: A continuously varying signal value, such as current, flow, pressure, or temperature.
- C. BACnet Specific Definitions:
1. BACnet: Building Automation Control Network Protocol, ASHRAE 135. A communications protocol allowing devices to communicate data and services over a network.
  2. BACnet Interoperability Building Blocks (BIBBs): BIBB defines a small portion of BACnet functionality that is needed to perform a particular task. BIBBs are combined to build the BACnet functional requirements for a device.
  3. BACnet/IP: Defines and allows using a reserved UDP socket to transmit BACnet messages over IP networks. A BACnet/IP network is a collection of one or more IP subnetworks that share the same BACnet network number.
  4. BACnet Testing Laboratories (BTL): Organization responsible for testing products for compliance with ASHRAE 135, operated under direction of BACnet International.

- D. Binary: Two-state signal where a high signal level represents "ON" or "OPEN" condition and a low signal level represents "OFF" or "CLOSED" condition. "Digital" is sometimes used interchangeably with "Binary" to indicate a two-state signal.
- E. Controller: Generic term for any standalone, microprocessor-based, digital controller residing on a network, used for local or global control. Three types of controllers are indicated: network controllers, programmable application controllers, and application-specific controllers.
- F. Control System Integrator: An entity that assists in expansion of existing enterprise system and support of additional operator interfaces to I/O being added to existing enterprise system.
- G. COV: Changes of value.
- H. DDC System Provider: Authorized representative of, and trained by, DDC system manufacturer and responsible for execution of DDC system Work indicated.
- I. Distributed Control: Processing of system data is decentralized and control decisions are made at subsystem level. System operational programs and information are provided to remote subsystems and status is reported back. On loss of communication, subsystems to be capable of operating in a standalone mode using the last best available data.
- J. E/P: Voltage to pneumatic.
- K. Gateway: Bidirectional protocol translator that connects control systems that use different communication protocols.
- L. HLC: Heavy load conditions.
- M. I/O: System through which information is received and transmitted. I/O refers to analog input (AI), binary input (BI), analog output (AO) and binary output (BO). Analog signals are continuous and represent control influences such as flow, level, moisture, pressure, and temperature. Binary signals convert electronic signals to digital pulses (values) and generally represent two-position operating and alarm status. "Digital," (DI) and (DO), is sometimes used interchangeably with "Binary," (BI) and (BO), respectively.
- N. I/P: Current to pneumatic.
- O. LAN: Local area network.
- P. LNS: LonWorks Network Services.
- Q. LON Specific Definitions:
  1. FTT-10: Echelon Transmitter-Free Topology Transceiver.
  2. LonMark International: Association comprising suppliers and installers of LonTalk products. Association provides guidelines for implementing LonTalk protocol to ensure interoperability through a standard or consistent implementation.
  3. LonTalk: An open standard protocol developed by Echelon Corporation that uses a "Neuron Chip" for communication. LonTalk is a register trademark of Echelon.
  4. LonWorks: Network technology developed by Echelon.

5. Node: Device that communicates using CTA-709.1-D protocol and that is connected to a CTA-709.1-D network.
  6. Node Address: The logical address of a node on the network, consisting of a Domain number, Subnet number, and Node number. "Node number" portion of an address is a number assigned to device during installation, is unique within a subnet, and is not a factory-set unique Node ID.
  7. Node ID: A unique 48-bit identifier assigned at factory to each CTA-709.1-D device. Sometimes called a "Neuron ID."
  8. Program ID: An identifier (number) stored in a device (usually, EEPROM) that identifies node manufacturer, functionality of device (application and sequence), transceiver used, and intended device usage.
  9. Standard Configuration Property Type (SCPT): Pronounced "skip-it." A standard format type maintained by LonMark for configuration properties.
  10. Standard Network Variable Type (SNVT): Pronounced "snivet." A standard format type maintained by LonMark used to define data information transmitted and received by individual nodes. "SNVT" is used in two ways. It is an acronym for "Standard Network Variable Type" and is often used to indicate a network variable itself (i.e., it can mean "a network variable of a standard network variable type").
  11. Subnet: Consists of a logical grouping of up to 127 nodes, where logical grouping is defined by node addressing. Each subnet is assigned a number, which is unique within a Domain. See "Node Address."
  12. TP/FT-10: Free Topology Twisted Pair network defined by CTA-709.3 and is most common media type for a CTA-709.1-D control network.
  13. TP/XF-1250: High-speed, 1.25 Mbps, twisted-pair, doubly terminated bus network defined by "LonMark Interoperability Guidelines" and typically used only to connect multiple TP/FT-10 networks.
  14. User-Defined Configuration Property Type (UCPT): Pronounced "u-keep-it." A Configuration Property format type that is defined by device manufacturer.
  15. User-Defined Network Variable Type (UNVT): Network variable format defined by device manufacturer. UNVTs create non-standard communications that other vendors' devices may not correctly interpret and may negatively impact system operation. UNVTs are not allowed.
- R. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.
- S. Mobile Device: A data-enabled phone or tablet computer capable of connecting to a cellular data network and running a native control application or accessing a web interface.
- T. Modbus TCP/IP: An open protocol for exchange of process data.
- U. MS/TP: Master-slave/token-passing, ISO/IEC/IEEE 8802-3. Datalink protocol LAN option that uses twisted-pair wire for low-speed communication.
- V. MTBF: Mean time between failures.
- W. Network Controller: Digital controller, which supports a family of programmable application controllers and application-specific controllers, that communicates on peer-to-peer network for transmission of global data.

- X. Network Repeater: Device that receives data packet from one network and rebroadcasts it to another network. No routing information is added to protocol.
- Y. Peer to Peer: Networking architecture that treats all network stations as equal partners.
- Z. POT: Portable operator's terminal.
- AA. RAM: Random access memory.
- BB. RF: Radio frequency.
- CC. Router: Device connecting two or more networks at network layer.
- DD. Server: Computer used to maintain system configuration, historical and programming database.
- EE. TCP/IP: Transport control protocol/Internet protocol.
- FF. UPS: Uninterruptible power supply.
- GG. USB: Universal Serial Bus.
- HH. User Datagram Protocol (UDP): This protocol assumes that the IP is used as the underlying protocol.
- II. VAV: Variable air volume.
- JJ. WLED: White light emitting diode.

### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
  1. Submit complete BAS/ATC shop drawings for Engineer's approval prior to installation or fabrication of equipment. Submittal data shall include a schedule of devices to be installed, including proposed locations. Properly sized and select devices for optimum system operation.
  2. Clearly note deviations from the specified sequences of operation in the sequences of operation included in submittals.
  3. Include in submittals software, controllers, control equipment, control valves, motor-operated dampers, damper actuators, sequences of operation, points lists and complete system drawings.
  4. Operating and Maintenance (O & M) Manual: To be record drawing versions of the submittals and product data.
  5. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

6. Operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories indicating process operating range, accuracy over range, control signal over range, default control signal with loss of power, calibration data specific to each unique application, electrical power requirements, and limitations of ambient operating environment, including temperature and humidity.
7. Product description with complete technical data, performance curves, and product specification sheets.
8. Installation, operation, and maintenance instructions including factors effecting performance.
9. Bill of materials of indicating quantity, manufacturer, and extended model number for each unique product.
  - a. Workstations.
  - b. Printers.
  - c. Servers.
  - d. Gateways.
  - e. Routers.
  - f. Protocol analyzers.
  - g. DDC controllers.
  - h. Enclosures.
  - i. Electrical power devices.
  - j. UPS units.
  - k. Accessories.
  - l. Instruments.
  - m. Control dampers and actuators.
  - n. Control valves and actuators.
10. When manufacturer's product datasheets apply to a product series rather than a specific product model, clearly indicate and highlight only applicable information.
11. Each submitted piece of product literature to clearly cross reference specification and drawings that submittal is to cover.

B. Software Submittal:

1. Cross-referenced listing of software to be loaded on each operator workstation, server, gateway, and DDC controller.
2. Description and technical data of all software provided and cross-referenced to products in which software will be installed.
3. Operating system software, operator interface and programming software, color graphic software, DDC controller software, maintenance management software, and third-party software.
4. Include a flow diagram and an outline of each subroutine that indicates each program variable name and units of measure.
5. Listing and description of each engineering equation used with reference source.
6. Listing and description of each constant used in engineering equations and a reference source to prove origin of each constant.
7. Description of operator interface to alphanumeric and graphic programming.
8. Description of each network communication protocol.
9. Description of system database, including all data included in database, database capacity, and limitations to expand database.

10. Description of each application program and device drivers to be generated, including specific information on data acquisition and control strategies showing their relationship to system timing, speed, processing burden, and system throughout.
11. Controlled Systems: Instrumentation list with element name, type of device, manufacturer, model number, and product data. Include written description of sequence of operation including schematic diagram.
12. Schematic drawings for each controlled HVAC system indicating the following:
  - a. I/O points labeled with point names shown. Indicate instrument range, normal operating set points, and alarm set points. Indicate fail position of each damper and valve, if included in Project.
  - b. I/O listed in table format showing point name, type of device, manufacturer, model number, and cross-reference to product data sheet number.
  - c. A graphic showing location of control I/O in proper relationship to HVAC system.
  - d. Wiring diagram with each I/O point having a unique identification and indicating labels for all wiring terminals.
  - e. Unique identification of each I/O that to be consistently used between different drawings showing same point.
  - f. Elementary wiring diagrams of controls for HVAC equipment motor circuits including interlocks, switches, relays, and interface to DDC controllers.
  - g. Narrative sequence of operation.
  - h. Graphic sequence of operation, showing all inputs and output logical blocks.
13. Control panel drawings indicating the following:
  - a. Panel dimensions, materials, size, and location of field cable, raceways, and tubing connections.
  - b. Interior subpanel layout, drawn to scale and showing all internal components, cabling and wiring raceways, nameplates, and allocated spare space.
  - c. Front, rear, and side elevations and nameplate legend.
  - d. Unique drawing for each panel.
14. DDC system network riser diagram indicating the following:
  - a. Each device connected to network with unique identification for each.
  - b. Interconnection of each different network in DDC system.
  - c. For each network, indicate communication protocol, speed and physical means of interconnecting network devices, such as copper cable type, or optical fiber cable type. Indicate raceway type and size for each.
  - d. Each network port for connection of an operator workstation or other type of operator interface with unique identification for each.
15. DDC system electrical power riser diagram indicating the following:
  - a. Each point of connection to field power with requirements (volts/phase/hertz/amperes/connection type) listed for each.
  - b. Each control power supply including, as applicable, transformers, power-line conditioners, transient voltage suppression and high filter noise units, DC power supplies, and UPS units with unique identification for each.



- c. Each product requiring power with requirements (volts/phase/hertz/amperes/connection type) listed for each.
  - d. Power wiring type and size, race type, and size for each.
16. Monitoring and control signal diagrams indicating the following:
- a. Control signal cable and wiring between controllers and I/O.
  - b. Point-to-point schematic wiring diagrams for each product.
  - c. Control signal tubing to sensors, switches, and transmitters.
  - d. Process signal tubing to sensors, switches, and transmitters.
17. Color graphics indicating the following:
- a. Itemized list of color graphic displays to be provided.
  - b. For each display screen to be provided, a true color copy showing layout of pictures, graphics, and data displayed.
  - c. Intended operator access between related hierarchical display screens.
- C. System Description:
- 1. Full description of DDC system architecture, network configuration, operator interfaces and peripherals, servers, controller types and applications, gateways, routers and other network devices, and power supplies.
  - 2. Complete listing and description of each report, log and trend for format and timing, and events that initiate generation.
  - 3. System and product operation under each potential failure condition including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Loss of power.
    - b. Loss of network communication signal.
    - c. Loss of controller signals to inputs and outpoints.
    - d. Operator workstation failure.
    - e. Server failure.
    - f. Gateway failure.
    - g. Network failure.
    - h. Controller failure.
    - i. Instrument failure.
    - j. Control damper and valve actuator failure.
  - 4. Complete bibliography of documentation and media to be delivered to Owner.
  - 5. Description of testing plans and procedures.
  - 6. Description of Owner training.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

### A. Qualification Statements:

- 1. Systems Provider's Qualification Data:
  - a. Resume of project manager assigned to Project.

- b. Resumes of application engineering staff assigned to Project.
- c. Resumes of installation and programming technicians assigned to Project.
- d. Resumes of service technicians assigned to Project.
- e. Brief description of past project including physical address, floor area, number of floors, building system cooling and heating capacity, and building's primary function.
- f. Description of past project DDC system, noting similarities to Project scope and complexity indicated.
- g. Names of staff assigned to past project that will also be assigned to execute work of this Project.
- h. Owner contact information for past project including name, phone number, and email address.
- i. Contractor contact information for past project including name, phone number, and email address.
- j. Architect contact information for past project including name, phone number, and email address.

2. Manufacturer's qualification data.

B. Welding certificates.

C. Product Certificates:

- 1. Data Communications Protocol Certificates: Certifying that each proposed DDC system component complies with ASHRAE 135.
- 2. Data Communications Protocol Certificates: Certifying that each proposed DDC system component complies with LonWorks.

D. Test and Evaluation Reports:

- 1. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by manufacturer.

E. Source Quality-Control Submittals:

- 1. Source quality-control reports.

F. Field Quality-Control Submittals:

- 1. Field quality-control reports.

G. Sample warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For DDC system.

- 1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
  - a. Project Record Drawings of as-built versions of submittal Shop Drawings provided in electronic PDF format.

- b. Testing and commissioning reports and checklists of completed final versions of reports, checklists, and trend logs.
- c. As-built versions of submittal Product Data.
- d. Names, addresses, email addresses, and 24-hour telephone numbers of Installer and service representatives for DDC system and products.
- e. Operator's manual with procedures for operating control systems including logging on and off, handling alarms, producing point reports, trending data, overriding computer control, and changing set points and variables.
- f. Programming manuals with description of programming language and syntax, of statements for algorithms and calculations used, of point database creation and modification, of program creation and modification, and of editor use.
- g. Engineering, installation, and maintenance manuals that explain how to do the following:
  - 1) Design and install new points, panels, and other hardware.
  - 2) Perform preventive maintenance and calibration.
  - 3) Debug hardware problems.
  - 4) Repair or replace hardware.
- h. Documentation of all programs created using custom programming language including set points, tuning parameters, and object database.
- i. Backup copy of graphic files, programs, and databases on electronic media.
- j. List of recommended spare parts with part numbers and suppliers.
- k. Complete original-issue documentation, installation, and maintenance information for furnished third-party hardware including computer equipment and sensors.
- l. Complete original-issue copies of furnished software, including operating systems, custom programming language, operator workstation software, and graphics software.
- m. Licenses, guarantees, and warranty documents.
- n. Recommended preventive maintenance procedures for system components, including schedule of tasks such as inspection, cleaning, and calibration; time between tasks; and task descriptions.
- o. Owner training materials.

#### 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Extra Stock Material: Furnish extra materials and parts to Owner that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
- B. Include product manufacturers' recommended parts lists for proper product operation over four - year period following warranty period. Parts list to be indicated for each year.

#### 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. The BAS/ATC system shall be designed, installed, commissioned and serviced by factory trained personnel.
- B. DDC System Manufacturer Qualifications:

1. Nationally recognized manufacturer of DDC systems and products.
2. DDC systems with similar requirements to those indicated for a continuous period of five years within time of bid.
3. DDC systems and products that have been successfully tested and in use on at least five past projects.
4. Having complete published catalog literature, installation, operation, and maintenance manuals for all products intended for use.
5. Having full-time in-house employees for the following:
  - a. Product research and development.
  - b. Product and application engineering.
  - c. Product manufacturing, testing, and quality control.
  - d. Technical support for DDC system installation training, commissioning, and troubleshooting of installations.
  - e. Owner operator training.

C. DDC System Provider Qualifications:

1. Authorized representative of, and trained by, DDC system manufacturer.
2. Demonstrate past experience with installation of DDC system products being installed for period within five consecutive years before time of bid.
3. Demonstrate past experience on five projects of similar complexity, scope, and value.
4. DDC system manufacturer's backing to take over execution of the Work if necessary to comply with requirements indicated. Include Project-specific written letter, signed by manufacturer's corporate officer, if requested.

D. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with the following welding codes:

1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M.
3. AWS D1.3/D1.3M.
4. AWS D1.4/D1.4M.

E. Pipe and Pressure-Vessel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators in accordance with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

1.9 WIRING

- A. All power and wiring required by the BAS/ATC system, controllers and required appurtenances shall be provided by BAS/ATC system supplier.
- B. Detailed wiring diagrams and complete field supervision shall be provided by system installer.
- C. System installer shall furnish and install control devices specified in this Section unless specifically stated otherwise.
- D. Maximum allowable voltage for wiring inside control panels shall be 120V.
- E. All wiring shall conform to the National Electrical Code and requirements of Division 26.

- F. Control wiring penetrations at wall-mounted sensors shall be calked and sealed to prevent air leakage.

#### 1.10 WARRANTY

- A. At completion of system installation, BAS/ATC system manufacturer shall adjust control items and equipment provided as part of the work with trained personnel in the direct employ of BAS/ATC system manufacturer. He shall place said equipment in complete operating condition subject to approval of Engineer, and instruct Owner's operating personnel in the operation of the system.
- B. Equipment herein described proven to be defective in workmanship or material during the guarantee period shall be adjusted, repaired, or replaced by BAS/ATC system manufacturer at no charge to Owner.
- C. Labor & materials for control system specified shall be warranted free from defects for a period of twelve (12) months after final completion acceptance by the Owner. Control System failures during the warranty period shall be adjusted, repaired, or replaced at no charge or reduction in service to the Owner. The Contractor shall respond to the Owner's request for warranty service within 24 hours during customary business hours.
- D. At the end of the final start-up/testing, if equipment and systems are operating satisfactorily to the Owner and Engineer, the Owner shall sign certificates certifying that the control system's operation has been tested and accepted in accordance with the terms of this specification. The date of Owner's acceptance shall be the start of warranty.
- E. Operator workstation software, project specific software, graphics, database, and firmware updates shall be provided to the Owner at no charge during the warranty period. Written authorization by Owner must, however, be granted prior to the installation of such changes.
- F. The system provider shall provide a web-accessible system and support on-line resource that provides the Owner access to a question/answer forum, graphics library, user tips, upgrades, and manufacturer training schedules.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 DDC SYSTEM

- A. The DDC System Basis of Design is Trane Synchrony. Provided products of equal or better quality and that provide any and all functions of the Trane Synchrony system.
- B. Indicate all deviations in function and performance from the Trane Synchrony system.
- C. Contractor is responsible for all work necessary to provide a system satisfactory to the Owner that , at a minimum, performs all functions of the Trane Synchrony system.

## 2.2 DDC SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. BAS/ATC system shall include, but not be limited to, the following components:
  - 1. Operator interface shall consist of hardware and software that allows full user monitoring and adjustment of system parameters.
  - 2. System application controllers shall manage the energy and building management capacities of the automation system, as well as, facilitate remote communications and central monitoring.
  - 3. Application specific controllers shall provide distributed, pre-engineered control, specific to the mechanical equipment specified.
  - 4. Custom application controllers with distributed custom programming capability shall provide control for nonstandard control sequences.
  - 5. Data communications capability shall allow data to be shared between the various controllers in the architecture.
  - 6. System software shall include system software for global application functions, application software for distributed controllers, and operator interface software.
  - 7. End devices such as sensors, actuators, dampers, valves, and relays.
- B. The failure of a single component shall not interrupt the control strategies of other operational devices. System expansion shall be through the addition of end devices, controllers, and other device specified herein.

## 2.3 SYSTEM ARCHITECTURE

- A. This project shall be comprised of a standalone dedicated DDC system control network. Communications between System Controllers and sub-networks of Custom Application Controllers and/or Application Specific Controllers shall utilize BACnet/Zigbee wireless communications or BACnet/MSTP wired communications.
- B. For BACnet/Zigbee Wireless Communication:
  - 1. Each System Controller shall perform communications to a network of Custom Application and Application Specific Controllers using BACnet/Zigbee (802.15.4) as defined by the Zigbee Standard.
  - 2. Each communication interface shall be Zigbee Building Automation Certified product as defined by the BACnet Standard and the Zigbee Alliance.
  - 3. Each System Controller shall function as a BACnet Router to each unit controller providing a unique BACnet Device ID for controllers within the system.
  - 4. BACnet Test Labs (BTL) Listing. Each System Controller shall be listed as a Building Controller (B-BC) supporting to BACnet Revision 14 by the BACnet Test Labs.

## 2.4 GENERAL DESCRIPTION

- A. Provide Programmable Controllers for field installation required to perform the sequence of operations specified. For controllers furnished by equipment manufacturers, coordinate BAS

integration utilizing BACnet open communication protocol. Provide necessary coordination and engineering assistance in both instances to ensure required I/O is provided and terminations are performed correctly to enable controls to function properly. These mechanical equipment mounted controllers are required to directly communicate with Building Controllers to provide the specified BAS performance. Field mounted controllers for applications where not specified to be installed and wired in the mechanical equipment manufacturer's factory are required to provide the sequence of operations specified. Each of these Custom Application Controllers shall meet the following requirements:

1. BAS shall be composed of one or more independent, stand-alone, microprocessor based Programmable Controller for mechanical equipment that require this level of control based upon the sequence of operations specified.
2. Programmable Controller shall have sufficient memory to support its operating system, point database, and programming requirements based upon design information provided herein.
3. Programmable Controllers shall be provided with a communications port for connection of the specified Portable Operators Terminal in addition to direct connection to a Building Controller specified above.
4. Local application software within Programmable Controller shall manage the physical I/O points, calculate virtual points, and provide central communications for remote monitoring, manual overrides, and alarming.
5. Controller shall continually check status of its processor and memory circuits. If an abnormal operation is detected or communication is disrupted to Building Controller the following shall occur:
  - a. Controller will assume a predetermined failure mode.
  - b. BAS will generate an alarm notification at the Building Controller and/or Operator Workstation.

## 2.5 EQUIPMENT CONTROLLER CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Environment: Furnish controller hardware suitable for the anticipated ambient conditions.
  1. Mount controllers used in conditioned ambient temperatures in NEMA 1 type enclosures, and rate for operation at 32 degrees F to 120 degrees F.
  2. Mount controllers used outdoors or in wet ambient conditions within NEMA 4 type waterproof enclosures, and rate for operation at minus 40 degrees F to 158 degrees F.
- B. Serviceability: Furnish Custom Application Controller with diagnostic LED's indicating power, communications, and processor functions. Terminate wiring connections at field removable, modular terminal strips, or at communication board.
- C. Memory: Furnish controller maintaining BIOS and programming information in event of power loss for minimum of 72 continuous hours.
- D. Immunity to Power and Noise: Furnish controllers able to operate at 90 to 110 percent of nominal voltage rating and perform an orderly shutdown below 80 percent nominal voltage.

## 2.6 COMMUNICATIONS

### A. System Diagnostics

1. The system shall automatically monitor the operation of all network connections, building management panels, and controllers.
2. The failure of any device shall be annunciated to the operators.

## 2.7 CONTROLLER SIGNALS & INPUT/OUTPUT MODULES

- A. For flexibility in selection and replacement of valves, furnish controllers capable of supporting the following valve control types 0-10VDC, 0-5VDC, 4-20mA, 24VAC floating point, 24 VAC - 2 position (Normally Open or Normally Closed).
- B. For flexibility in selection and replacement of sensors, furnish controllers capable of reading sensor input ranges of 0 to 10V, 0 to 20mA, pulse counts, and 200 to 20K ohm.
- C. For flexibility in selection and replacement of binary sensors, furnish controllers supporting dry and wetted (24VAC) binary inputs.
- D. For flexibility in selection and replacement devices, furnish controller with binary outputs which can drive at least 12VA each.
- E. For flexibility in selection and replacement of motors, furnish controllers capable of outputting 24VAC (binary output), DC voltage (0 to 10VDC minimum range) and PWM (in the 80 to 100 Hz range).
- F. For future needs, an I/O that is unused by functionality of equipment control shall be available to be used by custom program on the controller and by another controller on the network.
- G. For future expansion and flexibility, furnish controllers with either on board or through expansion, 20 hardware input/output points. Expansion points must communicate with the controller via an internal communications bus. Expansion points must be capable of being mounted up to 200 meters from the controller. Expansion points that require the BACnet network for communication with the controller are not allowed.

## 2.8 AUXILIARY CONTROL DEVICES

### A. Temperature Sensors:

1. Resistance Temperature Device (RTD) or Thermistor.
2. Duct sensors shall be rigid or averaging. Averaging sensors shall be a minimum of 5 feet in length.

### B. Humidity Sensors:

1. Duct and room sensors shall have a sensing range of 20 percent to 80 percent with accuracy of plus or minus 5 percent Relative Humidity.
2. Duct sensors shall be provided with a sampling chamber.



3. Outdoor air humidity sensors shall have a sensing range of 20 percent to 95 percent Relative Humidity. It shall be suitable for ambient conditions of -40 C to 75 C (-40 F to 170 F).
  4. Humidity sensor's drift shall not exceed 1 percent of full scale per year.
- C. Static Pressure Sensors:
1. Sensor shall have linear output signal. Zero and span shall be field-adjustable.
  2. Sensor sensing elements shall withstand continuous operating conditions plus or minus 50 percent greater than calibrated span without damage.
  3. Water pressure sensor shall have stainless steel diaphragm construction, proof pressure of 150 psi minimum. Sensor shall be complete with 4-20 ma output, required mounting brackets, and block and bleed valves. Mount in location accessible for service.
  4. Water differential pressure sensor shall have stainless steel diaphragm construction, proof pressure of 150 psi minimum. Over-range limit (DP) and maximum static pressure shall be 3,000 psi. Transmitter shall be complete with 4-20 ma output, required mounting brackets, and five-valve manifold. Mount in a location accessible for service.
- D. Relays:
1. Control relays shall be UL listed plug-in type with dust cover. Contact rating, configuration, and coil voltage suitable for application.
  2. Time delay relays shall be UL listed solid-state plug-in type with adjustable time delay. Delay shall be adjustable plus or minus 200 percent (minimum) from set-point shown on plans. Contact rating, configuration, and coil voltage suitable for application. Provide NEMA 1 Type enclosure when not installed in local control panel.
- E. Transformers and Power Supplies:
1. Control transformers shall be UL listed, Class 2 current-limiting type, or shall be furnished with over-current protection in both primary and secondary circuits for Class 2 service.
  2. Unit output shall match the required output current and voltage requirements. Current output shall allow for a 50 percent safety factor. Output ripple shall be 3.0 mV maximum Peak-to-Peak. Regulation shall be 0.10 percent line and load combined, with 50 microsecond response time for 50 percent load changes. Unit shall have built-in over-voltage protection.
  3. Unit shall operate between 0 and 50 degrees C.
  4. Unit shall be UL recognized.
- F. Current Switches:
1. Current-operated switches shall be self-powered, solid state with adjustable trip current. The switches shall be selected to match the current of the application and output requirements of the DDC system.
- G. Pressure Transducers:
1. Transducer shall have linear output signal. Zero and span shall be field adjustable.

2. Transducer sensing elements shall withstand continuous operating conditions of positive or negative pressure 50 percent greater than calibrated span without damage.
3. Water pressure transducer shall have stainless steel diaphragm construction, proof pressure of 150 psi minimum. Transducer shall be complete with 4 to 20 mA output, required mounting brackets, and block and bleed valves.
4. Water differential pressure transducer shall have stainless steel diaphragm construction, proof pressure of 150 psi minimum. Over-range limit (differential pressure) and maximum static pressure shall be 300 psi. Transducer shall be complete with 4 to 20 mA output, required mounting brackets, and five-valve manifold.

H. Local Control Panels:

1. All indoor control cabinets shall be fully enclosed NEMA 1 Type construction with hinged door, and removable sub-panels or electrical sub-assemblies.
2. Interconnections between internal and face-mounted devices shall be pre-wired with color-coded stranded conductors neatly installed in plastic troughs and/or tie-wrapped. Terminals for field connections shall be UL listed for 600-volt service, individually identified per control/interlock drawings, with adequate clearance for field wiring. Control terminations for field connection shall be individually identified per control drawings.
3. Provide on-off power switch with over-current protection for control power sources to each local panel.

I. Differential Pressure Monitor:

1. Acceptable Manufacturer: TSI.
2. Mount monitor directly outside space where indicated on Drawings.
3. Differential pressure monitor includes normal and alarm status lights, a local audible alarm, alarm silence button and a local LED pressure display in inches of water. Differential pressure monitor shall continuously monitor differential pressure between the occupied room and the adjacent space and shall display the differential pressure in inches of water gauge. Monitor shall be capable of monitoring and alarming one differential pressure. In addition to differential pressure, the monitor shall continuously monitor door between the occupied room and the adjacent space. Should the door remain open beyond user specified time period, an alarm shall be annunciated at both the differential pressure monitor and the BAS/ATC system.
4. Install differential pressure monitor and its associated sensors in accordance with most current CDC Guidelines.
5. Alarms: Nurse Call system shall receive an alarm when room loses isolation status (infectious) as determined by the measured differential pressure monitor. Provide a time delay for alarms to prevent nuisance alarms during entering or exiting mode or set point changes. Monitor differential pressure monitor through nurse call system for abnormal alarm conditions, isolation room and adjacent space pressures, door alarms, pressure mode switch position and failure of device.
6. Calibration: Provide project site calibration using an NIST traceable device. Furnish Owner copies of calibration values.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine the Contract Documents for coordination of control devices their installation, wiring, and commissioning. Coordinate and review mechanical equipment specifications, locations, and identify discrepancies, conflicts, or omissions that shall be reported to the Architect for resolution before rough-in work is started.
- B. Inspect the jobsite in order to verify that control equipment can be installed as required, and report discrepancies, conflicts, or omissions to the Architect for resolution before rough-in work is started.

### 3.2 GENERAL WORKMANSHIP

- A. Install equipment, piping, wiring/conduit, parallel to building lines (i.e. horizontal, vertical, and parallel to walls) wherever possible.
- B. Provide sufficient slack and flexible connections to allow for vibration of piping and equipment.
- C. Install equipment in accessible location as defined by National Electric Code (NEC). Control panels shall be attached to structural walls or properly supported in a free-standing configuration, unless mounted in equipment enclosure specifically designed for that purpose. Panels shall be mounted to allow for unobstructed access for service.
- D. Verify integrity of control wiring to ensure continuity and freedom from shorts and grounds prior to commencing the startup and commissioning procedures.
- E. All control device installation, and wiring shall comply with Contract Documents, acceptable industry specifications, and industry standards for performance, reliability, and compatibility. Installation and wiring shall be executed in strict adherence to local codes and standard practices referenced in Contract Documents.

### 3.3 WIRING

- A. All control and interlock wiring shall comply with the National, Local Electrical Codes, and Division 26. Where the requirements of this section differ with those in Division 26, the requirements of this section shall take precedence.
- B. Wire-to-device connections shall be made at a terminal blocks or terminal strip. Wire-to wire connections shall be at a terminal block, or with a crimped connector. Wiring within enclosures shall be neatly bundled and anchored to permit access and prevent restriction to devices and terminals.
- C. Maximum allowable voltage for control wiring shall be 120 VAC. If only higher voltages are available for use, provide step-down transformers to achieve the desired control voltages.
- D. All control wiring shall be installed as continuous lengths, where possible. Make splices only within an approved junction box or other approved protective device.

- E. Conduit and wire sizing shall be determined by the BAS manufacturer in order to maintain manufacturer's recommendation and meet National and Local Codes.
- F. Locate control and status relays in pre-fabricated enclosures that meet the application. These relays may also be located within packaged equipment control panel enclosures as coordinated. These relays shall not be located within Class 1 starter enclosures.
- G. Follow manufacturer's installation recommendations for communication and network bus cabling. Network or communication cabling shall be run separately from control power wiring.
- H. Adhere to Division 26 requirements for installation of electrical raceways.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF SENSORS

- A. Mounting Heights for Space Sensors and Thermostats: 44 inches from the finished floor to the centerline of the device. If the designated location of a device places it partially between two finishes, the actual location shall be adjusted to set the device entirely on one finished surface only, but actual height shall not exceed mounting heights indicated or required by codes.
- B. Mount sensors rigidly and adequately for the environment the sensor will operate.
- C. Room temperature sensors shall be installed on concealed junction boxes properly supported by the wall framing.
- D. Seal wires attached to wall mounted sensors to prevent air from transmitting in the associated conduit and affecting the room sensor readings.
- E. Install duct static pressure tap with tube end facing directly down-stream of air flow.
- F. Install space static pressure sensor with static sensing probe applicable for space installation where applicable.
- G. Sensors used in mixing plenums shall be of the averaging type. Averaging sensors shall be installed in a serpentine manner horizontally across duct. Each bend shall be supported with a capillary clip.
- H. Conceal wiring for space sensors in building walls.
- I. Install outdoor air temperature sensors on north wall complete with sun shield at manufacturer's recommended location.

### 3.5 IDENTIFICATION OF HARDWARE AND WIRING

- A. All field wiring and cabling, including that within factory mounted, and wired control panels and devices for mechanical equipment, shall be labeled at each end within 2 inches of termination with a cable identifier and other descriptive information for troubleshooting, maintenance, and service purposes.
- B. Permanently label or code each point of field terminal strips to show the instrument or item served and correlate them to the BAS design drawings.

- C. Identify control panels with minimum 2 inch letters on laminated plastic nameplates.
- D. Identifiers shall match record documents. Label plug-in components so removal of the component does not remove the label.

### 3.6 BAS DDC CONTROLLERS

- A. Provide a separate DDC Controller for individual HVAC mechanical equipment. DDC Controllers shall be factory mounted, installed, and wired by mechanical equipment manufacturer as specified. BAS manufacturer to furnish and coordinate DDC controllers and control devices and ensure that installation and wiring adhere to BAS manufacturer's design recommendations. For those mechanical equipment units that do not have factory installed controls specified, the BAS manufacturer shall field mount controls and coordinate installation and termination information to ensure the specified sequence of operations are met.
- B. Building Controllers and Custom Application Controllers shall be selected to provide a minimum of 15 percent spare I/O point capacity for each point type (analog or digital) found at each location. If input points are not universal, 15 percent of each type is required. If outputs are not universal, 15 percent of each type is required. A minimum of one spare is required for each type of point used in each controller.
- C. Future use of spare I/O point capacity shall require providing the field instrument and control device, field wiring, engineering, programming, and commissioning. No additional Controller boards or point modules shall be required to implement use of these spare points.

### 3.7 PROGRAMMING

- A. Provide sufficient internal memory for controllers to ensure specified sequence of operations, alarming, trending, and reporting requirements are achieved. BAS manufacturer shall provide a minimum of 25 percent spare memory capacity for future use.
- B. Point Naming: System point names shall be modular in design, allowing easy operator interface without the use of a written point index.
- C. Software Programming: Provide programming for individual mechanical systems to achieve aspects of the sequence of operation specified. It is the BAS manufacturer's responsibility to ensure mechanical equipment functions and operates as specified in sequence of operations. Provide sufficient programming comments in controller application software to clearly describe each section of the program. The comment statements shall reflect the language used in the sequence of operations.

### 3.8 CLEANING

- A. The BAS manufacturer's installing contractor(s) shall clean up debris resulting from their installation activities on a daily basis. The installation contractors shall remove cartons, containers, crates, etc. under his control as soon as their contents have been removed. Waste shall be collected and placed in a location designated by the Owner, Construction Manager, General Contractor, and/or Mechanical Contractor.

- B. At the completion of work, the installation contractor shall clean of their work, including equipment, making it free from dust, dirt and debris.
- C. At the completion of work, equipment furnished under this Section shall be checked for paint damage. Repair damaged factory finished paint to match adjacent areas. Replace metal cabinets or enclosures that have been deformed with new material and repainted to match adjacent areas.

### 3.9 PROTECTION

- A. The BAS installation contractor shall protect work and material from damage by their work or personnel, and shall be liable for damages.
- B. The BAS manufacturer shall be responsible for their work and equipment until final inspection, testing, and acceptance. The BAS installing contractor shall protect their work against theft or damage, and shall carefully store material and equipment received on site that is not immediately installed. The Contractor shall close open ends of work with temporary covers or plugs during storage and construction to prevent entry of foreign objects.

### 3.10 ACCEPTANCE

- A. The BAS will not be accepted as meeting the requirements of Completion until tests described in this specification have been performed to the satisfaction of both the Engineer and Owner. Tests that cannot be performed due to circumstances beyond the control of the Contractor may be exempt from the Completion requirements if stated as such in writing by the Owner's representative. Such tests shall then be performed as part of the warranty.

### 3.11 POINT DESCRIPTIONS

- A. Refer to point descriptions attached after the end of this section.
- B. All available points from HVAC equipment shall be mapped to the BMS. The points list indicate the points required for the graphic interface. Coordinate with owner for any other points to be displayed on the graphic interface.

### 3.12 RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. BAS/ATC installer shall coordinate with HVAC Contractor to locate and identify all static pressure sensors on the project record drawings.

END OF SECTION 230923

**Points List: Boilers**

System Point Description	POINTS									ALARMS					
	GRAPHIC	ANALOG HARDWARE INPUT (AI)	BINARY HARDWARE INPUT (BI)	ANALOG HARDWARE OUTPUT (AO)	BINARY HARDWARE OUTPUT (BO)	SOFTWARE POINT (SFT)	HARDWARE INTERLOCK (HDW)	WIRELESS (WLS)	NETWORK (NET)	HIGH ANALOG LIMIT	LOW ANALOG LIMIT	BINARY	LATCH DIAGNOSTIC	SENSOR FAIL	COMMUNICATION FAIL
Boiler 1 (Master) Status	X														
Shadow Boiler 2 Status	X														
Shadow Boiler 3 Status	X														
Network System Supply	X								X	X					
Network Modulation rate	X														
Master Boiler Outdoor Temp	X														
Active Supply Target Temp	X														

**Points List: Pumps**

System Point Description	POINTS									ALARMS					
	GRAPHIC	ANALOG HARDWARE INPUT (AI)	BINARY HARDWARE INPUT (BI)	ANALOG HARDWARE OUTPUT (AO)	BINARY HARDWARE OUTPUT (BO)	SOFTWARE POINT (SFT)	HARDWARE INTERLOCK (HDW)	WIRELESS (WLS)	NETWORK (NET)	HIGH ANALOG LIMIT	LOW ANALOG LIMIT	BINARY	LATCH DIAGNOSTIC	SENSOR FAIL	COMMUNICATION FAIL
Pump VFD start/stop vs status mismatch	X											X			
Pump Status via DP sensor	X														
Pump VFD speed control	X														
Pump VFD fault	X											X			
Pump BACnet interface	X														X

**Points List: Fans & Relief Dampers**

System Point Description	POINTS								ALARMS						
	GRAPHIC	ANALOG HARDWARE INPUT (AI)	BINARY HARDWARE INPUT (BI)	ANALOG HARDWARE OUTPUT (AO)	BINARY HARDWARE OUTPUT (BO)	SOFTWARE POINT (SFT)	HARDWARE INTERLOCK (HDW)	WIRELESS (WLS)	NETWORK (NET)	HIGH ANALOG LIMIT	LOW ANALOG LIMIT	BINARY	LATCH DIAGNOSTIC	SENSOR FAIL	COMMUNICATION FAIL
Relief Damper Status	X	X				X									
Exhaust Fan Status	X	X				X									

**Points List: Temperature, Pressure, and Flow Devices**

System Point Description	POINTS								ALARMS						
	GRAPHIC	ANALOG HARDWARE INPUT (AI)	BINARY HARDWARE INPUT (BI)	ANALOG HARDWARE OUTPUT (AO)	BINARY HARDWARE OUTPUT (BO)	SOFTWARE POINT (SFT)	HARDWARE INTERLOCK (HDW)	WIRELESS (WLS)	NETWORK (NET)	HIGH ANALOG LIMIT	LOW ANALOG LIMIT	BINARY	LATCH DIAGNOSTIC	SENSOR FAIL	COMMUNICATION FAIL
Temperature Transmitter 001	X	X				X				X	X				
Temperature Transmitter 002	X	X				X				X	X				
Temperature Transmitter 003	X	X				X									
Temperature Transmitter 004	X	X				X									
Temperature Transmitter 101	X	X				X									
Temperature Transmitter 102	X	X				X									
Temperature Transmitter 201	X	X				X									
Temperature Transmitter 202	X	X				X									
Temperature Transmitter 301	X	X				X									
Temperature Transmitter 302	X	X				X									
Differential Pressure Transmitter 001	X	X				X									
Differential Pressure Transmitter 002	X	X				X									
Differential Pressure Transmitter 003	X	X				X									
Differential Pressure Transmitter 101	X	X				X									
Differential Pressure Transmitter 102	X	X				X									
Differential Pressure Transmitter 201	X	X				X									



Differential Pressure Transmitter 202	X	X				X									
Differential Pressure Transmitter 301	X	X				X									
Differential Pressure Transmitter 302	X	X				X									
Differential Pressure Transmitter 401	X	X				X									
Differential Pressure Transmitter 501	X	X				X									
Pressure Transmitter 001	X	X				X									
Pressure Transmitter 002	X	X				X									
Flow Element 001	X	X				X									

**Points List: HEATING COIL**

System Point Description	POINTS								ALARMS						
	GRAPHIC	ANALOG HARDWARE INPUT (AI)	BINARY HARDWARE INPUT (BI)	ANALOG HARDWARE OUTPUT (AO)	BINARY HARDWARE OUTPUT (BO)	SOFTWARE POINT (SFT)	HARDWARE INTERLOCK (HDW)	WIRELESS (WLS)	NETWORK (NET)	HIGH ANALOG LIMIT	LOW ANALOG LIMIT	BINARY	LATCH DIAGNOSTIC	SENSOR FAIL	COMMUNICATION FAIL
HOT WATER VALVE <b>HW VLV</b>	X			X											
SPACE TEMPERATURE LOCAL <b>SPT</b>	X							X		X	X			X	
SPACE TEMPERATURE SETPOINT LOCAL <b>SPT SP</b>	X							X							
BAS COMMUNICATION STATE <b>BAS COM</b>						X									X
MAINTENANCE REQUIRED <b>MNT REQ</b>						X						X			
OCCUPIED HEATING SETPOINT <b>OCC HT SP</b>	X					X									
OCCUPANCY STATUS <b>OCC STS</b>	X					X									
SPACE TEMPERATURE SETPOINT ACTIVE <b>SPT SP ACT</b>	X					X									
UNOCCUPIED HEATING SETPOINT <b>UNOCC HT SP</b>	X					X									

**Points List: RTU**

System Point Description	POINTS									ALARMS					
	GRAPHIC	ANALOG HARDWARE INPUT (AI)	BINARY HARDWARE INPUT (BI)	ANALOG HARDWARE OUTPUT (AO)	BINARY HARDWARE OUTPUT (BO)	SOFTWARE POINT (SFT)	HARDWARE INTERLOCK (HDW)	WIRELESS (WLS)	NETWORK (NET)	HIGH ANALOG LIMIT	LOW ANALOG LIMIT	BINARY	LATCH DIAGNOSTIC	SENSOR FAIL	COMMUNICATION FAIL
COMPRESSOR 1 COMMAND <b>CMP1</b>	X				X										
COMPRESSOR 2 COMMAND <b>CMP2</b>	X				X										
COOLING OUTPUT COMMAND <b>CLG</b>	X			X											
DISCHARGE AIR TEMPERATURE <b>DAT</b>	X	X												X	
DX COIL FROST STAT <b>FROSTAT</b>	X		X									X			
HEATING OUTPUT 1 <b>HT1</b>	X				X										
HEATING OUTPUT 2 <b>HT2</b>	X				X										
HOT GAS REHEAT VALVE COMMAND <b>HGRH</b>	X				X										
MIXED AIR DAMPER <b>MAD</b>	X			X											
OUTSIDE AIR DAMPER COMMAND <b>OAD</b>	X			X											
OUTSIDE AIR HUMIDITY LOCAL <b>OAH</b>	X	X												X	
OUTSIDE AIR TEMPERATURE LOCAL <b>OAT</b>	X	X												X	
RETURN AIR CO2 LOCAL <b>RA CO2</b>		X								X				X	
RETURN AIR HUMIDITY LOCAL <b>RAH</b>	X	X												X	
RETURN AIR TEMPERATURE LOCAL <b>RAT</b>	X	X												X	
SPACE HUMIDITY LOCAL (WIRED) <b>SPH</b>	X	X								X				X	
SPACE HUMIDITY LOCAL (WIRELESS) <b>SPH</b>	X							X							
SPACE TEMPERATURE LOCAL (WIRELESS) <b>SPT</b>	X							X		X	X				
SPACE TEMPERATURE SETPOINT LOCAL (WIRELESS) <b>SPT SP</b>	X							X							
SUPPLY FAN SPEED <b>SAF</b>				X											

SUPPLY FAN START/STOP <b>SAF</b>	X				X														
SUPPLY FAN STATUS LOCAL <b>SAF</b>	X		X																
APPLICATION MODE <b>APP MODE</b>						X													
BAS COMMUNICATION STATE <b>BAS COM</b>						X													X
COMPRESSOR ENABLE <b>CMP ENA</b>	X					X													
COMPRESSOR LOCKOUT STATUS <b>CMP LCK</b>						X													
COOL OUTPUT <b>CLG</b>						X													
DISCHARGE AIR STATIC PRESSURE SETPOINT <b>DA SP SPT</b>	X					X													
ECONOMIZER ENABLE <b>ECON ENA</b>						X													
ECONOMIZER MINIMUM POSITION SETPOINT <b>ECON MIN POS SP</b>	X					X													
FAN MODE COMMAND <b>FAN MODE</b>						X													
FILTER TIMER HOURS <b>FIL HRS</b>						X													
HEAT / COOL MODE REQUEST <b>H/C REQ</b>	X					X													
HEAT OUTPUT <b>HTG</b>						X													
OCCUPANCY <b>OCC</b>	X					X													
OCCUPIED COOLING SETPOINT <b>OCC CLG SP</b>	X					X													
SPACE CO2 HIGH LIMIT <b>SP CO2 HL</b>						X													
SPACE TEMPERATURE SETPOINT ACTIVE <b>SPT SP ACT</b>	X					X													
TIMED OVERRIDE STATUS <b>TOV</b>						X													
UNOCCUPIED COOLING SETPOINT <b>UNOCC CLG SP</b>	X					X													
UNOCCUPIED HEATING SETPOINT <b>UNOCC HTG SP</b>	X					X													

**Points List: UNIT HEATERS**

System Point Description	POINTS								ALARMS						
	GRAPHIC	ANALOG HARDWARE INPUT (AI)	BINARY HARDWARE INPUT (BI)	ANALOG HARDWARE OUTPUT (AO)	BINARY HARDWARE OUTPUT (BO)	SOFTWARE POINT (SFT)	HARDWARE INTERLOCK (HDW)	WIRELESS (WLS)	NETWORK (NET)	HIGH ANALOG LIMIT	LOW ANALOG LIMIT	BINARY	LATCH DIAGNOSTIC	SENSOR FAIL	COMMUNICATION FAIL
HOT WATER VALVE <b>HW VLV</b>	X			X											

SPACE TEMPERATURE LOCAL <b>SPT</b>	X							X		X	X			X	
SPACE TEMPERATURE SETPOINT LOCAL <b>SPT SP</b>	X							X							
SUPPLY FAN SPEED <b>SAF</b>	X			X											
SUPPLY FAN START/STOP <b>SAF</b>	X				X										
SUPPLY FAN STATUS LOCAL <b>SAF</b>	X		X												
BAS COMMUNICATION STATE <b>BAS COM</b>						X									X
SPACE TEMPERATURE SETPOINT ACTIVE <b>SPT SP ACT</b>	X					X									
UNOCCUPIED SETPOINT <b>UNOCC SP</b>	X					X									

**Points List: UNIT VENTILATOR**

System Point Description	POINTS								ALARMS						
	GRAPHIC	ANALOG HARDWARE INPUT (AI)	BINARY HARDWARE INPUT (BI)	ANALOG HARDWARE OUTPUT (AO)	BINARY HARDWARE OUTPUT (BO)	SOFTWARE POINT (SFT)	HARDWARE INTERLOCK (HDW)	WIRELESS (WLS)	NETWORK (NET)	HIGH ANALOG LIMIT	LOW ANALOG LIMIT	BINARY	LATCH DIAGNOSTIC	SENSOR FAIL	COMMUNICATION FAIL
CONDENSATE OVERFLOW DETECTION LOCAL <b>CND OVRFL</b>	X		X									X	X		
DISCHARGE AIR TEMPERATURE <b>DAT</b>	X	X								X	X			X	
HOT WATER VALVE <b>HW VLV</b>	X			X											
DX COMPRESSOR COMMAND <b>COMP</b>	X				X							X	X		
LOW LIMIT CUTOUT <b>LLT</b>	X		X									X	X		
DX CONDENSATE OVERFLOW SWITCH <b>CON OV</b>	X		X									X	X		
SPACE TEMPERATURE LOCAL <b>SPT</b>	X							X		X	X			X	
SPACE TEMPERATURE SETPOINT LOCAL <b>SPT SP</b>	X							X							
SUPPLY FAN SPEED <b>SAF</b>	X			X											
SUPPLY FAN START/STOP <b>SAF</b>	X				X										
SUPPLY FAN STATUS LOCAL <b>SAF</b>	X		X												
BAS COMMUNICATION STATE <b>BAS COM</b>						X									X
MAINTENANCE REQUIRED <b>MNT REQ</b>						X						X			

OCCUPIED BYPASS TIMER <b>OCC TMR</b>						X												
OCCUPIED SETPOINT <b>OCC SP</b>	X					X												
OCCUPANCY <b>OCC</b>																		
SPACE TEMPERATURE SETPOINT ACTIVE <b>SPT SP ACT</b>	X					X												
UNOCCUPIED SETPOINT <b>UNOCC SP</b>	X					X												

**Points List: VRF INDOOR UNIT**

System Point Description	POINTS									ALARMS								
	GRAPHIC	ANALOG HARDWARE INPUT (AI)	BINARY HARDWARE INPUT (BI)	ANALOG HARDWARE OUTPUT (AO)	BINARY HARDWARE OUTPUT (BO)	SOFTWARE POINT (SFT)	HARDWARE INTERLOCK (HDW)	WIRELESS (WLS)	NETWORK (NET)	HIGH ANALOG LIMIT	LOW ANALOG LIMIT	BINARY	LATCH DIAGNOSTIC	SENSOR FAIL	COMMUNICATION FAIL			
OCCUPANCY REQUEST	X		X															
HEAT/COOL MODE REQUEST	X		X															
FAN SPEED	X			X														
FAN STATUS	X				X													
VANE DIRECTION	X			X														
SPACE TEMPERATURE	X	X								X	X					X		
OCCUPIED COOLING SETPOINT	X	X																
OCCUPIED HEATING SETPOINT	X	X																
SETPOINT DEADBAND	X	X																
UNOCCUPIED COOLING SETPOINT	X	X																
UNOCCUPIED HEATING SETPOINT	X	X																
ERROR STATUS	X				X													

**Points List: VRF OUTDOOR UNIT**

System Point Description	POINTS									ALARMS								
	GRAPHIC	ANALOG HARDWARE INPUT (AI)	BINARY HARDWARE INPUT (BI)	ANALOG HARDWARE OUTPUT (AO)	BINARY HARDWARE OUTPUT (BO)	SOFTWARE POINT (SFT)	HARDWARE INTERLOCK (HDW)	WIRELESS (WLS)	NETWORK (NET)	HIGH ANALOG LIMIT	LOW ANALOG LIMIT	BINARY	LATCH DIAGNOSTIC	SENSOR FAIL	COMMUNICATION FAIL			
CONTROL MODE STATUS	X		X															

OPERATIONAL MODE STATUS	X		X															
FAN STATE	X		X															
FAN OUTPUT	X	X																
REVERSING VALVE POSITION	X		X															
OUTSIDE AIR TEMPERATURE	X	X																
HIGH SIDE SATURATION TEMPERATURE	X	X																
LOW SIDE SATURATION TEMPERATURE	X	X																
INVERTER HEAT SINK TEMPERATURE	X	X																
REFRIGERANT HIGH SIDE PRESSURE	X	X																
REFRIGERANT LOW SIDE PRESSURE	X	X																
SUCTION LINE TEMPERATURE	X	X																

## SECTION 230923.11 - CONTROL VALVES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product, including the following:
  1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
  2. Operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories indicating process operating range, accuracy over range, control signal over range, default control signal with loss of power, calibration data specific to each unique application, electrical power requirements, and limitations of ambient operating environment, including temperature and humidity.
  3. Product description with complete technical data, performance curves, and product specification sheets.
  4. Installation, operation, and maintenance instructions, including factors affecting performance.

#### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For control valves to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASME Compliance: Fabricate and label products to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code where required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Ground Fault: Products shall not fail due to ground fault condition when suitably grounded.
- D. Environmental Conditions:
- E. Determine control valve sizes and flow coefficients by ISA 75.01.01.

F. Control valve characteristics and rangeability shall comply with ISA 75.11.01.

G. Selection Criteria:

1. Control valves shall be suitable for operation at following conditions:
  - a. Heating Hot Water: 100 psi @ 240 deg F
2. Control valve shutoff classifications shall be FCI 70-2, Class IV or better unless otherwise indicated.
3. Valve pattern, three-way or straight through, shall be as indicated on Drawings.
4. Modulating straight-through pattern control valves shall have equal percentage flow-throttling characteristics unless otherwise indicated.
5. Modulating three-way pattern water valves shall have linear flow-throttling characteristics. The total flow through the valve shall remain constant regardless of the valve's position.
6. Fail positions unless otherwise indicated:
  - a. Heating Hot Water: Last position.
7. Globe-type control valves shall pass the design flow required with not more than 95 percent of stem lift unless otherwise indicated.
8. Rotary-type control valves, such as ball and butterfly valves, shall have Cv falling between 65 and 75 degrees of valve full open position and minimum valve Cv between 15 and 25 percent of open position.
9. Selection shall consider viscosity, flashing, and cavitation corrections.
10. Valves shall have stable operation throughout full range of operation, from design to minimum Cv.
11. Minimum Cv shall be calculated at 10 percent of design flow, with a coincident pressure differential equal to the system design pump head.
12. In water systems, select modulating control valves at terminal equipment for a design Cv based on a pressure drop of 5 psig at design flow unless otherwise indicated.
13. Two-position control valves shall be line size unless otherwise indicated.
14. In water systems, use ball- or globe-style control valves for two-position control for valves NPS 2 and smaller and butterfly style for valves larger than NPS 2.

## 2.2 BALL-STYLE CONTROL VALVES

A. Ball Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Belimo Aircontrols (USA), Inc.
  - b. Honeywell Building Solutions; Honeywell International, Inc.
  - c. Johnson Controls, Inc.
  - d. NIBCO INC.
2. Pressure Rating for NPS 1 and Smaller: Nominal 600 WOG.



3. Close-off Pressure: 200 psig.
4. Process Temperature Range: Zero to 212 deg F.
5. Body and Tail Piece: Cast bronze ASTM B61, ASTM B62, ASTM B584, or forged brass with nickel plating.
6. End Connections: Threaded (NPT) ends.
7. Stem and Stem Extension:
  - a. Material to match ball.
  - b. Blowout-proof design.
  - c. Sleeve or other approved means to allow valve to be opened and closed without damaging the insulation or the vapor barrier seal.
8. Ball Seats: Reinforced PTFE.
9. Stem Seal: Reinforced PTFE packing ring with a threaded packing ring follower to retain the packing ring under design pressure with the linkage removed. Alternative means, such as EPDM O-rings, are acceptable if an equivalent cycle endurance can be demonstrated by testing.

### 2.3 ELECTRIC AND ELECTRONIC CONTROL VALVE ACTUATORS

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Belimo Aircontrols (USA), Inc.
  - b. Honeywell Building Solutions; Honeywell International, Inc.
  - c. Johnson Controls, Inc.
  - d. NIBCO INC.
- B. Actuators for Hydronic Control Valves: Capable of closing valve against system pump shutoff head.
- C. Position indicator and graduated scale on each actuator.
- D. Type: Motor operated, with or without gears, electric and electronic.
- E. Voltage: 24-V ac.
- F. Deliver torque required for continuous uniform movement of controlled device from limit to limit when operated at rated voltage.
- G. Function properly within a range of 85 to 120 percent of nameplate voltage.
- H. Field Adjustment:
  1. Spring Return Actuators: Easily switchable from fail open to fail closed in the field without replacement.
  2. Gear Type Actuators: External manual adjustment mechanism to allow manual positioning when the actuator is not powered.

I. Modulating Actuators:

1. Operation: Capable of stopping at all points across full range, and starting in either direction from any point in range.
2. Provide with electronic fail-safe actuator to fail in the open position.
3. Control Input Signal: Coordinate with Trane controller
  - a. Programmable Multi-Function:
    - 1) Control Input, Position Feedback, and Running Time: Factory or field programmable.
    - 2) Diagnostic: Feedback of hunting or oscillation, mechanical overload, mechanical travel, and mechanical load limit.
    - 3) Service Data: Include, at a minimum, number of hours powered and number of hours in motion.

J. Integral Overload Protection:

1. Provide against overload throughout the entire operating range in both directions.
2. Electronic overload, digital rotation sensing circuitry, mechanical end switches, or magnetic clutches are acceptable methods of protection.

K. Valve Attachment:

1. Unless otherwise required for valve interface, provide an actuator designed to be directly coupled to valve shaft without the need for connecting linkages.
2. Attach actuator to valve drive shaft in a way that ensures maximum transfer of power and torque without slippage.
3. Bolt and set screw method of attachment is acceptable only if provided with at least two points of attachment.

L. Temperature and Humidity:

1. Temperature: Suitable for operating temperature range encountered by application with minimum operating temperature range of minus 20 to plus 120 deg F.
2. Humidity: Suitable for humidity range encountered by application; minimum operating range shall be from 5 to 95 percent relative humidity, non-condensing.

M. Enclosure:

1. Suitable for ambient conditions encountered by application.
2. NEMA 250, Type 2 for indoor and protected applications.
3. NEMA 250, Type 4 or Type 4X for outdoor and unprotected applications.
4. Provide actuator enclosure with heater and control where required by application.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for valves installed in piping to verify actual locations of piping connections before installation.
- C. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Furnish and install products required to satisfy most stringent requirements indicated.
- B. Install products level, plumb, parallel, and perpendicular with building construction.
- C. Properly support instruments, tubing, piping, wiring, and conduits to comply with requirements indicated. Brace all products to prevent lateral movement and sway or a break in attachment.
- D. Provide ceiling, floor, roof, and wall openings and sleeves required by installation. Before proceeding with drilling, punching, or cutting, check location first for concealed products that could potentially be damaged. Patch, flash, grout, seal, and refinish openings to match adjacent condition.
- E. Firestop penetrations made in fire-rated assemblies and seal penetrations made in acoustically rated assemblies.
- F. Fastening Hardware:
  - 1. Stillson wrenches, pliers, and other tools that will cause injury to or mar surfaces of rods, nuts, and other parts are prohibited for assembling and tightening nuts.
  - 2. Tighten bolts and nuts firmly and uniformly. Do not overstress threads by excessive force or by oversized wrenches.
  - 3. Lubricate threads of bolts, nuts, and screws with graphite and oil before assembly.
- G. Install products in locations that are accessible and that will permit calibration and maintenance from floor, equipment platforms, or catwalks. Where ladders are required for Owner's access, confirm unrestricted ladder placement is possible under occupied condition.

### 3.3 ELECTRIC POWER

- A. Furnish and install electrical power to products requiring electrical connections.
- B. Furnish and install circuit breakers. Comply with requirements in Section 262816 "Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers."

- C. Furnish and install power wiring. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- D. Furnish and install raceways. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

### 3.4 CONTROL VALVES

- A. Install pipe reducers for valves smaller than line size. Position reducers as close to valve as possible but at distance to avoid interference and impact to performance. Install with manufacturer-recommended clearance.
- B. Install flanges or unions to allow drop-in and -out valve installation.
- C. Valve Orientation:
  - 1. Where possible, install globe and ball valves installed in horizontal piping with stems upright and not more than 15 degrees off of vertical, not inverted.
  - 2. Install valves in a position to allow full stem movement.
  - 3. Where possible, install butterfly valves that are installed in horizontal piping with stems in horizontal position and with low point of disc opening with direction of flow.
- D. Clearance:
  - 1. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support of valves that cannot be handled by service personnel without hoisting mechanism.
  - 2. Install valves with at least 12 inches of clear space around valve and between valves and adjacent surfaces.
- E. Threaded Valves:
  - 1. Note internal length of threads in valve ends, and proximity of valve internal seat or wall, to determine how far pipe should be threaded into valve.
  - 2. Align threads at point of assembly.
  - 3. Apply thread compound to external pipe threads, except where dry seal threading is specified.
  - 4. Assemble joint, wrench tight. Apply wrench on valve end as pipe is being threaded.

### 3.5 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect electrical devices and components to electrical grounding system. Comply with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

### 3.6 CLEANING

- A. Remove grease, mastic, adhesives, dust, dirt, stains, fingerprints, labels, and other foreign materials from exposed interior and exterior surfaces.
- B. Wash and shine glazing.

- C. Polish glossy surfaces to a clean shine.

### 3.7 CHECKOUT PROCEDURES

#### A. Control Valve Checkout:

1. Check installed products before continuity tests, leak tests, and calibration.
2. Check valves for proper location and accessibility.
3. Check valves for proper installation for direction of flow, elevation, orientation, insertion depth, or other applicable considerations that will impact performance.
4. Verify that control valves are installed correctly for flow direction.
5. Verify that valve body attachment is properly secured and sealed.
6. Verify that valve actuator and linkage attachment are secure.
7. Verify that actuator wiring is complete, enclosed, and connected to correct power source.
8. Verify that valve ball, disc, and plug travel are unobstructed.
9. After piping systems have been tested and put into service, but before insulating and balancing, inspect each valve for leaks. Adjust or replace packing to stop leaks. Replace the valve if leaks persist.

### 3.8 ADJUSTMENT, CALIBRATION, AND TESTING

- A. Stroke and adjust control valves following manufacturer's recommended procedure, from 100 percent open to 100 percent closed back to 100 percent open.
- B. Stroke control valves with pilot positioners. Adjust valve and positioner following manufacturer's recommended procedure, so valve is 100 percent closed, 50 percent closed, and 100 percent open at proper air pressures.
- C. Check and document open and close cycle times for applications with a cycle time of less than 30 seconds.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 230923.12 - CONTROL DAMPERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 ACTION SUBMITTALS

##### A. Product Data: For each type of damper and actuator:

1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
2. Operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories indicating process operating range, accuracy over range, control signal over range, default control signal with loss of power, calibration data specific to each unique application, electrical power requirements, and limitations of ambient operating environment, including temperature and humidity.
3. Product description with complete technical data, performance curves, and product specification sheets.
4. Installation instructions, including factors affecting performance.

##### B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
2. Include details of product assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

#### 1.2 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

##### A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For control dampers.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASHRAE 62.1 Compliance: Applicable outdoor ventilation requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
- C. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."
- D. Code Compliance: Comply with governing energy code.

- E. Ground Fault: Properly ground products to prevent failing due to ground fault conditions.
- F. Selection Criteria:
  - 1. Pressure and Temperature: Control dampers suitable for operating conditions encountered by the application
  - 2. Fail-Safe Positions:
    - a. Return Air: Open.
    - b. Outdoor Air: Close.
    - c. Relief Air: Close.
  - 3. Select dampers with smooth and stable operation throughout full range of operation over varying pressures and temperatures encountered.

## 2.2 RECTANGULAR CONTROL DAMPERS

- A. General Requirements:
- B. Rectangular Control Dampers with Aluminum Airfoil Blades and Frames:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. American Warming and Ventilating (AWV); Mestek, Inc.
    - b. Arrow United Industries; Mestek, Inc.
    - c. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
    - d. Ruskin; Air Distribution Technologies, Inc.; Johnson Controls, Inc.
  - 2. Source Limitations: Obtain rectangular control dampers from single manufacturer.

## 2.3 GENERAL CONTROL-DAMPER ACTUATORS REQUIREMENTS

- A. Select actuators to operate related damper(s) with sufficient reserve power to provide smooth modulating action or two-position action and proper speed of response at velocity and pressure conditions to which the damper is subjected.
- B. Select actuators with sufficient power and torque to close off against the maximum system pressures encountered. Actuators are to be sized to close off against the fan shutoff pressure as a minimum requirement.
- C. The total damper area operated by an actuator is not to exceed 80 percent of manufacturer's maximum area rating.
- D. Provide one actuator for each damper assembly where possible. Operate multiple actuators required to drive a single damper assembly in unison.
- E. Avoid the use of excessively oversized actuators, which could overdrive and cause linkage failure when the damper blade has reached either its full open or closed position.

- F. Use jackshafts and shaft couplings in lieu of blade-to-blade linkages when driving axially aligned damper sections.
- G. Provide mounting hardware and linkages for connecting actuator to damper.
- H. Select actuators to fail-safe in desired position in the event of a power and signal failure.

#### 2.4 ELECTRIC AND ELECTRONIC CONTROL-DAMPER ACTUATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Belimo Aircontrols (USA), Inc.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain electric and electronic control-damper actuators from single manufacturer.
- C. Type: Motor operated, with or without gears, electric and electronic.
- D. Voltage:
  - 1. 24 V.
  - 2. Actuator to deliver torque required for continuous uniform movement of controlled device from limit to limit when operated at rated voltage.
  - 3. Actuator to function properly within a range of 85 to 120 percent of nameplate voltage.
- E. Local Field Adjustment: Make spring-return actuators easily switchable from fail-safe open to fail-safe closed in the field without replacement.
- F. Local Manual Override: Provide gear-type actuators with an external manual adjustment mechanism to allow manual positioning of the damper when the actuator is not powered.
- G. Two-Position Actuators: Single direction, spring return or reversing type.
- H. Modulating Actuators:
  - 1. Capable of stopping at all points across full range, and starting in either direction from any point in range.
  - 2. Control Input Signal:
    - a. Coordinate with BMS.
    - b. Programmable Multifunction:
      - 1) Control input, position feedback, and running time are to be factory or field programmable.
      - 2) Diagnostic feedback of hunting or oscillation, mechanical overload, mechanical travel, and mechanical load limit.
      - 3) Service data, including at a minimum, number of hours powered and number of hours in motion.
- I. Position Feedback:



1. Equip two-position actuators with limit switches or other positive means of a position indication signal for remote monitoring of open and close position.
2. Equip modulating actuators with a position feedback through current or voltage signal for remote monitoring.
3. Provide a position indicator and graduated scale on each actuator indicating open and closed travel limits.

J. Fail-Safe:

1. Where indicated, provide actuator to fail-safe to an end position.
2. Internal spring-return mechanism to drive controlled device to an end position (open or close) on loss of power.
3. Batteries, capacitors, and other non-mechanical forms of fail-safe operation are acceptable only where uniquely indicated.

K. Integral Overload Protection:

1. Provide against overload throughout the entire operating range in both directions.
2. Electronic overload, digital rotation sensing circuitry, mechanical end switches, or magnetic clutches are acceptable methods of protection.

L. Damper Attachment:

1. Unless otherwise required for damper interface, provide actuator designed to be directly coupled to damper shaft without need for connecting linkages.
2. Attach actuator to damper drive shaft in a way that ensures maximum transfer of power and torque without slippage.
3. Bolt and setscrew method of attachment is acceptable only if provided with at least two points of attachment.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for dampers and instruments installed in duct systems to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- C. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Furnish and install products required to satisfy most stringent requirements indicated.

- B. Properly support dampers and actuators, tubing, wiring, and conduit to comply with requirements indicated. Brace all products to prevent lateral movement and sway or a break in attachment when subjected to a seismic, wind, or others forces common to the application.
- C. Provide ceiling, floor, roof, and wall openings, and sleeves required by installation. Before proceeding with drilling, punching, or cutting, check location first for concealed products that could potentially be damaged. Patch, flash, grout, seal, and refinish openings to match adjacent condition.
- D. Seal penetrations made in fire-rated and acoustically rated assemblies.
- E. Fastening Hardware:
  - 1. Wrenches, pliers, or other tools that will cause injury to or mar surfaces of rods, nuts, and other parts are prohibited for assembling and tightening nuts.
  - 2. Tighten bolts and nuts firmly and uniformly. Do not overstress threads by excessive force or by oversized wrenches.
  - 3. Lubricate threads of bolts, nuts, and screws with graphite and oil before assembly.
- F. Install products in locations that are accessible and that will permit calibration and maintenance from floor, equipment platforms, or catwalks. Where ladders are required for Owner's access, confirm unrestricted ladder placement is possible under occupied condition.

### 3.3 CONTROL DAMPERS

- A. Clearance:
  - 1. Locate dampers for easy access and provide separate support of dampers that cannot be handled by service personnel without hoisting mechanism.
  - 2. Install dampers with at least 24 inches of clear space on sides of dampers requiring service access unless more space is recommended by manufacturer. Provide code required clearances as applicable.
- B. Service Access:
  - 1. Install dampers and actuators to be accessible for visual inspection and service.
  - 2. Install access door(s) in duct or equipment located upstream of damper to allow service personnel to hand clean any portion of damper, linkage, and actuator. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- C. Install dampers straight and true, level in all planes, and square in all dimensions.
- D. Install supplementary structural reinforcement for large multiple-section dampers if factory-furnished support alone cannot handle loading.
- E. Attach field-installed actuator(s) to damper drive shaft.
- F. For duct-mounted and equipment-mounted dampers installed outside of equipment, install a visible and accessible indication of damper position from outside.

### 3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Each piece of wire, cable, and tubing is to have the same designation at each end for operators to determine continuity at points of connection. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Install engraved phenolic nameplate with damper identification on damper and on face of ceiling where damper is concealed above ceiling.

### 3.5 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install electrical power to field-mounted control devices requiring electrical power.
- B. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" and Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."
- C. Ground equipment in accordance with Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- D. Furnish and install raceways. Comply with requirements in Section 260533.13 "Conduits for Electrical Systems."
- E. Furnish and install circuit breakers. Comply with requirements in Section 262816 "Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers."
- F. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, in accordance with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- G. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
  - 1. Nameplate to be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  - 2. Nameplate to be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch high.

### 3.6 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control signal wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control signal wiring in accordance with Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."
- C. Furnish and install raceways. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

### 3.7 CLEANING

- A. Remove grease, mastic, adhesives, dust, dirt, stains, fingerprints, labels, and other foreign materials from exposed surfaces.

### 3.8 STARTUP

- A. Control-Damper Checkout:
  - 1. Check installed products before continuity tests, leak tests, and calibration.
  - 2. Check dampers for proper location and accessibility.
  - 3. Verify that control dampers are installed correctly for flow direction.
  - 4. Verify that proper blade alignment, either parallel or opposed, has been provided.
  - 5. Verify that damper frame attachment is properly secured and sealed.
  - 6. Verify that damper actuator and damper linkage attachment are secure.
  - 7. Verify that actuator wiring is complete, enclosed, and connected to correct power source.
  - 8. Verify that damper blade travel is smooth and unobstructed throughout operating range.

### 3.9 ADJUSTMENT, CALIBRATION, AND TESTING:

- A. Stroke and adjust control dampers following manufacturer's recommended procedure, from 100 percent open to 100 percent closed back to 100 percent open.
- B. Stroke control dampers with pilot positioners. Adjust damper and positioner following manufacturer's recommended procedure, so damper is 100 percent closed, 50 percent closed, and 100 percent open at proper air pressure.
- C. For control dampers equipped with positive position indication, check feedback signal at multiple positions to confirm proper position indication.

END OF SECTION 230923.12

## SECTION 230923.23 - PRESSURE INSTRUMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 ACTION SUBMITTALS

##### A. Product Data: For each type of product, including the following:

1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
2. Operating characteristics; electrical characteristics; and furnished accessories indicating process operating range, accuracy over range, control signal over range, default control signal with loss of power, calibration data specific to each unique application, electrical power requirements, and limitations of ambient operating environment, including temperature and humidity.
3. Product description with complete technical data, performance curves, and product specification sheets.
4. Installation instructions, including factors affecting performance.

##### B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
2. Include details of product assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Number-coded identification system for unique identification of wiring, cable, and tubing ends.

#### 1.2 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- ##### A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For instruments to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

##### A. Environmental Conditions:

1. Instruments shall operate without performance degradation under the ambient environmental temperature, pressure, humidity, and vibration conditions specified and encountered for installed location.
  - a. If instrument alone cannot comply with requirement, install instrument in a protective enclosure that is isolated and protected from conditions impacting

performance. Enclosure shall be internally insulated, electrically heated[ and cooled], filtered, and ventilated as required by instrument and application.

2. Instruments and accessories shall be protected with enclosures satisfying the following minimum requirements unless more stringent requirements are indicated. Instruments not available with integral enclosures complying with requirements indicated shall be housed in protective secondary enclosures. Instrument-installed location shall dictate following NEMA 250 enclosure requirements:
  - a. Outdoors, Protected: Type 12.
  - b. Indoors, Heated with Filtered Ventilation: Type 1.
  - c. Indoors, Heated and Air-Conditioned: Type 1.
  - d. Mechanical Equipment Rooms:
    - 1) Boiler Rooms: Type 4X.

## 2.2 LIQUID-PRESSURE SWITCHES

### A. Liquid Gage Pressure Switch-Diaphragm Operated:

1. Diaphragm operated to actuate a SPDT or DPDT snap switch.
2. Electrical Connections: Screw terminal.
3. Enclosure Conduit Connection: Knock out or threaded connection.
4. User Interface: Internal hex nut set-point adjustment with enclosed set-point indicator and scale.
5. Enclosure:
  - a. Dry Indoor Installations: NEMA 250, Type 1, 12.
  - b. Outdoor and Wet Indoor Installations: NEMA 250, Type 4X.
  - c. Hazardous Environments: Explosion proof.
6. Operating Data:
  - a. Electrical Rating: 15 A at 120-, 240-, and 480-V ac.
  - b. Pressure Limits: 1200 psig.
  - c. Ambient Temperature Limits: Minus 30 to 180 deg F.
  - d. Process Temperature Limits: Minus 4 to 167 deg F.
  - e. Adjustable Operating Range: 10 to 150 psig.
  - f. Deadband: Adjustable.

### B. Liquid-Pressure Differential Switch:

1. Description:
  - a. Type 316 stainless-steel double opposing bellows operate to actuate an SPDT snap switch.
  - b. Wetted materials: Type 316 stainless steel.
  - c. Seal: Buna-N or Viton.
  - d. Electrical Connections: Screw terminal.

- e. Enclosure Conduit Connection: Knock out or threaded connection.
- f. User Interface: Thumbscrew set-point adjustment with enclosed set-point indicator and scale.
- g. High and Low Process Connections: Threaded, NPS 1/4.
- h. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4 or 4X.
- i. Operating Data:
  - 1) Electrical Rating: 10 A at 120- to 240-V ac.
  - 2) Pressure Limits: Zero to 500 psig
  - 3) Ambient Temperature Limits: Minus 20 to 150 deg F.
  - 4) Process Temperature Limits: 20 to 300 deg F.
  - 5) Operating Range: 2 times set point, unless otherwise required by application.
  - 6) Deadband: Adjustable or fixed as required by application.
- j. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

## 2.3 LIQUID-PRESSURE TRANSMITTERS

### A. Liquid-Pressure Differential Transmitter:

1. Performance:
  - a. Range: Approximately 2 times set point.
  - b. Span: Adjustable plus or minus one milliamp, noninteractive.
  - c. Accuracy: Within 0.25 percent of full scale.
  - d. Pressure: Maximum operating pressure 2.5 times range.
  - e. Temperature Limits: Zero to 175 deg F.
  - f. Compensate Temperature Limits: 30 to 150 deg F.
  - g. Thermal Effects: 0.02 percent of full scale per degree F.
  - h. Response Time: 30 to 50 ms.
  - i. Shock and vibration shall not harm the transmitter.
2. Analog Output Current Signal:
  - a. Two-wire, 4- to 20-mA dc current source.
  - b. Signal capable of operating into 1000-ohm load.
3. Operator Interface:
  - a. Zero and span adjustments located behind cover.
  - b. Bleed screws on side of body, two screws on low-pressure side, and one screw on high-pressure side, for air in line and pressure cavity.
4. Construction:
  - a. Aluminum and stainless-steel enclosure with removable cover.
  - b. Wetted parts of transmitter constructed of 17-4 PH or 300 Series stainless steel.
  - c. Threaded, NPS 1/4 process connections on side of instrument enclosure.

- d. Knock out for 1/2-inch nominal conduit connection on side of instrument enclosure.
- e. Screw terminal block for wire connections.
- f. NEMA 250, Type 4X.
- g. Mounting Bracket: Appropriate for installation.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for instruments installed in piping to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- C. Examine roughing-in for instruments installed in duct systems to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- D. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install products level, plumb, parallel, and perpendicular with building construction.
- B. Properly support instruments, tubing, piping wiring, and conduit to comply with requirements indicated.
- C. Provide ceiling, floor, roof, wall openings, and sleeves required by installation. Before proceeding with drilling, punching, or cutting, check location first for concealed products that could potentially be damaged. Patch, flash, grout, seal, and refinish openings to match adjacent condition.
- D. Fastening Hardware:
  - 1. Stillson wrenches, pliers, and other tools that cause injury to or mar surfaces of rods, nuts, and other parts are prohibited for work of assembling and tightening nuts.
  - 2. Tighten bolts and nuts firmly and uniformly. Do not overstress threads by using excessive force or oversized wrenches.
  - 3. Lubricate threads of bolts, nuts, and screws with graphite and oil before assembly.
- E. Install products in locations that are accessible and that permit calibration and maintenance from floor, equipment platforms, or catwalks. Where ladders are required for Owner's access, confirm unrestricted ladder placement is possible under occupied condition.
- F. Corrosive Environments:



1. Use products that are suitable for environment to which they are subjected.
2. If possible, avoid or limit use of materials in corrosive environments.
3. When conduit is in contact with a corrosive environment, use Type 316 stainless-steel conduit and fittings or conduit and fittings that are coated with a corrosive-resistant coating that is suitable for environment.
4. Where instruments are located in a corrosive environment and are not corrosive resistant from the manufacturer, field install products in a NEMA 250, Type 4X enclosure constructed of Type 316L stainless steel.

### 3.3 ELECTRICAL POWER

- A. Furnish and install electrical power to products requiring electrical connections.
- B. Furnish and install circuit breakers. Comply with requirements in Section 262816 "Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers."
- C. Furnish and install power wiring. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- D. Furnish and install raceways. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

### 3.4 PRESSURE INSTRUMENT INSTALLATION

#### A. Liquid-Pressure Differential Switches:

1. Where process connections are located in mechanical equipment room, install switch in convenient and accessible location near system control panel.
2. Where process connections are installed outside mechanical rooms, route processing tubing to mechanical room housing system control panel and locate switch near system control panel.
3. Where multiple switches serving same system are installed in same room, install switches by system to provide service personnel a single and convenient location for inspection and service.
4. System process tubing connection shall be full size of switch connection. Install bushing if required to mate switch to system connection.
5. Connect process tubing from point of system connection and extend to switch.
6. Install isolation valves in process tubing as close to system connection as practical.
7. Install dirt leg and drain valve at each switch connection.
8. Do not mount switches on rotating equipment.
9. Install switches in a location free from vibration, heat, moisture, or adverse effects, which could damage the switch and hinder accurate operation.
10. Install switches in an easily accessible location serviceable from floor.

#### B. Liquid-Pressure Transmitters:

1. Where process connections are installed in mechanical equipment room, install transmitter in convenient and accessible location near system control panel.

2. Where process connections are installed outside mechanical rooms, route processing tubing to mechanical room housing system control panel and locate transmitter near system control panel.
3. Where multiple transmitters serving same system are installed in same room, install transmitters by system to provide service personnel a single and convenient location for inspection and service.
4. System process tubing connection shall be full size of switch connection. Install bushing if required to mate switch to system connection.
5. Connect process tubing from point of system connection and extend to transmitter.
6. Install isolation valves in process tubing as close to system connection as practical.
7. Install dirt leg and drain valve at each transmitter connection.
8. Do not mount transmitters on equipment.
9. Install in a location free from vibration, heat, moisture, or adverse effects, which could damage and hinder accurate operation.

### 3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Each piece of wire, cable, and tubing shall have the same designation at each end for operators to determine continuity at points of connection. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Install engraved phenolic nameplate with instrument identification.

### 3.6 CHECKOUT PROCEDURES

- A. Check out installed products before continuity tests, leak tests, and calibration.
- B. Check instruments for proper location and accessibility.
- C. Check instruments for proper installation with respect to direction of flow, elevation, orientation, insertion depth, or other applicable considerations that impact performance.

### 3.7 ADJUSTMENT, CALIBRATION, AND TESTING

- A. Description:
  1. Calibrate each instrument installed that is not factory calibrated and provided with calibration documentation.
  2. Provide a written description of proposed field procedures and equipment for calibrating each type of instrument. Submit procedures before calibration and adjustment.
  3. For each analog instrument, perform a three-point calibration test for both linearity and accuracy.
  4. Equipment and procedures used for calibration shall comply with instrument manufacturer's recommendations.
  5. Provide diagnostic and test equipment for calibration and adjustment.
  6. Field instruments and equipment used to test and calibrate installed instruments shall have accuracy at least twice the instrument accuracy being calibrated. For example, an

installed instrument with an accuracy of 1 percent shall be checked by an instrument with an accuracy of 0.5 percent.

7. Calibrate each instrument according to instrument instruction manual supplied by manufacturer.
8. If, after calibration, indicated performance cannot be achieved, replace out-of-tolerance instruments.
9. Comply with field-testing requirements and procedures indicated by ASHRAE Guideline 11, "Field Testing of HVAC Control Components," in the absence of specific requirements, and to supplement requirements indicated.

B. Analog Signals:

1. Check analog voltage signals using a precision voltage meter at zero, 50, and 100 percent.
2. Check analog current signals using a precision current meter at zero, 50, and 100 percent.

C. Digital Signals:

1. Check digital signals using a jumper wire.
2. Check digital signals using an ohmmeter to test for contact.

D. Sensors: Check sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of project design values.

E. Switches: Calibrate switches to make or break contact at set points indicated.

F. Transmitters:

1. Check and calibrate transmitters at zero, 50, and 100 percent of project design values.

### 3.8 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain instrumentation and control devices.
- B. Coordinate pressure instrument demonstration video with operation and maintenance manuals and classroom instruction for use by Owner in operating, maintaining, and troubleshooting.
- C. Owner shall have right to make additional copies of video for internal use without paying royalties.

## SECTION 230923.27 - TEMPERATURE INSTRUMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product, including the following:
  - 1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
  - 2. Operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories indicating process operating range, accuracy over range, control signal over range, default control signal with loss of power, calibration data specific to each unique application, electrical power requirements, and limitations of ambient operating environment, including temperature and humidity.
  - 3. Product description with complete technical data, performance curves, and product specification sheets.
  - 4. Installation operation and maintenance instructions, including factors affecting performance.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
  - 2. Include details of product assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
  - 4. Include number-coded identification system for unique identification of wiring, cable, and tubing ends.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each product requiring a certificate.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

#### A. Environmental Conditions:

1. Instruments shall operate without performance degradation under the ambient environmental temperature, pressure, humidity, and vibration conditions specified and encountered for installed location.
2. Instruments and accessories shall be protected with enclosures satisfying the following minimum requirements unless more stringent requirements are indicated. Instruments not available with integral enclosures complying with requirements indicated shall be housed in protective secondary enclosures. Instrument's installed location shall dictate following NEMA 250 enclosure requirements:
  - a. Indoors, Heated with Filtered Ventilation: Type 2.
  - b. Indoors, Heated with Non-Filtered Ventilation: Type 2.
  - c. Indoors, Heated and Air Conditioned: Type 1.
  - d. Mechanical Equipment Rooms:
    - 1) Chiller and Boiler Rooms: Type 12.
    - 2) Air-Moving Equipment Rooms: Type 12.
  - e. Within Duct Systems and Air-Moving Equipment Not Exposed to Possible Condensation: Type 2.
  - f. Within Duct Systems and Air-Moving Equipment Exposed to Possible Condensation: Type 4.

### 2.2 AIR TEMPERATURE SENSORS

#### A. Platinum RTDs: Common Requirements:

1. 100 or 1000 ohms at zero deg C and a temperature coefficient of 0.00385 ohm/ohm/deg C.
2. Two-wire, PTFE-insulated, 22-gage stranded copper leads.
3. Performance Characteristics:
  - a. Range: Minus 50 to 275 deg F.
  - b. Interchangeable Accuracy: At 32 deg F within 0.5 deg F.
  - c. Repeatability: Within 0.5 deg F.
  - d. Self-Heating: Negligible.
4. Transmitter Requirements:
  - a. Transmitter required for each 100-ohm RTD.
  - b. Transmitter optional for 1000-ohm RTD, contingent on compliance with end-to-end control accuracy.

#### B. Platinum RTD, Single-Point Air Temperature Duct Sensors:

1. 100 or 1000 ohms.
2. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to 275 deg F
3. Probe: Single-point sensor with a stainless-steel sheath.
4. Length: As required by application to achieve tip at midpoint of air tunnel, up to 18 inches.
5. Enclosure: Junction box with removable cover; NEMA 250, Type 1 for indoor applications and Type 4 for outdoor applications.
6. Gasket for attachment to duct or equipment to seal penetration airtight.
7. Conduit Connection: 1/2-inch

C. Platinum RTD Outdoor Air Temperature Sensors:

1. 100 or 1000 ohms.
2. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to 275 deg F
3. Probe: Single-point sensor with a stainless-steel sheath.
4. Solar Shield: Stainless steel.
5. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4 or 4X junction box or combination conduit and outlet box with removable cover and gasket.
6. Conduit Connection: 1/2-inch trade size.

D. Platinum RTD Space Air Temperature Sensors:

1. 100 or 1000 ohms.
2. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to 212 deg F
3. Sensor assembly shall include a temperature sensing element mounted under a bright white, non-yellowing, plastic or flush, brushed-aluminum cover.
4. Provide a mounting plate that is compatible with the surface shape that it is mounted to and electrical box used.
5. Concealed wiring connection.

E. Thermal Resistors (Thermistors): Common Requirements:

1. 10,000 ohms at 25 deg C and a temperature coefficient of 23.5 ohms/ohm/deg C.
2. Two-wire, PTFE-insulated, 22-gage stranded copper leads.
3. Performance Characteristics:
  - a. Range: Minus 50 to 275 deg F.
  - b. Interchangeable Accuracy: At 77 deg F within 0.5 deg F.
  - c. Repeatability: Within 0.5 deg F.
  - d. Drift: Within 0.5 deg F over 10 years.
  - e. Self-Heating: Negligible.
4. Transmitter optional, contingent on compliance with end-to-end control accuracy.

F. Thermistor, Single-Point Duct Air Temperature Sensors:

1. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to 275 deg F
2. Probe: Single-point sensor with a stainless-steel sheath.
3. Length: As required by application to achieve tip at midpoint of air tunnel, up to 18 inches.

4. Enclosure: Junction box with removable cover; NEMA 250, Type 1 for indoor applications and Type 4 for outdoor applications.
5. Gasket for attachment to duct or equipment to seal penetration airtight.
6. Conduit Connection: 1/2- inch trade size.

G. Thermistor Outdoor Air Temperature Sensors:

1. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to 275 deg F
2. Probe: Single-point sensor with a stainless-steel sheath.
3. Solar Shield: Stainless steel.
4. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4 or 4X junction box or combination conduit and outlet box with removable cover and gasket.
5. Conduit Connection: 1/2-inch trade size.

H. Thermistor Space Air Temperature Sensors:

1. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to 212 deg F
2. Sensor assembly shall include a temperature sensing element mounted under a bright white, non-yellowing, plastic or flush, brushed-aluminum cover.
3. Provide a mounting plate that is compatible with the surface shape that it is mounted to and electrical box used.
4. Concealed wiring connection.

I. Space Air Temperature Sensors for Use with DDC Controllers Controlling Terminal Units:

1. 100- or 1000-]ohm platinum RTD or thermistor.
2. Thermistor:
  - a. Pre-aged, burned in, and coated with glass; inserted in a metal sleeve; and entire unit encased in epoxy.
  - b. Thermistor drift shall be less than plus or minus 0.5 deg F over 10 years.
3. Temperature Transmitter Requirements:
  - a. Mating transmitter required with each 100-ohm RTD.
  - b. Mating transmitters optional for 1000-ohm RTD and thermistor, contingent on compliance with end-to-end control accuracy.
4. Provide digital display of sensed temperature.
5. Provide sensor with local control.
  - a. Local override to turn HVAC on.
  - b. Local adjustment of temperature set point.
  - c. Both features shall be capable of manual override through control system operator.

### 2.3 COMBINATION AIR TEMPERATURE SENSOR AND SWITCH

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain temperature-measuring sensors and transmitters and airflow from single manufacturer.

- B. Combination temperature sensor and switch in same instrument.
- C. Air Temperature Switch:
  - 1. Factory preset set point of 38 deg F. Field-adjustable set point from 30 to 44 deg F.
  - 2. Responsive to coldest 12-inch section of sensor length.
  - 3. DPST latching relay rated at 25 A and 120-V ac, with powered controller, coil, and manual rest at panel. Wire one leg to fan start circuit and other leg to signal a remote alarm.
- D. Air Temperature Sensor:
  - 1. Temperature-averaging type over sensor length. Length to be determined by installing trade to provide uniform coverage over air tunnel. Consult manufacturer for recommendations.
  - 2. Platinum RTD with a value of 1000 ohms at zero deg C and a temperature coefficient of 0.00385 ohm/ohm/deg C.
  - 3. Accuracy: Within 0.9 deg F.
  - 4. Output Signal: 4 to 20 mA for connection to remote monitoring.
  - 5. Encase RTDs in a flexible nominal 0.375-inch-diameter sheath constructed of brass.
  - 6. Lead wires shall be 18-gage AWG copper.
  - 7. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4.

## 2.4 AIR TEMPERATURE SWITCHES

- A. Thermostat and Switch for Low Temperature Control in Duct Applications:
  - 1. Description:
    - a. Two-position control.
    - b. Field-adjustable set point.
    - c. Manual reset.
    - d. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  - 2. Performance:
    - a. Operating Temperature Range: 15 to 55 deg F.
    - b. Temperature Differential: 5 deg F, non-adjustable and additive.
    - c. Enclosure Ambient Temperature: Minus 20 to 140 deg F.
    - d. Sensing Element Maximum Temperature: 250 deg F.
    - e. Voltage: 120-V ac.
    - f. Current: 16 FLA.
    - g. Switch Type: Two SPDT snap switches operate on coldest 12-inch section along element length.
  - 3. Construction:
    - a. Vapor-Filled Sensing Element: Nominal 20 feet long.
    - b. Dual Temperature Scale: Fahrenheit and Celsius visible on face.



- c. Set-Point Adjustment: Screw.
  - d. Enclosure: Painted metal, NEMA 250, Type 1.
  - e. Electrical Connections: Screw terminals.
  - f. Conduit Connection: 1/2-inch trade size.
- B. Thermostat and Switch for High Temperature Control in Duct Applications:
- 1. Source Limitations: Obtain temperature-measuring sensors and transmitters and airflow from single manufacturer.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Two-position control.
    - b. Field-adjustable set point.
    - c. Manual reset.
    - d. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  - 3. Performance:
    - a. Temperature Range: 100 to 160 deg F.
    - b. Temperature Differential: 5 deg F.
    - c. Ambient Temperature: Zero to 260 deg F.
    - d. Voltage: 120-V ac.
    - e. Current: 16 FLA.
    - f. Switch Type: SPDT snap switch.
  - 4. Construction:
    - a. Sensing Element: Helical bimetal.
    - b. Enclosure: Metal, NEMA 250, Type 1.
    - c. Electrical Connections: Screw terminals.
    - d. Conduit Connection: 1/2-inch trade size.

## 2.5 AIR TEMPERATURE RTD TRANSMITTERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain temperature-measuring sensors and transmitters and airflow from single manufacturer.
- B. House electronics in NEMA 250 enclosure.
  - 1. Duct: Type 2.
  - 2. Outdoor: Type 4.
  - 3. Space: Type 1.
- C. Conduit Connection: 1/2-inch
- D. Functional Characteristics:
  - 1. Input:

- a. 100-ohm platinum RTD temperature coefficient of 0.00385 ohm/ohm/deg C, two-wire sensors.
  - b. 1000-ohm platinum RTD temperature coefficient of 0.00385 ohm/ohm/deg C, two-wire sensors.
2. Span (Adjustable):
- a. Space: 40 to 90 deg F.
  - b. Supply Air Cooling and Heating: 40 to 120 deg F.
  - c. Supply Air Cooling Only: 40 to 90 deg F.
  - d. Supply Air Heating Only: 40 to 120 deg F.
  - e. Exhaust Air: 50 to 100 deg F.
  - f. Return Air: 50 to 100 deg F.
  - g. Mixed Air: Minus 40 to 140 deg F.
  - h. Outdoor: Minus 40 to 140 deg F.
- 3. Output: 4- to 20-mA dc, linear with temperature; RFI insensitive; minimum drive load of 600 ohms at 24-V dc.
  - 4. Zero and span field adjustments, plus or minus 5 percent of span. Minimum span of 50 deg F.
  - 5. Match sensor with temperature transmitter and factory calibrate together.

E. Performance Characteristics:

- 1. Calibration Accuracy: Within 0.1 percent of the span.
- 2. Stability: Within 0.2 percent of the span for at least 6 months.
- 3. Combined Accuracy: Within 0.5 percent.

## 2.6 LIQUID TEMPERATURE SENSORS, COMMERCIAL GRADE

A. RTD:

- 1. Description:
  - a. Platinum with a value of 100 or 1000 ohms at zero deg C and a temperature coefficient of 0.00385 ohm/ohm/deg C.
  - b. Encase RTD in a stainless-steel sheath with a 0.25-inch OD.
  - c. Sensor Length: 4, 6, or 8 inches as required by application.
  - d. Process Connection: Threaded, NPS 1/2
  - e. Two-stranded copper lead wires.
  - f. Powder-coated steel enclosure, NEMA 250, Type 4.
  - g. Conduit Connection: 1/2-inch
  - h. Performance Characteristics:
    - 1) Range: Minus 40 to 210 deg F.
    - 2) Interchangeable Accuracy: Within 0.54 deg F at 32 deg F.

B. Thermowells:

- 1. Stem: Straight or stepped shank formed from solid bar stock.

2. Material: Brass or stainless steel.
3. Process Connection: Threaded, NPS 3/4.
4. Sensor Connection: Threaded, NPS 1/2.
5. Bore: Sized to accommodate sensor with tight tolerance between sensor and well.
6. Furnish thermowells installed in insulated pipes and equipment with an extended neck.
7. Length: 4, 6, or 8 inches as required by application.
8. Thermowells furnished with heat-transfer compound to eliminate air gap between wall of sensor and thermowell and to reduce time constant.

## 2.7 LIQUID TEMPERATURE SWITCHES

### A. Thermostat and Switch for Temperature Control in Pipe Applications:

1. Description:
  - a. Two-position control.
  - b. Field-adjustable set point.
  - c. Manual reset.
  - d. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Performance:
  - a. Operating Temperature Range: 65 to 200 deg F.
  - b. Temperature Differential Deadband: 5 to 30 deg F, adjustable.
  - c. Enclosure Ambient Temperature: 150 deg F.
  - d. Sensing Element Pressure Rating: 200 psig.
  - e. Voltage: 120-V ac.
  - f. Current: 8 FLA.
  - g. Switch Type: SPDT snap switch.
3. Construction:
  - a. Vapor-Filled Immersion Element: Copper, nominal 3 inches long.
  - b. Temperature Scale: Fahrenheit, visible on face.
  - c. Set-Point Adjustment: Screw.
  - d. Enclosure: Painted metal, NEMA 250, Type 1.
  - e. Electrical Connections: Screw terminals.
  - f. Conduit Connection: 3/4-inch.

## 2.8 LIQUID TEMPERATURE TRANSMITTERS, COMMERCIAL GRADE

- A. House electronics in NEMA 250, Type 4 enclosure.
- B. Enclosure Connection: 1/2-inch trade size.
- C. Functional Characteristics:

1. Input: 100-ohm platinum RTD temperature coefficient of 0.00385 ohm/ohm/deg C, two- or three-wire sensors.
2. Default Span (Adjustable):
  - a. Heating Hot Water: 32 to 212 deg F.
3. Output: 4- to 20-mA dc, linear with temperature; RFI insensitive; minimum drive load of 600 ohms at 24-V dc.
4. Zero and span field adjustments, plus or minus 5 percent of span. Minimum span of 50 deg F.
5. Match sensor with temperature transmitter and factory calibrate together. Each matched sensor and transmitter set shall include factory calibration data traceable to NIST.

D. Performance Characteristics:

1. Calibration Accuracy: Within 0.1 percent of the span.
2. Stability: Within 0.2 percent of the span for at least 6 months.
3. Combined Accuracy: Within 0.5 percent.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for instruments installed in piping to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- C. Examine roughing-in for instruments installed in duct systems to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- D. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 TEMPERATURE INSTRUMENT APPLICATIONS

### 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install products level, plumb, parallel, and perpendicular with building construction.
- B. Properly support instruments, tubing, piping, wiring, and conduit to comply with requirements indicated. Brace all products to prevent lateral movement and sway or a break in attachment.
- C. Fastening Hardware:
  1. Stillson wrenches, pliers, and other tools that cause injury to or mar surfaces of rods, nuts, and other parts are prohibited for work of assembling and tightening nuts.

2. Tighten bolts and nuts firmly and uniformly. Do not overstress threads by excessive force or by oversized wrenches.
  3. Lubricate threads of bolts, nuts, and screws with graphite and oil before assembly.
- D. Install products in locations that are accessible and that permit calibration and maintenance from floor, equipment platforms, or catwalks. Where ladders are required for Owner's access, confirm unrestricted ladder placement is possible under occupied condition.

### 3.4 ELECTRIC POWER

- A. Furnish and install electrical power to products requiring electrical connections.
- B. Furnish and install circuit breakers. Comply with requirements in Section 262816 "Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers."
- C. Furnish and install power wiring. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- D. Furnish and install raceways. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

### 3.5 TEMPERATURE INSTRUMENT INSTALLATIONS

- A. Mounting Location:
  1. Roughing In:
    - a. Outline instrument mounting locations before setting instruments and routing cable, wiring, tubing, and conduit to final location.
    - b. Provide independent inspection to confirm that proposed mounting locations comply with requirements indicated and approved submittals.
      - 1) Indicate dimensioned locations with mounting height for all surface-mounted products on Shop Drawings.
      - 2) Do not begin installation without submittal approval of mounting location.
    - c. Complete installation rough-in only after confirmation by independent inspection is complete and approval of location is documented for review by Owner and Architect on request.
  2. Install switches and transmitters for air and liquid temperature associated with individual air-handling units and associated connected ductwork and piping near air-handling units co-located in air-handling unit system control panel to provide service personnel a single and convenient location for inspection and service.
  3. Install liquid and steam temperature switches and transmitters for indoor applications in mechanical equipment rooms. Do not locate in user-occupied space unless indicated specifically on Drawings.

4. Install air temperature switches and transmitters for indoor applications in mechanical equipment rooms. Do not locate in user-occupied space unless indicated specifically on Drawings.
  5. Mount switches and transmitters on walls, floor-supported freestanding pipe stands, or floor-supported structural support frames. Use manufacturer's mounting brackets to accommodate field mounting. Securely support and brace products to prevent vibration and movement.
- B. Mounting Height:
1. Mount temperature instruments in user-occupied space to match mounting height of light switches unless otherwise indicated on Drawings. Mounting height shall comply with codes and accessibility requirements.
  2. Mount switches and transmitters located in mechanical equipment rooms and other similar space not subject to code or state and Federal accessibility requirements within a range of 42 to 72 inches above the adjacent floor, grade, or service catwalk or platform.
    - a. Make every effort to mount at 60 inches.
- C. Seal penetrations to ductwork, plenums, and air-moving equipment to comply with duct static-pressure class and leakage and seal classes indicated using neoprene gaskets or grommets.
- D. Space Temperature Sensor Installation:
1. Conceal assembly in an electrical box of sufficient size to house sensor and transmitter, if provided.
  2. Install electrical box with a faceplate to match sensor cover if sensor cover does not completely cover electrical box.
  3. In finished areas, recess electrical box within wall.
  4. In unfinished areas, electrical box may be surface mounted if electrical light switches are surface mounted. Use a cast-aluminum electric box for surface-mounted installations.
  5. Align electrical box with other electrical devices such as visual alarms and light switches located in the vicinity to provide a neat and well-thought-out arrangement. Where possible, align in both horizontal and vertical axis.
- E. Single-Point Duct Temperature Sensor Installation:
1. Install single-point-type, duct-mounted, supply- and return-air temperature sensors. Install sensors in ducts with sensitive portion of the element installed in center of duct cross section and located to sense near average temperature. Do not exceed 24 inches in sensor length.
  2. Install return-air sensor in location that senses return-air temperature without influence from outdoor or mixed air.
  3. Rigidly support sensor to duct and seal penetration airtight.
  4. If required to have transmitter, mount transmitter remote from sensor at accessible and serviceable location.
- F. Low-Limit Air Temperature Switch Installation:
1. Install multiple low-limit switches to maintain coverage over entire cross-sectional area of air tunnel.

2. Fasten and support sensing element with manufacturer-furnished clips to keep element taut throughout entire length.
3. Mount switches outside of airstream at a location and mounting height to provide easy access for switch set-point adjustment and manual reset.
4. Install on entering side of cooling coil unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

G. Liquid Temperature Sensor Installation:

1. Assembly shall include sensor, thermowell.
2. For pipe NPS 4 and larger, install sensor and thermowell length to extend into pipe between 50 to 75 percent of pipe cross section.
3. For pipe smaller than NPS 4:
  - a. Install reducers to increase pipe size to NPS 4 at point of thermowell installation.
  - b. For pipe sizes NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3, thermowell and sensor may be installed at pipe elbow or tee to achieve manufacturer-recommended immersion depth in lieu of increasing pipe size.
  - c. Minimum insertion depth shall be 2-1/2 inches.
4. Install matching thermowell.
5. Fill thermowell with heat-transfer fluid before inserting sensor.
6. Tip of spring-loaded sensors shall contact inside of thermowell.
7. For insulated piping, install thermowells with extension neck to extend beyond face of insulation.
8. Install thermowell in top dead center of horizontal pipe positioned in an accessible location to allow for inspection and replacement. If top dead center location is not possible due to field constraints, install thermowell at location along top half of pipe.
9. For applications with transmitters, mount transmitter remote from sensor in an accessible and serviceable location from floor.

### 3.6 CLEANING

- A. Remove grease, mastic, adhesives, dust, dirt, stains, fingerprints, labels, and other foreign materials from exposed interior and exterior surfaces.
- B. Wash and shine glazing.
- C. Polish glossy surfaces to a clean shine.

### 3.7 CHECK-OUT PROCEDURES

- A. Check installed products before continuity tests, leak tests, and calibration.
- B. Check temperature instruments for proper location and accessibility.
- C. Verify sensing element type and proper material.
- D. Verify location and length.
- E. Verify that wiring is correct and secure.

### 3.8 ADJUSTMENT, CALIBRATION, AND TESTING

#### A. Description:

1. Calibrate each instrument installed that is not factory calibrated and provided with calibration documentation.
2. Provide a written description of proposed field procedures and equipment for calibrating each type of instrument. Submit procedures before calibration and adjustment.
3. For each analog instrument, make a three-point test of calibration for both linearity and accuracy.
4. Equipment and procedures used for calibration shall meet instrument manufacturer's written instructions.
5. Provide diagnostic and test equipment for calibration and adjustment.
6. Field instruments and equipment used to test and calibrate installed instruments shall have accuracy at least twice the instrument accuracy being calibrated. For example, an installed instrument with an accuracy of 1 percent shall be checked by an instrument with an accuracy of 0.5 percent.
7. Calibrate each instrument according to instrument instruction manual supplied by manufacturer.
8. If after calibration indicated performance cannot be achieved, replace out-of-tolerance instruments.
9. Comply with field-testing requirements and procedures indicated by ASHRAE Guideline 11, "Field Testing of HVAC Control Components," in the absence of specific requirements and to supplement requirements indicated.

#### B. Analog Signals:

1. Check analog voltage signals using a precision voltage meter at zero, 50, and 100 percent.
2. Check analog current signals using a precision current meter at zero, 50, and 100 percent.
3. Check resistance signals for temperature sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of operating span using a precision-resistance source.

#### C. Digital Signals:

1. Check digital signals using a jumper wire.
2. Check digital signals using an ohmmeter to test for contact.

#### D. Sensors: Check sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of Project design values.

#### E. Switches: Calibrate switches to make or break contact at set points indicated.

#### F. Transmitters:

1. Check and calibrate transmitters at zero, 50, and 100 percent of Project design values.
2. Calibrate resistance temperature transmitters at zero, 50, and 100 percent of span using a precision-resistance source.



3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Perform according to manufacturer's written instruction.
2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.10 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain temperature instruments.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 230993.11 - SEQUENCE OF OPERATIONS FOR HVAC DDC

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:

- 1. An instrumentation list for each controlled system. Label each element of the controlled system in table format. Show, in the table element name, type of device, manufacturer, model number, and control device product data sheet number.
- 2. A complete description of the operation of the control system, including sequences of operation. Include and reference a schematic diagram of the controlled system.

- B. Shop Drawings:

- 1. Riser diagrams showing control network layout, communication protocol, and wire types.
- 2. Schematic diagram of each controlled system. Include all control points labeled with point names shown or listed. Show the location of control elements in the system.
- 3. Wiring diagram for each controlled system. Show all control elements labels. Where a control element is the same as that shown on the control system schematic, label with the same name. Label all terminals.

#### 1.3 HEATING CONTROL SEQUENCES

- A. Boilers

- 1. Boilers are enabled by the BMS system when outdoor air temperature (OAT) drops below 65 deg.
- 2. Boiler controller operates each boilers circulating pump and sequences boilers.
- 3. Boiler controller controls discharge temperature in accordance with the outdoor air reset schedule resetting heating-water supply temperature in straight-line relationship with outdoor-air temperature as follows:
  - a. 100 deg supply temperature at OAT of 60 deg.
  - b. 140 deg supply temperature at OAT of 0 deg.

- B. Main Heating Water Pumps:

- 1. Pumps are enabled by the BMS system when outdoor air temperature (OAT) drops below 65 deg.
- 2. Pumps operate in lead/standby fashion.
- 3. The lead pump runs first. On failure of the lead pump, the standby pump runs and the lead pump shall turn off.
- 4. Pump(s) Speed:

- a. Input Device:
  - 1) Device: Liquid pressure differential transmitter.
  - 2) Location: Heating supply and return piping.
- b. Action:
  - 1) Differential pressure value is monitored by the BMS.
  - 2) BMS controls pump speed through pumps VFD to maintain pressure differential as determined during system startup to provide design flow.
- c. Alarm:
  - 1) BMS alarms when differential pressure deviates from setpoint +/-10% for 1 minute.
  - 2) BMS energizes standby pump.

C. Indicate the following on the operator's workstation display terminal:

- 1. DDC system graphic.
- 2. Outdoor-air temperature.
- 3. Main Heating Water Pumps on-off status (enabled or disabled).
- 4. Main Heating Water Pumps on-off indication (operating or not operating).
- 5. Main Heating Water System supply-return differential.
- 6. Main Heating Water System supply-return differential setpoint.
- 7. Main Heating Water System alarm pressure differential set point.
- 8. Main Heating Water Pumps VFD Status (in alarm)
- 9. Boiler on-off status (enabled or disabled).
- 10. Boiler on-off indication (operating or not operating).
- 11. Heating-water supply temperature.
- 12. Heating-water return temperature.
- 13. Heating-water supply temperature set point.

#### 1.4 Rooftop Units

A. Building Automation System Interface:

- 1. The Building Automation System (BAS) will send the controller Occupied Bypass, Morning Warm-up / Pre-Cool, Occupied / Unoccupied and Heat / Cool modes.

B. Occupied Mode:

- 1. During occupied periods, the supply fan will run continuously, and the outside air damper will open to maintain minimum ventilation requirements. The DX cooling and gas heat will stage to maintain the occupied space temperature setpoint. The unit controller will control the supply fan speed to maintain the occupied space temperature at setpoint. If economizing is enabled the outside air damper will be used as first stage of cooling and will modulate to maintain the occupied space temperature setpoint.

C. Unoccupied Mode:

- 1. When the space temperature is below the unoccupied heating setpoint of 60.0 deg. F (adj.) the supply fan will start, the outside air damper will remain closed, and the gas heat will be enabled. When the space temperature rises above the unoccupied heating setpoint of 60.0 deg. F (adj.) plus the unoccupied differential of 4.0 deg. F (adj.) the supply fan will stop, and the gas heat will be disabled.

2. When the space temperature is above the unoccupied cooling setpoint of 80.0 deg. F (adj.) the supply fan will start, the outside air damper will remain closed unless economizing is enabled, and the DX cooling will be enabled. If economizer is enabled, outdoor air damper will be used as first stage of cooling. When the space temperature drops below the unoccupied cooling setpoint of 80.0 deg. F (adj.) minus the unoccupied differential of 4.0 deg. F (adj.) the supply fan will stop, and cooling will be disabled.
- D. Optimal Stop:
1. The BAS will monitor the scheduled unoccupied time, occupied setpoints and space temperature to calculate when the optimal stop occurs. When the optimal stop mode is active the unit controller will maintain the space temperature to the space temperature offset setpoint.
- E. Optimal Start:
1. The BAS will monitor the scheduled occupied time, occupied space setpoints and space temperature to calculate when the optimal start occurs.
- F. Occupied Bypass:
1. The BAS will monitor the status of the “on” and “cancel” buttons of the space temperature sensor. When an occupied bypass request is received from a space sensor, the unit will transition from its current occupancy mode to occupied bypass mode and the unit will maintain the space temperature to the occupied setpoints (adj.).
- G. Pre-Cool Mode:
1. During optimal start, if the space temperature is above the occupied cooling setpoint, pre-cool mode will be activated. When pre-cool is initiated, the unit will enable the fan and cooling or economizer. The outside air damper will remain closed, unless economizing. When the space temperature reaches occupied cooling setpoint (adj.), the unit will transition to the occupied mode.
- H. Heating Mode:
1. The unit controller will use the space temperature and space temperature setpoint to determine when to initiate requests for heat. During Heating operation, the control will monitor the Space Temperature and Space Heating setpoint and with a PI control algorithm determine if active heating capacity is required. As the Space Temperature deviates from the Space Heating Setpoint, the unit controller will increase the supply airflow up to the user selected, application specific, maximum airflow and begin to stage heating outputs to meet the space demand. The customer will also have the ability to enable Supply Air Tempering control which will allow the unit to bring on one stage of heating when the discharge air temperature falls below the Space Heating Setpoint - 10°F and the unit is operating in a minimum ventilation state with the supply fan running (not actively heating or cooling). The supply fan output will increase to the user selected, application specific, maximum airflow during Supply Air Tempering operation.
- I. Cooling Mode:
1. During Cooling operation, the control will monitor the Space Temperature and Space Cooling setpoint and with a PI control algorithm determine if active cooling capacity is required. As the Space Temperature deviates from the Space Cooling Setpoint, the unit controller will calculate an active Discharge Air Cooling setpoint that the economizer (if installed) and compressor outputs will be controlled to meet. This active Discharge Air Cooling setpoint will be calculated between the Space Cooling setpoint and a user

adjustable minimum (65F Default for Single Zone Variable Air Volume Control). Once the control determines that a discharge air temperature equal to the user selected minimum (65F Default) is required to meet the space cooling demand, if the space demand continues to increase, the supply fan speed will be allowed to increase above its minimum speed proportionally to meet the additional demand.

J. Dehumidification:

1. Factory installed hot gas reheat will allow application of dehumidification. Dehumidification will be allowed only when the outside air temperature is above 40.0 deg. F and below 100.0 deg. F. The economizer outside air damper will drive to minimum position during dehumidification.

K. Single Compressor Units:

1. On a call for dehumidification, the reheat valve will energize, and the compressor will enable. When the humidity control setpoint is satisfied, the valve will be de-energized, and the compressor will be disabled. If there is a call for cooling from the space temperature controller, while in reheat, the reheat valve will be de-energized, and the compressor will continue to run.

L. Dual Compressor Units:

1. On a call for dehumidification, the reheat valve will energize and both compressors will enable. When the humidity control setpoint is satisfied, the valve will be de-energized and both compressors will be disabled. If there is a call for 1st stage cooling while in the dehumidification mode, no action will take place. If there is a call for 2nd stage cooling, the reheat valve will be de-energized, and the unit will revert to the cooling mode. If 2nd stage cooling is satisfied and there is still a call for dehumidification, the reheat valve will once again be energized.

M. Demand Control Ventilation (DCV):

1. During occupied mode, the outdoor air damper control may be overridden by the return air CO2 sensor, through the DDC system. The DDC system will function to modulate the outdoor air dampers, in order to maintain return air CO2 levels at setpoint.
2. When return air CO2 is below 400 ppm (adj.), the OA damper shall be at 10%(adj.). When return air CO2 is above 1100 ppm (adj.), the OA damper shall be at the scheduled ventilation position (Min OA %).
3. When return air CO2 is in between 400 ppm and 1100 ppm, the OA damper shall modulate proportionally between 10%(adj.) and Min OA %.
4. If the mixed air temperature drops below the mixed air low limit setpoint (40°F), the CO2 sensor input is overridden, and the outside air damper will modulate closed to maintain the mixed air temperature. When the mixed air temperature rises above (43°F), CO2 or economizer operation is once again restored. During the unoccupied mode, the CO2 sensor shall have no impact on the respective unit operation.

N. Supply Fan:

1. The supply fan will be enabled while in the occupied mode and cycled on during the unoccupied mode. A differential pressure switch will monitor the differential pressure across the fan.

O. Building Pressure Control:

1. The barometric (gravity operated) relief dampers will open with increased building pressure. As the building pressure increases, the pressure in the unit return section also increases, opening the dampers and relieving air.

P. Smoke Detector Shutdown:

1. The unit will shut down in response to a signal from the smoke detector indicating the presence of smoke. The smoke detector will be interlocked to the unit through the dry contacts of the smoke detector. A manual reset of the smoke detector will be required to restart the unit.

Q. Filter Status:

1. A differential pressure switch will monitor the differential pressure across the filter when the fan is running. If the switch closes for 2 minutes after a request for fan operation a dirty filter alarm will be annunciated at the BAS.

R. Condensate Drain Pan Overflow Switch:

1. A condensate overflow condition will be detected by a condensate overflow float switch. When the condensate level reaches the trip point, the diagnostic condition will be detected. When the condensate overflow input CLOSES for 6 continuous seconds, the following actions will be taken by the ReliaTel™ controls.
2. An auto-reset diagnostic will be generated. All compressor or heating operations will be disabled immediately. Condenser fans and compressors will be de-energized. Supply fan operation will be shutdown. Once the overflow condition has been cleared and the input is OPEN for 6 seconds, all diagnostic conditions will be cleared. The unit will return to normal operation. Auto-reset clearing will occur twice each time the unit is powered up. On the third occurrence, the unit will initiate a lock-out and require manual reset. If an auto-reset overflow occurs once, but does not occur again for 72 hours, the trip counter will reset allowing more auto-resets to occur.
3. If overflow occurs during morning warm up (MWU) or daytime warm up (DWU), the unit will not return to warm up once diagnostic has been cleared. However, if the zone temperature remains lower than the initiate setpoint for DWU, the unit will enter DWU upon reset.
4. If overflow occurs during a purge cycle on dehumidification, purge will discontinue, but will resume with a full 3-minute counter upon reset of the trip.
5. If unit power cycle is used to reset a trip, the unit will not carry forward any previous mode.

## 1.5 Unit Ventilators with LEV Kits

A. Building Automation System Interface:

1. The Building Automation System (BAS) will send the controller Occupied Bypass, Morning Warm-up / Pre-Cool, Occupied / Unoccupied and Heat / Cool modes. If a BAS is not present, or communication is lost with the BAS the controller will operate using default modes and setpoints.

B. Occupied Mode:

1. During occupied periods the supply fan will run continuously and the outside air damper will open to maintain minimum ventilation requirements. The DX cooling and hot water valve will operate to maintain the active space temperature setpoint.

- C. Unoccupied Mode:
1. When the space temperature is below the unoccupied heating setpoint of 60.0 deg. F (adj.), the supply fan will start, the outside air damper will remain closed and the hot water valve will open. When the space temperature rises above the unoccupied heating setpoint of 60.0 deg. F (adj.) plus the unoccupied differential of 2.0 deg. F (adj.) the supply fan will stop and the hot water valve will close.
  2. When the occupancy sensor senses occupancy during scheduled unoccupied periods, the unit will transition to occupied bypass mode.
- D. Optimal Start:
1. The BAS will monitor the scheduled occupied time, occupied space setpoints and space temperature to calculate when the optimal start occurs.
- E. Morning Warm-Up Mode:
1. During optimal start, if the space temperature is below the occupied heating setpoint a morning warm-up mode will be activated. When morning warm-up is initiated the unit will enable the heating and supply fan. The outside air damper will remain closed. When the space temperature reaches the occupied heating setpoint (adj.), the unit will transition to the occupied mode.
- F. Pre-Cool Mode:
1. During optimal start, if the space temperature is above the occupied cooling setpoint, pre-cool mode will be activated. When pre-cool is initiated the unit will enable the fan and cooling or economizer. The outside air damper will remain closed, unless economizing. When the space temperature reaches occupied cooling setpoint (adj.), the unit will transition to the occupied mode.
- G. Occupied Bypass:
1. The BAS will monitor the status of the “on” and “cancel” buttons of the space temperature sensor. When an occupied bypass request is received from a space sensor, the unit will transition from its current occupancy mode to occupied bypass mode and the unit will maintain the space temperature to the occupied setpoints (adj.).
- H. Space Temperature Control:
1. Cascade zone control will be used in the occupied, occupied bypass, and occupied standby modes. It maintains zone temperature by controlling the discharge air temperature to control the zone temperature while minimizing the fan speed.
  2. The space temperature will be maintained between the occupied cooling setpoint of 74.0 deg. F (adj.) and the occupied heating setpoint of 71.0 deg. F (adj.). The unit will transition to the cooling mode when the space temperature rises one degree above the occupied cooling setpoint of 74.0 deg. F (adj.). The unit will transition to the heating mode when the space temperature drops one degree below the occupied heating setpoint of 74.0 deg. F (adj.).
- I. Economizer Control:
1. Economizing will be enabled when the outdoor air temperature is below the economizing enable setpoint of 65.0 deg. F (adj.). Economizing will be disabled when the outdoor air temperature is greater than 5.0 deg. F above the economizer enable setpoint. When economizing is enabled the outside air damper will modulate between the minimum damper position and 100% open to maintain the occupied cooling setpoint. If the outdoor

air temperature sensor fails, economizing will be disabled and an alarm will be annunciated at the BAS.

J. Supply Fan Operation:

1. The supply fan will cycle on demand during the unoccupied mode. When the controller is in the occupied mode, the supply fan will operate continuously at the lowest minimum speed required to maintain space temperature. The supply fan status will be monitored by the ECM motor controller. If the supply fan fails the fan will be commanded off and an alarm will be annunciated at the BAS. A manual reset will be required to restart the fan.

K. Condensate Overflow Monitoring:

1. If the condensate level reaches the trip point, a condensate overflow diagnostic will be annunciated at the BAS. To prevent the condensate drain pan from overflowing and causing water damage to the building the fan will be disabled and the DX cooling will be disabled.

L. Freeze Protection:

1. A hardwired, low limit temperature switch will be electrically interlocked with the safety circuit. If the low limit temperature switch is tripped 38.0 deg. F (adj.), the supply fan will be commanded off, water valves will open to 100%, outside air damper will close, and an alarm will be annunciated at the BAS.
2. The controller will automatically attempt to restart the unit after 30 minutes. If the unit restarts successfully with no low temperature condition, the diagnostic is cleared. If a second low temperature condition occurs within a 24 hour period the unit will be locked out until manually reset.

M. Filter Timer:

1. The fan-run time (hrs) will be compared to the filter maintenance timer setpoint. Once the setpoint is reached a filter timer alarm diagnostic will be annunciated at the BAS. When the diagnostic is cleared, the filter-maintenance timer is reset to zero, and the timer begins accumulating fan-run time again.

## 1.6 VRF Systems

A. Note: This sequence of operations describes the “system-level” control functions of a VRF system, which includes coordinating the operation of the outdoor unit with indoor units during the various operating modes. The “equipment-level” control functions of the outdoor unit and the indoor units are contained in their respective sequence of operations documents.

B. Variable Refrigerant Flow (VRF) Heat Recovery System:

C. A Heat Recovery System shall be capable of providing synchronous or simultaneous heating and cooling. The outdoor unit(s) supply a two-phase mixture of subcooled liquid and superheated gas refrigerant to the branch controller(s). The branch controller(s) shall separate the subcooled liquid from the superheated gas refrigerant. The branch controller ports shall simultaneously distribute subcooled liquid refrigerant to indoor units requesting cooling or superheated gas refrigerant to indoor units requesting heating. Each indoor unit shall be capable of heating or cooling based on their individual zone requirement.

D. Variable Refrigerant Flow System with BAS Integration:



1. The Building Automation System (BAS) shall send the Variable Refrigerant Flow (VRF) control device an Occupied or Unoccupied command. The VRF system shall use the last control received from either the BAS or local VRF control device. If a BAS is not present, or communication is lost with the BAS, the controller shall operate using local control (modes and setpoints). The BAS system shall have the abilities to control the following: occupancy mode, operating mode, vane direction (if present on equipment), fan speed, setpoint, setback mode, and lockout of optional remote controllers. Lockout of remote controllers shall include: all control functions, on/off control, operating mode, setpoint control, vane direction, and fan speed.
- E. System Operating Modes:
1. The Building Automation System (BAS) controller shall include a user-adjustable time-of-day schedule to define when the various areas of the facility are expected to be occupied versus unoccupied. Then, based on current zone conditions, the BAS determines the current system operating mode. The BAS controller shall send the following operating modes to the unit level controllers that are a member of the refrigerant system: Occupied Heat/Cool, Unoccupied Heat/Cool and Morning Warmup/Pre-cool, Occupied Bypass (setback mode).
- F. Optimal Start:
1. The BAS shall monitor the scheduled occupied time, occupied space setpoints and space temperature to calculate when the optimal start occurs.
- G. Optimal Stop:
1. The BAS shall monitor the scheduled unoccupied time, occupied setpoints and space temperature to calculate when the optimal stop occurs. When the optimal stop mode is active the unit controller shall maintain the space temperature to the space temperature offset setpoint.
- H. Sequence of Operations: VRF INDOOR UNIT CEILING CASSETTE
1. Occupied:
    - a. Cool Mode. The terminal unit shall modulate the expansion valve to maintain a space cooling temperature setpoint.
    - b. Heat Mode. The terminal unit shall modulate the expansion valve to maintain a space heating temperature setpoint.
  2. Unoccupied:
    - a. In cool mode, the terminal unit shall modulate the expansion valve to maintain a space unoccupied (setback) cooling temperature setpoint.
    - b. In heat mode, the terminal unit shall modulate the expansion valve to maintain a space unoccupied (setback) heating temperature setpoint.
  3. Vane Direction:
    - a. If vane direction is in auto mode and the unit is operating in cooling mode, vanes shall direct air in a upward air flow.
    - b. If vane direction is in auto mode and the unit is operating in heating mode, vanes shall direct air in a downward air flow.
- I. Sequence of Operations: VRF INDOOR UNIT DUCTED
1. Occupied:
    - a. In cool mode, the terminal unit shall modulate the expansion valve to maintain a space cooling temperature setpoint.

- b. In heat mode, the terminal unit shall modulate the expansion valve to maintain a space heating temperature setpoint.
- 2. Unoccupied:
  - a. In cool mode, the terminal unit shall modulate the expansion valve to maintain a space unoccupied (setback) cooling temperature setpoint.
  - b. In heat mode, the terminal unit shall modulate the expansion valve to maintain a space unoccupied (setback) heating temperature setpoint.

## 1.7 Heating Coils

- A. Building Automation System Interface:
  - 1. The Building Automation System (BAS) shall send the controller Occupied Bypass, Morning Warm-up, Occupied/Unoccupied and Heat/Cool modes. If a BAS is not present, or communication is lost with the BAS the controller shall operate using default modes and setpoints
- B. Occupied:
  - 1. During occupied periods, the hot water valve shall control to maintain the active space temperature setpoint.
- C. Unoccupied:
  - 1. When the space temperature is below the unoccupied heating setpoint of 60.0 deg. F (adj.) the hot water valve shall open. When the space temperature rises above the unoccupied heating setpoint of 60.0 deg. F (adj.) plus the unoccupied differential of 4.0 deg. F (adj.) the hot water valve shall close.
- D. Optimal Start:
  - 1. The BAS shall monitor the scheduled occupied time, occupied space setpoints and space temperature to calculate when the optimal start occurs.
- E. Morning Warm-Up Mode:
  - 1. During optimal start, if the space temperature is below the occupied heating setpoint a morning warm-up mode shall be activated. When morning warm-up is initiated the unit shall enable the heating and supply fan. When the space temperature reaches the occupied heating setpoint (adj.), the unit shall transition to the occupied mode.
- F. Optimal Stop:
  - 1. The BAS shall monitor the scheduled unoccupied time, occupied setpoints and space temperature to calculate when the optimal stop occurs. When the optimal stop mode is active the unit controller shall maintain the space temperature to the space temperature offset setpoint.
- G. Space Temperature Control:
  - 1. Cascade zone control shall be used in the occupied mode. It maintains zone temperature by controlling the discharge air temperature to control the zone temperature. The space temperature shall be maintained at the occupied heating setpoint of 71.0 deg. F (adj.).

## 1.8 Ductless Mini Split

### A. Building Automation System Interface:

1. The Building Automation System (BAS) shall send the controller Occupied/Unoccupied modes. If a BAS is not present, or communication is lost with the BAS the controller shall operate using default modes and setpoints.

### B. Operation:

1. The split system/condensing unit manufacturer shall furnish a remote wall control unit for each system.
2. The automatic temperature control subcontractor shall provide all control wiring and conduit required to connect the various components associated with the units.

## 1.9 Boiler room supply fan SF-1.

### A. Supply fan is energized by the BMS when the space temperature setpoint is exceeded. Motor operated damper is interlocked with fan starter and opens on fan start. Damper is closed when fan is off.

### B. Indicate the following on the operator's workstation display terminal:

1. Fan on-off status (enabled or disabled).
2. Fan on-off indication (operating or not operating).
3. Alarm on status/indication mismatch
4. Space temperature setpoint
5. Space temperature

## 1.10 Ventilation supply fan SF-2 (2).

### A. Supply fan is energized by the BMS during occupied periods. Motor operated damper is interlocked with fan starter and opens on fan start. Damper is closed when fan is off.

### B. Indicate the following on the operator's workstation display terminal:

1. Fan on-off status (enabled or disabled).
2. Fan on-off indication (operating or not operating).
3. Alarm on status/indication mismatch

## 1.11 MUA-1

### A. Unit is provided with controller and remote unit monitoring. All available monitored points shall be reflected at the BMS.

### B. Unit operation is interlocked with the kitchen exhaust hood and is controlled by the BMS.

## 1.12 Building Relief Dampers ( ):

### A. Relief dampers are energized by the BMS during occupied periods.

### B. Indicate the following on the operator's workstation display terminal:

1. Actuator open-closed status (enabled or disabled).
2. Actuator open-closed indication (open-closed).
3. Alarm on status/indication mismatch

1.13 Boiler Room Relief Dampers:

- A. Relief dampers are energized by the BMS when the Boiler Rooms Supply Fan is energized.
- B. Indicate the following on the operator's workstation display terminal:
  1. Actuator open-closed status (enabled or disabled).
  2. Actuator open-closed indication (open-closed).
  3. Alarm on status/indication mismatch

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 230993.11

## SECTION 231123 - FACILITY NATURAL-GAS PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following:
  - 1. Piping specialties.
  - 2. Valves. Include pressure rating, capacity, settings, and electrical connection data of selected models.
  - 3. Pressure regulators. Indicate pressure ratings and capacities.
  - 4. Dielectric fittings.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Steel Support Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

#### 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Handling Flammable Liquids: Remove and dispose of liquids from existing natural-gas piping according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- C. Store and handle pipes and tubes having factory-applied protective coatings to avoid damaging coating, and protect from direct sunlight.

## 1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.
- B. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for valves installed concealed behind finished surfaces. Comply with requirements in Section 083113 "Access Doors and Frames."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Minimum Operating-Pressure Ratings:
  - 1. Piping and Valves: 100 psig
- B. Natural-Gas System Pressure within Buildings: More than 0.5 psig but not more than 2 psig.

### 2.2 PIPES, TUBES, AND FITTINGS

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, black steel, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B.
  - 1. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 150, standard pattern.
  - 2. Wrought-Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A234/A234M for butt welding and socket welding.
  - 3. Unions: ASME B16.39, Class 150, malleable iron with brass-to-iron seat, ground joint, and threaded ends.
  - 4. Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, minimum Class 150, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:
    - a. Material Group: 1.1.
    - b. End Connections: Threaded or butt welding to match pipe.
    - c. Lapped Face: Not permitted underground.
    - d. Gasket Materials: ASME B16.20, metallic, flat, asbestos free, aluminum o-rings, and spiral-wound metal gaskets.
    - e. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel aboveground and stainless steel underground.
- B. Corrugated, Stainless-Steel Tubing: Comply with ANSI/IAS LC 1.
  - 1. Tubing: ASTM A240/A240M, corrugated, Series 300 stainless steel.
  - 2. Coating: PE with flame retardant.
    - a. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
      - 1) Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
      - 2) Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.

3. Fittings: Copper-alloy mechanical fittings with ends made to fit and listed for use with corrugated stainless-steel tubing and capable of metal-to-metal seal without gaskets. Include brazing socket or threaded ends complying with ASME B1.20.1.
4. Striker Plates: Steel, designed to protect tubing from penetrations.
5. Manifolds: Malleable iron or steel with factory-applied protective coating. Threaded connections shall comply with ASME B1.20.1 for pipe inlet and corrugated tubing outlets.
6. Operating-Pressure Rating: 5 psig.

C. Drawn-Temper Copper Tube: Comply with ASTM B88, Type L]

1. Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought copper, and streamlined pattern.

## 2.3 PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Appliance Flexible Connectors:

1. Indoor, Fixed-Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.24.
2. Indoor, Movable-Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.69.
3. Outdoor, Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.75.
4. Corrugated stainless-steel tubing with polymer coating.
5. Operating-Pressure Rating: 0.5 psig.
6. End Fittings: Zinc-coated steel.
7. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
8. Maximum Length: 72 inches

## 2.4 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Joint Compound and Tape: Suitable for natural gas.
- B. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- C. Brazing Filler Metals: Alloy with melting point greater than 1000 deg F complying with AWS A5.8/A5.8M. Brazing alloys containing more than 0.05 percent phosphorus are prohibited.

## 2.5 MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVES

- A. See "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles for where each valve type is applied in various services.
- B. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller: Comply with ASME B16.33.
  1. CWP Rating: 125 psig.
  2. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
  3. Dryseal Threads on Flare Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.3.

4. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
  5. Listing: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for valves 1 inch and smaller.
  6. Service Mark: Valves 1-1/4 inches to NPS 2 shall have initials "WOG" permanently marked on valve body.
- C. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.
1. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B584.
  2. Ball: Chrome-plated bronze.
  3. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
  4. Seats: Reinforced TFE; blowout proof.
  5. Packing: Threaded-body packnut design with adjustable-stem packing.
  6. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
  7. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
  8. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  9. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.
- D. Bronze Plug Valves: MSS SP-78.
1. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B584.
  2. Plug: Bronze.
  3. Ends: Threaded, socket, or flanged as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
  4. Operator: Square head or lug type with tamperproof feature where indicated.
  5. Pressure Class: 125 psig.
  6. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  7. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

## 2.6 PRESSURE REGULATORS

### A. General Requirements:

1. Single stage and suitable for natural gas.
2. Steel jacket and corrosion-resistant components.
3. Elevation compensator.
4. End Connections: Threaded for regulators NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for regulators NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

### B. Appliance Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.18.

1. Body and Diaphragm Case: Die-cast aluminum.
2. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
3. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
4. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber.
5. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
6. Factory-Applied Finish: Minimum three-layer polyester and polyurethane paint finish.



7. Regulator may include vent limiting device, instead of vent connection, if approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
8. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 1 psig.

## 2.7 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Dielectric Unions:
  1. Description:
    - a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
    - b. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
    - c. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for natural-gas piping system to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Close equipment shutoff valves before turning off natural gas to premises or piping section.
- B. Inspect natural-gas piping according to the International Fuel Gas Code to determine that natural-gas utilization devices are turned off in piping section affected.
- C. Comply with the International Fuel Gas Code requirements for prevention of accidental ignition.

### 3.3 OUTDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with the International Fuel Gas Code for installation and purging of natural-gas piping.
- B. Steel Piping with Protective Coating:
  1. Apply joint cover kits to pipe after joining to cover, seal, and protect joints.
  2. Repair damage to PE coating on pipe as recommended in writing by protective coating manufacturer.
  3. Replace pipe having damaged PE coating with new pipe.
- C. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

### 3.4 INDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with the International Fuel Gas Code for installation and purging of natural-gas piping.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- C. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, sleeves, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for mechanical installations.
- D. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- E. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- F. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- G. Locate valves for easy access.
- H. Install natural-gas piping at uniform grade of 2 percent down toward drip and sediment traps.
- I. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- J. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- K. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- L. Comply with requirements in Sections specifying gas-fired appliances and equipment for roughing-in requirements.
- M. Drips and Sediment Traps: Install drips at points where condensate may collect, including service-meter outlets. Locate where accessible to permit cleaning and emptying. Do not install where condensate is subject to freezing.
  - 1. Construct drips and sediment traps using tee fitting with bottom outlet plugged or capped. Use nipple a minimum length of 3 pipe diameters, but not less than 3 inches long and same size as connected pipe. Install with space below bottom of drip to remove plug or cap.
- N. Extend relief vent connections for service regulators, line regulators, and overpressure protection devices to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.
- O. Conceal pipe installations in walls, pipe spaces, utility spaces, above ceilings, below grade or floors, and in floor channels unless indicated to be exposed to view.
- P. Concealed Location Installations: Except as specified below, install concealed natural-gas piping and piping installed under the building in containment conduit constructed of steel pipe

with welded joints as described in Part 2. Install a vent pipe from containment conduit to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.

1. Above Accessible Ceilings: Natural-gas piping, fittings, valves, and regulators may be installed in accessible spaces without containment conduit.
  2. In Floors: Install natural-gas piping with welded or brazed joints and protective coating in cast-in-place concrete floors. Cover piping to be cast in concrete slabs with minimum of 1-1/2 inches of concrete. Piping may not be in physical contact with other metallic structures such as reinforcing rods or electrically neutral conductors. Do not embed piping in concrete slabs containing quick-set additives or cinder aggregate.
  3. In Floor Channels: Install natural-gas piping in floor channels. Channels must have cover and be open to space above cover for ventilation.
  4. In Walls or Partitions: Protect tubing installed inside partitions or hollow walls from physical damage using steel striker barriers at rigid supports.
    - a. Exception: Tubing passing through partitions or walls does not require striker barriers.
  5. Prohibited Locations:
    - a. Do not install natural-gas piping in or through circulating air ducts, clothes or trash chutes, chimneys or gas vents (flues), ventilating ducts, or dumbwaiter or elevator shafts.
    - b. Do not install natural-gas piping in solid walls or partitions.
- Q. Use eccentric reducer fittings to make reductions in pipe sizes. Install fittings with level side down.
- R. Connect branch piping from top or side of horizontal piping.
- S. Install unions in pipes NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve, at final connection to each piece of equipment. Unions are not required at flanged connections.
- T. Do not use natural-gas piping as grounding electrode.
- U. Install strainer on inlet of each line-pressure regulator and automatic or electrically operated valve.
- V. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- W. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- X. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 230518 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

### 3.5 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install manual gas shutoff valve for each gas appliance ahead of corrugated stainless-steel tubing, aluminum, or copper connector.

### 3.6 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints:
  - 1. Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads complying with ASME B1.20.1.
  - 2. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies.
  - 3. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full inside diameter of pipe.
  - 4. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dryseal threading is specified.
  - 5. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- D. Welded Joints:
  - 1. Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators.
  - 2. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
  - 3. Patch factory-applied protective coating as recommended by manufacturer at field welds and where damage to coating occurs during construction.
- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter.

### 3.7 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
- B. Comply with requirements for pipe hangers and supports specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- C. Install hangers for steel piping and copper tubing, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with MSS-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- D. Install hangers for corrugated stainless-steel tubing, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- E. Support horizontal piping within 12 inches of each fitting.

- F. Support vertical runs of steel piping and copper tubing to comply with MSS-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- G. Support vertical runs of corrugated stainless-steel tubing to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.

### 3.8 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect to utility's gas main according to utility's procedures and requirements.
- B. Install natural-gas piping electrically continuous, and bonded to gas appliance equipment grounding conductor of the circuit powering the appliance according to NFPA 70.
- C. Install piping adjacent to appliances to allow service and maintenance of appliances.
- D. Connect piping to appliances using manual gas shutoff valves and unions. Install valve within 72 inches of each gas-fired appliance and equipment. Install union between valve and appliances or equipment.
- E. Sediment Traps: Install tee fitting with capped nipple in bottom to form drip, as close as practical to inlet of each appliance.

### 3.9 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for piping and valve identification.
- B. Install detectable warning tape directly above gas piping, 12 inches below finished grade, except 6 inches below subgrade under pavements and slabs.

### 3.10 PAINTING

- A. Paint exposed, exterior metal piping, valves, service regulators, service meters and meter bars, earthquake valves, and piping specialties, except components, with factory-applied paint or protective coating.
  - 1. Alkyd System: MPI EXT 5.1D.
    - a. Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive metal primer.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Exterior alkyd enamel matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Exterior alkyd enamel semigloss.
    - d. Color: yellow
- B. Paint exposed, interior metal piping, valves, service regulators, service meters and meter bars, earthquake valves, and piping specialties, except components, with factory-applied paint or protective coating.
  - 1. Alkyd System: MPI INT 5.1E.

- a. Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive metal primer.
  - b. Intermediate Coat: Interior alkyd matching topcoat.
  - c. Topcoat: Interior alkyd semigloss.
  - d. Color: yellow.
- C. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-applied finishes with materials and by procedures to match original factory finish.

### 3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Test, inspect, and purge natural gas according to the International Fuel Gas Code and authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Natural-gas piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.12 OUTDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Aboveground natural-gas piping shall be the following:
  - 1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.

### 3.13 INDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Aboveground, branch piping NPS 1 and smaller shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Corrugated stainless-steel tubing with mechanical fittings having socket or threaded ends to match adjacent piping.
  - 2. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
- B. Aboveground, distribution piping shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
  - 2. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.

### 3.14 ABOVEGROUND MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Valves for pipe sizes NPS 2 and smaller at service meter shall be the following:
  - 1. Bronze plug valve.
- B. Distribution piping valves for pipe sizes NPS 2 and smaller shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
  - 2. Bronze plug valve.

- C. Valves in branch piping for single appliance shall be[ one of] the following:
1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
  2. Bronze plug valve.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 232113 - HYDRONIC PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following:
  - 1. Pipe.
  - 2. Fittings.
  - 3. Joining materials.
  - 4. Bypass chemical feeder.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.
- B. Field quality-control reports.
- C. Preconstruction Test Reports:
  - 1. Water Analysis: Submit a copy of the water analysis to illustrate water quality available at Project site.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications:
  - 1. Installers of Pressure-Sealed Joints: Installers shall be certified by pressure-seal joint manufacturer as having been trained and qualified to join piping with pressure-seal pipe couplings and fittings.
- B. Steel Support Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- C. Pipe Welding: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.
  - 1. Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for materials, products, and installation.



2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.

## 1.5 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Testing Service: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform preconstruction testing on water quality.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Hydronic piping components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure and temperature unless otherwise indicated:
  1. Hot-Water Heating Piping: 100 psig at 200 deg F.
  2. Makeup-Water Piping: 80 psig 73 deg F.
  3. Air-Vent Piping: 180 deg F.
  4. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping: Equal to the pressure of the piping system to which it is attached.

### 2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Drawn-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type L.
- B. Copper or Bronze Pressure-Seal Fittings:
  1. O-Rings and Pipe Stops: EPDM.
  2. Tools: Manufacturer's special tools.
  3. Minimum 200-psig working-pressure rating at 250 deg F.
- C. Wrought-Copper Fittings and Unions: ASME B16.22.

### 2.3 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel with plain ends; welded and seamless, Grade B, and wall thickness as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- B. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Classes 150 and 300 as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- C. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39; Classes 150, 250, and 300 as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- D. Wrought-Steel Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M, wall thickness to match adjoining pipe.
- E. Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of same materials and wall thicknesses as pipe in which they are installed.

## 2.4 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
  - 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
    - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
- B. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- D. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for joining copper with copper; or BAg-1, silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.
- E. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12M/D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

## 2.5 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Dielectric Unions:
  - 1. Description:
    - a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
    - b. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
    - c. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- C. Dielectric Nipples:
  - 1. Description:
    - a. Standard: IAPMO PS 66.
    - b. Electroplated steel nipple, complying with ASTM F 1545.
    - c. Pressure Rating: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
    - d. End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
    - e. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

## 2.6 BYPASS CHEMICAL FEEDER

- A. Description: Welded steel construction; 125-psig working pressure; 5-gal. capacity; with fill funnel and inlet, outlet, and drain valves.
  - 1. Chemicals: Specially formulated, based on analysis of makeup water, to prevent accumulation of scale and corrosion in piping and connected equipment.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Hot-water heating piping, aboveground, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be any of the following:
  - 1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered or pressure seal joints.
  - 2. Schedule 40, Grade B steel pipe; Class 150, malleable-iron fittings; and threaded joints.
- B. Hot-water heating piping, aboveground, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, shall be any of the following:
  - 1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered or pressure seal joints.
  - 2. Schedule 40 steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints.
- C. Makeup-water piping installed aboveground shall be the following:
  - 1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered or pressure seal joints.
- D. Air-Vent Piping:
  - 1. Same as service where installed.
- E. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping for Hot-Water Piping: Same materials and joining methods as for piping specified for the service in which safety valve is installed with metal-to-plastic transition fittings for plastic piping systems according to piping manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install piping at indicated slopes.

- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- J. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- K. Install groups of pipes parallel to each other, spaced to permit applying insulation and servicing of valves.
- L. Install drains, consisting of a tee fitting, NPS 3/4 ball valve, and short NPS 3/4 threaded nipple with cap, at low points in piping system mains and elsewhere as required for system drainage.
- M. Install piping at a uniform grade of 0.2 percent upward in direction of flow.
- N. Reduce pipe sizes using eccentric reducer fitting installed with level side up.
- O. Install branch connections to mains using tee fittings in main pipe, with the branch connected to the bottom of the main pipe. For up-feed risers, connect the branch to the top of the main pipe.
- P. Install valves according to the following:
  1. Section 230523.12 "Ball Valves for HVAC Piping."
  2. Section 230523.13 "Butterfly Valves for HVAC Piping."
  3. Section 230523.14 "Check Valves for HVAC Piping."
- Q. Install unions in piping, NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to valves, at final connections of equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
- R. Install flanges in piping, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, at final connections of equipment and elsewhere as indicated.
- S. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.
- T. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for identifying piping.
- U. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- V. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- W. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 230518 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

### 3.3 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for hangers, supports, and anchor devices.
- B. Install the following pipe attachments:
  - 1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal piping less than 20 feet long.
  - 2. Adjustable roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal piping 20 feet or longer.
  - 3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet or longer, supported on a trapeze.
  - 4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
  - 5. Provide copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
  - 6. On plastic pipe, install pads or cushions on bearing surfaces to prevent hanger from scratching pipe.
- C. Install hangers for copper tubing and steel piping, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with MSS-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- D. Support horizontal piping within 12 inches of each fitting and coupling.
- E. Support vertical runs of copper tubing and steel piping to comply with MSS-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- F. Support vertical runs of fiberglass piping to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.

### 3.5 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
- D. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
  - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

- E. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12M/D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to "Quality Assurance" Article.
- F. Pressure-Sealed Joints: Use manufacturer-recommended tool and procedure. Leave insertion marks on pipe after assembly.

### 3.6 TERMINAL EQUIPMENT CONNECTIONS

- A. Sizes for supply and return piping connections shall be the same as or larger than equipment connections.
- B. Install control valves in accessible locations close to connected equipment.
- C. Install bypass piping with globe valve around control valve. If parallel control valves are installed, only one bypass is required.
- D. Install ports for pressure gages and thermometers at coil inlet and outlet connections. Comply with requirements in Section 230519 "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping."

### 3.7 CHEMICAL TREATMENT

- A. Perform an analysis of makeup water to determine type and quantities of chemical treatment needed to keep system free of scale, corrosion, and fouling, and to sustain the following water characteristics:
- B. Install bypass chemical feeders in each hydronic system where indicated.
  - 1. Install in upright position with top of funnel not more than 48 inches above the floor.
  - 2. Install feeder in minimum NPS 3/4 bypass line, from main with full-size, full-port, ball valve in the main between bypass connections.
  - 3. Install NPS 3/4 pipe from chemical feeder drain to nearest equipment drain and include a full-size, full-port, ball valve.
- C. Fill system with fresh water and add liquid alkaline compound with emulsifying agents and detergents to remove grease and petroleum products from piping. Circulate solution for a minimum of 24 hours, drain, clean strainer screens, and refill with fresh water.
- D. Add initial chemical treatment and maintain water quality in ranges noted above for the first year of operation.

### 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Prepare hydronic piping according to ASME B31.9 and as follows:
  - 1. Leave joints, including welds, uninsulated and exposed for examination during test.
  - 2. Provide temporary restraints for expansion joints that cannot sustain reactions due to test pressure. If temporary restraints are impractical, isolate expansion joints from testing.
  - 3. Flush hydronic piping systems with clean water; then remove and clean or replace strainer screens.

4. Isolate equipment from piping. If a valve is used to isolate equipment, its closure shall be capable of sealing against test pressure without damage to valve. Install blinds in flanged joints to isolate equipment.
5. Install safety valve, set at a pressure no more than one-third higher than test pressure, to protect against damage by expanding liquid or other source of overpressure during test.

B. Perform the following tests on hydronic piping:

1. Use ambient temperature water as a testing medium unless there is risk of damage due to freezing. Another liquid that is safe for workers and compatible with piping may be used.
2. While filling system, use vents installed at high points of system to release air. Use drains installed at low points for complete draining of test liquid.
3. Isolate expansion tanks and determine that hydronic system is full of water.
4. Subject piping system to hydrostatic test pressure that is not less than 1.5 times the system's working pressure. Test pressure shall not exceed maximum pressure for any vessel, pump, valve, or other component in system under test. Verify that stress due to pressure at bottom of vertical runs does not exceed 90 percent of specified minimum yield strength or 1.7 times the "SE" value in Appendix A in ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping."
5. After hydrostatic test pressure has been applied for at least 10 minutes, examine piping, joints, and connections for leakage. Eliminate leaks by tightening, repairing, or replacing components, and repeat hydrostatic test until there are no leaks.
6. Prepare written report of testing.

C. Perform the following before operating the system:

1. Open manual valves fully.
2. Inspect pumps for proper rotation.
3. Set makeup pressure-reducing valves for required system pressure.
4. Inspect air vents at high points of system and determine if all are installed and operating freely (automatic type), or bleed air completely (manual type).
5. Set temperature controls so all coils are calling for full flow.
6. Inspect and set operating temperatures of hydronic equipment, such as boilers, chillers, cooling towers, to specified values.
7. Verify lubrication of motors and bearings.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 232116 - HYDRONIC PIPING SPECIALTIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product:
  1. Include construction details and material descriptions for hydronic piping specialties.
  2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
  3. Include flow and pressure drop curves based on manufacturer's testing for calibrated-orifice balancing valves and automatic flow-control valves.

#### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For hydronic piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Pipe Welding: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.
- B. Safety Valves and Pressure Vessels: Shall bear the appropriate ASME label. Fabricate and stamp air separators and expansion tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 HYDRONIC SPECIALTY VALVES

- A. Bronze, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves:
  1. Body: Bronze, ball or plug type with calibrated orifice or venturi.
  2. Ball: Brass or stainless steel.
  3. Plug: Resin.
  4. Seat: PTFE.
  5. End Connections: Threaded or socket.
  6. Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.



7. Handle Style: Lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
  8. CWP Rating: Minimum 125 psig.
  9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.
- B. Diaphragm-Operated, Pressure-Reducing Valves: ASME labeled.
1. Body: Bronze or brass.
  2. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
  3. Seat: Brass.
  4. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
  5. Diaphragm: EPT.
  6. Low inlet-pressure check valve.
  7. Inlet Strainer: removable without system shutdown.
  8. Valve Seat and Stem: Noncorrosive.
  9. Valve Size, Capacity, and Operating Pressure: Selected to suit system in which installed, with operating pressure and capacity factory set and field adjustable.
- C. Diaphragm-Operated Safety Valves: ASME labeled.
1. Body: Bronze or brass.
  2. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
  3. Seat: Brass.
  4. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
  5. Diaphragm: EPT.
  6. Wetted, Internal Work Parts: Brass and rubber.
  7. Inlet Strainer: removable without system shutdown.
  8. Valve Seat and Stem: Noncorrosive.
  9. Valve Size, Capacity, and Operating Pressure: Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IV, and selected to suit system in which installed, with operating pressure and capacity factory set and field adjustable.

## 2.2 AIR-CONTROL DEVICES

- A. Manual Air Vents:
1. Body: Bronze.
  2. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
  3. Operator: Screwdriver or thumbscrew.
  4. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2.
  5. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/8.
  6. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
  7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 225 deg F.
- B. Automatic Air Vents:
1. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
  2. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
  3. Operator: Noncorrosive metal float.
  4. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2.
  5. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/4.
  6. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
  7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.
- C. Expansion Tanks and Air Separators: Basis of Design products are scheduled on the drawings

## 2.3 STRAINERS

### A. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. Strainer Screen: Stainless-steel, 60-mesh strainer, or perforated stainless-steel basket.
4. CWP Rating: 125 psig.

### B. Basket Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A126, Class B, high-tensile cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. Strainer Screen: 60-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
4. CWP Rating: 125 psig.

## 2.4 CONNECTORS

### A. Stainless-Steel Bellow, Flexible Connectors:

1. Body: Stainless-steel bellows with woven, flexible, bronze, wire-reinforcing protective jacket.
2. End Connections: Threaded or flanged to match equipment connected.
3. Performance: Capable of 3/4-inch misalignment.
4. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. Install shutoff-duty valves at each branch connection to supply mains and at supply connection to each piece of equipment.
- B. Install calibrated-orifice, balancing valves at each branch connection to return main.
- C. Install calibrated-orifice, balancing valves in the return pipe of each heating or cooling terminal.
- D. Install check valves at each pump discharge and elsewhere as required to control flow direction.
- E. Install safety valves at hot-water generators and elsewhere as required by ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Install drip-pan elbow on safety-valve outlet and pipe without valves to the outdoors; pipe drain to nearest floor drain or as indicated on Drawings. Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1, for installation requirements.

- F. Install pressure-reducing valves at makeup-water connection to regulate system fill pressure.

### 3.2 HYDRONIC SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

- A. Install manual air vents at high points in piping, at heat-transfer coils, and elsewhere as required for system air venting.
- B. Install automatic air vents at high points of system piping in mechanical equipment rooms only. Install manual vents at heat-transfer coils and elsewhere as required for air venting.
- C. Install piping from boiler air outlet, air separator, or air purger to expansion tank with a 2 percent upward slope toward tank.
- D. Install in-line air separators in pump suction. Install drain valve on air separators NPS 2 and larger.
- E. Install expansion tanks above the air separator. Install tank fitting in tank bottom and charge tank. Use manual vent for initial fill to establish proper water level in tank.
  - 1. Install tank fittings that are shipped loose.
  - 2. Support tank from floor or structure above with sufficient strength to carry weight of tank, piping connections, fittings, plus tank full of water. Do not overload building components and structural members.
- F. Vent and purge air from hydronic system, and ensure that expansion tank is properly charged with air to suit system Project requirements.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 232123 - HYDRONIC PUMPS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of pump.
  - 1. Include certified performance curves and rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, final impeller dimensions, and accessories for each type of product indicated.
  - 2. Indicate pump's operating point on curves.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each pump.
  - 1. Show pump layout and connections.
  - 2. Include setting drawings with templates for installing foundation and anchor bolts and other anchorages.
  - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For pumps to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS Basis of Design products are scheduled on the drawings

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

## 2.2 PUMPS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
  2. Bell & Gossett
  3. Flowserve Corporation.
  4. Grundfos Pumps Corporation.
  5. TACO Comfort Solutions, Inc.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain pumps from single source from single manufacturer.

## 2.3 PUMP SPECIALTY FITTINGS

- A. Suction Diffuser:
1. Angle pattern.
  2. 175-psig pressure rating, cast-iron body and end cap, pump-inlet fitting.
  3. Bronze 16-mesh wire startup and Type 304 stainless steel permanent strainers with 3/16-inch.
  4. Carbon steel straightening vanes.
  5. Drain plug.
  6. Factory-fabricated support.
- B. Triple-Duty Valve:
1. Angle or straight pattern.
  2. 175-psig pressure rating, cast-iron body, pump-discharge fitting.
  3. Valve with multi-turn stem and memory stop to allow valve to be returned to its original position after shutoff.
  4. Brass valve disc with EPDM rubber seat.
  5. Type 304 stainless steel valve stem.
  6. Drain plug and bronze-fitted shutoff, balancing, and check valve features.
  7. Brass gauge ports with integral check valve and orifice for flow measurement.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine equipment foundations and anchor-bolt locations for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before pump installation.
- C. Examine foundations and inertia bases for suitable conditions where pumps will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PUMP INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with HI 1.4.
- B. Install pumps to provide access for periodic maintenance including removing motors, impellers, couplings, and accessories.
- C. Independently support pumps and piping so weight of piping is not supported by pumps and weight of pumps is not supported by piping.
- D. Equipment Mounting:
  - 1. Install base-mounted pumps on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
  - 2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."
- E. Equipment Mounting: Install in-line pumps with continuous-thread hanger rods and elastomeric hangers of size required to support weight of in-line pumps.
  - 1. Comply with requirements for hangers and supports specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

### 3.3 ALIGNMENT

- A. Perform alignment service. When required by manufacturer to maintain warranty coverage, engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform it.
- B. Comply with requirements in HI standards for alignment of pump and motor shaft. Add shims to the motor feet and bolt motor to base frame. Do not use grout between motor feet and base frame.
- C. Comply with pump and coupling manufacturers' written instructions.
- D. After alignment is correct, tighten foundation bolts evenly but not too firmly. Completely fill baseplate with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout while metal blocks and shims or wedges are in place. After grout has cured, fully tighten foundation bolts.

### 3.4 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Where installing piping adjacent to pump, allow space for service and maintenance.
- B. Connect piping to pumps. Install valves that are same size as piping connected to pumps.
- C. Install suction and discharge pipe sizes equal to or greater than diameter of pump nozzles.
- D. Install check, shutoff, and throttling valves or triple-duty valve on discharge side of pumps.
- E. Install suction diffuser and shutoff valve on suction side of pumps.

1. Use startup strainer for initial system startup. Install permanent strainer element before turnover of system to Owner.
- F. Install flexible connectors on suction and discharge sides of base-mounted pumps between pump casing and valves.
- G. Install pressure gauges on pump suction and discharge or at integral pressure-gauge tapping, or install single gauge with multiple-input selector valve.

### 3.5 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Ground equipment in accordance with Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, in accordance with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- D. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.

### 3.6 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring in accordance with Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

### 3.7 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Perform startup service.
  1. Complete installation and startup checks in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
  2. Check piping connections for tightness.
  3. Clean strainers on suction piping. Use startup strainer for initial startup.
  4. Perform the following startup checks for each pump before starting:
    - a. Verify bearing lubrication.
    - b. Verify that pump is free to rotate by hand and that pump for handling hot liquid is free to rotate with pump hot and cold. If pump is bound or drags, do not operate until cause of trouble is determined and corrected.
    - c. Verify that pump is rotating in correct direction.
  5. Prime pump by opening suction valves and closing drains, and prepare pump for operation.
  6. Start motor.

7. Open discharge valve slowly.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Hydronic pumps will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.9 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain hydronic pumps.

END OF SECTION



## SECTION 232300 - REFRIGERANT PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.3 PRODUCT STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store piping with end caps in place to ensure that piping interior and exterior are clean when installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS Provide products as recommended by the HVAC equipment manufacturer

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Install refrigerant piping according to ASHRAE 15.
- B. Size, route, and install VRF refrigerant piping in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions for the VRF system being installed.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping adjacent to machines to allow service and maintenance.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

- I. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- J. Install piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints, elbows, and fittings.
- K. Arrange piping to allow inspection and service of refrigeration equipment. Install valves and specialties in accessible locations to allow for service and inspection. Install access doors or panels as specified in Section 083113 "Access Doors and Frames" if valves or equipment requiring maintenance is concealed behind finished surfaces.
- L. Slope refrigerant piping as follows:
  - 1. Install horizontal hot-gas discharge piping with a uniform slope downward away from compressor.
  - 2. Install horizontal suction lines with a uniform slope downward to compressor.
  - 3. Install traps and double risers to entrain oil in vertical runs.
  - 4. Liquid lines may be installed level.
- M. When brazing or soldering, remove solenoid-valve coils and sight glasses; also remove valve stems, seats, and packing, and accessible internal parts of refrigerant specialties. Do not apply heat near expansion-valve bulb.
- N. Install piping with adequate clearance between pipe and adjacent walls and hangers or between pipes for insulation installation.
- O. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- P. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- Q. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 230518 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

### 3.2 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Fill pipe and fittings with an inert gas (nitrogen or carbon dioxide), during brazing or welding, to prevent scale formation.
- D. Soldered Joints: Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," Chapter "Pipe and Tube."

1. Use Type BCuP (copper-phosphorus) alloy for joining copper socket fittings with copper pipe.
2. Use Type BA<sub>g</sub> (cadmium-free silver) alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for hangers, supports, and anchor devices.
- B. Install the following pipe attachments:
  1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal runs less than 20 feet long.
  2. Roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal runs 20 feet or longer.
  3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet or longer, supported on a trapeze.
  4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
  5. Copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
- C. Install hangers for copper tubing, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with MSS-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.
- D. Support horizontal piping within 12 inches of each fitting.
- E. Support vertical runs of copper tubing to comply with MSS-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  1. Comply with ASME B31.5, Chapter VI.
  2. Test refrigerant piping, specialties, and receivers. Isolate compressor, condenser, evaporator, and safety devices from test pressure if they are not rated above the test pressure.
  3. Test high- and low-pressure side piping of each system e.
    - a. Fill system with nitrogen to the required test pressure.
    - b. System shall maintain test pressure at the manifold gage throughout duration of test.
    - c. Test joints and fittings with electronic leak detector or by brushing a small amount of soap and glycerin solution over joints.
    - d. Remake leaking joints using new materials, and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.
- B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust thermostatic expansion valve to obtain proper evaporator superheat.
- B. Adjust high- and low-pressure switch settings to avoid short cycling in response to fluctuating suction pressure.
- C. Adjust set-point temperature of air-conditioning or chilled-water controllers to the system design temperature.
- D. Perform the following adjustments before operating the refrigeration system, according to manufacturer's written instructions:
  - 1. Open shutoff valves in condenser water circuit.
  - 2. Verify that compressor oil level is correct.
  - 3. Open compressor suction and discharge valves.
  - 4. Open refrigerant valves except bypass valves that are used for other purposes.
  - 5. Check open compressor-motor alignment and verify lubrication for motors and bearings.
- E. Replace core of replaceable filter dryer after system has been adjusted and after design flow rates and pressures are established.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 232500 - HVAC WATER TREATMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories
- B. Shop Drawings: Pretreatment equipment and chemical- treatment equipment, showing tanks, maintenance space required, and piping connections to HVAC systems.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
  - 2. Include diagrams for power and control wiring.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.
- B. Water-Treatment Program: Written sequence of operation on an annual basis for the application equipment required to achieve water quality defined in "Performance Requirements" Article.
- C. Water Analysis: Illustrate water quality available at Project site.
- D. Passivation Confirmation Report: Verify passivation of galvanized-steel surfaces, and confirm this observation in a letter to Architect.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For sensors, injection pumps, water softeners, water-filtration units, and controllers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. HVAC Water-Treatment Service Provider Qualifications: An experienced HVAC water-treatment service provider, capable of analyzing water qualities, installing water-treatment equipment, and applying water treatment as specified in this Section.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 HVAC WATER-TREATMENT MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. Aqua-Chem, Inc.
  2. Cascade Water Services, Inc.
  3. Earthwise Environmental Inc.
  4. Nalco; an Ecolab company.
  5. U S Water.

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide all hardware, chemicals, and other material necessary to maintain HVAC water quality in all systems as indicated in this Specification. Water quality for HVAC systems shall minimize corrosion, scale buildup, and biological growth for optimum efficiency of HVAC equipment without creating a hazard to operating personnel or to the environment.
- B. Base HVAC water treatment on quality of water available at Project site, HVAC system equipment material characteristics and functional performance characteristics, operating personnel capabilities, and requirements and guidelines of authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Provide water treatment for the closed hot-water heating hydronic system.

### 2.3 MANUAL CHEMICAL-FEED EQUIPMENT

- A. Bypass Feeders: Steel, with corrosion-resistant exterior coating, minimum 3-1/2-inch fill opening in the top, and NPS 3/4 bottom inlet and top side outlet. Provide quarter- turn or threaded fill cap with gasket seal and diaphragm arranged to lock the top onto the feeder when exposed to system pressure in the vessel. Provide a NPS 3/4 IN quarter-turn valve on inlet and outlet.
1. Minimum Working Pressure: 125 psig.

### 2.4 CHEMICALS

- A. Chemicals shall be as recommended by water-treatment system manufacturer that are compatible with piping system components and connected equipment and that can attain water quality specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 WATER ANALYSIS

- A. Perform an analysis of supply water to determine quality of water available at Project site.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install chemical-application equipment on concrete bases, level and plumb. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units, so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible. Anchor chemical tanks and floor-mounting accessories to substrate. Install all chemical application equipment within a spill-containment area without floor drains.
- B. Bypass Feeders: Install in closed hydronic systems and equip with the following:
  - 1. Install bypass feeder in a bypass circuit around circulating pumps unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Install a gate or full-port ball isolation valves on inlet, outlet, and drain below feeder inlet.
  - 3. Install a swing check on inlet after the isolation valve.

### 3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Make piping connections between HVAC water-treatment equipment and dissimilar-metal piping with dielectric fittings. Dielectric fittings are specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping."
- D. Install shutoff valves on HVAC water-treatment equipment inlet and outlet. Metal general-duty valves are specified in Section 230523.11 "Globe Valves for HVAC Piping," Section 230523.12 "Ball Valves for HVAC Piping," and Section 230523.13 "Butterfly Valves for HVAC Piping."
- E. See Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for backflow preventers required in makeup-water connections to potable-water systems.

### 3.4 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Confirm applicable electrical requirements in electrical Sections for connecting electrical equipment.
- B. Ground equipment in accordance with Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including piping and electrical connections.
  2. Inspect piping and equipment to determine that systems and equipment have been cleaned, flushed, and filled with water, and are fully operational before introducing chemicals for water-treatment system.
  3. Place HVAC water-treatment system into operation, and calibrate controls during the preliminary phase of HVAC system's startup procedures.
  4. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is tested and satisfactory test results are achieved.
  5. Test for leaks and defects. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
  6. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, and replaced water piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that has been covered or concealed before it has been tested and approved.
  7. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow test pressure to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects.
  8. Repair leaks and defects with new materials, and retest piping until no leaks exist.
- C. Equipment will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- E. Comply with ASTM D3370 and with the following standards:
1. Silica: ASTM D859.
  2. Acidity and Alkalinity: ASTM D1067.
  3. Iron: ASTM D1068.

### 3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain HVAC water-treatment systems and equipment.

END OF SECTION



## SECTION 233113 - METAL DUCTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- B. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment," and Section 7 - "Construction and System Startup."
- C. ASHRAE/IES Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6.4.4 - "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."
- D. Duct Dimensions: Unless otherwise indicated, all duct dimensions indicated on Drawings are inside clear dimensions and do not include insulation or duct wall thickness.

#### 2.2 SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Construct ducts of galvanized sheet steel unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. For ducts exposed to weather, construct of Type 304 stainless steel indicated by manufacturer to be suitable for outdoor installation.
- B. Transverse Joints: Fabricate joints in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

1. For ducts with longest side less than 36 inches, select joint types in accordance with Figure 2-1.
  2. For ducts with longest side 36 inches or greater, use flange joint connector Type T-22, T-24, T-24A, T-25a, or T-25b. Factory-fabricated flanged duct connection system may be used if submitted and approved by engineer of record.
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Ch. 4, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

### 2.3 SINGLE-WALL ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Ch. 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
1. Construct ducts of galvanized sheet steel unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- D. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

### 2.4 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct

construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A653/A653M.
  - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G60.
  - 2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.
- C. Factory- or Shop-Applied Antimicrobial Coating:
  - 1. Apply to the surface of sheet metal that will form the interior surface of the duct. An untreated clear coating shall be applied to the exterior surface.
  - 2. Antimicrobial compound shall be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.
  - 3. Coating containing the antimicrobial compound shall have a hardness of 2H, minimum, when tested in accordance with ASTM D3363.
  - 4. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
  - 5. Antimicrobial coating on sheet metal is not required for duct containing liner treated with antimicrobial coating.
- D. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A36/A36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
  - 1. Where black- and galvanized-steel shapes and plates are used to reinforce aluminum ducts, isolate the different metals with butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM gasket materials.
- E. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch-minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch-minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

## 2.5 SEALANT AND GASKETS

- A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
- B. Two-Part Tape Sealing System:
  - 1. Tape: Woven cotton fiber impregnated with mineral gypsum and modified acrylic/silicone activator to react exothermically with tape to form hard, durable, airtight seal.
  - 2. Tape Width: 3 inches.
  - 3. Sealant: Modified styrene acrylic.
  - 4. Water resistant.
  - 5. Mold and mildew resistant.
  - 6. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10 inch wg, positive and negative.
  - 7. Service: Indoor and outdoor.
  - 8. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.

9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum.

C. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:

1. Application Method: Brush on.
2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
4. Water resistant.
5. Mold and mildew resistant.
6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10 inch wg, positive and negative.
8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.

D. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C920.

1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
2. Type: S.
3. Grade: NS.
4. Class: 25.
5. Use: O.
6. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.
7. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

E. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.

F. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:

1. Seal shall provide maximum leakage class of 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and shall be rated for 10-inch wg static-pressure class, positive or negative.

## 2.6 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Galvanized-steel rods and nuts.

B. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."

C. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.

D. Trapeze and Riser Supports:

1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and coordination drawings.
- B. Install ducts in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install ducts in maximum practical lengths with fewest possible joints.
- D. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.
- E. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.
- F. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.
- G. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch, plus allowance for insulation thickness.
- H. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.
- I. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches.
- J. Install fire and smoke dampers where indicated on Drawings and as required by code, and by local authorities having jurisdiction. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and specific installation requirements of the damper UL listing.
- K. Install heating coils, cooling coils, air filters, dampers, and all other duct-mounted accessories in air ducts where indicated on Drawings.
- L. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials both before and after installation
- M. Elbows: Use long-radius elbows wherever they fit.
  - 1. Fabricate 90-degree rectangular mitered elbows to include turning vanes.
  - 2. Fabricate 90-degree round elbows with a minimum of three segments for 12 inches and smaller and a minimum of five segments for 14 inches and larger.

- N. Branch Connections: Use lateral or conical branch connections.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

- A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.
- B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.
- C. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.
- D. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.
- E. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.

### 3.3 DUCT SEALING

- A. Seal ducts at a minimum to the following seal classes in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible":
  - 1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
  - 2. Outdoor, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
  - 3. Outdoor, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.
  - 4. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg and Lower: Seal Class B.
  - 5. Unconditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
  - 6. Unconditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class B.
  - 7. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg and Lower: Seal Class C.
  - 8. Conditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class B.
  - 9. Conditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.

### 3.4 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."
- B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
  - 1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
  - 2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
  - 3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches thick.

4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
- C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches of each elbow and within 48 inches of each branch intersection.
- D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.
- E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16 feet.
- F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

### 3.5 CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

### 3.6 PAINTING

- A. Paint interior of metal ducts that are visible through registers and grilles and that do not have duct liner. Apply one coat of flat, black, latex paint over a compatible galvanized-steel primer.

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Leakage Tests:
  1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual." Submit a test report for each test.
  2. Disassemble, reassemble, and seal segments of systems to accommodate leakage testing and for compliance with test requirements.
  3. Testing of each duct section is to be performed with access doors, coils, filters, dampers, and other duct-mounted devices in place as designed. No devices are to be removed or blanked off so as to reduce or prevent additional leakage.
  4. Test for leaks before applying external insulation.
  5. Conduct tests at static pressures equal to maximum design pressure of system or section being tested. If static-pressure classes are not indicated, test system at maximum system design pressure. Do not pressurize systems above maximum design operating pressure.

- C. Duct system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.8 DUCT CLEANING

- A. Clean new duct system(s) before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- B. Use duct cleaning methodology as indicated in NADCA ACR.
- C. Use service openings for entry and inspection.
  - 1. Provide openings with access panels appropriate for duct static-pressure and leakage class at dampers, coils, and any other locations where required for inspection and cleaning access. Provide insulated panels for insulated or lined duct. Patch insulation and liner as recommended by duct liner manufacturer. Comply with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for access panels and doors.
  - 2. Disconnect and reconnect flexible ducts as needed for cleaning and inspection.
  - 3. Remove and reinstall ceiling to gain access during the cleaning process.
- D. Particulate Collection and Odor Control:
  - 1. When venting vacuuming system inside the building, use HEPA filtration with 99.97 percent collection efficiency for 0.3-micron-size (or larger) particles.
  - 2. When venting vacuuming system to outdoors, use filter to collect debris removed from HVAC system, and locate exhaust downwind and away from air intakes and other points of entry into building.
- E. Clean the following components by removing surface contaminants and deposits:
  - 1. Air outlets and inlets (registers, grilles, and diffusers).
  - 2. Supply, return, and exhaust fans including fan housings, plenums (except ceiling supply and return plenums), scrolls, blades or vanes, shafts, baffles, dampers, and drive assemblies.
  - 3. Air-handling unit internal surfaces and components including mixing box, coil section, air wash systems, spray eliminators, condensate drain pans, humidifiers and dehumidifiers, filters and filter sections, and condensate collectors and drains.
  - 4. Coils and related components.
  - 5. Return-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes except in ceiling plenums and mechanical equipment rooms.
  - 6. Supply-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes.
  - 7. Dedicated exhaust and ventilation components and makeup air systems.
- F. Mechanical Cleaning Methodology:
  - 1. Clean metal duct systems using mechanical cleaning methods that extract contaminants from within duct systems and remove contaminants from building.
  - 2. Use vacuum-collection devices that are operated continuously during cleaning. Connect vacuum device to downstream end of duct sections so areas being cleaned are under negative pressure.



3. Use mechanical agitation to dislodge debris adhered to interior duct surfaces without damaging integrity of metal ducts, duct liner, or duct accessories.
4. Clean fibrous-glass duct liner with HEPA vacuuming equipment; do not permit duct liner to get wet. Replace fibrous-glass duct liner that is damaged, deteriorated, or delaminated or that has friable material, mold, or fungus growth.
5. Clean coils and coil drain pans in accordance with NADCA ACR. Keep drain pan operational. Rinse coils with clean water to remove latent residues and cleaning materials; comb and straighten fins.
6. Provide drainage and cleanup for wash-down procedures.
7. Antimicrobial Agents and Coatings: Apply EPA-registered antimicrobial agents if fungus is present. Apply antimicrobial agents in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions after removal of surface deposits and debris.

### 3.9 STARTUP

- A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

### 3.10 DUCT SCHEDULE

- A. Fabricate ducts with galvanized sheet steel except as otherwise indicated.
- B. Intermediate Reinforcement:
  1. Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel or carbon steel coated with zinc-chromate primer.
- C. Liner: Provide where indicated on drawings.
- D. Elbow Configuration:
  1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
    - a. Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
    - b. Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
    - c. Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
  2. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "Round Duct Elbows."
    - a. Minimum Radius-to-Diameter Ratio and Elbow Segments: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 3-1, "Mitered Elbows." Elbows with less than 90-degree change of direction have proportionately fewer segments.
      - 1) Radius-to Diameter Ratio: 1.5.

- b. Round Elbows: Stamped or pleated.

E. Branch Configuration:

1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-6, "Branch Connection."
  - a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.
  - b. Rectangular Main to Round Branch: Conical spin in.
2. Round and Flat Oval: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees." Saddle taps are permitted in existing duct.
  - a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 90-degree tap.
  - b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: Conical tap.
  - c. Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 45-degree lateral.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 233300 - AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. For duct silencers, include pressure drop and dynamic insertion loss data. Include breakout noise calculations for high transmission loss casings.
- B. Shop Drawings: For duct accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail duct accessories fabrication and installation in ducts and other construction. Include dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances; and method of field assembly into duct systems and other construction. Include the following:
    - a. Special fittings.
    - b. Manual volume damper installations.
    - c. Control-damper installations.
    - d. Fire-damper, smoke-damper, combination fire- and smoke-damper, ceiling, and corridor damper installations, including sleeves; and duct-mounted access doors and remote damper operators.
    - e. Duct security bars.
    - f. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

#### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air duct accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."

- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

## 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
  - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
  - 2. Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.
- B. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.
- C. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

## 2.3 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

- A. Standard, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:
  - 1. Standard leakage rating.
  - 2. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
  - 3. Frames:
    - a. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.094-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel.
    - b. Mitered and welded corners.
    - c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
  - 4. Blades:
    - a. Multiple or single blade.
    - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
    - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
    - d. Galvanized-steel, 0.064 inch thick.
  - 5. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
- B. Damper Hardware:
  - 1. Zinc-plated, die-cast core with dial and handle made of 3/32-inch-thick zinc-plated steel, and a 3/4-inch hexagon locking nut.
  - 2. Include center hole to suit damper operating-rod size.

## 2.4 FLANGE CONNECTORS

- A. Description: Add-on or roll-formed, factory-fabricated, slide-on transverse flange connectors, gaskets, and components.

- B. Material: Galvanized steel.
- C. Gage and Shape: Match connecting ductwork.

## 2.5 FIRE DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Arrow United Industries; Mestek, Inc.
  - 2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  - 3. Pottorff.
  - 4. Ruskin; Air Distribution Technologies, Inc.; Johnson Controls, Inc.
- B. Type: Static; rated and labeled in accordance with UL 555 by an NRTL.
- C. Closing rating in ducts up to 4-inch wg static pressure class and minimum 2000 fpm velocity.
- D. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 hours.
- E. Frame:; fabricated with roll-formed galvanized steel; with mitered and interlocking corners; gauge in accordance with UL listing.
- F. Mounting Sleeve: Factory- or field-installed, galvanized sheet steel; gauge in accordance with UL listing.
- G. Mounting Orientation: Vertical or horizontal as indicated.
- H. Blades: Roll-formed galvanized sheet steel,. Material gauge is to be in accordance with UL listing.
- I. Horizontal Dampers: Include blade lock and stainless steel closure spring.
- J. Heat-Responsive Device:
  - 1. Replaceable, 165 deg F rated, fusible links.

## 2.6 DUCT ACCESS PANEL ASSEMBLIES

- A. Panel and Frame: Minimum thickness 16-gauge carbon steel.
- B. Fasteners: Carbon steel. Panel fasteners shall not penetrate duct wall.
- C. Gasket: Comply with NFPA 96, grease-tight, high-temperature ceramic fiber, rated for minimum 2000 deg F.
- D. Minimum Pressure Rating: 10 inches wg positive or negative.

## 2.7 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

## 2.8 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. CL WARD & Family Inc.
  2. Duro Dyne Inc.
  3. Elgen Manufacturing.
  4. Ventfabrics, Inc.
- B. Materials: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.
- C. Coatings and Adhesives: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.
- D. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip 3-1/2 inches wide attached to two strips of 2-3/4-inch-wide, 0.028-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.032-inch-thick aluminum sheets. Provide metal compatible with connected ducts.
- E. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.
1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd..
  2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch in the warp and 360 lbf/inch in the filling.
  3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel.
- C. Install volume dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches extend from larger ducts. Where dampers are installed in ducts having duct liner, install dampers with hat channels of same depth as liner, and terminate liner with nosing at hat channel.
1. Install steel volume dampers in steel ducts.
  2. Install aluminum volume dampers in aluminum ducts.
- D. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- E. Install test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated.
- F. Install fire dampers in accordance with UL listing.

- G. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.
- H. For fans developing static pressures of 5-inch wg and more, cover flexible connectors with loaded vinyl sheet held in place with metal straps.
- I. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with adhesive plus sheet metal screws.
- J. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.
- K. Install duct access doors on sides of ducts to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and equipment at the following locations:
  - 1. On both sides of duct coils.
  - 2. At drain pans and seals.
  - 3. Downstream from manual volume dampers, control dampers, backdraft dampers, and equipment.
  - 4. Adjacent to and close enough to fire dampers, to reset or reinstall fusible links. Access doors for access to fire dampers having fusible links shall be pressure relief access doors and shall be outward operation for access doors installed upstream from dampers and inward operation for access doors installed downstream from dampers.
  - 5. Control devices requiring inspection.
- L. Install access doors with swing against duct static pressure.
- M. Access Door Sizes:
  - 1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches.
  - 2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches.
  - 3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches.
  - 4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches.
  - 5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches.
  - 6. Body plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches.
- N. Label access doors according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" to indicate the purpose of access door.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 233346 - FLEXIBLE DUCTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### 1.3 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- C. Comply with the Air Diffusion Council's "ADC Flexible Air Duct Test Code FD 72-R1."
- D. Comply with ASTM E96/E96M, "Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials."

#### 1.4 INSULATED FLEXIBLE DUCTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
  - 2. McGill AirFlow LLC.
  - 3. Thermaflex; a Flex-Tek Group company.
  - 4. Ward Industries; a brand of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, black polymer film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; polyethylene vapor-barrier film.
  - 1. Pressure Rating: 4-inch wg positive and 0.5-inch wg negative.
  - 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
  - 3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 175 deg F.
  - 4. Insulation R-Value: Comply with ASHRAE/IES 90.1.



## 1.5 FLEXIBLE DUCT CONNECTORS

- A. Clamps: Stainless-steel band with cadmium-plated hex screw to tighten band with a worm-gear action in sizes 3 through 18 inches, to suit duct size.

## PART 2 - EXECUTION

### 2.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install flexible ducts according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Install in indoor applications only. Flexible ductwork should not be exposed to UV lighting.
- C. Connect terminal units to supply ducts directly or with maximum 12-inch lengths of flexible duct. Do not use flexible ducts to change directions.
- D. Connect diffusers or light troffer boots to ducts directly or with maximum 60-inch lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.
- E. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts draw bands.
- F. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.
- G. Installation:
  - 1. Install ducts fully extended.
  - 2. Do not bend ducts across sharp corners.
  - 3. Bends of flexible ducting shall not exceed a minimum of one duct diameter.
  - 4. Avoid contact with metal fixtures, water lines, pipes, or conduits.
  - 5. Install flexible ducts in a direct line, without sags, twists, or turns.
- H. Supporting Flexible Ducts:
  - 1. Suspend flexible ducts with bands 1-1/2 inches wide or wider and spaced a maximum of 48 inches apart. Maximum centerline sag between supports shall not exceed 1/2 inch per 12 inches.
  - 2. Install extra supports at bends placed approximately one duct diameter from center line of the bend.
  - 3. Ducts may rest on ceiling joists or truss supports. Spacing between supports shall not exceed the maximum spacing per manufacturer's written installation instructions.
  - 4. Vertically installed ducts shall be stabilized by support straps at a maximum of 72 inches o.c.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 233416 - CENTRIFUGAL HVAC FANS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. in-line centrifugal fans.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for fans.
  - 2. Rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
  - 3. Certified fan performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
  - 4. Certified fan sound-power ratings.
  - 5. Motor ratings and electrical characteristics, plus motor and electrical accessories.
  - 6. Material thickness and finishes, including color charts.
  - 7. Dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.
  - 8. Fan speed controllers.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
  - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
  - 4. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and for designing vibration isolation bases.
  - 5. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication, including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
- C. Delegated Design Submittal: For vibration isolation, and supports indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For centrifugal fans to include in normal operation, emergency operation, and maintenance manuals with replacement parts listing.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS Basis of Design products are scheduled on the drawings

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

#### 2.2 IN-LINE CENTRIFUGAL FANS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  1. Aerovent; a division of Twin City Fan Companies, Ltd.
  2. Carnes Company.
  3. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  4. Hartzell Fan Incorporated.
  5. Loren Cook Company.
  6. PennBarry; division of Air System Components.

#### 2.3 MOTORS

- A. Where variable-frequency drives are indicated or scheduled, provide fan motor compatible with variable-frequency drive.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install centrifugal fans level and plumb.
- B. Disassemble and reassemble units, as required for moving to the final location, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Lift and support units with manufacturer's designated lifting or supporting points.
- D. Equipment Mounting:
  1. Support duct-mounted and other hanging centrifugal fans directly from the building structure, using suitable hanging systems as specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
  2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."

- E. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.
- F. Label fans according to requirements specified in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

### 3.2 DUCTWORK AND PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories. Make final duct connections with flexible connectors. Flexible connectors are specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Install ducts adjacent to fans to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Install piping from scroll drain connection, with trap with seal equal to 1.5 times specified static pressure, to nearest floor drain with pipe sizes matching the drain connection.

### 3.3 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.

### 3.4 .STARTUP SERVICE:

- A. Perform startup service.
  - 1. Complete installation and startup checks in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
  - 3. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to ducts and electrical components are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, starters, and disconnect switches.
  - 4. Verify that cleaning and adjusting are complete.
  - 5. For direct-drive fans, verify proper motor rotation direction and verify fan wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation.
  - 6. For belt-drive fans, disconnect fan drive from motor, verify proper motor rotation direction, and verify fan wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation. Reconnect fan drive system, align and adjust belts, and install belt guards.
  - 7. Adjust belt tension.
  - 8. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
  - 9. Verify lubrication for bearings and other moving parts.
  - 10. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected ductwork systems are in fully open position.
  - 11. Disable automatic temperature-control operators, energize motor and confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation, adjust fan to indicated rpm, and measure and record motor voltage and amperage.
  - 12. Shut unit down and reconnect automatic temperature-control operators.
  - 13. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
- B. Adjust belt tension.
- C. Lubricate bearings.
- D. Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

### 3.6 CLEANING

- A. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing and after completing startup service, clean fans internally to remove foreign material and construction dirt and dust

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
  - 1. Fan Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
  - 3. Fans and components will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.8 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain centrifugal fans.

END OF SECTION 233416

## SECTION 233423 - HVAC POWER VENTILATORS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each product.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
  - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For HVAC power ventilators to include in normal and emergency operation, and maintenance manuals.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS Basis of Design products are scheduled on the drawings

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Aerovent; a division of Twin City Fan Companies, Ltd.
  - 2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  - 3. Hartzell Fan Incorporated.
  - 4. Loren Cook Company.
  - 5. PennBarry.

## 2.2 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. AMCA Certification: Fans shall comply with AMCA 11 and bear the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.
- C. Fan Performance Ratings: Comply with AMCA 211 and label fans with AMCA-Certified Rating Seal. The fans shall be tested for air performance - flow rate, fan pressure, power, fan efficiency, air density, speed of rotation, and fan efficiency - according to AMCA 210/ASHRAE 51.
- D. Operating Limits: Classify according to AMCA 99.
- E. UL Standards: Power ventilators shall comply with UL 705. Power ventilators for use for restaurant kitchen exhaust shall also comply with UL 762.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION OF HVAC POWER VENTILATORS

- A. Install power ventilators level and plumb.
- B. Equipment Mounting:
  - 1. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."
- C. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.
- D. Label units according to requirements specified in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

### 3.2 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, according to NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
  - 1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  - 2. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch high.

### 3.3 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring according to Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
  - 2. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to ducts and electrical components are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, starters, and disconnect switches.
  - 3. Verify that there is adequate maintenance and access space.
  - 4. Verify that cleaning and adjusting are complete.
  - 5. Disconnect fan drive from motor, verify proper motor rotation direction, and verify fan wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation. Reconnect fan drive system, align and adjust belts, and install belt guards.
  - 6. Adjust belt tension.
  - 7. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
  - 8. Verify lubrication for bearings and other moving parts.
  - 9. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected ductwork systems are in fully open position.
  - 10. Disable automatic temperature-control operators, energize motor and adjust fan to indicated rpm, and measure and record motor voltage and amperage.
  - 11. Shut unit down and reconnect automatic temperature-control operators.
  - 12. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- C. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Controls and equipment will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
- B. Adjust belt tension.
- C. Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures.
- D. Replace fan and motor pulleys as required to achieve design airflow.
- E. Lubricate bearings.



3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain centrifugal fans.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 233713.13 - AIR DIFFUSERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
  2. Diffuser Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS Basis of Design products are scheduled on the drawings

#### 2.1 DIFFUSERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  1. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
  2. Hart & Cooley Inc.
  3. Krueger.
  4. Titus.
  5. Tuttle & Bailey.

#### 2.2 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Verification of Performance: Rate diffusers according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas where diffusers are installed for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of equipment.

- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install diffusers level and plumb.
- B. Ceiling-Mounted Outlets and Inlets: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.
- C. Install diffusers with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, adjust diffusers to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 233713.23 - REGISTERS AND GRILLES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
  - 2. Register and Grille Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS Basis of Design products are scheduled on the drawings

#### 2.1 REGISTERS AND GRILLES

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
    - b. Hart & Cooley Inc.
    - c. Krueger.
    - d. Titus.
    - e. Tuttle & Bailey.

#### 2.2 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Verification of Performance: Rate registers and grilles according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas where registers and grilles are installed for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of equipment.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install registers and grilles level and plumb.
- B. Outlets and Inlets Locations: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.
- C. Install registers and grilles with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, adjust registers and grilles to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 235123 - GAS VENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For vents.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
  - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 3. Detail fabrication and assembly of hangers and seismic restraints.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 VENTS

- A. Manufacturers: As recommended by Boiler Manufacturer.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- C. Listed Special Gas Vent: Condensing gas appliances.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF LISTED VENTS

- A. Coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations. These items are specified in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories."
- B. Comply with minimum clearances from combustibles and minimum termination heights according to product listing or NFPA 211, whichever is most stringent.
- C. Seal between sections of positive-pressure vents according to manufacturer's written installation instructions, using sealants recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Support vents at intervals recommended by manufacturer to support weight of vents and all accessories, without exceeding appliance loading.
- E. Lap joints in direction of flow.

### 3.3 CLEANING

- A. After completing system installation, including outlet fittings and devices, inspect exposed finish. Remove burrs, dirt, and construction debris, and repair damaged finishes.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 235216 - CONDENSING BOILERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for boilers.
  - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For boilers, boiler trim, and accessories.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
  - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Source quality-control reports.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For boilers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Standard Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of boilers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.



PART 2 - PRODUCTS Basis of Design products are scheduled on the drawings

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASME Compliance: Fabricate and label boilers to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- C. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Boilers shall have minimum efficiency in accordance with Table 6.8.1-6 and other requirements in Ch. 6 of ASHRAE/IES 90.1.

2.2 CONDENSING BOILERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Bosch.
  - 2. Lochinvar
  - 3. Noritz.
  - 4. U.S. Boiler - Burnham.
  - 5. Weil McLain.

2.3 TRIM - FOR HOT-WATER BOILERS

- A. Include devices sized to comply with ASME B31.9.
- B. Aquastat Controllers: Operating and high limit with manual reset.
- C. Safety Relief Valve: ASME rated.
- D. Pressure and Temperature Gauge: Minimum 3-1/2-inch-diameter, combination water-pressure and -temperature gauge. Gauges shall have operating-pressure and -temperature ranges, so normal operating range is about 50 percent of full range.
- E. High and low gas-pressure switches.
- F. Alarm bell with silence switch.
- G. Boiler Air Vent: Automatic
- H. Drain Valve: Minimum NPS 3/4 hose-end gate valve.
- I. Circulation Pump: Non overloading, in-line pump with split-capacitor motor having thermal-overload protection and lubricated bearings; designed to operate at specified boiler pressures and temperatures.

## 2.4 CONTROLS

- A. Refer to Section 230993.11 "Sequence of Operations for HVAC DDC."
- B. Boiler operating controls shall include the following devices and features:
  - 1. Control transformer.
  - 2. Set-Point Adjust: All set points shall be adjustable.
  - 3. Electric, factory-fabricated and factory-installed panel to control burner-firing rate, to reset supply-water temperature inversely with outside-air temperature. At 0 deg F outside-air temperature, set supply-water temperature at 140 deg F; at 60 deg F outside-air temperature, set supply-water temperature at 100 deg F.

## 2.5 ELECTRICAL POWER

- A. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Electrical devices and connections are shown on Drawings and specified in electrical Sections.
- B. Single-Point Field Power Connection: Factory-installed and -wired switches, motor controllers, transformers, and other electrical devices necessary shall provide a single-point field power connection to boiler.

## 2.6 CONDENSATE-NEUTRALIZATION UNITS

- A. Description: Factory-fabricated and -assembled condensate-neutralizing assembly of corrosion-resistant plastic material with threaded or flanged inlet and outlet pipe connections. Device functions to prevent acidic condensate from damaging grain system. It is to be piped to receive acidic condensate discharged from condensing boiler and neutralize it by chemical reaction with replaceable neutralizing agent. Neutralized condensate is then piped to suitable drain.
- B. Features:
  - 1. All corrosion-resistant material.
  - 2. Suitable for use on all natural gas and propane boilers.
  - 3. Includes initial charge of neutralizing agent.
  - 4. Neutralizing agent to be easily replaceable when exhausted.
  - 5. Inlet and outlet pipe connections.

## 2.7 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. UL Compliance: Test gas-fired boilers having input of more than 400,000 Btu/h for compliance with UL 795. Boilers shall be listed and labeled by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. UL Compliance, Gas-Fired: Test gas-fired boilers for compliance with UL 2764. Boilers shall be listed and labeled by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Performance Testing: Test and label boilers for efficiency to comply with AHRI 1500.

- D. Burner and Hydrostatic Test: Factory adjust burner to eliminate excess oxygen, carbon dioxide, oxides of nitrogen emissions, and carbon monoxide in flue gas and to achieve combustion efficiency; perform hydrostatic test.
- E. Test and inspect factory-assembled boilers, before shipping, in accordance with 2017 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Factory test boilers for safety and functionality; fill boiler with water, and fire throughout firing range, to prove operation of all safety components.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for concrete equipment bases, anchor-bolt sizes and locations, and piping and electrical connections to verify actual locations, sizes, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Final boiler locations indicated on Drawings are approximate. Determine exact locations before roughing-in for piping and electrical connections.
- B. Examine mechanical spaces for suitable conditions where boilers will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 BOILER INSTALLATION

- A. Equipment Mounting:
  - 1. Install floor-mounted boilers on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
  - 2. Install wall-hung boilers where indicated on Drawings using suitable hangers. Comply with manufacturer's mounting instructions.
  - 3. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."
- B. Install gas-fired boilers according to NFPA 54.
- C. Assemble and install boiler trim.
- D. Install electrical devices furnished with boiler but not specified to be factory mounted.
- E. Install control wiring to field-mounted electrical devices.

### 3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for hydronic piping specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping."

- B. Connect piping to boilers, except safety relief valve connections, with flexible connectors of materials suitable for service. Flexible connectors and their installation are specified in Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties."
- C. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- D. When installing piping adjacent to boiler, allow space for service and maintenance of condensing boilers. Arrange piping for easy removal of condensing boilers.
- E. Install condensate drain piping to condensate-neutralization unit and from neutralization unit to nearest floor drain. Piping shall be at least full size of connection. Install piping with a minimum of 2 percent downward slope in direction of flow.
- F. Install condensate piping from equipment drain connection to nearest floor drain. Piping shall be at least full size of connection. Install piping with a minimum of 2 percent downward slope in direction of flow.
- G. Connect gas piping to boiler gas-train inlet with union. Piping shall be at least full size of gas-train connection. Provide a reducer if required.
- H. Connect hot-water piping to supply- and return-boiler tapplings with shutoff valve, and union or flange at each connection.
- I. Install piping from safety relief valves to nearest floor drain.

### 3.4 DUCT CONNECTIONS

- A. Boiler Venting:
  1. Field fabricate and install boiler vent and combustion-air intake.
  2. Utilize vent and intake duct material, size, and configuration as indicated in boiler manufacturer's instructions and to comply with UL 1738.
  3. Comply with all boiler manufacturer's installation instructions.

### 3.5 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, according to NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- D. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
  1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### 3.6 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring in accordance with Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."
- C. Install nameplate for each control connection, indicating field control panel designation and I/O control designation feeding connection.
  - 1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections:
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Perform installation and startup checks in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2. Leak Test: Hydrostatic test. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  - 3. Operational Test: Start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation. Adjust air-fuel ratio and combustion.
  - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
    - a. Check and adjust initial operating set points and high- and low-limit safety set points of fuel supply, water level, and water temperature.
    - b. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.
- C. Boiler will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.8 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain boilers. Refer to Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training."
  - 1. Train personnel in operation and maintenance and to obtain maximum efficiency in plant operation.
  - 2. Obtain Owner sign-off that training is complete.
  - 3. Owner training shall be held at Project site.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 236313 - AIR-COOLED REFRIGERANT CONDENSERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Packaged air-cooled refrigerant condensers.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each air-cooled refrigerant condenser.
  - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
  - 2. Include equipment dimensions, weights and structural loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
- B. Shop Drawings: For air-cooled refrigerant condensers.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
  - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air-cooled refrigerant condensers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases.
- B. Coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations.
- C. Coordinate location of refrigerant piping and electrical rough-ins.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 Basis of Design products are scheduled on the drawings. Provide products meeting or exceeding the performance and quality of the Basis of Design product.

### 2.2 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

1. Carrier Global Corporation.
2. Daikin
3. Trane.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of air-cooled refrigerant condensers.
- B. Examine roughing-in for refrigerant piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.
- C. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where air-cooled condensers will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install units level and plumb, firmly anchored in locations indicated; maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances.
- B. Equipment Mounting:
  1. Install air-cooled condenser refrigerant condensers on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases.
  2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."
- C. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances for service and maintenance.
- D. Loose Components: Install electrical components, devices, and accessories that are not factory mounted.

### 3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in Section 232300 "Refrigerant Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Refrigerant Piping: Where indicated on Drawings, connect piping to unit with pressure-relief, service valve, filter-dryer, and moisture indicator on each refrigerant-circuit liquid line.
- D. Apply labels to refrigerant lines in accordance with Section 230553, "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

### 3.4 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install field power to each condenser unit electrical power connection.
- B. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- C. Ground equipment in accordance with Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- D. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, in accordance with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- E. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
  - 1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  - 2. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters.

### 3.5 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring in accordance with Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."
- C. Install nameplate for each control connection, indicating field control panel designation and I/O control designation feeding connection.

### 3.6 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Perform startup service.



1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions and perform the following:
  - a. Inspect for physical damage to unit casing.
  - b. Verify that access doors move freely and are weathertight.
  - c. Clean units and inspect for construction debris.
  - d. Verify that all bolts and screws are tight.
  - e. Adjust vibration isolation and flexible connections.
  - f. Verify that controls are connected and operational.
2. Lubricate bearings on fan motors.
3. Verify that fan wheel is rotating in the correct direction and is not vibrating or binding.
4. Adjust fan belts to proper alignment and tension.
5. Start unit according to manufacturer's written instructions and complete manufacturer's startup checklist.
6. Measure and record airflow and air-temperature rise over coils.
7. Verify proper operation of capacity control device.
8. Verify that vibration isolation and flexible connections properly dampen vibration transmission to structure.
9. After startup and performance test, lubricate bearings.

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  1. Perform electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection.
  2. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation. Complete manufacturer's starting checklist.
  4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
  5. Verify proper airflow over coils.
- C. Verify that vibration isolation and flexible connections properly dampen vibration transmission to structure.
- D. Air-cooled refrigerant condensers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.8 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain air-cooled refrigerant condensers.

END OF SECTION 236313

## SECTION 237416.11 - PACKAGED, SMALL-CAPACITY, ROOFTOP AIR-CONDITIONING UNITS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes: Packaged, small-capacity, rooftop air-conditioning units (RTUs) with the following components:
1. Electrical power connections.
  2. Controls.
  3. Roof curbs.
  4. Accessories.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each RTU.
1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
  2. Include rated capacities, dimensions, required clearances, characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
  3. Include unit dimensions and weight.
  4. Include cabinet material, metal thickness, finishes, insulation, and accessories.
  5. Fans:
    - a. Include certified fan-performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
    - b. Include certified fan-sound power ratings.
    - c. Include fan construction and accessories.
    - d. Include motor ratings, electrical characteristics, and motor accessories.
  6. Include certified coil-performance ratings with system operating conditions indicated.
  7. Include filters with performance characteristics.
  8. Include gas furnaces with performance characteristics.
  9. Include dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each packaged, small-capacity, rooftop air-conditioning unit.
1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
  2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. System startup reports.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For RTUs to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

### 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Filters: One set(s) of filters for each unit.
  - 2. Fan Belts: One set(s) for each belt-driven fan.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS – RTU's are furnished by the owner for installation by this contractor.

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 90A for design, fabrication, and installation of RTUs and components.
- C. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 1995.

### 2.2 ELECTRICAL POWER CONNECTIONS

- A. RTU to have a single connection of power to unit with unit-mounted disconnect switch accessible from outside unit and control-circuit transformer with built-in overcurrent protection.

2.3 CONTROLS – Controls are provided by Trane.

2.4 ROOF CURBS – provided by equipment manufacturer for installation by this contractor.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of RTUs.
- B. Examine roughing-in for RTUs to verify actual locations of piping and duct connections before equipment installation.
- C. Examine roofs for suitable conditions where RTUs will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Roof Curb where applicable: Install on roof structure or concrete base, level and secure, according to NRCA's "NRCA Roofing Manual: Membrane Roof Systems." Install RTUs on curbs and coordinate roof penetrations and flashing with roof. Secure RTUs to upper curb rail, and secure curb base to roof framing or concrete base with anchor bolts. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs with actual equipment provided.
- B. Unit Support: Install unit level on structural curbs. Coordinate penetrations and flashing with construction. Secure RTUs to structural support with anchor bolts.
- C. Equipment Mounting where applicable:
  - 1. Install RTUs on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
  - 2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."

#### 3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to RTU, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect piping to unit mounted on vibration isolators with flexible connectors.

- D. Connect condensate drain pans using NPS 1-1/4, ASTM B88, Type M copper tubing. Extend to nearest equipment or roof drain. Construct deep trap at connection to drain pan and install cleanouts at changes in direction.
- E. Gas Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 231123 "Facility Natural-Gas Piping." Connect gas piping to burner, full size of gas train inlet, and connect with union and shutoff valve with sufficient clearance for burner removal and service.
- F. Hot-Water Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties." Install shutoff valve and union or flange at each coil supply connection. Install balancing valve and union or flange at each coil return connection.
- G. Refrigerant Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 232300 "Refrigerant Piping." Install shutoff valve and union or flange at each supply and return connection.

### 3.4 DUCT CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with duct installation requirements specified in other HVAC Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts. The following are specific connection requirements:
  1. Install ducts to termination at top of roof curb.
  2. Remove roof decking only as required for passage of ducts. Do not cut out decking under entire roof curb.
  3. Connect supply ducts to RTUs with flexible duct connectors specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
  4. Install return-air duct continuously through roof structure.

### 3.5 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect electrical wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, according to NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- D. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
  1. Nameplate is to be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  2. Nameplate is to be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs as layers of black with engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch high.
  3. Locate nameplate where easily visible.

### 3.6 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring according to Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

### 3.7 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
  - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2. Inspect for visible damage to unit casing.
  - 3. Inspect for visible damage to furnace combustion chamber.
  - 4. Inspect for visible damage to compressor, coils, and fans.
  - 5. Inspect internal insulation.
  - 6. Verify that labels are clearly visible.
  - 7. Verify that clearances have been provided for servicing.
  - 8. Verify that controls are connected and operable.
  - 9. Verify that filters are installed.
  - 10. Clean condenser coil and inspect for construction debris.
  - 11. Clean furnace flue and inspect for construction debris.
  - 12. Connect and purge gas line.
  - 13. Remove packing from vibration isolators.
  - 14. Inspect operation of barometric relief dampers.
  - 15. Verify lubrication on fan and motor bearings.
  - 16. Inspect fan-wheel rotation for movement in correct direction without vibration and binding.
  - 17. Adjust fan belts to proper alignment and tension.
  - 18. Start unit according to manufacturer's written instructions.
    - a. Start refrigeration system.
    - b. Do not operate below recommended low-ambient temperature.
    - c. Complete startup sheets and attach copy with Contractor's startup report.
  - 19. Inspect and record performance of interlocks and protective devices; verify sequences.
  - 20. Operate unit for an initial period as recommended or required by manufacturer.
  - 21. Perform the following operations for both minimum and maximum firing. Adjust burner for peak efficiency:
    - a. Measure gas pressure on manifold.
    - b. Inspect operation of power vents.
    - c. Measure combustion-air temperature at inlet to combustion chamber.
    - d. Measure flue-gas temperature at furnace discharge.
    - e. Perform flue-gas analysis. Measure and record flue-gas carbon dioxide and oxygen concentration.
    - f. Measure supply-air temperature and volume when burner is at maximum firing rate and when burner is off. Calculate useful heat to supply air.

22. Calibrate thermostats.
23. Adjust and inspect high-temperature limits.
24. Inspect outdoor-air dampers for proper stroke and interlock with return-air dampers.
25. Start refrigeration system and measure and record the following when ambient is a minimum of 15 deg F above return-air temperature:
  - a. Coil leaving-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
  - b. Coil entering-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
  - c. Outdoor-air, dry-bulb temperature.
  - d. Outdoor-air-coil, discharge-air, dry-bulb temperature.
26. Inspect controls for correct sequencing of heating, mixing dampers, refrigeration, and normal and emergency shutdown.
27. Measure and record the following minimum and maximum airflows. Plot fan volumes on fan curve.
  - a. Supply-air volume.
  - b. Return-air volume.
  - c. Relief-air volume.
  - d. Outdoor-air intake volume.
28. Simulate maximum cooling demand and inspect the following:
  - a. Compressor refrigerant suction and hot-gas pressures.
  - b. Short circuiting of air through condenser coil or from condenser fans to outdoor-air intake.
29. Verify operation of remote panel including pilot-light operation and failure modes. Inspect the following:
  - a. High-temperature limit on gas-fired heat exchanger.
  - b. Low-temperature safety operation.
  - c. Filter high-pressure differential alarm.
  - d. Economizer to minimum outdoor-air changeover.
  - e. Relief-air fan operation.
  - f. Smoke and firestat alarms.
30. After startup and performance testing and prior to Substantial Completion, replace existing filters with new filters.

### 3.8 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for air-handling system testing, adjusting, and balancing.



### 3.9 CLEANING

- A. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing RTUs and air-distribution systems, clean RTUs internally to remove foreign material and construction dirt and dust. Clean fan wheels, cabinets, dampers, coils, and filter housings, and install new, clean filters.

### 3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. After installing RTUs and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units for compliance with requirements.
  - 2. Inspect for and remove shipping bolts, blocks, and tie-down straps.
  - 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. RTU will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.11 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain RTUs.

END OF SECTION 237416.11

## SECTION 237416.13 - PACKAGED, LARGE-CAPACITY, ROOFTOP AIR-CONDITIONING UNITS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes packaged, large-capacity, rooftop air conditioning units (RTUs) with the following components:
  1. Electrical power connections.
  2. Controls.
  3. Roof curbs.
  4. Accessories.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each RTU.
  1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
  2. Include rated capacities, dimensions, required clearances, characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
  3. Include unit dimensions and weight.
  4. Include cabinet material, metal thickness, finishes, insulation, and accessories.
  5. Fans:
    - a. Include certified fan-performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
    - b. Include certified fan-sound power ratings.
    - c. Include fan construction and accessories.
    - d. Include motor ratings, electrical characteristics, and motor accessories.
  6. Include certified coil-performance ratings with system operating conditions indicated.
  7. Include filters with performance characteristics.
  8. Include gas furnaces with performance characteristics.
  9. Include factory selection calculations for each antimicrobial ultraviolet lamp installation.
  10. Include dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each packaged, large-capacity, rooftop air-conditioning units.
  1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.

2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. System startup reports.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For RTUs to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  1. Filters: One set(s) of filters for each unit.
  2. Gaskets: One set(s) for each access door.
  3. Fan Belts: One set(s) for each belt-driven fan.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS - RTU's are furnished by the Owner for installation by this contractor.

2.1 CONTROLS – Provided by Trane

2.2 ROOF CURBS – Provided by equipment manufacturer for installation by this contractor.

#### PART 3 - EXECUTION

##### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of RTUs.
- B. Examine roughing-in for RTUs to verify actual locations of piping and duct connections before equipment installation.
- C. Examine roofs for suitable conditions where RTUs will be installed.

- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Roof Curb: Install on roof structure or concrete base, level and secure, according to NRCA's "NRCA Roofing Manual: Membrane Roof Systems." Install RTUs on curbs and coordinate roof penetrations and flashing with roof construction. Secure RTUs to upper curb rail, and secure curb base to roof framing or concrete base with anchor bolts. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs with actual equipment provided.
- B. Unit Support: Install unit level on structural curbs. Coordinate wall penetrations and flashing with wall construction. Secure RTUs to structural support with anchor bolts.
- C. Equipment Mounting:
  - 1. Install RTUs on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases.

### 3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to RTU, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect piping to unit mounted on vibration isolators with flexible connectors.
- D. Connect condensate drain pans using NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) ASTM B88, Type M (ASTM B88M, Type C) copper tubing. Extend to nearest equipment or roof drain. Construct deep trap at connection to drain pan and install cleanouts at changes in direction.
- E. Gas Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 231123 "Facility Natural-Gas Piping." Connect gas piping to burner, full size of gas train inlet, and connect with union and shutoff valve with sufficient clearance for burner removal and service.
- F. Hot- and Chilled-Water Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties." Install shutoff valve and union or flange at each coil supply connection. Install balancing valve and union or flange at each coil return connection.

### 3.4 DUCT CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with duct installation requirements specified in other HVAC Sections. Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts. The following are specific connection requirements:
  - 1. Install ducts to termination at top of roof curb.
  - 2. Remove roof decking only as required for passage of ducts. Do not cut out decking under entire roof curb.

3. Connect supply ducts to RTUs with flexible duct connectors specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
4. Install return-air duct continuously through roof structure.

### 3.5 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect electrical wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, according to NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- D. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
  1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  2. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs as layers of black with engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch (13 mm) high.
  3. Locate nameplate where easily visible.

### 3.6 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring according to Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

### 3.7 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. [Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform] [Perform] startup service.
- B. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  1. Inspect for visible damage to unit casing.
  2. Inspect for visible damage to furnace combustion chamber.
  3. Inspect for visible damage to compressor, coils, and fans.
  4. Inspect internal insulation.
  5. Verify that labels are clearly visible.
  6. Verify that clearances have been provided for servicing.
  7. Verify that controls are connected and operable.
  8. Verify that filters are installed.
  9. Clean condenser coil and inspect for construction debris.
  10. Clean furnace flue and inspect for construction debris.

11. Connect and purge gas line.
12. Remove packing from vibration isolators.
13. Inspect operation of barometric relief dampers.
14. Verify lubrication on fan and motor bearings.
15. Inspect fan-wheel rotation for movement in correct direction without vibration and binding.
16. Adjust fan belts to proper alignment and tension.
17. Start unit according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - a. Start refrigeration system.
  - b. Do not operate below recommended low-ambient temperature.
  - c. Complete startup sheets and attach copy with Contractor's startup report.
18. Inspect and record performance of interlocks and protective devices; verify sequences.
19. Operate unit for an initial period as recommended or required by manufacturer.
20. Perform the following operations for both minimum and maximum firing. Adjust burner for peak efficiency.
  - a. Measure gas pressure on manifold.
  - b. Inspect operation of power vents.
  - c. Measure combustion-air temperature at inlet to combustion chamber.
  - d. Measure flue-gas temperature at furnace discharge.
  - e. Perform flue-gas analysis. Measure and record flue-gas carbon dioxide and oxygen concentration.
  - f. Measure supply-air temperature and volume when burner is at maximum firing rate and when burner is off. Calculate useful heat to supply air.
21. Calibrate thermostats.
22. Adjust and inspect high-temperature limits.
23. Inspect outdoor-air dampers for proper stroke and interlock with return-air dampers.
24. Start refrigeration system and measure and record the following when ambient is a minimum of 15 deg F (8 deg C) above return-air temperature:
  - a. Coil leaving-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
  - b. Coil entering-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
  - c. Outdoor-air, dry-bulb temperature.
  - d. Outdoor-air-coil, discharge-air, dry-bulb temperature.
25. Inspect controls for correct sequencing of heating, mixing dampers, refrigeration, and normal and emergency shutdown.
26. Measure and record the following minimum and maximum airflows. Plot fan volumes on fan curve.
  - a. Supply-air volume.
  - b. Return-air volume.
  - c. Relief-air volume.
  - d. Outdoor-air intake volume.
27. Simulate maximum cooling demand and inspect the following:

- a. Compressor refrigerant suction and hot-gas pressures.
  - b. Short circuiting of air through condenser coil or from condenser fans to outdoor-air intake.
28. Verify operation of remote panel including pilot-light operation and failure modes. Inspect the following:
- a. High-temperature limit on gas-fired heat exchanger.
  - b. Low-temperature safety operation.
  - c. Filter high-pressure differential alarm.
  - d. Economizer to minimum outdoor-air changeover.
  - e. Relief-air fan operation.
  - f. Smoke and firestat alarms.
29. After startup and performance testing and prior to Substantial Completion, replace existing filters with new filters.

### 3.8 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for air-handling system testing, adjusting, and balancing.

### 3.9 CLEANING

- A. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing RTUs and air-distribution systems and after completing startup service, clean RTUs internally to remove foreign material and construction dirt and dust. Clean fan wheels, cabinets, dampers, coils, and filter housings, and install new, clean filters.

### 3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
  - 1. After installing RTUs and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units for compliance with requirements.
  - 2. Inspect for and remove shipping bolts, blocks, and tie-down straps.
  - 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

- C. RTU will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.11 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain RTUs.

END OF SECTION 237416.13



## SECTION 238126 - SPLIT-SYSTEM AIR-CONDITIONERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories. Include performance data in terms of capacities, outlet velocities, static pressures, sound power characteristics, motor requirements, and electrical characteristics.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For split-system air-conditioning units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASHRAE Compliance:
  - 1. Fabricate and label refrigeration system to comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems."
  - 2. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 4 - "Outdoor Air Quality," Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment," Section 6 - "Procedures," and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."

- C. ASHRAE/IES Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1.

## 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases.
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- 1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of split-system air-conditioning units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period. Warranty Period:
  - a. For Compressor: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
  - b. For Parts: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
  - c. For Labor: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 Basis of Design products are scheduled on the drawings. Provide products meeting or exceeding the performance and quality of the Basis of Design product.

## 2.2 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Carrier Global Corporation.
  - 2. Mitsubishi Electric
  - 3. Trane.

## 2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Control equipment and sequence of operation are specified in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC" and Section 230993.11 "Sequence of Operations for HVAC DDC."
- B. Thermostat: Low voltage with subbase to control compressor and evaporator fan.
- C. Thermostat: Wireless infrared functioning to remotely control compressor and evaporator fan, with the following features:

1. Compressor time delay.
  2. 24-hour time control of system stop and start.
  3. Liquid-crystal display indicating temperature, set-point temperature, time setting, operating mode, and fan speed.
  4. Fan-speed selection including auto setting.
- D. Automatic-reset timer to prevent rapid cycling of compressor.
- E. Refrigerant Line Kits: Soft-annealed copper suction and liquid lines factory cleaned, dried, pressurized, and sealed; factory-insulated suction line with flared fittings at both ends.
- F. Drain Hose: For condensate.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install units level and plumb.
- B. Install evaporator-fan components using manufacturer's standard mounting devices securely fastened to building structure.
- C. Install roof-mounted, compressor-condenser components on equipment supports. Anchor units to supports with removable, cadmium-plated fasteners.
- D. Equipment Mounting:
1. Install ground-mounted, compressor-condenser components on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
  2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."
- E. Install and connect precharged refrigerant tubing to component's quick-connect fittings. Install tubing to allow access to unit.
- F. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in electrical Sections.

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
1. Water Coil Connections: Comply with requirements specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties." Connect hydronic piping to supply and return coil connections with shutoff-duty valve and union or flange.

on the supply connection and with throttling-duty valve and union or flange on the return connection.

- B. Where piping is installed adjacent to unit, allow space for service and maintenance of unit.
- C. Duct Connections: Duct installation requirements are specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts." Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts. Connect supply and return ducts to split-system air-conditioning units with flexible duct connectors. Flexible duct connectors are specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  - 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  - 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.4 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
  - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain units.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 238129 - VARIABLE-REFRIGERANT-FLOW HVAC SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for indoor and outdoor units.
  - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
  - 3. Include operating performance at design conditions and at extreme maximum and minimum outdoor ambient conditions.
  - 4. Include description of system controllers, dimensions, features, control interfaces and connections, power requirements, and connections.
  - 5. Include system operating sequence of operation in narrative form for each unique indoor-and outdoor-unit control.
  - 6. Include description of control software features.
  - 7. Include total refrigerant required and a comprehensive breakdown of refrigerant required by each system installed.
  - 8. Include refrigerant type and data sheets showing compliance with requirements indicated.
  - 9. For system design software.
  - 10. Indicate location and type of service access.
- B. Shop Drawings: For VRF HVAC systems.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
  - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 3. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
  - 4. Include diagrams and details of refrigerant piping and tubing showing installation requirements for manufacturer-furnished divided flow fittings.
  - 5. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

#### A. Qualification Data:

1. For Installer: Certificate from VRF HVAC system manufacturer certifying that Installer has successfully completed prerequisite training administered by manufacturer for proper installation of systems, including but not limited to, equipment, piping, controls, and accessories indicated and furnished for installation.
  - a. Retain copies of Installer certificates on-site and make available on request.
2. For VRF HVAC system manufacturer.
3. For VRF HVAC system provider.

#### B. Field quality-control reports.

### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

#### A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For VRF HVAC systems to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### B. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:

1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
2. Program Software Backup: On CD or DVD, USB media, or approved cloud storage platform, complete with data files.
3. Device address list.
4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.

### 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

#### A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Filters:
  - a. One set(s) for each unit with replaceable filters.
  - b. One set(s) for each unit type and unique size of washable filters.
2. Indoor Units: One for each unique size and type installed.
3. Controllers for Indoor Units: One for each unique controller type installed.

### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

#### A. Factory-Authorized Service Representative Qualifications:

1. Authorized representative of, and trained by, VRF HVAC system manufacturer.

2. VRF HVAC system manufacturer's backing to take over execution of Work if necessary to comply with requirements indicated. Include Project-specific written letter, signed by manufacturer's corporate officer, if requested.
- B. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by VRF HVAC system manufacturer.
1. Each employee shall be certified by manufacturer for proper installation of systems, including, but not limited to, equipment, piping, controls, and accessories indicated and furnished for installation.
  2. Installer certification shall be valid and current for duration of Project.
  3. Retain copies of Installer certificates on-site and make available on request.
  4. Each person assigned to Project shall have demonstrated past experience.
- C. ISO Compliance: System equipment and components furnished by VRF HVAC system manufacturer shall be manufactured in an ISO 9001 and ISO 14001 facility.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver and store products in a clean and dry place.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written rigging and installation instructions for unloading and moving to final installed location.
- C. Handle products carefully to prevent damage, breaking, denting, and scoring. Do not install damaged products.
- D. Protect products from weather, dirt, dust, water, construction debris, and physical damage.
1. Retain factory-applied coverings on equipment to protect finishes during construction and remove just prior to operating unit.
  2. Cover unit openings before installation to prevent dirt and dust from entering inside of units. If required to remove coverings during unit installation, reapply coverings over openings after unit installation and remove just prior to operating unit.
- E. Replace installed products damaged during construction.

#### 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace equipment and components that fail(s) in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures.
    - b. Faulty operation.
    - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering and use.

2. Warranty Period:
  - a. For Compressor: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
  - b. For Parts, Including Controls: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
  - c. For Labor: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 Basis of Design products are scheduled on the drawings. Provide products meeting or exceeding the performance and quality of the Basis of Design product.
- 2.2 MANUFACTURERS
  - A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    1. Carrier Global Corporation.
    2. Daikin Applied.
    3. Mitsubishi Electric & Electronics USA, Inc.
    4. Trane Inc.
  - B. Source Limitations: Obtain products from single source from single manufacturer including, but not limited to, the following:
    1. Indoor and outdoor units, including accessories.
    2. Controls and software.
    3. HRCUs.
    4. Refrigerant isolation valves.
    5. Specialty refrigerant pipe fittings.
  - C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  - D. AHRI Compliance: System and equipment performance certified according to AHRI 1230.
  - E. ASHRAE Compliance:
    1. ASHRAE 15: For safety code for mechanical refrigeration.
    2. ASHRAE 62.1: For indoor air quality.
    3. ASHRAE 135: For control network protocol with remote communication.
    4. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: For system and component energy efficiency.
  - F. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 1995.



## 2.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional to design complete and operational VRF HVAC system(s) complying with requirements indicated.
1. Provide system refrigerant calculations.
    - a. Refrigerant concentration limits shall be within allowable limits of ASHRAE 15 and governing codes.
    - b. Indicate compliance with manufacturer's maximum vertical and horizontal travel distances. Prepare a comparison table for each system showing calculated distances compared to manufacturer's maximum allowed distances.
  2. Include a mechanical ventilation system and gas detection system as required to comply with ASHRAE 15 and governing codes.
  3. System Refrigerant Piping and Tubing:
    - a. Arrangement: Arrange piping to interconnect indoor units, HRCUs, and outdoor unit(s) in compliance with manufacturer requirements and requirements indicated.
    - b. Routing: Conceal piping above ceilings and behind walls to maximum extent possible.
    - c. Sizing: Size piping system, using a software program acceptable to manufacturer, to provide performance requirements indicated. Consider requirements to accommodate future change requirements.
  4. System Controls:
    - a. Network arrangement.
    - b. Network interface with other building systems.
    - c. Product selection.
    - d. Sizing.
- B. Service Access:
1. Provide and document service access requirements.
  2. Locate equipment, system isolation valves, and other system components that require service and inspection in easily accessible locations. Avoid locations that are difficult to access if possible.
  3. Where serviceable components are installed behind walls and above inaccessible ceilings, provide finished assembly with access doors or panels to gain access. Properly size the openings to allow for service, removal, and replacement.
  4. If less than full and unrestricted access is provided, locate components within an 18-inch reach of the finished assembly.
  5. Where ladder access is required to service elevated components, provide an installation that provides for sufficient access within ladder manufacturer's written instructions for use.
  6. Comply with OSHA regulations.
- C. System Design and Installation Requirements:

1. Design and install systems indicated according to manufacturer's recommendations and written instructions.
  2. Where manufacturer's requirements differ from requirements indicated, contact Architect for direction. The most stringent requirements should apply unless otherwise directed in writing by Architect.
- D. Isolation of Equipment: Provide isolation valves to isolate each HRCU, indoor unit and outdoor unit for service, removal, and replacement without interrupting system operation.
- E. System Capacity Ratio: The sum of connected capacity of all indoor units shall be within the following range of outdoor-unit rated capacity:
1. Range acceptable to manufacturer.
- F. System Turndown: Stable operation down to 20 percent of outdoor-unit capacity.
- G. System Auto Refrigerant Charge: Each system shall have an automatic refrigerant charge function to ensure the proper amount of refrigerant is installed in system.
- H. Thermal Movements: Allow for controlled thermal movements from ambient, surface, and system temperature changes.
- I. Capacities and Characteristics: As indicated on Drawings.

## 2.4 SYSTEM CONTROLS

- A. Provide manufacturer's standard unit controls. Controls must be compatible with and integrated into the Building Management System. See 230923 - Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC.
- B. Unit Controls:
1. Enclosure: Metal, suitable for indoor locations.
  2. Factory-Installed Controller: Configurable digital control.
  3. Factory-Installed Sensors:
    - a. Unit inlet air temperature.
    - b. Coil entering refrigerant temperature.
    - c. Coil leaving refrigerant temperature.
  4. Field-Customizable I/O Capability:
    - a. Analog Inputs: Four for use in customizable control strategies.
    - b. Digital Inputs: Four for use in customizable control strategies.
    - c. Digital Outputs: Four for use in customizable control strategies.
  5. Features and Functions:

- a. Self-diagnostics.
  - b. Time delay.
  - c. Auto-restart.
  - d. External static pressure control.
  - e. Auto operation mode.
  - f. Manual operation mode.
  - g. Filter service notification.
  - h. Power consumption display.
  - i. Drain assembly high water level safety shutdown and notification.
  - j. Run test switch.
- 6. Communication: Network communication with other indoor and outdoor units.
  - 7. Cable and Wiring: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.
  - 8. Field Connection: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.

C. Unit Electrical:

- 1. Enclosure: Metal, suitable for indoor locations.
- 2. Field Connection: Single point connection to power unit and integral controls.
- 3. Disconnecting Means: Factory-mounted circuit breaker or switch.
- 4. Control Transformer: Manufacturer's standard. Coordinate requirements with field power supply.
- 5. Wiring: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.
- 6. Raceways: Enclose line voltage wiring in metal raceways.

## 2.5 SYSTEM CONTROLS

A. General Requirements:

- 1. Network: Indoor units, HRCUs, and outdoor units shall include integral controls and connect through a manufacturer-selected] control network.
- 2. Network Communication Protocol: open control communication between interconnected units.
- 3. Integration with Building Automation System: ASHRAE 135, BACnet IP and certified by BACnet Testing Lab (BTL), including the following:
  - a. Ethernet connection via RJ-45 connectors and port with transmission at 100 Mbps or higher.
  - b. Integration devices shall be connected to local uninterruptible power supply unit(s) to provide at least 5 minutes of battery backup operation after a power loss.
  - c. Integration shall include control, monitoring, scheduling, and change of value notifications.
- 4. Operator Interface:
  - a. Operators shall interface with system and unit controls through the following:

- 1) Operator interfaces integral to controllers.
- 2) Owner-furnished PC connected to central controller(s).
- 3) Web interface through web browser software.
- 4) Integration with Building Automation System.

b. Users shall be capable of interface with controllers for indoor units control to extent privileges are enabled. Control features available to users shall include the following:

- 1) On/off control.
- 2) Temperature set-point adjustment.

B. VRF HVAC System Operator Software for PC:

1. Software offered by VRF HVAC system manufacturer shall provide system operators with ability to monitor and control VRF HVAC system(s) from a single dedicated Owner-furnished PC.
2. Software shall provide operator with a graphic user interface to allow monitoring and control of multiple central controllers from a single device location through point-and-click mouse exchange.
3. Plan views shall show building plans with location of indoor units and identification superimposed on plans.
4. Controls operation mode of indoor units as individual units, by selected groups of indoor units, or as collection of all indoor units. Operation modes available through central controller shall match those operation modes of controllers for indoor units.
5. Schedules operation of indoor units as individual units, by selected groups of indoor units, or as collection of all indoor units. Schedules daily, weekly, and annual events.
6. Changes operating set points of indoor units as individual units, by selected groups of indoor units, or as collection of all indoor units.
7. Optimized start feature to start indoor units before scheduled time to reach temperature set-point at scheduled time based on operating history.
8. Night setback feature to operate indoor units at energy-conserving heating and cooling temperature set-points during unoccupied periods.
9. Displays service notifications and error codes.
10. Monitors and displays up to 3000 item error history and 10000 item operation history for regular reporting and further archiving.
11. Monitors and displays cumulative operating time of indoor units.
12. Able to disable and enable operation of individual controllers for indoor units.
13. Information displayed on individual controllers shall also be available for display.
14. Information displayed for outdoor units, including refrigerant high and low pressures .

C. Central Controllers:

1. Centralized control for all indoor and outdoor units from a single central controller location.
  - a. Include multiple interconnected controllers as required.

2. Controls operation mode of indoor units as individual units, by selected groups of indoor units, or as collection of all indoor units. Operation modes available through central controller shall match those operation modes of controllers for indoor units.
3. Schedule operation of indoor units as individual units, by selected groups of indoor units, or as collection of all indoor units.
  - a. Sets schedule for daily, weekly, and annual events.
  - b. Schedule options available through central controller shall at least include the schedule options of controllers for indoor units.
4. Changes operating set points of indoor units as individual units, by selected groups of indoor units, or as collection of all indoor units.
5. Optimized start feature to start indoor units before scheduled time to reach temperature set-point at scheduled time based on operating history.
6. Night setback feature to operate indoor units at energy-conserving heating and cooling temperature set-points during unoccupied periods.
7. Service diagnostics tool.
8. Able to disable and enable operation of individual controllers for indoor units.
9. Information displayed on individual controllers shall also be available for display through central controller.
10. Information displayed for outdoor units, including refrigerant high and low pressures .
11. Multiple RJ-45 ports for direct connection to a local PC and an Ethernet network switch.
12. Operator interface through a backlit, high-resolution color display touch panel and web accessible through standard web browser software.

D. Wired Controllers for Indoor Units:

1. Single controller capable of controlling multiple indoor units as group.
2. Auto Timeout Touch Screen LCD: Timeout duration shall be adjustable.
3. Temperature Units: Fahrenheit.
4. On/Off: Turns indoor unit on or off.
5. Hold: Hold operation settings until hold is released.
6. Operation Mode: Cool, Heat, Auto, Dehumidification, Fan Only, and Setback.
7. Temperature Display: 1-degree increments.
8. Temperature Set-Point: Separate set points for Cooling, Heating, and Setback. Adjustable in 1-degree increments.
9. Relative Humidity Display: 1 percent increments.
10. Relative Humidity Set-Point: Adjustable in 1 percent increments.
11. Fan Speed Setting: Select between available options furnished with the unit.
12. Airflow Direction Setting: If applicable to unit, select between available options furnished with the unit.
13. Seven-day programmable operating schedule with up to five events per day. Operations shall include On/Off, Operation Mode, and Temperature Set-Point.
14. Auto Off Timer: Operates unit for an adjustable time duration and then turns unit off.
15. Occupancy detection.
16. Service Notification Display: "Filter" .
17. Service Run Tests: Limit use by service personnel to troubleshoot operation.
18. Error Code Notification Display: Used by service personnel to troubleshoot abnormal operation and equipment failure.
19. User and Service Passwords: Capable of preventing adjustments by unauthorized users.

20. Setting stored in nonvolatile memory to ensure that settings are not lost if power is lost. Battery backup for date and time only.
21. Low-voltage power required for controller shall be powered through non-polar connections to indoor unit.

E. Wireless Controllers for Indoor Units:

1. Wireless Communication:
  - a. Controller communicates to remote-mounted receiver that is wired to indoor unit(s).
    - 1) Include receivers with wireless controllers as required to complete installation.
    - 2) Low-voltage power required for receivers shall be powered through non-polar connections to indoor unit.
  - b. One wireless controller shall be capable of communicating with one or multiple receivers to control one or multiple indoor units as a group.
2. Controller Battery Life: Three years.
3. Auto Timeout Touch Screen LCD: Timeout duration shall be adjustable.
4. Temperature Units: Fahrenheit.
5. On/Off: Turns indoor unit on or off.
6. Hold: Hold operation settings until hold is released.
7. Operation Mode: Cool, Heat, Auto, Dehumidification, Fan Only, and Setback.
8. Temperature Display: 1-degree increments.
9. Temperature Set-Point: Separate set points for Cooling, Heating, and Setback. .
10. Relative Humidity Display: 1 percent increments.
11. Relative Humidity Set-Point: Adjustable in 1 percent increments.
12. Fan Speed Setting: Select between available options furnished with the unit.
13. Airflow Direction Setting: If applicable to unit, select between available options furnished with the unit.
14. Seven-day programmable operating schedule with up to five events per day. Operations shall include On/Off, Operation Mode, and Temperature Set-Point.
15. Auto Off Timer: Operates unit for an adjustable time duration and then turns unit off.
16. Occupancy detection.
17. Service Notification Display: "Filter" .
18. Service Run Tests: Limit use by service personnel to troubleshoot operation.
19. Error Code Notification Display: Used by service personnel to troubleshoot abnormal operation and equipment failure.
20. User and Service Passwords: Capable of preventing adjustments by unauthorized users.
21. Setting stored in non-volatile memory to ensure that settings are not lost if power is lost. Battery for date and time only.

## 2.6 SYSTEM CONDENSATE DRAIN PIPING

- A. If more than one material is listed, material selection is Contractor's option.
- B. Copper Tubing:
  - 1. Drawn-Temper Tubing: According to ASTM B88, Type L or Type DWV according to ASTM B306.
  - 2. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.
  - 3. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.
  - 4. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B32, lead-free alloys, and water-flushable flux according to ASTM B813.
- C. PVC plastic pipe according to ASTM D1785, Schedule 40, with socket-type pipe fittings according to ASTM D2466 and solvent cement according to ASTM D2564, primer according to ASTM F656.

## 2.7 SYSTEM HYDRONIC PIPING

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" for system piping requirements.

## 2.8 SYSTEM REFRIGERANT PIPING

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 232300 "Refrigerant Piping" for system piping requirements.
- B. Refrigerant Piping:
  - 1. Copper Tube: ASTM B280, Type ACR.
  - 2. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.
  - 3. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M.
- C. Refrigerant Tubing Kits:
  - 1. Furnished by VRF HVAC system manufacturer.
  - 2. Factory-rolled and -bundled, soft-copper tubing with tubing termination fittings at each end.
  - 3. Standard one-piece length for connecting to indoor units.
  - 4. Pre-insulated with flexible elastomeric insulation of thickness to comply with governing energy code and sufficient to eliminate condensation.
  - 5. Factory Charge: Dehydrated air or nitrogen.
- D. Divided-Flow Specialty Fittings: Where required by VRF HVAC system manufacturer for proper system operation, VRF HVAC system manufacturer shall furnish specialty fittings with identification and instructions for proper installation by Installer.
- E. Refrigerant Isolation Ball Valves:

1. Description: Uni-body full port design, rated for maximum system temperature and pressure, and factory tested under pressure to ensure tight shutoff. Designed for valve operation without removing seal cap.
2. Seals: Compatible with system refrigerant and oil. Seal service life of at least 20 years.
3. Valve Connections: Flare or sweat depending on size.

## 2.9 METAL HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

### A. Copper Tube Hangers:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of galvanized or copper-coated steel.

## 2.10 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

### A. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

1. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated, pipe-support assembly made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
2. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
3. Channels: Continuous slotted carbon-steel channel with intumed lips.
4. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria.
5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped steel nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of galvanized steel for use indoors and of stainless steel for use outdoors.
7. Metallic Coating for Use Indoors: Hot-dip galvanized.
8. Plastic Coating for Use Outdoors: PVC

## 2.11 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded, zinc-coated steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
  1. Indoor Applications: Zinc-coated or stainless steel.
  2. Outdoor Applications: Stainless steel.



## 2.12 OUTDOOR EQUIPMENT STANDS

- A. Description: Individual foot supports with elevated adjustable channel cross bars and clamps/fasteners/bolts for ground or roof-supported outdoor equipment components, without roof membrane penetration, in a prefabricated system that can be modularly assembled on-site.
- B. Foot Material: Rubber or polypropylene.
- C. Rails Material: Hot-dip galvanized carbon steel.
- D. Wind/Sliding Load Resistance: Up to 100 mph minimum.

## 2.13 MISCELLANEOUS SUPPORT MATERIALS

- A. Grout: ASTM C1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
  - 1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
  - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- B. Structural Steel: ASTM A36/A36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; galvanized.
- C. Threaded Rods: Continuously threaded. Zinc-plated steel or galvanized steel for indoor applications and stainless steel for outdoor applications. Mating nuts and washers of similar material as rods.

## 2.14 PIPING AND TUBING INSULATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation" for system piping insulation requirements.
- B. Condensate Drain Piping and Tubing Insulation and Jacket Requirements:
  - 1. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation:
    - a. Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials, complying with ASTM C534, Type I for tubular materials.
    - b. Indoors: 1/2 inch thick.
    - c. Outdoors: 3/4 inch thick.
  - 2. Field-Applied Jacket:
    - a. Concealed: None required.
    - b. Indoors, Exposed to View: PVC, 20 mils thick.
    - c. Outdoors, Exposed to View: Aluminum, smooth, 0.020 inch thick.
- C. Refrigerant Tubing Insulation and Jacket Requirements:
  - 1. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation:

- a. Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials, complying with ASTM C534, Type I for tubular materials.
  - b. Indoors: 1 inch thick.
  - c. Outdoors: 1 inch thick.
2. Field-Applied Jacket:
- a. Concealed: None required.
  - b. Indoors, Exposed to View: PVC, 20 mils thick.
  - c. Outdoors, Exposed to View: None required.
- D. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
- E. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.

## 2.15 SYSTEM CONTROL CABLE

- A. Cable Rating: Listed and labeled for application according to NFPA 70.
- 1. Flame Travel and Smoke Density in Plenums: As determined by testing identical products according to NFPA 262, by a qualified testing agency. Identify products for installation in plenums with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
    - a. Flame Travel Distance: 60 inches or less.
    - b. Peak Optical Smoke Density: 0.5 or less.
    - c. Average Optical Smoke Density: 0.15 or less.
  - 2. Flame Travel and Smoke Density for Riser Cables in Non-Plenum Building Spaces: As determined by testing identical products according to UL 1666.
  - 3. Flame Travel and Smoke Density for Cables in Non-Riser Applications and Non-Plenum Building Spaces: As determined by testing identical products according to UL 1685.
- B. Low-Voltage Control Cabling:
- 1. Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMG.
    - a. One pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) or No. 18 AWG, stranded (19x30) tinned-copper conductors as required by VRF HVAC system manufacturer.
    - b. PVC insulation.
    - c. Braided or foil shielded.
    - d. PVC jacket.
    - e. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1685.
  - 2. Plenum-Rated, Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.
    - a. One pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) or No. 18 AWG, stranded (19x30) tinned-copper conductors as required by VRF HVAC system manufacturer.
    - b. PVC insulation.

- c. Braided or foil shielded.
- d. PVC jacket.
- e. NFPA 262 includes the standard flame-resistance test criteria in common use for cables and conductors.
- f. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.

C. TIA-485A Network Cabling:

1. Standard Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMG.

- a. Paired, twisted, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned-copper conductors.
- b. PVC insulation.
- c. Unshielded.
- d. PVC jacket.
- e. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1685.

2. Plenum-Rated Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.

- a. Paired, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned-copper conductors.
- b. Fluorinated ethylene propylene insulation.
- c. Unshielded.
- d. Fluorinated ethylene propylene jacket.
- e. NFPA 262 includes the standard flame-resistance test criteria in common use for cables and conductors.
- f. Flame Resistance: NFPA 262.

D. Ethernet Network Cabling: TIA-568-C.2 Category [6] [6a] <Insert category> cable with [RJ-45] <Insert connector type> connectors.

- 1. Description: Four-pair, balanced-twisted pair cable, certified to meet transmission characteristics of category cable indicated.
- 2. Conductors: 100-ohm, 23 AWG solid copper.
- 3. Shielding: [Unshielded twisted pairs (UTP)] [Shielded twisted pairs (FTP)].
- 4. Cable Rating: By application.
- 5. Jacket: [White] [Gray] [Blue] [Yellow] <Insert color> thermoplastic.

E. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for control wiring and cable raceways.

## 2.16 MATERIALS

A. Steel:

- 1. ASTM A36/A36M for carbon structural steel.
- 2. ASTM A568/A568M for steel sheet.

B. Stainless Steel:

- 1. Manufacturer's standard grade for casing.

2. Manufacturer's standard type, ASTM A240/A240M for bare steel exposed to airstream or moisture.
- C. Galvanized Steel: ASTM A653/A653M.
- D. Aluminum: ASTM B209.
- E. Comply with Section 230546 "Coatings for HVAC" for corrosion-resistant coating.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine products before installation. Reject products that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Examine roughing-in for piping and tubing to verify actual locations of connections before equipment installation.
- D. Examine roughing-in for ductwork to verify actual locations of connections before equipment installation.
- E. Examine roughing-in for wiring and conduit to verify actual locations of connections before equipment installation.
- F. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and outdoor pads for suitable conditions where equipment will be installed.
- G. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- H. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Clearance:
  1. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances for service and maintenance.
  2. Maintain clearances required by governing code.
- B. Loose Components: Install components, devices, and accessories furnished by manufacturer, with equipment, that are not factory mounted.
  1. Loose components shall be installed by system Installer under supervision of manufacturer's service representative.

- C. Equipment Restraint Installation: Install equipment with seismic-restraint device. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF INDOOR UNITS

- A. Install units to be level and plumb while providing a neat and finished appearance.
- B. Unless otherwise required by VRF HVAC system manufacturer, support ceiling-mounted units from structure above using threaded rods; minimum rod size of 3/8 inch.
- C. Adjust supports of exposed and recessed units to draw units tight to adjoining surfaces.
- D. Protect finished surfaces of ceilings, floors, and walls that come in direct contact with units. Refinish or replaced damaged areas after units are installed.
- E. In rooms with ceilings, conceal piping and tubing, controls, and electrical power serving units above ceilings.
- F. In rooms without ceiling, arrange piping and tubing, controls, and electrical power serving units to provide a neat and finished appearance.
- G. Provide lateral bracing if needed to limit movement of suspended units to not more than 0.25 inch.
- H. For floor- and wall-mounted units that are exposed, conceal piping and tubing, controls, and electrical power serving units within walls.
- I. Install floor-mounted units on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Attachment: Install hardware for proper attachment to supported equipment.
- J. Grouting: Place grout under equipment supports and make bearing surface smooth.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF OUTDOOR UNITS

- A. Install units to be level and plumb while providing a neat and finished appearance.
- B. Install outdoor units on support structures indicated on Drawings.
- C. Pad-Mounted Installations: Install outdoor units on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
  - 1. Attachment: Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
  - 2. Grouting: Place grout under equipment supports and make bearing surface smooth.
- D. Roof-Mounted Installations: Install outdoor units on equipment supports. Anchor units to supports with removable, stainless-steel fasteners.

### 3.5 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping and tubing systems. Install piping and tubing as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install VRF piping and tubing in accordance with system manufacturer's directives.
- C. Install piping and tubing in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping and tubing at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping and tubing above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping and tubing to permit valve servicing.
- G. Install piping and tubing at indicated slopes.
- H. Install piping and tubing free of sags.
- I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- J. Install piping and tubing to allow application of insulation.
- K. Install groups of pipes and tubing parallel to each other, spaced to permit applying insulation with service access between insulated piping and tubing.
- L. Install sleeves for piping and tubing penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- M. Install escutcheons for piping and tubing penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 230518 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF SYSTEM CONDENSATE DRAIN PIPING

- A. General Requirements for Drain Piping and Tubing:
  - 1. Install a union in piping at each threaded unit connection.
  - 2. Install an adjustable stainless-steel hose clamp with adjustable gear operator on unit hose connections. Tighten clamp to provide a leak-free installation.
  - 3. If required for unit installation, provide a trap assembly in drain piping to prevent air circulated through unit from passing through drain piping. Comply with more stringent of the following:

- a. Details indicated on Drawings.
  - b. Manufacturer's requirements.
  - c. Governing codes.
  - d. In the absence of requirements, comply with requirements of ASHRAE handbooks.
- 4. Extend drain piping from units with drain connections to drain receptors as indicated on Drawings. If not indicated on Drawings, terminate drain connection at nearest accessible location that is not exposed to view by occupants.
  - 5. Provide each 90-degree change in direction with a Y- or T-fitting. Install a threaded plug connection in the dormant side of fitting or future use as a service cleanout.
- B. Gravity Drains:
- 1. Slope piping from unit connection toward drain termination at a constant slope of not less than one percent.

### 3.7 INSTALLATION OF HYDRONIC PIPING

- A. Comply with requirements for hydronic pipe and tubing specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping."
- B. Comply with requirements for hydronic specialties specified in Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties."
- C. Comply with requirements for ball valves specified in Section 230523.12 "Ball Valves for HVAC Piping."
- D. Comply with requirements for butterfly valves specified in Section 230523.13 "Butterfly Valves for HVAC Piping."
- E. Comply with requirements for check valves specified in Section 230523.14 "Check Valves for HVAC Piping."
- F. Install continuous-thread hanger rods and elastomeric hangers of size required to support equipment weight.
  - 1. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC." Fabricate brackets or supports as required.
  - 2. Comply with requirements for hangers and supports specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- G. Where installing piping and tubing adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance.

### 3.8 INSTALLATION OF REFRIGERANT PIPING

- A. Refrigerant Tubing Kits:

1. Unroll and straighten tubing to suit installation. Deviations in straightness of exposed tubing shall be unnoticeable to observer.
  2. Support tubing using hangers and supports indicated at intervals not to exceed 5 feet. Minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
  3. Prepare tubing ends and make mating connections to provide a pressure tight and leak-free installation.
- B. Install refrigerant piping according to ASHRAE 15 and governing codes.
- C. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- D. Install piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints and fittings.
- E. Arrange piping to allow inspection and service of equipment. Install valves and specialties in accessible locations to allow for service and inspection. Install access doors or panels as specified in Section 083113 "Access Doors and Frames" if valves or equipment requiring maintenance is concealed behind finished surfaces.
- F. Install refrigerant piping and tubing in protective conduit where installed belowground.
- G. Install refrigerant piping and tubing in rigid or flexible conduit in locations where exposed to mechanical damage.
- H. Unless otherwise required by VRF HVAC system manufacturer, slope refrigerant piping and tubing as follows:
1. Install horizontal hot-gas discharge piping and tubing with a uniform slope downward away from compressor.
  2. Install horizontal suction lines with a uniform slope downward to compressor.
  3. Install traps to entrain oil in vertical runs.
  4. Liquid lines may be installed level.
- I. When brazing, remove or protect components that could be damaged by heat.
- J. Before installation, clean piping, tubing, and fittings to cleanliness level required by VRF HVAC system manufacturer.
- K. Joint Construction:
1. Ream ends of tubes and remove burrs.
  2. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of tube and fittings before assembly.
  3. Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter.
    - a. Use Type BCuP (copper-phosphorus) alloy for joining copper fittings with copper tubing.
    - b. Use Type BAg (cadmium-free silver) alloy for joining copper with bronze.



### 3.9 INSTALLATION OF METAL HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- B. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.
- C. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified.
- D. Fastener System Installation:
  - 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners, for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick, in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
  - 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 3. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.
- E. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- F. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- G. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- H. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel.
  - 1. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- I. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- J. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- K. Piping and Tubing Insulation:
  - 1. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
  - 2. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
    - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.

- L. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Install the following types:
1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
  2. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 4, to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
  3. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
  4. Multiple horizontal pipes located indoors may use metal framing systems with split clamp attachment for each pipe in lieu of individual clevis hangers.
  5. Pipe stands for horizontal pipes located outdoors.
  6. Provide copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
  7. On plastic pipe, install pads or cushions on bearing surfaces to prevent hanger from scratching pipe.
- M. Horizontal Piping Hanger Spacing and Rod Size: Install hangers for drawn-temper copper piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod sizes:
1. Sizes through NPS 3/4: Maximum span, 5 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
  2. NPS 1: Maximum span, 6 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
  3. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 7 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  4. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  5. NPS 2: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  6. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 9 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  7. NPS 3 and Larger: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
- N. Plastic Pipe Hanger and Support Spacing:
1. Space hangers and supports according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions for service conditions.
  2. Maximum spacing, 5 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
- O. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8).
  2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): If longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- P. Support vertical runs at roof, at each floor, and at midpoint intervals between floors, not to exceed 5 feet.
- Q. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified.
- R. Use hangers, supports, and attachments with galvanized coatings unless otherwise indicated.
- S. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- T. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1 inch.

U. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Install the following types:

1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
3. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
4. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.

V. Building Attachments: Install the following types:

1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
  - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
  - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.

### 3.10 INSTALLATION OF PIPING AND TUBING INSULATION

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated. Installation to maintain a continuous vapor barrier.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
  1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.

2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed valve covers are unavailable, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.

1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

E. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

### 3.11 INSTALLATION OF DUCT, ACCESSORIES, AND AIR OUTLETS

- A. Where installing ductwork adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance.
- B. Comply with requirements for metal ducts specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts."
- C. Comply with requirements for nonmetal ducts specified in Section 233116 "Nonmetal Ducts."
- D. Comply with requirements for air duct accessories specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- E. Comply with requirements for flexible ducts specified in Section 233346 "Flexible Ducts."
- F. Comply with requirements for air diffusers specified in Section 233713.13 "Air Diffusers."
- G. Comply with requirements for registers and grilles specified in Section 233713.23 "Registers and Grilles."

### 3.12 ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements indicated on Drawings and in applicable Division 26 Sections.

- B. To extent electrical power is required for system equipment, components, and controls, and is not indicated on Drawings and addressed in the Specifications, the design for such electrical power shall be delegated to VRF HVAC system provider.
    - 1. Delegated design of electrical power to equipment, components and controls, and associated installation shall be included at no additional cost to Owner.
  - C. Connect field electrical power source to each separate electrical device requiring field electrical power. Coordinate termination point and connection type with Installer.
  - D. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for wiring connections.
  - E. Comply with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems" for grounding connections.
  - F. Install nameplate or acrylic label with self-adhesive back for each electrical connection indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
    - 1. Nameplate shall be laminated phenolic layers of black with engraved white letters. Letters at least 1/2 inch high.
    - 2. Locate nameplate or label where easily visible.
  - G. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for raceway selection and installation requirements for boxes, conduits, and wireways as supplemented or revised in this Section.
    - 1. Outlet boxes shall be no smaller than 2 inches wide, 3 inches high, and 2-1/2 inches deep.
    - 2. Outlet boxes for cables shall be no smaller than 4 inches square by [1-1/2 inches] [2-1/8 inches] deep with extension ring sized to bring edge of ring to within 1/8 inch of the finished wall surface.
    - 3. Flexible metal conduit shall not be used.
  - H. Comply with TIA-569-D for pull-box sizing and length of conduit and number of bends between pull points.
  - I. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows if possible.
  - J. Install metal conduits with grounding bushings and connect with grounding conductor to grounding system.
- 3.13 INSTALLATION OF SYSTEM CONTROL CABLE
- A. Comply with NECA 1.
  - B. Installation Method:
    - 1. Install cables in raceways except as follows:

- a. Within equipment and associated control enclosures.
  - b. In accessible ceiling spaces where open cable installation method may be used.
  - c. In gypsum board partitions where cable may be enclosed within wall cavity.
2. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
- C. General Requirements for Cabling:
- 1. Comply with TIA-568-C Series of standards.
  - 2. Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems."
  - 3. Terminate all conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, and cross-connect and patch panels.
  - 4. Cables may not be spliced and shall be continuous from terminal to terminal. Do not splice cable.
  - 5. Cables serving a common system may be grouped in a common raceway. Install control cable in separate raceway from power wiring. Do not group conductors from different systems or different voltages.
  - 6. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches and not more than 6 inches from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
  - 7. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems." Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
  - 8. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
  - 9. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Do not use heat lamps for heating.
  - 10. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems." Monitor cable pull tensions.
  - 11. Support: Do not allow cables to lie on removable ceiling tiles or access panels.
  - 12. Secure: Fasten securely in place with hardware specifically designed and installed so as to not damage cables.
  - 13. Provide strain relief.
  - 14. Keep runs short. Allow extra length for connecting to terminals.
  - 15. Do not bend cables in a radius less than 10 times the cable OD.
  - 16. Use sleeves or grommets to protect cables from vibration at points where they pass around sharp corners and through penetrations.
  - 17. Ground wire shall be copper, and grounding methods shall comply with IEEE C2. Demonstrate ground resistance.
- D. Balanced Twisted-Pair Cable Installation:
- 1. Comply with TIA-568-C.2.
  - 2. Do not untwist balanced twisted-pair cables more than 1/2 inch at the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.
- E. Open-Cable Installation:
- 1. Suspend copper cable not in a wireway or pathway a minimum of 8 inches above ceilings by cable supports not more than [30 inches] <Insert dimension> apart.

2. Cable shall not be run through or on structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items. Do not run cables between structural members and corrugated panels.
- F. Separation from EMI Sources: Comply with BICSI TDMM and TIA-569-D recommendations for separating unshielded cable from potential EMI sources including electrical power wiring and equipment.

### 3.14 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."
- B. Comply with TIA-569-D, Annex A, "Firestopping."
- C. Comply with BICSI TDMM, "Firestopping" Chapter.

### 3.15 GROUNDING INSTALLATION

- A. For data communication wiring, comply with TIA-607-B and with BICSI TDMM, "Bonding and Grounding (Earthing)" Chapter.
- B. For low-voltage control cabling, comply with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

### 3.16 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system equipment, piping, tubing, and valves. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Identify system electrical and controls components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  1. Identify each control cable on each end and at each terminal with a number-coded identification tag. Each cable shall have a unique tag.

### 3.17 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage VRF HVAC system manufacturer's service representative to advise and assist installers; witness testing; and observe and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including controls and connections.
  1. Field service shall be performed by a factory-trained and -authorized service representative of VRF HVAC system manufacturer whose primary job responsibilities are to provide direct technical support of its products.

- a. Additional factory-authorized representatives may assist with completion of certain activities only if supervised by manufacturer's employee. A factory-authorized representative shall not provide assistance without manufacturer's employee supervision.

### 3.18 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a VRF HVAC system manufacturer's service representative to perform system(s) startup service.
  - 1. Service representative shall be a factory-trained and -authorized service representative of VRF HVAC system manufacturer.
  - 2. Complete startup service of each separate system.
  - 3. Complete system startup service according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Startup checks shall include, but not be limited to, the following:
  - 1. Check control communications of equipment and each operating component in system(s).
  - 2. Check each indoor unit's response to demand for cooling and heating.
  - 3. Check each indoor unit's response to changes in airflow settings.
  - 4. Check each indoor unit and outdoor unit for proper condensate removal.
- C. Installer shall accompany manufacturer's service representative during startup service and provide manufacturer's service representative with requested documentation and technical support during startup service.
  - 1. Installer shall correct deficiencies found during startup service for reverification.
- D. System Operation Report:
  - 1. After completion of startup service, manufacturer shall issue a report for each separate system.
  - 2. Report shall include complete documentation describing each startup check, the result, and any corrective action required.

### 3.19 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust equipment and components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Adjust initial temperature and humidity set points. Adjust initial airflow settings and discharge airflow patterns.
- C. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges according to VRF HVAC system manufacturer's written instructions, and as indicated.



### 3.20 PROTECTION

- A. Protect products from moisture and water damage. Remove and replace products that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- B. Protect equipment from physical damage. Replace equipment with physical damage that cannot be repaired to new condition. Observable surface imperfections shall be grounds for removal and replacement.
- C. Protect equipment from electrical damage. Replace equipment suffering electrical damage.
- D. Cover and seal openings of equipment to keep inside of equipment clean. Do not remove covers until finish work is complete.

### 3.21 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a VRF HVAC system manufacturer's factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain entire system.

END OF SECTION 238129

## SECTION 238216.11 - HYDRONIC AIR COILS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each air coil.
  - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and pressure drops for each air coil.

#### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air coils to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 Basis of Design products are scheduled on the drawings. Provide products meeting or exceeding the performance and quality of the Basis of Design product.

#### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. ASHRAE 62.1 Compliance: Comply with applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5, "Systems and Equipment," and Section 7, "Construction and Startup."
- B. Performance Ratings: Tested and rated in accordance with AHRI 410 and ASHRAE 33.
- C. Minimum Working-Pressure/Temperature Ratings: 200 psig/300 deg F
- D. Select cooling coils for no moisture carryover at design conditions. Provide moisture eliminators on discharge face of cooling coil if necessary to eliminate moisture carryover.

## 2.3 HYDRONIC AIR COILS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Carrier Global Corporation.
  - 2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  - 3. Trane.
  - 4. USA Coil & Air.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain hydronic coils from single source from single manufacturer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine ducts, plenums, and casings to receive air coils for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting coil performance.
- B. Examine roughing-in for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before coil installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install coils level and plumb.
- B. Install coils in metal ducts and casings constructed in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards, Metal and Flexible."
- C. Install drain pan under each cooling coil.
  - 1. Construct drain pans with connection for drain; insulated and complying with ASHRAE 62.1.
  - 2. Construct drain pans to extend beyond coil length and width and to connect to condensate trap and drainage.
  - 3. Extend drain pan upstream and downstream from coil face.
  - 4. Extend drain pan under coil headers and exposed supply piping.
- D. Install moisture eliminators for cooling coils. Extend drain pan under moisture eliminator.
- E. Straighten bent fins on air coils.
- F. Clean coils using materials and methods recommended in writing by manufacturers, and clean inside of casings and enclosures to remove dust and debris.

### 3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to coils to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Connect water piping with unions and shutoff valves to allow coils to be disconnected without draining piping. Control valves are specified in Section 230923.11 "Control Valves," and other piping specialties are specified in Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties."

END OF SECTION 238216.11

## SECTION 238219 - FAN COIL UNITS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

#### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fan coil units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Fan Coil Unit Filters: Furnish one spare filters for each filter installed.
  - 2. Fan Belts: Furnish one spare fan belts for each unit installed.

#### 1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of fan coil units and suspension system components with other construction that penetrates or is supported by ceilings, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression-system components, and partition assemblies.
- B. Coordinate size and location of wall sleeves for outdoor-air intake.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with NFPA 70.
- B. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
- C. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of condensing units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Compressor failure.
    - b. Condenser coil leak.
  - 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 Basis of Design products are scheduled on the drawings. Provide products meeting or exceeding the performance and quality of the Basis of Design product.

## 2.2 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Carrier Global Corporation.
  - 2. Daikin Applied.
  - 3. Trane.

## 2.3 BASIC UNIT CONTROLS

- A. Provide manufacturer's standard unit controls. Controls must be compatible with and integrated into the Building Management System. See 230923 - Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC.
- B. Provide at a minimum the following Building Automation System (BAS) Interface:
  - 1. Interface relay for scheduled operation.
  - 2. Interface relay to provide indication of fault at the central workstation.
  - 3. Provide BACnet interface for central BAS workstation for the following functions:
    - a. Adjust set points.

- b. Unit ventilator start, stop, and operating status.
  - c. Data inquiry to include outdoor-air damper position, supply- and room-air temperature.
  - d. Occupied and unoccupied schedules.
- C. Electrical Connection: Factory wire motors and controls for a single electrical connection.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, with Installer present, to receive fan coil units for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for piping and electrical connections to verify actual locations before fan coil unit installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install fan coil units level and plumb.
- B. Install fan coil units to comply with NFPA 90A.
- C. Suspend fan coil units from structure with elastomeric hangers.
- D. Verify locations of thermostats, humidistats, and other exposed control sensors with Drawings and room details before installation. Install devices 60 inches above finished floor.
- E. Install new filters in each fan coil unit within two weeks after Substantial Completion.

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties. Specific connection requirements are as follows:
  - 1. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.
  - 2. Connect piping to fan coil unit factory hydronic piping package. Install piping package if shipped loose.
  - 3. Connect condensate drain to indirect waste.
    - a. Install condensate trap of adequate depth to seal against fan pressure. Install cleanouts in piping at changes of direction.
- B. Connect supply-air and return-air ducts to fan coil units with flexible duct connectors specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories." Comply with safety requirements in UL 1995 for duct connections.

- C. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- D. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

#### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
  - 1. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  - 2. Operate electric heating elements through each stage to verify proper operation and electrical connections.
  - 3. Test and adjust controls and safety devices. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- B. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

#### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust initial temperature and humidity set points.

#### 3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain fan coil units.

END OF SECTION 238219



## SECTION 238223 - UNIT VENTILATORS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product
  - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories for each unit type and configuration.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details.
  - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 3. Detail anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment.
  - 4. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

#### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For unit ventilators to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Unit Ventilator Filters: Furnish one spare filter(s) for each filter installed.
  - 2. Spare Cooling Chassis: Furnish one spare integral cooling chassis for each size unit installed.

#### 1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of unit ventilators and suspension system components with other construction that penetrates or is supported by ceilings, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression-system components, and partition assemblies.

- B. Coordinate size and location of wall sleeves for outdoor-air intake.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with NFPA 70.
- B. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
- C. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of condensing units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Compressor failure.
    - b. Condenser coil leak.
  - 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 Basis of Design products are scheduled on the drawings. Provide products meeting or exceeding the performance and quality of the Basis of Design product.

## 2.2 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Carrier Global Corporation.
  - 2. Daikin Applied.
  - 3. Trane.

## 2.3 BASIC UNIT CONTROLS

- A. Provide manufacturer's standard unit controls. Controls must be compatible with and integrated into the Building Management System. See 230923 - Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC.

- B. Provide at a minimum the following Building Automation System (BAS) Interface:
  - 1. Interface relay for scheduled operation.
  - 2. Interface relay to provide indication of fault at the central workstation.
  - 3. Provide BACnet interface for central BAS workstation for the following functions:
    - a. Adjust set points.
    - b. Unit ventilator start, stop, and operating status.
    - c. Data inquiry to include outdoor-air damper position, supply- and room-air temperature.
    - d. Occupied and unoccupied schedules.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, with Installer present, to receive unit ventilators for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for piping and electrical connections to verify actual locations before unit ventilator installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install unit ventilators to comply with NFPA 90A.
- B. Suspend horizontal unit ventilators from structure with threaded steel rods and minimum 0.25-inch (6.35-mm) static-deflection, elastomeric vibration isolation hanger.
- C. Verify location of thermostats, humidistats, and other exposed control sensors with Drawings and room details before installation. Install devices 60 inches (1525 mm) above finished floor.
- D. Comply with requirements in Section 236200 "Packaged Compressor and Condenser Units" for condensing units matched to refrigerant cooling coil packaged in unit ventilators.

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties. Specific connection requirements are as follows:
  - 1. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.
  - 2. Connect piping to unit ventilator factory hydronic piping package. Install piping package if shipped loose.
  - 3. Connect condensate drain to indirect waste.
- B. Install refrigerant piping as required by Section 232300 "Refrigerant Piping," and add refrigerant as required to compensate for length of piping.

- C. Connect supply-air and return-air ducts to unit ventilators with flexible duct connectors specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories." Comply with safety requirements in UL 1995 for duct connections.
- D. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- E. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

#### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
  - 1. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  - 2. Test and adjust controls and safety devices. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- B. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

#### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust initial temperature and humidity set points.

#### 3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain unit ventilators.

END OF SECTION 238223

## SECTION 260500 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR ELECTRICAL WORK

### PART 1 – GENERAL

#### 1.1 STIPULATIONS

- A. General provisions of the Contract Documents including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specifications Sections apply to all work in this section.

#### 1.2 WORK INCLUDED

- A. Every Section of Division 26 described herein is binding upon each Contractor involved insofar as it can or does apply to him or his work.
- B. This Contractor shall furnish, install and connect an operating electrical installation in accordance with these specifications and accompanying Contract Drawings. This shall include all required labor, materials, apparatus and supervision.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Contractor: “Contractor”, “this Contractor” or “Electrical Contractor” when used in this specification refers to the Contractor responsible for all work under this Section.
- B. Sub Contractor: Any references to, or letting of work contained in these specifications to any Sub Contractor or manufacturer does not relieve this Contractor of his responsibility for all work, material and equipment in this specification.
- C. Provide: The term “Provide” when used separately shall mean to “Furnish and Install”.
- D. Furnish: The term “Furnish” when used separately shall mean to obtain and deliver to the project site for installation by others.
- E. Install: The term “Install” when used separately shall mean to mount in place, connect and make operable.
- F. Gauge of Materials: The sizes of copper conductors and thickness of metals shown on the drawings or mentioned herein shall be understood to be American Wire Gauge for conductors and US Gauge for sheet metal.
- G. Singular Number: Any reference made to an item in the singular number shall apply equally to as many identical items that work may require.

#### 1.4 REGULATIONS AND CODES

- A. All applicable laws, ordinances, rules and regulations of public bodies bearing on the conduct of the work, including but not limited to, the State Department of Health, Department of Labor and Industry, the National Fire Protection Association, the Americans with Disabilities Act and the Owner’s insuring agency are hereby incorporated and made a part of these specifications.
- B. Should any change in the drawings and/or specifications be required to conform to the codes, ordinances, regulations or laws mentioned above, the Professional shall be notified prior to the time of submitting bids. After signing the Contract, each Contractor will be responsible for the completion of all work necessary to meet the above-mentioned requirements without additional expense to the Owner.

- C. The Contractor shall comply with all rules, regulations and recommendations of any public utility serving this project.
- D. The entire electrical system shall be installed in accordance with the 2014 National Electric Code, approved by the governmental body having jurisdiction, including amendments thereto.

#### 1.5 DRAWINGS AND SPECIFICATIONS

- A. The drawings are generally diagrammatic and indicative of the work to be installed. Exact locations of equipment and points of termination shall be approved by the Professional. Should it be found that any system or equipment cannot be installed as shown on the drawings, the Professional shall be consulted before installing or making changes to the layout.
- B. The drawings and specifications are intended to function as a common set of documents. Anything shown on the drawings but not in the specifications, or mentioned in the specifications and not shown on drawings, shall be equally binding as if both noted on the drawings and called for in the specifications.
- C. No measurement of a drawing by scale shall be used as a working dimension. Working measurements shall be taken from figured dimensions and through cooperation with all other Contractors.
- D. This Contractor shall carefully examine the Architectural, Structural, Heating, Ventilating, Air Conditioning, Plumbing and miscellaneous Contract Drawings and Specifications. If any discrepancies occur between the drawings or between the drawings and specifications, he shall report such discrepancies to the Professional in writing and obtain written instructions as to the manner in which to proceed. No departures from the Contract Drawings shall be made without prior written approval of the Professional.

#### 1.6 FAMILIARITY WITH CONTRACT REQUIREMENTS

- A. It is the responsibility of the Contractor, prior to submitting his bid on this Project, to satisfy himself as to the nature and location of the work, the conformation of the ground, soil characteristics, the character, quality and quantity of the materials which will be required, the character equipment and facilities needed preliminary to and during the prosecution of the work, the general and local conditions and of all other matters which can in any way affect the work under this Contract.
- B. Failure to make onsite inspection prior to submitting a bid, or failure to comply with any or all of the above requirements will not relieve this Contractor from the responsibilities of properly estimating the requirements or costs of successful completion of the work nor from the responsibility for the faithful performance of the provisions of this Contract.

#### 1.7 STANDARDS AND REFERENCES

- A. Products of workmanship that are specified by association, trade or federal standards shall comply with the requirements of the following reference standards except when more rigid requirements are specified or are required by applicable codes.
  - 1. ANSI - American National Standard Institute.
  - 2. ASTM - American Society for Testing and Materials.
  - 3. FM - Factory Mutual System.
  - 4. FS - Federal Specification.
  - 5. IEEE - Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers.

6. MIL - Military Specification.
7. NEMA - National Electrical Manufacturers Association.
8. NFPA - National Fire Protection Association.
9. UL - Underwriters Laboratories, Inc.

## 1.8 SUBMITTALS

### A. Approval of Materials

1. Within 10 days after signing the Contract, the Contractor shall submit to the Professional for approval, a complete list of materials, equipment and Sub Contractors proposed for use on this Project.
2. List shall include, in itemized form, the name and address of the Manufacturer, equipment or Sub Contractor and when required, the trade name or catalog number of the proposed material.
3. Submit electronic copies for approval.

### B. Shop Drawings:

1. The Contractor shall submit to the Professional shop drawings, catalog cuts, data sheets, manufacturer's instructions, etc. of all materials and equipment as called for herein and/or as called for in the individual sections of Division 26 under submittals.
2. Shop drawings submitted for review shall identify the Project. Contractor, Sub Contractor or Supplier, pertinent drawing number, detail and specification section number as appropriate.
3. Shop drawings shall bear the Contractor's approval stamp, signed or initialed certifying that review, verification of the material required, dimensions and coordination of the information is in accordance with the requirements of the work and Contract Documents. Drawings submitted without the Contractor's approval stamp will not be considered and will be returned for resubmission.
4. No work shall be executed, no orders placed, no material shall be installed until final review has been received.
5. Submit electronic copies for review.

### C. Electrical Inspection Certificate:

1. The electrical work on this Project shall be inspected by an approved inspection agency. All inspection costs shall be paid by the Electrical Contractor. Any work failing to pass inspection shall be corrected and re-inspected at no additional cost to the Owner. The Electrical Contractor shall formally file for this inspection within 20 days of signing the Contract.
2. Submit electronic copies of final wiring certificates to the Professional.

### D. Testing:

1. Upon completion of the work, all parts of the electrical installation shall be tested by this Contractor and proved free of unwanted grounds and other defects. Preliminary testing shall with magneto will be permitted but will not be accepted in obtaining final results. Final tests shall be accomplished by use of a megger or as covered in this specification. The values of all secondary materials and equipment insulation shall meet or exceed the aforementioned regulatory bodies.
2. All connections at panels and switches and all splices must be made, all fuses shall be in place and all circuits continuous from point of service connections to switches, receptacles and outlets at the time of final inspection.

3. All overload devices, including equipment furnished under other contracts shall be set and adjusted to suit the load conditions.
  4. Submit electronic copies of the completed report to the Professional.
- E. Operation and Maintenance Manuals:
1. This Contractor shall carefully compile, during process of work, all operation and maintenance manuals including all approved electrical shop drawings. Methods of care of all types of materials and descriptions of all systems and equipment and methods of operation thereof shall be provided. Descriptions shall give pertinent diagrams, identifying charts, color-coding, connections, lubricating instructions and single-line and detailed wiring diagrams. These instructions shall contain detailed operating and maintenance instructions and complete parts lists for each piece of equipment and diagrams of control wiring so arranged that the maintenance staff may easily trace the control in case of operating difficulties. Use Manufacturer's printed information where possible; otherwise, obtain written instructions prepared by Sub Contractors. Include names, addresses and phone numbers of all Sub Contractors and of service firms for each item, for Owner's use after expiration of the guarantee period. The list shall be located immediately inside the front cover. Before completion of the work, submit a rough draft of the manual in a loose-leaf binder for approval.
  2. After approval and before final payment, furnish 2 corrected bound copies, properly identified, to Professional for transmittal to the Owner.
- F. Guarantee:
1. Written 1 year full warranty guarantees shall be submitted for the entire electrical installation installed under this Project (except lamps). The emergency lighting system shall carry a full warranty guarantee for 3 years. Where Manufacturer's standard guarantee provides for a longer period, the longer period shall apply.
  2. Where defects in the material, equipment and/or workmanship become evident within this guarantee period, the Contractor shall be responsible for replacing such material and equipment with the approved type of new items; and/or correcting the defective workmanship without any costs to the Owner.
- G. Construction Record Drawings:
1. The Contractor shall keep at the job site 1 complete set of drawings which shall be used by the Contractor for the purpose of recording all changes that occur during the construction. The Contractor shall accurately record on these drawings all changes in the electrical work.
  2. Upon completion of this Project, these drawings shall be turned over to the Professional.
- H. Final Wiring Certificates:
1. Submit electronic copies of final wiring certificates to the Professional.

#### 1.9 SUBSTITUTIONS AND SAMPLES

- A. All material specified hereinafter shall be of the Manufacturer's catalog number as specified. If the Contractor desires to substitute, Contractor must submit catalog cuts of the substituted materials to the Professional 10 calendar days in advance of the bid date to allow ample time for consideration. A decision will be rendered and an addendum will be issued to all Contractors listing any "acceptable substitutes".
- B. No substitutions shall be made without approval. The words "approved equal" and "equal" shall mean equal in all respects in the opinion of the Professional.



- C. The Electrical Contractor shall furnish, for review by the Professional, all samples specified or called for by the Professional. Finished work shall match approved samples and shop drawings.
- D. When shop drawings are submitted on equipment different from the equipment specified hereinafter, this Contractor shall relate each item of the submitted equipment to its specified equivalent.
- E. All costs involved in charges in the building, to the equipment, to the arrangement of equipment, or to the work performed or to be performed under other sections of the specifications, due to the substitution of equipment in lieu of that shown on the drawings or specified, shall be borne by this Contractor making such substitutions and shall include but not necessarily be limited to, costs or fees in connection with resubmission of drawings for approval, if required, by the Commonwealth of Pennsylvania, local authorities or insuring agencies or insuring agencies having jurisdiction over the work.

#### 1.10 QUALITY OF WORKMANSHIP

- A. All work shall be installed in a first class, neat and workmanship shall be subject to the approval of the Professional. Any work found by the Professional to be of inferior quality and/or workmanship shall be replaced and/or reworked until approval of the Professional is obtained. Any cost involved in obtaining said approval shall be the responsibility of the Electrical Contractor.

#### 1.11 PERFORMANCE OF EQUIPMENT

- A. All materials, equipment and appurtenances of any kind, shown on the drawings, hereinafter specified or required for the completion of the work in accordance with the intent of these specifications, shall be completely satisfactory and acceptable in operation, performance and capacity. No approval, either written or verbal, of any drawings, descriptive data of samples of such material, equipment and/or appurtenances, shall relieve the Electrical Contractor of his responsibility to turn over the same to the Owner in perfect working order at the completion of the work.
- B. Any material, equipment or appurtenances, the operation capacity performance of which does not comply with the drawings and/or specification requirements, or which is not new, or which is damaged prior to acceptance by the Owner, will be held to be defective material and shall be removed and replaced with proper acceptable materials, equipment and/or appurtenance or put in proper acceptable working order, satisfactory to the Professional without additional cost to the Owner.
- C. All auxiliary systems provided under this specification, including the emergency lighting system, fire alarm system or other similar systems shall be furnished by Manufacturers who have been regularly engaged in the manufacture of these products for a period of not less than 5 years. This Contractor shall deliver to the Professional prior to final payment, a statement from the Manufacturer or his authorized representative, certifying that the equipment has been inspected by him and found to be properly installed and functioning satisfactorily. Installation, final connections and testing of such systems shall be made under the direct supervision of competent authorized service engineers who shall be in the employ of the respective equipment Manufacturer. Any and all expenses incurred by these equipment Manufacturer's representatives shall be borne by the Electrical Contractor.
- D. All details of the installation of all equipment shall be electrically and mechanically correct. All equipment shall operate without objectionable noise or vibration as determined by the Professional and Owner. If objectionable noise or vibration is produced and transmitted to occupied portions of the building by apparatus, conduit or other parts of a system, any corrections to eliminate noise and vibration shall be made without cost to the Owner.

## 1.12 TEMPORARY FACILITIES

- A. Electrical Contractor shall furnish, install, connect and maintain temporary electrical services to the building until new, permanent services are installed. Complete installation and maintenance of temporary services shall meet all NEC and OSHA requirements.

## 1.13 METHODS AND MATERIALS

- A. The Electrical Contractor shall confer with all other Contractors and shall apply for detailed and specific information regarding the location of all equipment as the final location may differ from that indicated on the drawings. Outlets, equipment or wiring improperly placed because of the Electrical Contractor's failure to obtain this information shall be relocated and reinstalled by the Electrical Contractor without additional expenses to the Owner.
- B. Each Contractor, upon request of the Professional shall expedite the work of a specific area, section or part of the project to make provision for, or protect equipment or to permit the installation of another part of the work.
- C. All materials and equipment supplied by this Contractor shall be new, of the best of their respective kinds, without imperfections and blemishes and shall be protected from the elements prior to installation in the building.
- D. All conduits, wire, cable, wiring devices and equipment shall be installed in such a manner as to preserve access to any existing equipment or to any new equipment installed under this specification or under other specifications or contracts for this building and with sufficient space provided for proper operation and maintenance.
- E. The drawings are generally indicative of the work to be installed but do not indicate all bends, fittings, boxes, etc., which may be required. Contractor shall carefully investigate the structure and finish conditions affecting his work, arrange his work accordingly and furnish such fittings as may be required to meet such conditions.
- F. This Contractor shall coordinate his work with that of other trades so that all work may be installed in the most direct manner and so that no interference or fouling results, the Professional shall decide which work is to be relocated, regardless of which is first installed. Such relocation shall be at no additional cost to the Owner.
- G. All materials and equipment installed by the Contractor shall be firmly supported and secured to the building construction where required.
- H. All items of labor, material and equipment not specified in detail or shown on the drawings but incidental to or necessary for the complete and proper installation and proper operation of the several branches of the work described herein or reasonably implied in connection therewith, shall be furnished as if called for in detail by the specifications or drawings.
- I. Major items of equipment shall be the best grade and quality used for the purpose in commercial practice and shall have the Manufacturer's name, address and catalog number on a plate securely affixed in a prominent place. All electrical equipment or apparatus of any 1 system must be the product of 1 Manufacturer, or equivalent products of a number of Manufacturers, which are suitable for use in a unified system.
- J. When available, all materials and equipment shall bear the label of approval of the Underwriters' Laboratory, Inc.

#### 1.14 SLEEVES

- A. The Electrical Contractor shall provide sleeves where required to protect equipment or facilities in the installation. Each sleeve shall extend through its respective floor, wall or partition and shall be cut flush with each surface unless otherwise required.
- B. Sleeves in bearing and masonry walls, floors and partitions shall be of standard weight steel pipe finished with smooth edges. For other masonry partitions through suspended ceilings and for concealed vertical piping, sleeves shall be Number 22 U.S.G. galvanized iron.
- C. All sleeves shall be properly installed and securely cemented in place.
- D. Floor sleeves shall extend 1 inch above the finished floor. Space between floor sleeves and passing conduit shall be caulked with graphite packing and waterproof caulking compound as required for a waterproof installation.
- E. Where conduits pass through waterproofed floors or walls, design of sleeves shall be such that waterproofing can be flashed into and around the sleeves.
- F. Sleeves through exterior walls below grade shall have the spaces between conduit and sleeve caulked watertight.

#### 1.15 CHASES AND OPENINGS

- A. All openings or chases required for the installation of the electrical work in the building shall be provided by the General Contractor, providing the Electrical Contractor shall notify the General Contractor of the size and location of the required openings or chases in sufficient time before the work is closed in so that the work of the General Contractor will not be delayed.
- B. If the General Contractor is not notified in sufficient time, so that a delay is caused in his work, the General Contractor will cut and patch the openings and/or chases and charge the Electrical Contractor for the work involved.
- C. This Contractor shall seal all openings he has made in fire rated floors, ceilings or partitions after his work has been installed. The material used for sealing the openings shall have a fire rating equal to or greater than the fire rating of the floor, ceiling or partition material. All fire stop material shall be UL classified. Fire stop sealants, foams and compounds shall be as manufactured by Dow Corning or Nelson.

#### 1.16 ACCESS PANELS

- A. The Electrical Contractor shall provide and turn over to the General Contractor for installation by him all access panels required for work under this Electrical Contract. Access panels shall not be smaller than 24 inches by 24 inches for access to concealed pull boxes, junction boxes or similar items where no other means of access is provided.
- B. Each access panel shall be all steel construction with a wall or ceiling frame and a hinged panel door. Doors shall be provided with a full piano hinges and suitable clips and countersunk screws. Access panels shall have a 1 hour fire rating and shall also be labeled. Outside of access panels shall finish flush with finished wall or ceiling surfaces and be prime painted.

#### 1.17 SCAFFOLDING

- A. The Electrical Contractor shall furnish and erect all scaffolding and ladders required in the installation of wiring, equipment and fixtures.

### 1.18 EQUIPMENT FOUNDATIONS

- A. The provision of all concrete equipment foundations required for the equipment furnished under these electrical specifications shall be the responsibility of the Electrical Contractor. Foundations shall be of sufficient mass to suit the equipment furnished.

### 1.19 CLEAN-UP

- A. Upon completion of the electrical work and when directed by the Professional this Contractor shall remove all dirt, foreign materials, stains, fingerprints, etc., from all lighting fixtures, panels, plates, etc., installed under this project and shall leave the electrical work in such a condition that no cleaning by the Owner is required. Internal areas of all equipment must be cleaned of all construction dust, etc., prior to pre-final and/or final inspection.
- B. Periodically and at the completion of the work contemplated under these specifications, the Contractor shall remove from the building site and construction areas as rubbish and accumulated materials of whatever nature not caused by other trades and shall leave the work in a clean, orderly and acceptable condition at all times.

### 1.20 PROTECTION OF WORK, MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT

- A. This Contractor shall effectually protect at his own expense all existing facilities and such of his new work, materials or equipment as is liable to injury during the construction period. All openings into any part of the conduit system as well as all associated fixtures, equipment, etc., both before and after being set in place must be securely covered or otherwise protected to prevent obstruction, damage or injury due to carelessly or maliciously dropped tools or materials, grit, dirt, moisture, water or any foreign matter. This Contractor shall be held responsible for all damage so done, until his work is fully accepted by the Professional. Conduit ends shall be covered with capped bushings.
- B. All surfaces either finished or in preparation for finishing or finish material application, shall be protected against damage from welding, cutting, burning, soldering or similar construction functions. The protection shall be accomplished by care in operations, covering and shielding. Special care shall be directed to exposed finish masonry, metal or wood surfaces and painted surfaces. Corrective measures required shall be accomplished by the trade which made the original installation when and as directed by the Professional at the expense of the Contractor causing the damage and at no cost to the Owner.
- C. Any damage caused by neglect on the part of this Contractor or his representatives, either to the existing work or to his work or to the work of any other Contractor shall be repaired at his expense to the Professional's satisfaction.

### 1.21 PROTECTION OF SERVICES AND EQUIPMENT

- A. The Contractor shall, at his own expense, repair, replace and maintain in service any utilities, facilities or services (underground, over ground, interior or exterior) damaged, broken or otherwise rendered inoperative during the course of construction by him or his representatives. The method used by the Contractor in repairing, replacing or maintaining the services shall be approved by the Professional.

## 1.22 INSTRUCTIONS

- A. After all tests and adjustments have been made, the Electrical Contractor shall fully instruct the representatives of the Owner in all details of operation and maintenance of equipment installed under this Contract. Allow 8 manhours for instructions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS - Not Used.

PART 3 - EXECUTION - Not Used.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 260519 - LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Copper building wire rated 600 V or less.
  - 2. Metal-clad cable, Type MC, rated 600 V or less.
  - 3. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 600 V and less.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Product Schedule: Indicate type, use, location, and termination locations.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA.
  - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 COPPER BUILDING WIRE

- A. Description: Flexible, insulated and uninsulated, drawn copper current-carrying conductor with an overall insulation layer or jacket, or both, rated 600 V or less.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. American Bare Conductor.
  - 2. Cerro Wire LLC.
  - 3. Encore Wire Corporation.
  - 4. General Cable Technologies Corporation.

5. Southwire Company.

C. Standards:

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
2. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."

D. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B 3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B 8 and ASTM B 496 for stranded conductors.

E. Conductor Insulation:

1. Type THHN and Type THWN-2: Comply with UL 83.
2. Type XHHW-2: Comply with UL 44.

F. Shield:

1. Type TC-ER: Cable designed for use with VFCs, with oversized crosslinked polyethylene insulation, spiral-wrapped foil plus 85 percent coverage braided shields and insulated full-size ground wire or dual spirally wrapped copper tape shields and three bare symmetrically applied ground wires, and sunlight- and oil-resistant outer PVC jacket.

## 2.2 METAL-CLAD CABLE, TYPE MC

A. Description: A factory assembly of one or more current-carrying insulated conductors in an overall metallic sheath.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Alpha Wire Company.
2. American Bare Conductor.
3. Belden Inc.
4. Encore Wire Corporation.
5. General Cable Technologies Corporation.

C. Standards:

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
2. Comply with UL 1569.
3. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."

D. Circuits:

1. Single circuit and multicircuit with color-coded conductors.
  2. Power-Limited Fire-Alarm Circuits: Comply with UL 1424.
- E. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B 3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B 8 for stranded conductors.
- F. Ground Conductor: Insulated.
- G. Conductor Insulation:
1. Type TFN/THHN/THWN-2: Comply with UL 83.
  2. Type XHHW-2: Comply with UL 44..
- H. Armor: Aluminum, interlocked.
- I. Jacket: PVC applied over armor.

### 2.3 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

- A. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors, splices, and lugs of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated; listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. 3M Electrical Products.
  2. AFC Cable Systems; a part of Atkore International.
  3. Gardner Bender.
  4. Hubbell Power Systems, Inc.
  5. Ideal Industries, Inc.
  6. ILSCO.
  7. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation.
  8. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group
- C. Jacketed Cable Connectors: For steel and aluminum jacketed cables, zinc die-cast with set screws, designed to connect conductors specified in this Section.
- D. Lugs: One piece, seamless, designed to terminate conductors specified in this Section.
1. Material: Copper.
  2. Type: Two hole with long barrels.
  3. Termination: Crimp.



## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS

- A. Feeders: Copper; solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- B. Feeders: Copper. Conductors shall be solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- C. Branch Circuits: Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- D. Branch Circuits: Copper. Solid for No. 12 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 10 AWG and larger.
- E. VFC Output Circuits Cable: Extra-flexible stranded for all sizes.
- F. Power-Limited Fire Alarm and Control: Solid for No. 12 AWG and smaller.

### 3.2 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS

- A. Service Entrance: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.
- B. Exposed Feeders: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.
- C. Feeders Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, Partitions, and Crawlspace: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- D. Feeders Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.
- E. Exposed Branch Circuits, Including in Crawlspace: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- F. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway; Metal-clad cable, Type MC.
- G. Branch Circuits Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.
- H. Cord Drops and Portable Appliance Connections: Type SO, hard service cord with stainless-steel, wire-mesh, strain relief device at terminations to suit application.

- I. VFC Output Circuits: Type XHHW-2 in metal conduit Type TC-ER cable with braided shield  
Type TC-ER cable with dual tape shield.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Complete raceway installation between conductor and cable termination points according to Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" prior to pulling conductors and cables.
- C. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.
- D. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage cables or raceway.
- E. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.
- F. Support cables according to Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."

### 3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.
- B. Make splices, terminations, and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors.
- C. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least 12 inches of slack.

### 3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify each spare conductor at each end with identity number and location of other end of conductor, and identify as spare conductor.

### 3.6 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

### 3.7 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly.

### 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
  - 1. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test service entrance and feeder conductors for compliance with requirements.
  - 2. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test feeder conductors and conductors feeding the following critical equipment and services for compliance with requirements:
    - 3. Perform each of the following visual and electrical tests:
      - a. Inspect exposed sections of conductor and cable for physical damage and correct connection according to the single-line diagram.
      - b. Test bolted connections for high resistance using one of the following:
        - 1) A low-resistance ohmmeter.
        - 2) Calibrated torque wrench.
        - 3) Thermographic survey.
      - c. Inspect compression-applied connectors for correct cable match and indentation.
      - d. Inspect for correct identification.
      - e. Inspect cable jacket and condition.
      - f. Insulation-resistance test on each conductor for ground and adjacent conductors. Apply a potential of 500-V dc for 300-V rated cable and 1000-V dc for 600-V rated cable for a one-minute duration.
      - g. Continuity test on each conductor and cable.
      - h. Uniform resistance of parallel conductors.
    - 4. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but before Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each splice in conductors No. 3 AWG and larger. Remove box and equipment covers so splices are accessible to portable scanner. Correct deficiencies determined during the scan.

- a. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
  - b. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies switches checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.
5. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each switch 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Cables will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports to record the following:
- 1. Procedures used.
  - 2. Results that comply with requirements.
  - 3. Results that do not comply with requirements, and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 260526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes grounding and bonding systems and equipment.
- B. Section includes grounding and bonding systems and equipment, plus the following special applications:
  - 1. Underground distribution grounding.
  - 2. Ground bonding common with lightning protection system.
  - 3. Foundation steel electrodes.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For grounding to include operation, and maintenance manuals.
  - 1. In addition to items specified in Section 01700 "Contract Close-out," include the following:
    - a. Plans showing as-built, dimensioned locations of grounding features specified in "Field Quality Control" Article, including the following:
      - 1) Test wells.
      - 2) Ground rods.
      - 3) Ground rings.
      - 4) Grounding arrangements and connections for separately derived systems.
    - b. Instructions for periodic testing and inspection of grounding features at test wells ground rings grounding connections for separately derived systems based on NETA MTS NFPA 70B.

- 1) Tests shall determine if ground-resistance or impedance values remain within specified maximums, and instructions shall recommend corrective action if values do not.
- 2) Include recommended testing intervals.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Certified by NETA.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

### 2.2 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Burndy; Part of Hubbell Electrical Systems.
  2. ERICO International Corporation.
  3. ILSCO.
  4. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation.
  5. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group

### 2.3 CONDUCTORS

- A. Insulated Conductors: Copper or tinned-copper wire or cable insulated for 600 V unless otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Bare Copper Conductors:
  1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.
  2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
  3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B 33.
  4. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmil, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, 1/4 inch in diameter.
  5. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
  6. Bonding Jumper: Copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches wide and 1/16 inch thick.
  7. Tinned Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches wide and 1/16 inch thick.

- C. Grounding Bus: Predrilled rectangular bars of annealed copper, 1/4 by 4 inches minimum or as noted on the drawings in cross section, with 9/32-inch holes spaced 1-1/8 inches apart. Stand-off insulators for mounting shall comply with UL 891 for use in switchboards, 600 V and shall be Lexan or PVC, impulse tested at 5000 V.

## 2.4 CONNECTORS

- A. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in which used and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.
- B. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.
- C. Bus-Bar Connectors: Mechanical type, cast silicon bronze, solderless exothermic-type wire terminals, and long-barrel, two-bolt connection to ground bus bar.
- D. Bus-Bar Connectors: Compression type, copper or copper alloy, with two wire terminals.
- E. Beam Clamps: Mechanical type, terminal, ground wire access from four directions, with dual, tin-plated or silicon bronze bolts.
- F. Cable-to-Cable Connectors: Compression type, copper or copper alloy.
- G. Cable Tray Ground Clamp: Mechanical type, zinc-plated malleable iron.
- H. Conduit Hubs: Mechanical type, terminal with threaded hub.
- I. Ground Rod Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal with hex head bolt or socket set screw.
- J. Ground Rod Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal with hex head bolt.
- K. Lay-in Lug Connector: Mechanical type, aluminum copper rated for direct burial terminal with set screw.
- L. Service Post Connectors: Mechanical type, bronze alloy terminal, in short- and long-stud lengths, capable of single and double conductor connections.
- M. Signal Reference Grid Clamp: Mechanical type, stamped-steel terminal with hex head screw.
- N. Straps: Solid copper, copper lugs. Rated for 600 A.
- O. Tower Ground Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal one-piece clamp.
- P. U-Bolt Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal listed for direct burial.
- Q. Water Pipe Clamps:
  - 1. Mechanical type, two pieces with stainless-steel bolts.

- a. Material: Tin-plated aluminum.
  - b. Listed for direct burial.
2. U-bolt type with malleable-iron clamp and copper ground connector rated for direct burial.

## 2.5 GROUNDING ELECTRODES

- A. Ground Rods: Copper-clad steel; 3/4 inch by 10 feet or 5/8 by 96 inches as noted on the drawings.
- B. Ground Plates: 1/4 inch thick, hot-dip galvanized.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 APPLICATIONS

- A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 8 AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for No. 6 AWG and larger unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Underground Grounding Conductors: Install bare copper conductor, No. 2/0 AWG minimum.
  1. Bury at least 24 inches below grade.
  2. Duct-Bank Grounding Conductor: Bury 12 inches above duct bank when indicated as part of duct-bank installation.
- C. Isolated Grounding Conductors: Green-colored insulation with continuous yellow stripe. On feeders with isolated ground, identify grounding conductor where visible to normal inspection, with alternating bands of green and yellow tape, with at least three bands of green and two bands of yellow.
- D. Grounding Bus: Install in electrical equipment rooms, in rooms housing service equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
  1. Install bus horizontally, on insulated spacers 2 inches minimum from wall, 6 inches above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Where indicated on both sides of doorways, route bus up to top of door frame, across top of doorway, and down; connect to horizontal bus.
- E. Conductor Terminations and Connections:
  1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
  2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
  3. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
  4. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.



### 3.2 GROUNDING AT THE SERVICE

- A. Equipment grounding conductors and grounding electrode conductors shall be connected to the ground bus. Install a main bonding jumper between the neutral and ground buses.

### 3.3 GROUNDING SEPARATELY DERIVED SYSTEMS

- A. Transformer: Install grounding electrode(s) at the transformer location. The electrode shall be connected to the equipment grounding conductor.

### 3.4 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING

- A. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with all feeders and branch circuits.
- B. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with the following items, in addition to those required by NFPA 70:
  - 1. Feeders and branch circuits.
  - 2. Lighting circuits.
  - 3. Receptacle circuits.
  - 4. Single-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
  - 5. Three-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
  - 6. Flexible raceway runs.
  - 7. Metal-clad cable runs.
  - 8. Busway Supply Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor from grounding bus in the switchgear, switchboard, or distribution panel to equipment grounding bar terminal on busway.
- C. Water Heater, Heat-Tracing, and Anti-frost Heating Cables: Install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor to each electric water heater and heat-tracing cable. Bond conductor to heater units, piping, connected equipment, and components.
- D. Isolated Grounding Receptacle Circuits: Install an insulated equipment grounding conductor connected to the receptacle grounding terminal. Isolate conductor from raceway and from panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Poles Supporting Outdoor Lighting Fixtures: Install grounding electrode and a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor in addition to grounding conductor installed with branch-circuit conductors.
- F. Metallic Fences: Comply with requirements of IEEE C2.
  - 1. Grounding Conductor: Bare copper, not less than No. 8 AWG.
  - 2. Gates: Shall be bonded to the grounding conductor with a flexible bonding jumper.
  - 3. Barbed Wire: Strands shall be bonded to the grounding conductor.

### 3.5 FENCE GROUNDING

- A. Fence Grounding: Install at maximum intervals of 1500 feet except as follows:
  - 1. Fences within 100 Feet of Buildings, Structures, Walkways, and Roadways: Ground at maximum intervals of 750 feet.
    - a. Gates and Other Fence Openings: Ground fence on each side of opening.
      - 1) Bond metal gates to gate posts.
      - 2) Bond across openings, with and without gates, except at openings indicated as intentional fence discontinuities. Use No. 2 AWG wire and bury it at least 18 inches below finished grade.
- B. Protection at Crossings of Overhead Electrical Power Lines: Ground fence at location of crossing and at a maximum distance of 150 feet on each side of crossing.
- C. Fences Enclosing Electrical Power Distribution Equipment: Ground as required by IEEE C2 unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Grounding Method: At each grounding location, drive a grounding rod vertically until the top is 6 inches below finished grade. Connect rod to fence with No. 6 AWG conductor. Connect conductor to each fence component at grounding location.
- E. Bonding Method for Gates: Connect bonding jumper between gate post and gate frame.
- F. Bonding to Lightning-Protection System: If fence terminates at lightning-protected building or structure, ground the fence and bond the fence grounding conductor to lightning-protection down conductor or lightning-protection grounding conductor, complying with NFPA 780.

### 3.6 INSTALLATION

- A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.
- B. Ground Bonding Common with Lightning Protection System: Comply with NFPA 780 and UL 96 when interconnecting with lightning protection system. Bond electrical power system ground directly to lightning protection system grounding conductor at closest point to electrical service grounding electrode. Use bonding conductor sized same as system grounding electrode conductor, and install in conduit.
- C. Ground Rods: Drive rods until tops are 2 inches below finished floor or final grade unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Interconnect ground rods with grounding electrode conductor below grade and as otherwise indicated. Make connections without exposing steel or damaging coating if any.
  - 2. Use exothermic welds for all below-grade connections.

3. For grounding electrode system, install at least three rods spaced at least one-rod length from each other and located at least the same distance from other grounding electrodes, and connect to the service grounding electrode conductor.
- D. Test Wells: Ground rod driven through drilled hole in bottom of handhole. Handholes are specified in Section 260543 "Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems," and shall be at least 12 inches deep, with cover.
1. Install at least one test well for each service unless otherwise indicated. Install at the ground rod electrically closest to service entrance. Set top of test well flush with finished grade or floor.
- E. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance except where routed through short lengths of conduit.
1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
  2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install bonding so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
  3. Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations; if a disconnect-type connection is required, use a bolted clamp.
- F. Grounding and Bonding for Piping:
1. Metal Water Service Pipe: Install insulated copper grounding conductors, in conduit, from building's main service equipment, or grounding bus, to main metal water service entrances to building. Connect grounding conductors to main metal water service pipes; use a bolted clamp connector or bolt a lug-type connector to a pipe flange by using one of the lug bolts of the flange. Where a dielectric main water fitting is installed, connect grounding conductor on street side of fitting. Bond metal grounding conductor conduit or sleeve to conductor at each end.
  2. Water Meter Piping: Use braided-type bonding jumpers to electrically bypass water meters. Connect to pipe with a bolted connector.
  3. Bond each aboveground portion of gas piping system downstream from equipment shutoff valve.
- G. Bonding Interior Metal Ducts: Bond metal air ducts to equipment grounding conductors of associated fans, blowers, electric heaters, and air cleaners. Install bonding jumper to bond across flexible duct connections to achieve continuity.
- H. Ground Ring: Install a grounding conductor, electrically connected to each building structure ground rod and to each indicated item, extending around the perimeter of building.
1. Install tinned-copper conductor not less than No. 2/0 AWG for ground ring and for taps to building steel.
  2. Bury ground ring not less than 24 inches from building's foundation.
- I. Concrete-Encased Grounding Electrode (Ufer Ground): Fabricate according to NFPA 70; use a minimum of 20 feet of bare copper conductor not smaller than No. 4 AWG.

1. If concrete foundation is less than 20 feet long, coil excess conductor within base of foundation.
  2. Bond grounding conductor to reinforcing steel in at least four locations. Extend grounding conductor below grade and connect to building's grounding grid or to grounding electrode external to concrete.
- J. Concrete-Encased Grounding Electrode (Ufer Ground): Fabricate according to NFPA 70; using electrically conductive coated steel reinforcing bars or rods, at least 20 feet long. If reinforcing is in multiple pieces, connect together by the usual steel tie wires or exothermic welding to create the required length.
- K. Connections: Make connections so possibility of galvanic action or electrolysis is minimized. Select connectors, connection hardware, conductors, and connection methods so metals in direct contact are galvanically compatible.
1. Use electroplated or hot-tin-coated materials to ensure high conductivity and to make contact points closer in order of galvanic series.
  2. Make connections with clean, bare metal at points of contact.
  3. Make aluminum-to-steel connections with stainless-steel separators and mechanical clamps.
  4. Make aluminum-to-galvanized-steel connections with tin-plated copper jumpers and mechanical clamps.
  5. Coat and seal connections having dissimilar metals with inert material to prevent future penetration of moisture to contact surfaces.

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
  2. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with a calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  3. Test completed grounding system at each location where a maximum ground-resistance level is specified, at service disconnect enclosure grounding terminal, and at individual ground rods. Make tests at ground rods before any conductors are connected.
    - a. Measure ground resistance no fewer than two full days after last trace of precipitation and without soil being moistened by any means other than natural drainage or seepage and without chemical treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural ground resistance.
    - b. Perform tests by fall-of-potential method according to IEEE 81.
  4. Prepare dimensioned Drawings locating each test well, ground rod and ground-rod assembly, and other grounding electrodes. Identify each by letter in alphabetical order,

and key to the record of tests and observations. Include the number of rods driven and their depth at each location, and include observations of weather and other phenomena that may affect test results. Describe measures taken to improve test results.

- D. Grounding system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- F. Report measured ground resistances that exceed the following values:
  - 1. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity of 500 kVA and Less: 10 ohms.
- G. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify Architect promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 260529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Steel slotted support systems.
2. Aluminum slotted support systems.
3. Nonmetallic slotted support systems.
4. Conduit and cable support devices.
5. Support for conductors in vertical conduit.
6. Structural steel for fabricated supports and restraints.
7. Mounting, anchoring, and attachment components, including powder-actuated fasteners, mechanical expansion anchors, concrete inserts, clamps, through bolts, toggle bolts, and hanger rods.
8. Fabricated metal equipment support assemblies.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for the following:
  - a. Slotted support systems, hardware, and accessories.
  - b. Clamps.
  - c. Hangers.
  - d. Sockets.
  - e. Eye nuts.
  - f. Fasteners.
  - g. Anchors.
  - h. Saddles.
  - i. Brackets.
2. Include rated capacities and furnished specialties and accessories.

- B. Welding certificates.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

- A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Preformed steel channels and angles with minimum 13/32-inch-diameter holes at a maximum of 8 inches o.c. in at least one surface.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Allied Tube & Conduit; a part of Atkore International.
    - b. B-line, an Eaton business.
    - c. ERICO International Corporation.
    - d. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.
    - e. Unistrut; Part of Atkore International.
  2. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
  3. Material for Channel, Fittings, and Accessories: Galvanized steel Plain steel Stainless steel, Type 304.
  4. Channel Width: 1-5/8 inches.
  5. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4.
  6. Nonmetallic Coatings: Manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane, or polyester coating applied according to MFMA-4.
  7. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.
  8. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Steel and Stainless-steel hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.
- C. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for nonarmored electrical conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs shall have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body shall be made of malleable iron.
- D. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A 36/A 36M steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- E. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:

1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, steel, or wood, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) Hilti, Inc.
    - 2) ITW Ramset/Red Head; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated stainless steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) B-line, an Eaton business.
    - 2) Empire Tool and Manufacturing Co., Inc.
    - 3) ITW Ramset/Red Head; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
3. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units are similar to MSS Type 18 units and comply with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.
4. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58 units are suitable for attached structural element.
5. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM A 325.
6. Toggle Bolts: All Stainless-steel springhead type.
7. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

## 2.2 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES

- A. Description: Welded or bolted structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.
- B. Materials: Comply with requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for steel shapes and plates.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with the following standards for application and installation requirements of hangers and supports, except where requirements on Drawings or in this Section are stricter:
  1. NECA 1.



2. NECA 101
  3. NECA 102.
  4. NECA 105.
  5. NECA 111.
- B. Comply with requirements for firestopping materials and installation for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- C. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- D. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceways: Space supports for EMT, IMC, and RMC as scheduled in NECA 1, where its Table 1 lists maximum spacings that are less than those stated in NFPA 70. Minimum rod size shall be 1/4 inch in diameter.
- E. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted or other support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.
1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with two-bolt conduit clamps.
- F. Spring-steel clamps designed for supporting single conduits without bolts may be used for 1-1/2-inch and smaller raceways serving branch circuits and communication systems above suspended ceilings, and for fastening raceways to trapeze supports.

### 3.2 SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except as specified in this article.
- B. Raceway Support Methods: In addition to methods described in NECA 1, EMT IMC and RMC may be supported by openings through structure members, according to NFPA 70.
- C. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb.
- D. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten electrical items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:
1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
  2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
  3. To Masonry: Approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
  4. To Existing Concrete: Expansion anchor fasteners.

5. Instead of expansion anchors, powder-actuated driven threaded studs provided with lock washers and nuts may be used in existing standard-weight concrete 4 inches thick or greater. Do not use for anchorage to lightweight-aggregate concrete or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
  6. To Steel: Welded threaded studs complying with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, with lock washers and nuts Beam clamps (MSS SP-58, Type 19, 21, 23, 25, or 27), complying with MSS SP-69 Spring-tension clamps.
  7. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
  8. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate.
- E. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid the need for reinforcing bars.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with installation requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for site-fabricated metal supports.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor electrical materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

### 3.4 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit, and so anchors will be a minimum of 10 bolt diameters from edge of the base.
- B. Use 3000-psi, 28-day compressive-strength concrete. Concrete materials, reinforcement, and placement requirements are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- C. Anchor equipment to concrete base as follows:
  1. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  2. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
  3. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
  - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Touchup: Comply with requirements in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting" for cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal.
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 260533 - RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Metal conduits and fittings.
2. Nonmetallic conduits and fittings.
3. Metal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
4. Nonmetal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
5. Surface raceways.
6. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.
7. Handholes and boxes for exterior underground cabling.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260543 "Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems" for exterior ductbanks, manholes, and underground utility construction.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. GRC: Galvanized rigid steel conduit.
- B. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For surface raceways, wireways and fittings, floor boxes, hinged-cover enclosures, and cabinets.
- B. Shop Drawings: For custom enclosures and cabinets. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 METAL CONDUITS AND FITTINGS

#### A. Metal Conduit:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. AFC Cable Systems; a part of Atkore International.
  - b. Allied Tube & Conduit; a part of Atkore International.
  - c. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation.
  - d. Republic Conduit.
  - e. Southwire Company.
  - f. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.
  - g. Western Tube and Conduit Corporation.
2. Listing and Labeling: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
3. GRC: Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.
4. IMC: Comply with ANSI C80.6 and UL 1242.
5. EMT: Comply with ANSI C80.3 and UL 797.
6. FMC: Comply with UL 1; zinc-coated steel or aluminum.
7. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket and complying with UL 360.

#### B. Metal Fittings:

1. Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 514B.
2. Listing and Labeling: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
3. Fittings, General: Listed and labeled for type of conduit, location, and use.
4. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Comply with UL 1203 and NFPA 70.
5. Fittings for EMT:
  - a. Material: Steel.
  - b. Type: compression.
6. Expansion Fittings: PVC or steel to match conduit type, complying with UL 651, rated for environmental conditions where installed, and including flexible external bonding jumper.
7. Coating for Fittings for PVC-Coated Conduit: Minimum thickness of 0.040 inch, with overlapping sleeves protecting threaded joints.

- C. Joint Compound for IMC, GRC: Approved, as defined in NFPA 70, by authorities having jurisdiction for use in conduit assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded conduit joints from corrosion and to enhance their conductivity.

## 2.2 NONMETALLIC CONDUITS AND FITTINGS

### A. Nonmetallic Conduit:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. AFC Cable Systems; a part of Atkore International.
  - b. CertainTeed Corporation.
  - c. RACO; Hubbell.
  - d. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.
2. Listing and Labeling: Nonmetallic conduit shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
3. RNC: Type EPC-80-PVC, complying with NEMA TC 2 and UL 651 unless otherwise indicated.
4. LFNC: Comply with UL 1660.

### B. Nonmetallic Fittings:

1. Fittings, General: Listed and labeled for type of conduit, location, and use.
2. Fittings for ENT and RNC: Comply with NEMA TC 3; match to conduit or tubing type and material.
  - a. Fittings for LFNC: Comply with UL 514B.
3. Solvents and Adhesives: As recommended by conduit manufacturer.

## 2.3 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

### A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Crouse-Hinds, an Eaton business.
2. EGS/Appleton Electric.
3. Hoffman; a brand of Pentair Equipment Protection.
4. Hubbell Incorporated.
5. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
6. Milbank Manufacturing Co.
7. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation.
8. RACO; Hubbell.
9. Spring City Electrical Manufacturing Company.
10. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.

### B. General Requirements for Boxes, Enclosures, and Cabinets: Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets installed in wet locations shall be listed for use in wet locations.

### C. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 1 and UL 514A.

- D. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1, ferrous alloy aluminum, Type FD, with gasketed cover.
- E. Nonmetallic Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 2 and UL 514C.
- F. Metal Floor Boxes:
  - 1. Material: Cast metal or sheet metal.
  - 2. Type: Fully adjustable.
  - 3. Shape: Rectangular.
  - 4. Listing and Labeling: Metal floor boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- G. Nonmetallic Floor Boxes: Nonadjustable, round rectangular.
  - 1. Listing and Labeling: Nonmetallic floor boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- H. Luminaire Outlet Boxes: Nonadjustable, designed for attachment of luminaire weighing 50 lb. Outlet boxes designed for attachment of luminaires weighing more than 50 lb shall be listed and marked for the maximum allowable weight.
- I. Paddle Fan Outlet Boxes: Nonadjustable, designed for attachment of paddle fan weighing 70 lb.
  - 1. Listing and Labeling: Paddle fan outlet boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- J. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
- K. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 1773, cast aluminum with gasketed cover.
- L. Box extensions used to accommodate new building finishes shall be of same material as recessed box.
- M. Device Box Dimensions: 4 inches square by 2-1/8 inches deep.
- N. Gangable boxes are prohibited.
- O. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: Comply with UL 50 and NEMA 250, Type 1 Type 3R Type 4 Type 12 with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
  - 2. Nonmetallic Enclosures: Fiberglass.
  - 3. Interior Panels: Steel; all sides finished with manufacturer's standard enamel.
- P. Cabinets:

1. NEMA 250, Type 1 Type 3R Type 12 galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
3. Key latch to match panelboards.
4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
5. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.
6. Nonmetallic cabinets shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

## 2.4 HANDHOLES AND BOXES FOR EXTERIOR UNDERGROUND WIRING

### A. General Requirements for Handholes and Boxes:

1. Boxes and handholes for use in underground systems shall be designed and identified as defined in NFPA 70, for intended location and application.
2. Boxes installed in wet areas shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

### B. Polymer-Concrete Handholes and Boxes with Polymer-Concrete Cover: Molded of sand and aggregate, bound together with polymer resin, and reinforced with steel, fiberglass, or a combination of the two.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Armorcast Products Company.
  - b. Hubbell Power Systems, Inc - Quazite
  - c. NewBasis.
  - d. Oldcastle Enclosure Solutions.
  - e. Oldcastle Precast, Inc.
2. Standard: Comply with SCTE 77.
3. Configuration: Designed for flush burial with closed bottom unless otherwise indicated.
4. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure and handhole location.
5. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
6. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "ELECTRIC."
7. Conduit Entrance Provisions: Conduit-terminating fittings shall mate with entering ducts for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
8. Handholes: Have inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons installed before concrete is poured.

## 2.5 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL FOR UNDERGROUND ENCLOSURES

### A. Handhole and Pull-Box Prototype Test: Test prototypes of handholes and boxes for compliance with SCTE 77. Strength tests shall be for specified tier ratings of products supplied.

1. Tests of materials shall be performed by an independent testing agency.



2. Strength tests of complete boxes and covers shall be by either an independent testing agency or manufacturer. A qualified registered professional engineer shall certify tests by manufacturer.
3. Testing machine pressure gages shall have current calibration certification complying with ISO 9000 and ISO 10012 and traceable to NIST standards.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 RACEWAY APPLICATION

#### A. Outdoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:

1. Exposed Conduit: GRC IMC RNC, Type EPC-80-PVC.
2. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: GRC IMC RNC, Type EPC-80-PVC.
3. Underground Conduit: RNC, Type EPC-80-PVC, direct buried or concrete encased as indicated.
4. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC or LFNC.
5. Boxes and Enclosures, Aboveground: NEMA 250, Type 3R or Type 4.

#### B. Indoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:

1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT or RNC.
2. Exposed, Not Subject to Severe Physical Damage: EMT or RNC identified for such use.
3. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: GRC IMC. Raceway locations include the following:
  - a. Loading dock.
  - b. Corridors used for traffic of mechanized carts, forklifts, and pallet-handling units.
  - c. Mechanical rooms.
4. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT or RNC, Type EPC-80-PVC.
5. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC, except use LFMC in damp or wet locations.
6. Damp or Wet Locations: GRC, IMC or RNC.
7. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except use NEMA 250, Type 4 stainless steel or nonmetallic in damp or wet locations.

#### C. Minimum Raceway Size: 3/4-inch trade size.

#### D. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.

1. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
2. EMT: Use compression, steel fittings. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
3. Flexible Conduit: Use only fittings listed for use with flexible conduit. Comply with NEMA FB 2.20.

- E. Install nonferrous conduit or tubing for circuits operating above 60 Hz. Where aluminum raceways are installed for such circuits and pass through concrete, install in nonmetallic sleeve.
- F. Install surface raceways only where indicated on Drawings.
- G. Do not install nonmetallic conduit where ambient temperature exceeds 120 deg F.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for hangers and supports.
- B. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except where requirements on Drawings or in this article are stricter. Comply with NECA 102 for aluminum conduits. Comply with NFPA 70 limitations for types of raceways allowed in specific occupancies and number of floors.
- C. Do not install raceways or electrical items on any "explosion-relief" walls or rotating equipment.
- D. Do not fasten conduits onto the bottom side of a metal deck roof.
- E. Keep raceways at least 6 inches away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.
- F. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.
- G. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above finished slab.
- H. Install no more than the equivalent of three 90-degree bends in any conduit run except for control wiring conduits, for which fewer bends are allowed. Support within 12 inches of changes in direction.
- I. Make bends in raceway using large-radius preformed ells. Field bending shall be according to NFPA 70 minimum radii requirements. Use only equipment specifically designed for material and size involved.
- J. Conceal conduit within finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated. Install conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines.
- K. Support conduit within 12 inches of enclosures to which attached.
- L. Raceways Embedded in Slabs:
  - 1. Run conduit larger than 1-inch trade size, parallel or at right angles to main reinforcement. Where at right angles to reinforcement, place conduit close to slab support. Secure raceways to reinforcement at maximum 10-foot intervals.
  - 2. Arrange raceways to cross building expansion joints at right angles with expansion fittings.
  - 3. Arrange raceways to keep a minimum of 1 inch of concrete cover in all directions.

4. Do not embed threadless fittings in concrete unless specifically approved by Architect for each specific location.
  5. Change to RNC, Type EPC-80-PVC, GRC or IMC before rising above floor.
- M. Stub-Ups to Above Recessed Ceilings:
1. Use EMT, IMC, or RMC for raceways.
  2. Use a conduit bushing or insulated fitting to terminate stub-ups not terminated in hubs or in an enclosure.
- N. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of raceway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.
- O. Raceway Terminations at Locations Subject to Moisture or Vibration: Use insulating bushings to protect conductors including conductors smaller than No. 4 AWG.
- P. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of boxes or cabinets. Install bushings on conduits up to 1-1/4-inch trade size and insulated throat metal bushings on 1-1/2-inch trade size and larger conduits terminated with locknuts. Install insulated throat metal grounding bushings on service conduits.
- Q. Install raceways square to the enclosure and terminate at enclosures with locknuts. Install locknuts hand tight plus 1/4 turn more.
- R. Do not rely on locknuts to penetrate nonconductive coatings on enclosures. Remove coatings in the locknut area prior to assembling conduit to enclosure to assure a continuous ground path.
- S. Cut conduit perpendicular to the length. For conduits 2-inch trade size and larger, use roll cutter or a guide to make cut straight and perpendicular to the length.
- T. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches of slack at each end of pull wire. Cap underground raceways designated as spare above grade alongside raceways in use.
- U. Surface Raceways:
1. Install surface raceway with a minimum 2-inch radius control at bend points.
  2. Secure surface raceway with screws or other anchor-type devices at intervals not exceeding 48 inches and with no less than two supports per straight raceway section. Support surface raceway according to manufacturer's written instructions. Tape and glue are not acceptable support methods.
- V. Install raceway sealing fittings at accessible locations according to NFPA 70 and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed raceways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install raceway sealing fittings according to NFPA 70.
- W. Install devices to seal raceway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals so no fittings or boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal the interior of all raceways at the following points:

1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
  2. Where an underground service raceway enters a building or structure.
  3. Conduit extending from interior to exterior of building.
  4. Conduit extending into pressurized duct and equipment.
  5. Conduit extending into pressurized zones that are automatically controlled to maintain different pressure set points.
  6. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.
- X. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for solvent welding RNC and fittings.
- Y. Expansion-Joint Fittings:
1. Install in each run of aboveground RNC that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 30 deg F and that has straight-run length that exceeds 25 feet. Install in each run of aboveground RMC and EMT conduit that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 100 deg F and that has straight-run length that exceeds 100 feet.
  2. Install type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for each of the following locations:
    - a. Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 125 deg F temperature change.
    - b. Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 155 deg F temperature change.
    - c. Indoor Spaces Connected with Outdoors without Physical Separation: 125 deg F temperature change.
  3. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.00041 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F of temperature change for PVC conduits. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.000078 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F of temperature change for metal conduits.
  4. Install expansion fittings at all locations where conduits cross building or structure expansion joints.
  5. Install each expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected according to manufacturer's written instructions for conditions at specific location at time of installation. Install conduit supports to allow for expansion movement.
- Z. Flexible Conduit Connections: Comply with NEMA RV 3. Use a maximum of 36 inches of flexible conduit for equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.
1. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations subject to severe physical damage.
  2. Use LFMC or LFNC in damp or wet locations not subject to severe physical damage.
- AA. Mount boxes at heights indicated on Drawings. If mounting heights of boxes are not individually indicated, give priority to ADA requirements. Install boxes with height measured to center of box unless otherwise indicated.
- BB. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall. Prepare block surfaces to provide a flat surface for a raintight connection between box and cover plate or supported equipment and box.

- CC. Horizontally separate boxes mounted on opposite sides of walls so they are not in the same vertical channel.
- DD. Locate boxes so that cover or plate will not span different building finishes.
- EE. Support boxes of three gangs or more from more than one side by spanning two framing members or mounting on brackets specifically designed for the purpose.
- FF. Fasten junction and pull boxes to or support from building structure. Do not support boxes by conduits.
- GG. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.
- HH. Set nonmetallic floor boxes level. Trim after installation to fit flush with finished floor surface.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND CONDUIT

#### A. Direct-Buried Conduit:

1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for conduit. Prepare trench bottom as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for pipe less than 6 inches in nominal diameter.
2. Install backfill as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
3. After installing conduit, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point, and work toward end of conduit run, leaving conduit at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Firmly hand tamp backfill around conduit to provide maximum supporting strength. After placing controlled backfill to within 12 inches of finished grade, make final conduit connection at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
4. Install manufactured duct elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through floor unless otherwise indicated. Encase elbows for stub-up ducts throughout length of elbow.
5. Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through floor.
  - a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches of concrete for a minimum of 12 inches on each side of the coupling.
  - b. For stub-ups at equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases and where conduits penetrate building foundations, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches from edge of foundation or equipment base. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
6. Warning Planks: Bury warning planks approximately 12 inches above direct-buried conduits but a minimum of 6 inches below grade. Align planks along centerline of conduit.
7. Underground Warning Tape: Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND HANDHOLES AND BOXES

- A. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting conduits to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1/2-inch sieve to No. 4 sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.
- C. Elevation: In paved areas, set so cover surface will be flush with finished grade. Set covers of other enclosures 1 inch above finished grade.
- D. Install handholes with bottom below frost line.
- E. Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated. Select arm lengths to be long enough to provide spare space for future cables but short enough to preserve adequate working clearances in enclosure.
- F. Field-cut openings for conduits according to enclosure manufacturer's written instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with a tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.

### 3.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

### 3.6 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Install firestopping at penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies.

### 3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage and deterioration.
  - 1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
  - 2. Repair damage to PVC coatings or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 260544 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRICAL RACEWAYS AND CABLING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Sleeves for raceway and cable penetration of non-fire-rated construction walls and floors.
2. Sleeve-seal systems.
3. Sleeve-seal fittings.
4. Grout.
5. Silicone sealants.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Penetration firestopping installed in fire-resistance-rated walls, horizontal assemblies, and smoke barriers, with and without penetrating items.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Wall Sleeves:

1. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, plain ends.
2. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies: Galvanized-steel sheet; 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint, with tabs for screw-fastening the sleeve to the board.

- C. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 80.
- D. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- E. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings:
  - 1. Material: Galvanized sheet steel.
  - 2. Minimum Metal Thickness:
    - a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches and with no side larger than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.052 inch.
    - b. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter 50 inches or more and one or more sides larger than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.138 inch.

## 2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
    - b. CALPICO, Inc.
    - c. Metraflex Company (The).
    - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
  - 2. Sealing Elements: EPDM rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
  - 3. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel.
  - 4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

## 2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for embedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit shall have plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

## 2.4 GROUT

- A. Description: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.
- B. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.



- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## 2.5 SILICONE SEALANTS

- A. Silicone Sealants: Single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants of grade indicated below.
  - 1. Grade: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.
- B. Silicone Foams: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR NON-FIRE-RATED ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Comply with NEMA VE 2 for cable tray and cable penetrations.
- C. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Above-Grade Non-Fire-Rated Concrete and Masonry-Unit Floors and Walls:
  - 1. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors:
    - a. Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
    - b. Seal space outside of sleeves with mortar or grout. Pack sealing material solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect material while curing.
  - 2. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
  - 3. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable unless sleeve seal is to be installed.
  - 4. Install sleeves for wall penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of walls. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls. Deburr after cutting.
  - 5. Install sleeves for floor penetrations. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches above finished floor level. Install sleeves during erection of floors.
- D. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies:

1. Use circular metal sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
  2. Seal space outside of sleeves with approved joint compound for gypsum board assemblies.
- E. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
- F. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- G. Underground, Exterior-Wall and Floor Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

### 3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at raceway entries into building.
- B. Install type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

### 3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 260553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Color and legend requirements for raceways, conductors, and warning labels and signs.
2. Labels.
3. Bands and tubes.
4. Tapes and stencils.
5. Tags.
6. Signs.
7. Cable ties.
8. Paint for identification.
9. Fasteners for labels and signs.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for electrical identification products.

- B. Samples: For each type of label and sign to illustrate composition, size, colors, lettering style, mounting provisions, and graphic features of identification products.

- C. Identification Schedule: For each piece of electrical equipment and electrical system components to be an index of nomenclature for electrical equipment and system components used in identification signs and labels. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with ASME A13.1 and IEEE C2.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.

- C. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.144 and 29 CFR 1910.145.
- D. Comply with ANSI Z535.4 for safety signs and labels.
- E. Comply with NFPA 70E requirements for arc-flash warning labels.
- F. Adhesive-attached labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers, shall comply with UL 969.
- G. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.
  - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

## 2.2 COLOR AND LEGEND REQUIREMENTS

- A. Raceways and Cables Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less:
  - 1. Black letters on an orange field.
  - 2. Legend: Indicate voltage and system or service type.
- B. Color-Coding for Phase- and Voltage-Level Identification, 600 V or Less: Use colors listed below for ungrounded feeder and branch-circuit conductors.
  - 1. Color shall be factory applied.
  - 2. Colors for 208/120-V Circuits:
    - a. Phase A: Black.
    - b. Phase B: Red.
    - c. Phase C: Blue.
  - 3. Colors for 240-V Circuits:
    - a. Phase A: Black.
    - b. Phase B: Red.
  - 4. Colors for 480/277-V Circuits:
    - a. Phase A: Brown.
    - b. Phase B: Orange.
    - c. Phase C: Yellow.
  - 5. Color for Neutral: White or gray.
  - 6. Color for Equipment Grounds: Bare copper Green Green with a yellow stripe.
  - 7. Colors for Isolated Grounds: Green with white stripe.
- C. Warning Label Colors:
  - 1. Identify system voltage with black letters on an orange background.
- D. Warning labels and signs shall include, but are not limited to, the following legends:

1. Multiple Power Source Warning: "DANGER - ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD - EQUIPMENT HAS MULTIPLE POWER SOURCES."
2. Workspace Clearance Warning: "WARNING - OSHA REGULATION - AREA IN FRONT OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT MUST BE KEPT CLEAR FOR 48 INCHES."

E. Equipment Identification Labels:

1. Black letters on a white field.

## 2.3 LABELS

A. Vinyl Wraparound Labels: Preprinted, flexible labels laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound clear adhesive tape for securing label ends.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Brady Corporation.
  - b. Panduit Corp.

B. Self-Adhesive Wraparound Labels: Preprinted, 3-mil-thick, vinyl flexible label with acrylic pressure-sensitive adhesive.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Brady Corporation.
  - b. Panduit Corp.
2. Self-Lamination: Clear; UV-, weather- and chemical-resistant; self-laminating, protective shield over the legend. Labels sized such that the clear shield overlaps the entire printed legend.
3. Marker for Labels: Permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by tag manufacturer.
4. Marker for Labels: Machine-printed, permanent, waterproof, black ink recommended by printer manufacturer.

C. Self-Adhesive Labels: Vinyl, thermal, transfer-printed, 3-mil-thick, multicolor, weather- and UV-resistant, pressure-sensitive adhesive labels, configured for intended use and location.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Brady Corporation.
  - b. Panduit Corp.
2. Minimum Nominal Size:
  - a. 1-1/2 by 6 inches for raceway and conductors.
  - b. 3-1/2 by 5 inches for equipment.

- c. As required by authorities having jurisdiction.

## 2.4 BANDS AND TUBES

- A. Snap-around, Color-Coding Bands: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, solid-colored acrylic sleeves, 2 inches long, with diameters sized to suit diameters and that stay in place by gripping action.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Brady Corporation.
    - b. Marking Services, Inc.
- B. Heat-Shrink Preprinted Tubes: Flame-retardant polyolefin tubes with machine-printed identification labels, sized to suit diameter and shrunk to fit firmly. Full shrink recovery occurs at a maximum of 200 deg F. Comply with UL 224.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Brady Corporation.

## 2.5 TAGS

- A. Metal Tags: Brass or aluminum, 2 by 2 by 0.05 inch, with stamped legend, punched for use with self-locking cable tie fastener.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Brady Corporation.
    - b. Carlton Industries, LP.
- B. Nonmetallic Preprinted Tags: Polyethylene tags, 0.023 inch thick, color-coded for phase and voltage level, with factory printed permanent designations; punched for use with self-locking cable tie fastener.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Brady Corporation.
    - b. Carlton Industries, LP.
    - c. Panduit Corp.

## 2.6 SIGNS

- A. Baked-Enamel Signs:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Carlton Industries, LP.
2. Preprinted aluminum signs, high-intensity reflective, punched or drilled for fasteners, with colors, legend, and size required for application.
3. 1/4-inch grommets in corners for mounting.
4. Nominal Size: 7 by 10 inches.

B. Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Plastic Signs:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Brady Corporation.
  - b. Carlton Industries, LP.
2. Engraved legend.
3. Thickness:
  - a. For signs up to 20 sq. in., minimum 1/16 inch thick.
  - b. For signs larger than 20 sq. in., 1/8 inch thick.
  - c. Engraved legend with black letters on white face.
  - d. Punched or drilled for mechanical fasteners with 1/4-inch grommets in corners for mounting.
  - e. Framed with mitered acrylic molding and arranged for attachment at applicable equipment.

## 2.7 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

- A. Paint: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for paint materials and application requirements. Retain paint system applicable for surface material and location (exterior or interior).
- B. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Before applying electrical identification products, clean substrates of substances that could impair bond, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification product.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Verify and coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in other Sections requiring identification applications, Drawings, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual. Use consistent designations throughout Project.
- B. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.
- C. Verify identity of each item before installing identification products.
- D. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual.
- E. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.
- F. Install signs with approved legend to facilitate proper identification, operation, and maintenance of electrical systems and connected items.
- G. System Identification for Raceways and Cables under 600 V: Identification shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place identification of two-color markings in contact, side by side.
  - 1. Secure tight to surface of conductor, cable, or raceway.
- H. System Identification for Raceways and Cables over 600 V: Identification shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place adjacent identification of two-color markings in contact, side by side.
  - 1. Secure tight to surface of conductor, cable, or raceway.
- I. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Identify field-installed alarm, control, and signal connections.
- J. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels, signs, and letters to those appropriate for viewing from the floor.
- K. Accessible Fittings for Raceways: Identify the covers of each junction and pull box of the following systems with the wiring system legend and system voltage. System legends shall be as follows:
  - 1. "EMERGENCY POWER."
  - 2. "POWER."
  - 3. "UPS."
- L. Vinyl Wraparound Labels:
  - 1. Secure tight to surface of raceway or cable at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
  - 2. Attach labels that are not self-adhesive type with clear vinyl tape, with adhesive appropriate to the location and substrate.



- M. Snap-around Labels: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- N. Self-Adhesive Wraparound Labels: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- O. Self-Adhesive Labels:
  - 1. On each item, install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and operation and maintenance manual.
  - 2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch-high letters on 1-1/2-inch-high label; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches high.
- P. Snap-around Color-Coding Bands: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- Q. Heat-Shrink, Preprinted Tubes: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- R. Marker Tapes: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- S. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
  - 1. Field-Applied, Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Apply in half-lapped turns for a minimum distance of 6 inches where splices or taps are made. Apply last two turns of tape with no tension to prevent possible unwinding.
- T. Tape and Stencil: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for surface preparation and paint application.
- U. Floor Marking Tape: Apply stripes to finished surfaces following manufacturer's written instructions.
- V. Underground Line Warning Tape:
  - 1. During backfilling of trenches, install continuous underground-line warning tape directly above cable or raceway at 6 to 8 inches below finished grade. Use multiple tapes where width of multiple lines installed in a common trench or concrete envelope exceeds 16 inches overall.
  - 2. Limit use of underground-line warning tape to direct-buried cables.
  - 3. Install underground-line warning tape for direct-buried cables and cables in raceways.
- W. Metal Tags:
  - 1. Place in a location with high visibility and accessibility.
  - 2. Secure using UV-stabilized plenum-rated cable ties.
- X. Nonmetallic Preprinted Tags:
  - 1. Place in a location with high visibility and accessibility.
  - 2. Secure using UV-stabilized plenum-rated cable ties.

Y. Baked-Enamel Signs:

1. Attach signs that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.
2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch-high letters on minimum 1-1/2-inch-high sign; where two lines of text are required, use signs minimum 2 inches high.

Z. Metal-Backed Butyrate Signs:

1. Attach signs that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.
2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch-high letters on 1-1/2-inch-high sign; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches high.

AA. Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Plastic Signs:

1. Attach signs that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.
2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch-high letters on 1-1/2-inch-high sign; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches high.

BB. Cable Ties: General purpose, for attaching tags, except as listed below:

1. Outdoors: UV-stabilized nylon.
2. In Spaces Handling Environmental Air: Plenum rated.

### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION SCHEDULE

- A. Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment. Install access doors or panels to provide view of identifying devices.
- B. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, pull points, and locations of high visibility. Identify by system and circuit designation.
- C. Accessible Raceways and Metal-Clad Cables, 600 V or Less, for Service, Feeder, and Branch Circuits, More Than 30 A and 120 V to Ground: Identify with self-adhesive raceway labels vinyl tape applied in bands.
  1. Locate identification at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot maximum intervals in congested areas.
- D. Accessible Fittings for Raceways and Cables within Buildings: Identify the covers of each junction and pull box of the following systems with self-adhesive labels containing the wiring system legend and system voltage. System legends shall be as follows:
  1. "EMERGENCY POWER."
  2. "POWER."

3. "UPS."
- E. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification, 600 V or Less: For conductors in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use self-adhesive vinyl tape to identify the phase.
    1. Locate identification at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot maximum intervals in congested areas.
  - F. Control-Circuit Conductor Identification: For conductors and cables in pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use self-adhesive labels with the conductor or cable designation, origin, and destination.
  - G. Control-Circuit Conductor Termination Identification: For identification at terminations, provide heat-shrink preprinted tubes self-adhesive labels with the conductor designation.
  - H. Conductors to Be Extended in the Future: Attach marker tape to conductors and list source.
  - I. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Self-adhesive vinyl tape that is uniform and consistent with system used by manufacturer for factory-installed connections.
    1. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, and pull points. Identify by system and circuit designation.
  - J. Locations of Underground Lines: Underground-line warning tape for power, lighting, communication, and control wiring and optical-fiber cable.
  - K. Concealed Raceways and Duct Banks, More Than 600 V, within Buildings: Apply floor marking tape to the following finished surfaces:
    1. Floor surface directly above conduits running beneath and within 12 inches of a floor that is in contact with earth or is framed above unexcavated space.
    2. Wall surfaces directly external to raceways concealed within wall.
    3. Accessible surfaces of concrete envelope around raceways in vertical shafts, exposed in the building, or concealed above suspended ceilings.
  - L. Workspace Indication: Apply floor marking tape to finished surfaces. Show working clearances in the direction of access to live parts. Workspace shall comply with NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1926.403 unless otherwise indicated. Do not install at flush-mounted panelboards and similar equipment in finished spaces.
  - M. Instructional Signs: Self-adhesive labels, including the color code for grounded and ungrounded conductors.
  - N. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures for Power and Lighting: Self-adhesive labels Baked-enamel warning signs.
    1. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.
    2. For equipment with multiple power or control sources, apply to door or cover of equipment, including, but not limited to, the following:

- a. Power-transfer switches.
  - b. Controls with external control power connections.
- O. Arc Flash Warning Labeling: Self-adhesive labels.
- P. Operating Instruction Signs: Self-adhesive labels Laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs.
- Q. Emergency Operating Instruction Signs: Self-adhesive labels Laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with white legend on a red background with minimum 3/8-inch-high letters for emergency instructions at equipment.
- R. Equipment Identification Labels:
- 1. Indoor Equipment: Self-adhesive label Laminated acrylic or melamine plastic sign.
  - 2. Outdoor Equipment: Laminated acrylic or melamine sign.
  - 3. Equipment to Be Labeled:
    - a. Panelboards: Typewritten directory of circuits in the location provided by panelboard manufacturer. Panelboard identification shall be in the form of a engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label.
    - b. Enclosures and electrical cabinets.
    - c. Access doors and panels for concealed electrical items.
    - d. Switchgear.
    - e. Switchboards.
    - f. Transformers: Label that includes tag designation indicated on Drawings for the transformer, feeder, and panelboards or equipment supplied by the secondary.
    - g. Motor-control centers.
    - h. Enclosed switches.
    - i. Enclosed circuit breakers.
    - j. Enclosed controllers.
    - k. Variable-speed controllers.
    - l. Push-button stations.
    - m. Power-transfer equipment.
    - n. Contactors.
    - o. Remote-controlled switches, dimmer modules, and control devices.
    - p. Monitoring and control equipment.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 262416 - PANELBOARDS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Distribution panelboards.
  - 2. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ATS: Acceptance testing specification.
- B. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
- C. GFEP: Ground-fault equipment protection.
- D. MCCB: Molded-case circuit breaker.
- E. SPD: Surge protective device.
- F. VPR: Voltage protection rating.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of panelboard.
  - 1. Include materials, switching and overcurrent protective devices, SPDs, accessories, and components indicated.
  - 2. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment.
  - 1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details.
  - 2. Show tabulations of installed devices with nameplates, conductor termination sizes, equipment features, and ratings.
  - 3. Detail enclosure types including mounting and anchorage, environmental protection, knockouts, corner treatments, covers and doors, gaskets, hinges, and locks.

4. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
5. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
6. Include evidence of NRTL listing for series rating of installed devices.
7. Include evidence of NRTL listing for SPD as installed in panelboard.
8. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
9. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
10. Key interlock scheme drawing and sequence of operations.
11. Include time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in panelboards. Submit on translucent log-log graph paper; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Include an Internet link for electronic access to downloadable PDF of the coordination curves.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- B. Panelboard Schedules: For installation in panelboards. Submit final versions after load balancing.

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For panelboards and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
  1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.
  2. Time-current curves, including selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device that allows adjustments.

#### 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  1. Keys: Two spares for each type of panelboard cabinet lock.
  2. Circuit Breakers Including GFCI and GFEP Types: Two spares for each panelboard.

#### 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: ISO 9001 or 9002 certified.

#### 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside panelboards; install temporary electric heating (250 W per panelboard) to prevent condensation.

- B. Handle and prepare panelboards for installation according to NECA 407 NEMA PB 1.

#### 1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

##### A. Environmental Limitations:

1. Do not deliver or install panelboards until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above panelboards is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
2. Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
  - a. Ambient Temperature: Not exceeding minus 22 deg F to plus 104 deg F.
  - b. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet.

##### B. Service Conditions: NEMA PB 1, usual service conditions, as follows:

1. Ambient temperatures within limits specified.
2. Altitude not exceeding 6600 feet.

##### C. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Owner no fewer than ten days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without Owner's written permission.
3. Comply with NFPA 70E.

#### 1.11 WARRANTY

##### A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace panelboards that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Panelboard Warranty Period: 36 months from date of Substantial Completion.

##### B. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace SPD that fails in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. SPD Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PANELBOARDS COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fabricate and test panelboards according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces.

- B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for panelboards including clearances between panelboards and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Comply with NEMA PB 1.
- E. Comply with NFPA 70.
- F. Enclosures: Flush and Surface-mounted, dead-front cabinets.
  - 1. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.
    - a. Indoor Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
    - b. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
    - c. Other Wet or Damp Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
    - d. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: NEMA 250, Type 12.
  - 2. Height: 84 inches maximum.
  - 3. Front: Secured to box with concealed trim clamps. For surface-mounted fronts, match box dimensions; for flush-mounted fronts, overlap box. Trims shall cover all live parts and shall have no exposed hardware.
  - 4. Hinged Front Cover: Entire front trim hinged to box and with standard door within hinged trim cover. Trims shall cover all live parts and shall have no exposed hardware.
  - 5. Skirt for Surface-Mounted Panelboards: Same gage and finish as panelboard front with flanges for attachment to panelboard, wall, and ceiling or floor.
  - 6. Gutter Extension and Barrier: Same gage and finish as panelboard enclosure; integral with enclosure body. Arrange to isolate individual panel sections.
  - 7. Finishes:
    - a. Panels and Trim: Steel and galvanized steel, factory finished immediately after cleaning and pretreating with manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat.
    - b. Back Boxes: Galvanized steel Same finish as panels and trim.
    - c. Fungus Proofing: Permanent fungicidal treatment for overcurrent protective devices and other components.
- G. Incoming Mains:
  - 1. Location: Convertible between top and bottom.
  - 2. Main Breaker: Main lug interiors up to 400 amperes shall be field convertible to main breaker.
- H. Phase, Neutral, and Ground Buses:
  - 1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
    - a. Plating shall run entire length of bus.



- b. Bus shall be fully rated the entire length.
  - 2. Interiors shall be factory assembled into a unit. Replacing switching and protective devices shall not disturb adjacent units or require removing the main bus connectors.
  - 3. Equipment Ground Bus: Adequate for feeder and branch-circuit equipment grounding conductors; bonded to box.
  - 4. Isolated Ground Bus: Adequate for branch-circuit isolated ground conductors; insulated from box.
  - 5. Full-Sized Neutral: Equipped with full-capacity bonding strap for service entrance applications. Mount electrically isolated from enclosure. Do not mount neutral bus in gutter.
  - 6. Extra-Capacity Neutral Bus: Neutral bus rated 200 percent of phase bus and listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authority having jurisdiction, as suitable for nonlinear loads in electronic-grade panelboards and others designated on Drawings. Connectors shall be sized for double-sized or parallel conductors as indicated on Drawings. Do not mount neutral bus in gutter.
  - 7. Split Bus: Vertical buses divided into individual vertical sections..
- I. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.
- 1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
  - 2. Terminations shall allow use of 75 deg C rated conductors without derating.
  - 3. Size: Lugs suitable for indicated conductor sizes, with additional gutter space, if required, for larger conductors.
  - 4. Main and Neutral Lugs: Mechanical type, with a lug on the neutral bar for each pole in the panelboard.
  - 5. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Mechanical type, with a lug on the bar for each pole in the panelboard.
  - 6. Feed-Through Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at opposite end of bus from incoming lugs or main device.
  - 7. Subfeed (Double) Lugs: Mechanical type suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.
- J. NRTL Label: Panelboards or load centers shall be labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authority having jurisdiction for use as service equipment with one or more main service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices. Panelboards or load centers shall have meter enclosures, wiring, connections, and other provisions for utility metering. Coordinate with utility company for exact requirements.
- K. Future Devices: Panelboards or load centers shall have mounting brackets, bus connections, filler plates, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.
- 1. Percentage of Future Space Capacity: 20 percent.
- L. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Rated for series-connected system with integral or remote upstream overcurrent protective devices and labeled by an NRTL. Include label or manual with size and type of allowable upstream and branch devices listed and labeled by an NRTL for series-connected short-circuit rating.
- 1. Panelboards rated 240 V or less shall have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 10,000 A rms symmetrical.

2. Panelboards rated above 240 V and less than 600 V shall have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 14,000 A rms symmetrical.

## 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Panelboards shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
- B. Surge Suppression: Factory installed as an integral part of indicated panelboards, complying with UL 1449 SPD Type 1.

## 2.3 POWER PANELBOARDS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Eaton.
  2. General Electric Company; GE Energy Management - Electrical Distribution.
  3. SIEMENS Industry, Inc.; Energy Management Division.
  4. Square D Schneider Electric
- B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, distribution type.
- C. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
  1. For doors more than 36 inches high, provide two latches, keyed alike.
- D. Mains: Circuit breaker Lugs only.
- E. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes 125 A and Smaller: Bolt-on circuit breakers.
- F. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes Larger Than 125 A: Plug-in circuit breakers where individual positive-locking device requires mechanical release for removal.

## 2.4 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE BRANCH-CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Eaton.
  2. General Electric Company; GE Energy Management - Electrical Distribution.
  3. SIEMENS Industry, Inc.; Energy Management Division.
  4. Square D Schneider Electric

- B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, lighting and appliance branch-circuit type.
- C. Mains: Circuit breaker or lugs only.
- D. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.
- E. Doors: Door-in-door construction with concealed hinges; secured with multipoint latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike. Outer door shall permit full access to the panel interior. Inner door shall permit access to breaker operating handles and labeling, but current carrying terminals and bus shall remain concealed.

## 2.5 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

- A. MCCB: Comply with UL 489, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.
  - 1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers:
    - a. Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads.
    - b. Instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits.
    - c. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
  - 2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
  - 3. Electronic Trip Circuit Breakers:
    - a. RMS sensing.
    - b. Field-replaceable rating plug or electronic trip.
    - c. Digital display of settings, trip targets, and indicated metering displays.
    - d. Multi-button keypad to access programmable functions and monitored data.
    - e. Ten-event, trip-history log. Each trip event shall be recorded with type, phase, and magnitude of fault that caused the trip.
    - f. Integral test jack for connection to portable test set or laptop computer.
    - g. Field-Adjustable Settings:
      - 1) Instantaneous trip.
      - 2) Long- and short-time pickup levels.
      - 3) Long and short time adjustments.
      - 4) Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I squared T response.
  - 4. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller; let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
  - 5. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and double-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).
  - 6. GFEP Circuit Breakers: Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
  - 7. Arc-Fault Circuit Interrupter Circuit Breakers: Comply with UL 1699; 120/240-V, single-pole configuration.
  - 8. Subfeed Circuit Breakers: Vertically mounted.
  - 9. MCCB Features and Accessories:

- a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
- b. Breaker handle indicates tripped status.
- c. UL listed for reverse connection without restrictive line or load ratings.
- d. Lugs: Mechanical style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor materials.
- e. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and HID lighting circuits.
- f. Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
- g. Shunt Trip: 120-V trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at 55 percent of rated voltage.
- h. Rating Plugs: Three-pole breakers with ampere ratings greater than 150 amperes shall have interchangeable rating plugs or electronic adjustable trip units.
- i. Auxiliary Contacts: Two, SPDT switches with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts and "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.
- j. Alarm Switch: Single-pole, normally open contact that actuates only when circuit breaker trips.
- k. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
- l. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function with other upstream or downstream devices.
- m. Multipole units enclosed in a.
- n. Handle Padlocking Device: Fixed attachment, for locking circuit-breaker handle in on or off position.
- o. Handle Clamp: Loose attachment, for holding circuit-breaker handle in on position.

## 2.6 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Panelboard Label: Manufacturer's name and trademark, voltage, amperage, number of phases, and number of poles shall be located on the interior of the panelboard door.
- B. Breaker Labels: Faceplate shall list current rating, UL and IEC certification standards, and AIC rating.
- C. Circuit Directory: Directory card inside panelboard door, mounted in metal frame with transparent protective cover.
  - 1. Circuit directory shall identify specific purpose with detail sufficient to distinguish it from all other circuits.
- D. Circuit Directory: Computer-generated circuit directory mounted inside panelboard door with transparent plastic protective cover.
  - 1. Circuit directory shall identify specific purpose with detail sufficient to distinguish it from all other circuits.

## 2.7 ACCESSORY COMPONENTS AND FEATURES

- A. Accessory Set: Include tools and miscellaneous items required for overcurrent protective device test, inspection, maintenance, and operation.
- B. Portable Test Set: For testing functions of solid-state trip devices without removing from panelboard. Include relay and meter test plugs suitable for testing panelboard meters and switchboard class relays.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify actual conditions with field measurements prior to ordering panelboards to verify that equipment fits in allocated space in, and comply with, minimum required clearances specified in NFPA 70.
- B. Receive, inspect, handle, and store panelboards according to NECA 407 NEMA PB 1.1.
- C. Examine panelboards before installation. Reject panelboards that are damaged, rusted, or have been subjected to water saturation.
- D. Examine elements and surfaces to receive panelboards for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of panelboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
- B. Comply with NECA 1.
- C. Install panelboards and accessories according to NECA 407 NEMA PB 1.1.
- D. Equipment Mounting:
  - 1. Attach panelboard to the vertical finished or structural surface behind the panelboard.
- E. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from panelboards.
- F. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- G. Mount top of trim 90 inches above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.

- H. Mount panelboard cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box.
- I. Mount recessed panelboards with fronts uniformly flush with wall finish and mating with back box.
- J. Mount surface-mounted panelboards to steel slotted supports 1 1/4 inch in depth. Orient steel slotted supports vertically.
- K. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers not already factory installed.
  - 1. Set field-adjustable, circuit-breaker trip ranges.
  - 2. Tighten bolted connections and circuit breaker connections using calibrated torque wrench or torque screwdriver per manufacturer's written instructions.
- L. Make grounding connections and bond neutral for services and separately derived systems to ground. Make connections to grounding electrodes, separate grounds for isolated ground bars, and connections to separate ground bars.
- M. Install filler plates in unused spaces.
- N. Stub four 1-inch empty conduits from panelboard into accessible ceiling space or space designated to be ceiling space in the future. Stub four 1-inch empty conduits into raised floor space or below slab not on grade.
- O. Arrange conductors in gutters into groups and bundle and wrap with wire ties after completing load balancing.
- P. Mount spare fuse cabinet in accessible location.

### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Create a directory to indicate installed circuit loads after balancing panelboard loads; incorporate Owner's final room designations. Obtain approval before installing. Handwritten directories are not acceptable. Install directory inside panelboard door.
- C. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- D. Device Nameplates: Label each branch circuit device in power panelboards with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- E. Install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" identifying source of remote circuit.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
  - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- C. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
  - 1. Test insulation resistance for each panelboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
  - 2. Test continuity of each circuit.
- D. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test for low-voltage air circuit breakers and low-voltage surge arrestors stated in NETA ATS, Paragraph 7.6 Circuit Breakers and Paragraph 7.19.1 Surge Arrestors, Low-Voltage. Perform optional tests. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  - 2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
  - 3. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:
    - a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each panelboard. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
    - b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each panelboard 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
    - c. Instruments and Equipment:
      - 1) Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
- E. Panelboards will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies panelboards included and that describes scanning results, with comparisons of the two scans. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges.

- C. Load Balancing: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, measure load balancing and make circuit changes. Prior to making circuit changes to achieve load balancing, inform Architect of effect on phase color coding.
  - 1. Measure loads during period of normal facility operations.
  - 2. Perform circuit changes to achieve load balancing outside normal facility operation schedule or at times directed by the Architect. Avoid disrupting services such as fax machines and on-line data processing, computing, transmitting, and receiving equipment.
  - 3. After changing circuits to achieve load balancing, recheck loads during normal facility operations. Record load readings before and after changing circuits to achieve load balancing.
  - 4. Tolerance: Maximum difference between phase loads, within a panelboard, shall not exceed 20 percent.

### 3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Temporary Heating: Prior to energizing panelboards, apply temporary heat to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION



## SECTION 262813 - FUSES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Cartridge fuses rated 600 V ac and less for use in the following:
    - a. Enclosed controllers.
    - b. Enclosed switches.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Bussmann; Eaton, Electrical Sector.
  - 2. Littelfuse, Inc.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain fuses, for use within a specific product or circuit, from single source from single manufacturer.

#### 2.2 CARTRIDGE FUSES

- A. Characteristics: NEMA FU 1, current-limiting, nonrenewable cartridge fuses with voltage ratings consistent with circuit voltages.
  - 1. Type RK-1: 600-V, zero- to 600-A rating, 200 kAIC.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Comply with NEMA FU 1 for cartridge fuses.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.

- E. Coordinate fuse ratings with utilization equipment nameplate limitations of maximum fuse size and with system short-circuit current levels.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine fuses before installation. Reject fuses that are moisture damaged or physically damaged.
- B. Examine holders to receive fuses for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance, such as rejection features.
- C. Examine utilization equipment nameplates and installation instructions. Install fuses of sizes and with characteristics appropriate for each piece of equipment.
- D. Evaluate ambient temperatures to determine if fuse rating adjustment factors must be applied to fuse ratings.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 FUSE APPLICATIONS

- A. Cartridge Fuses:
  - 1. Feeders: Class RK1, fast acting
  - 2. Motor Branch Circuits: Class RK1.
  - 3. Other Branch Circuits: Class RK1.
  - 4. Control Transformer Circuits: Class CC, time delay, control transformer duty.
  - 5. Provide open-fuse indicator fuses or fuse covers with open fuse indication.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install fuses in fusible devices. Arrange fuses so rating information is readable without removing fuse.

### 3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install labels complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" and indicating fuse replacement information inside of door of each fused switch and adjacent to each fuse block, socket, and holder.

END OF SECTION 262813

## SECTION 262816 - ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Fusible switches.
  - 2. Nonfusible switches.
  - 3. Enclosures.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. NC: Normally closed.
- B. NO: Normally open.
- C. SPDT: Single pole, double throw.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of enclosed switch, circuit breaker, accessory, and component indicated. Include nameplate ratings, dimensioned elevations, sections, weights, and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, accessories, and finishes.
  - 1. Enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
  - 2. Current and voltage ratings.
  - 3. Short-circuit current ratings (interrupting and withstand, as appropriate).
  - 4. Include evidence of a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) listing for series rating of installed devices.
  - 5. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and auxiliary components.
  - 6. Include time-current coordination curves (average melt) for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Provide in PDF electronic format.
- B. Shop Drawings: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

2. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
  1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
    - a. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting enclosed switches and circuit breakers.
    - b. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Provide in PDF electronic format.

#### 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  1. Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.
  2. Fuse Pullers: One for each size and type..

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by NETA.
  1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

#### 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
  1. Ambient Temperature: Not less than minus 22 deg F and not exceeding 104 deg F.
  2. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet.

#### 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  1. Warranty Period: One year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain enclosed switches and circuit breakers, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories, within same product category, from single manufacturer.
- B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for enclosed switches and circuit breakers, including clearances between enclosures, and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.

### 2.2 FUSIBLE SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. ABB Inc.
  - 2. Eaton.
  - 3. General Electric Company.
  - 4. SIEMENS Industry, Inc.; Energy Management Division.
  - 5. Square D Schneider Electric
- B. Type HD, Heavy Duty:
  - 1. Single throw.
  - 2. Three pole.
  - 3. 600-V ac.
  - 4. 1200 A and smaller.
  - 5. UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate indicated fuses.
  - 6. Lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- C. Accessories:
  - 1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
  - 2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
  - 3. Isolated Ground Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
  - 4. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
  - 5. Auxiliary Contact Kit: Two NO/NC (Form "C") auxiliary contact(s), arranged to activate before switch blades open. Contact rating - 120-V ac.

6. Hookstick Handle: Allows use of a hookstick to operate the handle.
7. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.
8. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.

## 2.3 NONFUSIBLE SWITCHES

- A. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Three Pole, Single Throw, 600-V ac, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- B. Accessories:
  1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
  2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
  3. Isolated Ground Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
  4. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
  5. Auxiliary Contact Kit: Two NO/NC (Form "C") auxiliary contact(s), arranged to activate before switch blades open. Contact rating - 120-V ac.
  6. Hookstick Handle: Allows use of a hookstick to operate the handle.
  7. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.
  8. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.

## 2.4 ENCLOSURES

- A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: UL 489, NEMA KS 1, NEMA 250, and UL 50, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.
- B. Enclosure Finish: The enclosure shall be finished with gray baked enamel paint, electrodeposited on cleaned, phosphatized steel (NEMA 250 Type 1) gray baked enamel paint, electrodeposited on cleaned, phosphatized galvanized steel (NEMA 250 Types 3R, 12) a brush finish on Type 304 stainless steel (NEMA 250 Type 4-4X stainless steel) copper-free cast aluminum alloy (NEMA 250 Types 7, 9).
- C. Conduit Entry: NEMA 250 Types 4, 4X, and 12 enclosures shall contain no knockouts. NEMA 250 Types 7 and 9 enclosures shall be provided with threaded conduit openings in both endwalls.
- D. Operating Mechanism: The circuit-breaker operating handle shall be directly operable through the dead front trim of the enclosure (NEMA 250 Type 3R) externally operable with the operating mechanism being an integral part of the cover (NEMA 250 Types 7, 9). The cover interlock mechanism shall have an externally operated override. The override shall not permanently disable the interlock mechanism, which shall return to the locked position once the override is released. The tool used to override the cover interlock mechanism shall not be required to enter the enclosure in order to override the interlock.

- E. Enclosures designated as NEMA 250 Type 4, 4X stainless steel, 12, or 12K shall have a dual cover interlock mechanism to prevent unintentional opening of the enclosure cover when the circuit breaker is ON and to prevent turning the circuit breaker ON when the enclosure cover is open.
- F. NEMA 250 Type 7/9 enclosures shall be furnished with a breather and drain kit to allow their use in outdoor and wet location applications.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine elements and surfaces to receive enclosed switches and circuit breakers for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
  - 1. Commencement of work shall indicate Installer's acceptance of the areas and conditions as satisfactory.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:
  - 1. Notify Owner no fewer than ten days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
  - 2. Indicate method of providing temporary electric service.
  - 3. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without Owner's written permission.
  - 4. Comply with NFPA 70E.

#### 3.3 ENCLOSURE ENVIRONMENTAL RATING APPLICATIONS

- A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: Provide enclosures at installed locations with the following environmental ratings.
  - 1. Indoor, Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
  - 2. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R Type 4X.
  - 3. Other Wet or Damp, Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
  - 4. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: NEMA 250, Type 12.
  - 5. Hazardous Areas Indicated on Drawings: NEMA 250, Type 7 Type 9.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of switches, circuit breakers, and components with equipment served and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
- B. Install individual wall-mounted switches and circuit breakers with tops at uniform height unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- D. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting of eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.
- E. Install fuses in fusible devices.
- F. Comply with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.

### 3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  - 1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
  - 2. Label each enclosure with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate.

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- D. Perform tests and inspections.
- E. Tests and Inspections for Switches:
  - 1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
    - a. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
    - b. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
    - c. Verify that the unit is clean.
    - d. Verify blade alignment, blade penetration, travel stops, and mechanical operation.
    - e. Verify that fuse sizes and types match the Specifications and Drawings.
    - f. Verify that each fuse has adequate mechanical support and contact integrity.
    - g. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the two following methods:



- 1) Use a low-resistance ohmmeter.
    - a) Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from those of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
  - 2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method in accordance with manufacturer's published data or NETA ATS Table 100.12.
    - a) Bolt-torque levels shall be in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use NETA ATS Table 100.12.
  - h. Verify that operation and sequencing of interlocking systems is as described in the Specifications and shown on the Drawings.
  - i. Verify correct phase barrier installation.
  - j. Verify lubrication of moving current-carrying parts and moving and sliding surfaces.
2. Electrical Tests:
- a. Perform resistance measurements through bolted connections with a low-resistance ohmmeter. Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
  - b. Measure contact resistance across each switchblade fuseholder. Drop values shall not exceed the high level of the manufacturer's published data. If manufacturer's published data are not available, investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
  - c. Perform insulation-resistance tests for one minute on each pole, phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with switch closed, and across each open pole. Apply voltage in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use Table 100.1 from the NETA ATS. Investigate values of insulation resistance less than those published in Table 100.1 or as recommended in manufacturer's published data.
  - d. Measure fuse resistance. Investigate fuse-resistance values that deviate from each other by more than 15 percent.
  - e. Perform ground fault test according to NETA ATS 7.14 "Ground Fault Protection Systems, Low-Voltage."
- F. Enclosed switches and circuit breakers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports.
1. Test procedures used.
  2. Include identification of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker tested and describe test results.
  3. List deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.7 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 262913 - ENCLOSED CONTROLLERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes the following enclosed controllers rated 600 V and less:
  - 1. Full-voltage manual.
  - 2. Full-voltage magnetic.
- B. Related Section:
  - 1. Section 262923 "Variable-Frequency Motor Controllers" for general-purpose, ac, adjustable-frequency, pulse-width-modulated controllers for use on variable torque loads in ranges up to 200 hp.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CPT: Control power transformer.
- B. MCCB: Molded-case circuit breaker.
- C. MCP: Motor circuit protector.
- D. N.C.: Normally closed.
- E. N.O.: Normally open.
- F. OCPD: Overcurrent protective device.
- G. SCR: Silicon-controlled rectifier.

#### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Enclosed controllers shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

## 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of enclosed controller. Include manufacturer's technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and enclosure types and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each enclosed controller. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, details, and required clearances and service spaces around controller enclosures.
  - 1. Show tabulations of the following:
    - a. Each installed unit's type and details.
    - b. Factory-installed devices.
    - c. Nameplate legends.
    - d. Short-circuit current rating of integrated unit.
    - e. Listed and labeled for integrated short-circuit current (withstand) rating of OCPDs in combination controllers by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
    - f. Features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual OCPDs in combination controllers.
  - 2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

## 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.
- B. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For enclosed controllers, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
  - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
  - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
  - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- C. Field quality-control reports.
- D. Load-Current and Overload-Relay Heater List: Compile after motors have been installed, and arrange to demonstrate that selection of heaters suits actual motor nameplate full-load currents.
- E. Load-Current and List of Settings of Adjustable Overload Relays: Compile after motors have been installed, and arrange to demonstrate that switch settings for motor running overload protection suit actual motors to be protected.

## 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For enclosed controllers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

1. Routine maintenance requirements for enclosed controllers and installed components.
2. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting circuit breaker and MCP trip settings.
3. Manufacturer's written instructions for setting field-adjustable overload relays.
4. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing, adjusting, and reprogramming reduced-voltage solid-state controllers.

#### 1.8 MATERIALS MAINTENANCE SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  1. Fuses for Fused Switches: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.
  2. Control Power Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than two of each size and type.
  3. Indicating Lights: Two of each type and color installed.

#### 1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA or an NRTL.
  1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70.
- D. IEEE Compliance: Fabricate and test enclosed controllers according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

#### 1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store enclosed controllers indoors in clean, dry space with uniform temperature to prevent condensation. Protect enclosed controllers from exposure to dirt, fumes, water, corrosive substances, and physical damage.
- B. If stored in areas subject to weather, cover enclosed controllers to protect them from weather, dirt, dust, corrosive substances, and physical damage. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside controllers; install temporary electric heating, with at least 250 W per controller.

#### 1.11 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:

1. Ambient Temperature: Not less than minus 22 deg F and not exceeding 104 deg F.
  2. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet.
- B. Interruption of Existing Electrical Systems: Do not interrupt electrical systems in facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electrical service according to requirements indicated:
1. Notify Owner no fewer than ten days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical systems.
  2. Indicate method of providing temporary utilities.
  3. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical systems without Owner's written permission.
  4. Comply with NFPA 70E.

#### 1.12 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of enclosed controllers with other construction including conduit, piping, equipment, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified with concrete.
- C. Coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 FULL-VOLTAGE CONTROLLERS

- A. General Requirements for Full-Voltage Controllers: Comply with NEMA ICS 2, general purpose, Class A.
- B. Motor-Starting Switches: "Quick-make, quick-break" toggle or push-button action; marked to show whether unit is off or on.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Eaton.
    - b. General Electric Company.
    - c. Rockwell Automation, Inc.
    - d. SIEMENS Industry, Inc.; Energy Management Division.
    - e. Square D Schneider Electric
  2. Configuration: Nonreversing Reversing Two speed.
  3. Surface mounting.
  4. Red Green pilot light.

5. Additional Nameplates: FORWARD and REVERSE for reversing switches HIGH and LOW for two-speed switches.
- C. Fractional Horsepower Manual Controllers: "Quick-make, quick-break" toggle or push-button action; marked to show whether unit is off, on, or tripped.
- 1.
  2. Configuration: Nonreversing Two speed.
  3. Overload Relays: Inverse-time-current characteristics; NEMA ICS 2, Class 10 tripping characteristics; heaters matched to nameplate full-load current of actual protected motor; external reset push button; bimetallic type.
  4. Surface mounting.
  5. Additional Nameplates: HIGH and LOW for two-speed controllers.
- D. Magnetic Controllers: Full voltage, across the line, electrically held.
- 1.
  2. Configuration: Nonreversing Reversing.
  3. Contactor Coils: Pressure-encapsulated type with coil transient suppressors.
    - a. Operating Voltage: Depending on contactor NEMA size and line-voltage rating, manufacturer's standard matching control power or line voltage.
  4. Power Contacts: Totally enclosed, double-break, silver-cadmium oxide; assembled to allow inspection and replacement without disturbing line or load wiring.
  5. Control Circuits: 120-V ac; obtained from integral CPT, with primary and secondary fuses, with CPT of sufficient capacity to operate integral devices and remotely located pilot, indicating, and control devices.
    - a. CPT Spare Capacity: 100 VA.
  6. Bimetallic Overload Relays:
    - a. Inverse-time-current characteristic.
    - b. Class 10 tripping characteristic.
    - c. Heaters in each phase matched to nameplate full-load current of actual protected motor and with appropriate adjustment for duty cycle.
    - d. Ambient compensated.
    - e. Automatic resetting.
  7. Solid-State Overload Relay:
    - a. Switch or dial selectable for motor running overload protection.
    - b. Sensors in each phase.
    - c. Class 10/20 selectable tripping characteristic selected to protect motor against voltage and current unbalance and single phasing.
    - d. Class II ground-fault protection, with start and run delays to prevent nuisance trip on starting.
    - e. Analog communication module.
  8. N.C. N.O., isolated overload alarm contact.
  9. External overload reset push button.

- E. Combination Magnetic Controller: Factory-assembled combination of magnetic controller, OCPD, and disconnecting means.
  - 1. Fusible Disconnecting Means:
    - a. NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, horsepower-rated, fusible switch with clips or bolt pads to accommodate Class J Class R indicated fuses.
    - b. Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.
  - 2. Auxiliary Contacts: N.O. /N.C., arranged to activate before switch blades open.
  - 3. Nonfusible Disconnecting Means:
    - a. NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, horsepower-rated, nonfusible switch.
    - b. Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.
    - c. Auxiliary Contacts: N.O. /N.C., arranged to activate before switch blades open.

## 2.2 ENCLOSURES

- A. Enclosed Controllers: NEMA ICS 6, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.
  - 1. Dry and Clean Indoor Locations: Type 1.
  - 2. Outdoor Locations: Type 3R Type 4X.
  - 3. Other Wet or Damp Indoor Locations: Type 4.
  - 4. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: Type 12.
  - 5. Hazardous Areas Indicated on Drawings: Type 7 Type 9.

## 2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. General Requirements for Control Circuit and Pilot Devices: NEMA ICS 5; factory installed in controller enclosure cover unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Push Buttons, Pilot Lights, and Selector Switches: Heavy-duty, oiltight type.
    - a. Push Buttons: Covered Lockable Shielded Shrouded types; maintained momentary as indicated.
    - b. Pilot Lights: LED types; colors as indicated; push to test.
    - c. Selector Switches: Rotary type.
  - 2. Meters: Panel type, 2-1/2-inch minimum size with 90- or 120-degree scale and plus or minus two percent accuracy. Where indicated, provide selector switches with an off position.
- B. N.C. N.O. auxiliary contact(s).
- C. Control Relays: Auxiliary and adjustable solid-state time-delay relays.



- D. Phase-Failure, Phase-Reversal, and Undervoltage and Overvoltage Relays: Solid-state sensing circuit with isolated output contacts for hard-wired connections. Provide adjustable undervoltage, overvoltage, and time-delay settings.
- E. Breather and drain assemblies, to maintain interior pressure and release condensation in Type 4 Type 4X enclosures installed outdoors or in unconditioned interior spaces subject to humidity and temperature swings.
- F. Cover gaskets for Type 1 enclosures.
- G. Terminals for connecting power factor correction capacitors to the load side of overload relays.
- H. Spare control wiring terminal blocks, quantity as indicated; wired.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and surfaces to receive enclosed controllers, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine enclosed controllers before installation. Reject enclosed controllers that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Wall-Mounted Controllers: Install enclosed controllers on walls with tops at uniform height unless otherwise indicated, and by bolting units to wall or mounting on lightweight structural-steel channels bolted to wall. For controllers not at walls, provide freestanding racks complying with Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
- B. Floor-Mounted Controllers: Install enclosed controllers on 4-inch nominal-thickness concrete base. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
  1. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
  2. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
  3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
- C. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.
- D. Install fuses in each fusible-switch enclosed controller.

- E. Install fuses in control circuits if not factory installed. Comply with requirements in Section 262813 "Fuses."
- F. Install heaters in thermal overload relays. Select heaters based on actual nameplate full-load amperes after motors have been installed.
- G. Install, connect, and fuse thermal-protector monitoring relays furnished with motor-driven equipment.
- H. Install power factor correction capacitors. Connect to the load side of overload relays. If connected to the load side of overload relays, adjust overload heater sizes to accommodate the reduced motor full-load currents.
- I. Comply with NECA 1.

### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify enclosed controllers, components, and control wiring. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  - 1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
  - 2. Label each enclosure with engraved nameplate.
  - 3. Label each enclosure-mounted control and pilot device.

### 3.4 CONTROL WIRING INSTALLATION

- A. Install wiring between enclosed controllers and remote devices and facility's central control system. Comply with requirements in Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."
- B. Bundle, train, and support wiring in enclosures.
- C. Connect selector switches and other automatic-control selection devices where applicable.
  - 1. Connect selector switches to bypass only those manual- and automatic-control devices that have no safety functions when switch is in manual-control position.
  - 2. Connect selector switches with enclosed-controller circuit in both manual and automatic positions for safety-type control devices such as low- and high-pressure cutouts, high-temperature cutouts, and motor overload protectors.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform tests and inspections.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- D. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
1. Test insulation resistance for each enclosed controller, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
  2. Test continuity of each circuit.
- E. Tests and Inspections:
1. Inspect controllers, wiring, components, connections, and equipment installation. Test and adjust controllers, components, and equipment.
  2. Test insulation resistance for each enclosed-controller element, component, connecting motor supply, feeder, and control circuits.
  3. Test continuity of each circuit.
  4. Verify that voltages at controller locations are within plus or minus 10 percent of motor nameplate rated voltages. If outside this range for any motor, notify Owner before starting the motor(s).
  5. Test each motor for proper phase rotation.
  6. Perform each electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  7. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
  8. Perform the following infrared (thermographic) scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:
    - a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each multi-pole enclosed controller. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
    - b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each multi-pole enclosed controller 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
    - c. Instruments and Equipment: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
  9. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- F. Enclosed controllers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports including a certified report that identifies enclosed controllers and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

### 3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Set field-adjustable switches, auxiliary relays, time-delay relays, timers, and overload-relay pickup and trip ranges.
- B. Adjust overload-relay heaters or settings if power factor correction capacitors are connected to the load side of the overload relays.
- C. Adjust the trip settings of MCPs and thermal-magnetic circuit breakers with adjustable instantaneous trip elements. Initially adjust to six times the motor nameplate full-load ampere ratings and attempt to start motors several times, allowing for motor cooldown between starts. If tripping occurs on motor inrush, adjust settings in increments until motors start without tripping. Do not exceed eight times the motor full-load amperes (or 11 times for NEMA Premium Efficient motors if required). Where these maximum settings do not allow starting of a motor, notify Owner before increasing settings.
- D. Set field-adjustable switches and program microprocessors for required start and stop sequences in reduced-voltage solid-state controllers.

### 3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions until enclosed controllers are ready to be energized and placed into service.
- B. Replace controllers whose interiors have been exposed to water or other liquids prior to Substantial Completion.

### 3.8 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain enclosed controllers.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 312000 - EARTH MOVING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Excavating and filling for rough grading the Site.
- 2. Preparing subgrades for slabs-on-grade, walks, pavements, and turf and grasses.
- 3. Drainage course for concrete slabs-on-grade.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for granular course if placed over vapor retarder and beneath the slab-on-grade.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Backfill: Soil material or controlled low-strength material used to fill an excavation.
- B. Borrow Soil: Satisfactory soil imported from off-site for use as fill or backfill.
- C. Drainage Course: Aggregate layer supporting the slab-on-grade that also minimizes upward capillary flow of pore water.
- D. Excavation: Removal of material encountered above subgrade elevations and to lines and dimensions indicated.
  - 1. Authorized Additional Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations or beyond indicated lines and dimensions as directed by Architect. Authorized additional excavation and replacement material will be paid for according to Contract provisions for changes in the Work.
  - 2. Bulk Excavation: Excavation more than 10 feet in width and more than 30 feet in length.
  - 3. Unauthorized Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations or beyond indicated lines and dimensions without direction by Architect. Unauthorized excavation, as well as remedial work directed by Architect, shall be without additional compensation.
- E. Subgrade: Uppermost surface of an excavation or the top surface of a fill or backfill immediately below subbase, drainage fill, drainage course, or topsoil materials.

## 1.4 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Traffic: Minimize interference with adjoining roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities during earth-moving operations.
  - 1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by Owner or authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Utility Locator Service: Notify utility locator service "One Call" for area where Project is located before beginning earth-moving operations.
- C. Do not commence earth-moving operations until any temporary site fencing and erosion- and sedimentation-control measures are in place.
- D. Do not direct vehicle or equipment exhaust towards protection zones.
- E. Prohibit heat sources, flames, ignition sources, and smoking within or near protection zones.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SOIL MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide borrow soil materials when sufficient satisfactory soil materials are not available from excavations. Comply with Geotechnical Report recommendations.
- B. Satisfactory Soils: Soil Classification Groups GW, GC, GM, SW, SC, and SM according to ASTM D 2487, or a combination of these groups; free of rock or gravel larger than 6 inches in any dimension, debris, waste, frozen materials, vegetation, and other deleterious matter.
  - 1. Liquid Limit: 40.
  - 2. Plasticity Index: 20.
- C. Unsatisfactory Soils: Soil Classification Groups CL, ML, OL, CH, MH, OH, and PT according to ASTM D 2487, or a combination of these groups.
  - 1. Unsatisfactory soils also include satisfactory soils not maintained within 2 percent of optimum moisture content at time of compaction.
- D. Drainage Course: Narrowly graded mixture of crushed stone, or crushed or uncrushed gravel; ASTM D 448; coarse-aggregate grading Size 57; with 100 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and zero to 5 percent passing a No. 8 sieve.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards created by earth-moving operations.
- B. Protect and maintain erosion and sedimentation controls during earth-moving operations.
- C. Protect subgrades and foundation soils from freezing temperatures and frost. Remove temporary protection before placing subsequent materials.

### 3.2 EXCAVATION, GENERAL

- A. Unclassified Excavation: Excavate to subgrade elevations regardless of the character of surface and subsurface conditions encountered. Unclassified excavated materials may include rock, soil materials, and obstructions.

### 3.3 EXCAVATION FOR WALKS AND PAVEMENTS

- A. Excavate surfaces under walks and pavements to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades.

### 3.4 SUBGRADE INSPECTION

- A. Notify Architect when excavations have reached required subgrade.
- B. If Architect determines that unsatisfactory soil is present, continue excavation and replace with compacted backfill or fill material as directed.
- C. Proof-roll subgrade below the building slabs and pavements with a pneumatic-tired and loaded 10-wheel, tandem-axle dump truck weighing not less than 15 tons to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Do not proof-roll wet or saturated subgrades.
  - 1. Completely proof-roll subgrade in one direction, repeating proof-rolling in direction perpendicular to first direction. Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph.
  - 2. Excavate soft spots, unsatisfactory soils, and areas of excessive pumping or rutting, as determined by Architect, and replace with compacted backfill or fill as directed.
- D. Authorized additional excavation and replacement material will be paid for according to Contract provisions for changes in the Work.
- E. Reconstruct subgrades damaged by freezing temperatures, frost, rain, accumulated water, or construction activities, as directed by Architect, without additional compensation.

### 3.5 UNAUTHORIZED EXCAVATION

- A. Fill unauthorized excavation under foundations or wall footings by extending bottom elevation of concrete foundation or footing to excavation bottom, without altering top elevation. Lean concrete fill, with 28-day compressive strength of 2500 psi, may be used when approved by Architect.
  - 1. Fill unauthorized excavations under other construction, pipe, or conduit as directed by Architect.

### 3.6 BACKFILL

- A. Place and compact backfill in excavations promptly, but not before completing the following:
  - 1. Construction below finish grade including, where applicable, subdrainage, dampproofing, waterproofing, and perimeter insulation.
  - 2. Surveying locations of underground utilities for Record Documents.
  - 3. Testing and inspecting underground utilities.
  - 4. Removing concrete formwork.
  - 5. Removing trash and debris.
  - 6. Removing temporary shoring, bracing, and sheeting.
  - 7. Installing permanent or temporary horizontal bracing on horizontally supported walls.
- B. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

### 3.7 COMPACTION OF SOIL BACKFILLS AND FILLS

- A. Place backfill and fill soil materials in layers not more than 8 inches in loose depth for material compacted by heavy compaction equipment and not more than 4 inches in loose depth for material compacted by hand-operated tampers.
- B. Place backfill and fill soil materials evenly on all sides of structures to required elevations and uniformly along the full length of each structure.
- C. Compact soil materials to not less than the following percentages of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698:
  - 1. Under structures, building slabs, steps, and pavements, scarify and recompact top 12 inches of existing subgrade and each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 95 percent.
  - 2. Under walkways, scarify and recompact top 6 inches below subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 95 percent.
  - 3. Under turf or unpaved areas, scarify and recompact top 6 inches below subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 85 percent.
  - 4. For utility trenches, compact each layer of initial and final backfill soil material at 85 percent.



### 3.8 GRADING

- A. General: Uniformly grade areas to a smooth surface, free of irregular surface changes. Comply with compaction requirements and grade to cross sections, lines, and elevations indicated.
  - 1. Provide a smooth transition between adjacent existing grades and new grades.
  - 2. Cut out soft spots, fill low spots, and trim high spots to comply with required surface tolerances.
- B. Site Rough Grading: Slope grades to direct water away from buildings and to prevent ponding. Finish subgrades to elevations required to achieve indicated finish elevations, within the following subgrade tolerances:
  - 1. Turf or Unpaved Areas: Plus or minus 1 inch.
  - 2. Walks: Plus or minus 1 inch.
  - 3. Pavements: Plus or minus 1/2 inch.

### 3.9 DRAINAGE COURSE UNDER CONCRETE SLABS-ON-GRADE

- A. Place drainage course on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
- B. On prepared subgrade, place and compact drainage course under cast-in-place concrete slabs-on-grade as follows:
  - 1. Install subdrainage geotextile on prepared subgrade according to manufacturer's written instructions, overlapping sides and ends.
  - 2. Place drainage course 6 inches or less in compacted thickness in a single layer.
  - 3. Place drainage course that exceeds 6 inches in compacted thickness in layers of equal thickness, with no compacted layer more than 6 inches thick or less than 3 inches thick.
  - 4. Compact each layer of drainage course to required cross sections and thicknesses to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.

### 3.10 PROTECTION

- A. Protecting Graded Areas: Protect newly graded areas from traffic, freezing, and erosion. Keep free of trash and debris.
- B. Repair and reestablish grades to specified tolerances where completed or partially completed surfaces become eroded, rutted, settled, or where they lose compaction due to subsequent construction operations or weather conditions.
  - 1. Scarify or remove and replace soil material to depth as directed by Architect; reshape and recompact.
- C. Where settling occurs before Project correction period elapses, remove finished surfacing, backfill with additional soil material, compact, and reconstruct surfacing.
  - 1. Restore appearance, quality, and condition of finished surfacing to match adjacent work, and eliminate evidence of restoration to greatest extent possible.

3.11 DISPOSAL OF SURPLUS AND WASTE MATERIALS

- A. Remove surplus satisfactory soil and waste materials, including unsatisfactory soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.
- B. Transport surplus satisfactory soil to designated storage areas on Owner's property. Stockpile or spread soil as directed by Architect.
  - 1. Remove waste materials, including unsatisfactory soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 312000

## SECTION 321323 - VINYL FENCING AND GATES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Vinyl-clad fence and gates.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include installation instructions and recommendations.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication of vinyl fence components.
  - 1. Include details of connections, splices, holes, and other pertinent data.
  - 2. Include elevation of fence.
- C. Manufacturer's Certificates: Certify products meet or exceed specified requirements.

#### 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials to the Project site in manufacturer's original wrappings and containers, labeled with supplier's or manufacturer's name, material or product brand name, and lot number, if any.
- B. Store materials in their original, undamaged packages and containers, inside a well-ventilated area protected from weather, moisture, soiling, extreme temperatures, and humidity.

#### 1.5 SEQUENCING

- A. Ensure that locating templates and other information required for installation of products of this section are furnished to affected trades in time to prevent interruption of construction progress.
- B. Ensure that products of this section are supplied to affected trades in time to prevent interruption of construction progress.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS:

- A. Provide all components of fencing from single manufacturer.

### 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. PVC: Poly Vinyl Chloride (PVC) formulated to resist impact and for Ultra Violet (UV) stabilization. Extruded products meets or exceeds ASTM D 1784.

### 2.3 VINYL FENCE:

- A. Performance Requirements: Fence shall be capable of resisting design load indicated or 20 PSF at a minimum without failure or damage due to deflection.
- B. Style: Privacy Fence.
  - 1. Height: As indicated on Drawings
  - 2. Panel Widths: 5 feet maximum or as indicated on Drawings.
  - 3. Color: As selected by Owner.
  - 4. Gates and Posts: Match fence style.
  - 5. Vinyl Post Wrap Size: 5 inch by 5 inch for enclosure of nominal 4x4 posts.
  - 6. Vinyl Post Cap: 5 inch Flat.
- C. Gate Hardware:
  - 1. Commercial Latch: Stainless steel with aluminum latch clappers.
  - 2. Commercial Hinge Set
  - 3. Handle: Aluminum, ADA Compliant.
  - 4. Finish: Powder coated
    - a. Color: By Owner

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Do not begin installation until conditions have been properly prepared.
- B. Verification of Conditions: Examine locations where fencing is to be installed for any conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work.
- C. Notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare surface and remove surface irregularities, if any, which may cause interference with the installation of the fence.

- B. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Set posts and gate posts for gate openings as indicated on the Drawings.
- C. Center and align posts, place concrete around posts and vibrate or tamp for consolidation. Recheck vertical and top alignment of posts, and make necessary corrections.
- D. Install gates plumb, level, and secure for full opening without interference. For double gates, install drop rod. Adjust hardware for smooth operation.

### 3.4 CLEANING

- A. Touch-up, repair, or replace damaged products before Substantial Completion.
- B. Clean the work according to manufacturer's written instructions. Post hole excavations shall be scattered uniformly away from the posts. Clean fence with mild household detergent and rinse well with clean water. Remove mortar from exposed posts using a 10 percent solution of muriatic acid followed immediately by several rinses with clean water.

### 3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products until completion of project.
- B. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 321323